

(Myanmar)

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SPOKEN LANGUAGE **Book 2**



John Okell

with U Saw Tun and Daw Khin Mya Swe

BURMESE

CONTENTS

The material in this volume is a continuation of the material in Book 1.

For the introduction and explanations of how to use the course please refer to that volume.

The lessons: Part 2, Levels 2 to 5

Part 2, Level 1 is bound separately in Book 1

| | Level 2 | Level 3 | Level 4 | Level 5 |
|---|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 Asking the way | 1 | 48 | 91 | 135 |
| 2 Taking photographs | 4 | 51 | 94 | 142 |
| 3 Taking a taxi | 7 | 53 | 97 | 145 |
| 4 Cafés and restaurants | 10 | 56 | 101 | 149 |
| 5 Shops | 14 | 61 | 106 | 155 |
| 6 About your command of Burmese | 17 | 64 | 110 | 161 |
| 7 About your travels: past trips | 20 | 66 | 112 | 165 |
| 8 About your travels: trips in prospect | 24 | 69 | 116 | 168 |
| 9 About your travels: current trip | 28 | 72 | 118 | 171 |
| 10A You and yours | 32 | 75 | 122 | 176 |
| 10B You and yours (continued) | 38 | 79 | 126 | 181 |
| 11 Arranging to meet again | 43 | 85 | 129 | 186 |
| 12 Making a phone call | 46 | 88 | 132 | 192 |

Appendices

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. Social customs | 200 |
| 2. Talking about language: asking for help | 204 |
| 3. Talking to monks | 207 |
| 4. Outline grammar | 209 |
| 5. Vocabulary | |
| 5.1 Burmese-English | 247 |
| 5.2 English-Burmese | 268 |
| 6. Additional vocabulary (listed by topic) | 279 |
| 7. Index to notes and topics in the text | 289 |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 1

ASKING THE WAY

First read through the New Words and the Sample Dialogue.

Then turn on the tape.

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| ဒီနားမှာ | near here ["this (place)-vicinity-in"] | di-nà-hma |
| ဟိုဘက်မှာ | over there ["that-direction-in"] | ho-beq-hma |
| ရှိ- | there is, to be [in a specified place] | shí- |
| — S1: ဒီနားမှာ ပန်းခြံ ရှိသလား။ | Is there a park near here? | Dí-nà-hma pàn-jan shí-dhālà? |
| — S2: မရှိပါဘူး။ | No, there isn't. | Mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| ဟိုဘက်မှာ ရှိပါတယ်။ | There's one over there. | Ho-beq-hma shí--ba-deh. |

Some new places —

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| အအေးဆိုင် / -ဇိုင်/ | cold drinks bar ["cold-shop"] | ǎè-zain |
| လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် / လဖက်ရေဇိုင်/ | café ["tea-shop"] | lǎp'eq-ye-zain |
| စားသောက်ဆိုင် | restaurant ["eat-drink-shop"] | sà-thauq-s'ain |
| အများသုံးအိမ်သာ / -သူနံ: -သာ/ | public toilet ["many-use-toilet"] | ǎmyà-dhoùn ein-dha |

Calling someone's attention

Hitherto you have used ဒီမှာ (di-hma) "here" as a word for attracting someone's attention, like "Excuse me" in English. This is a useful word for the purpose, but in practice people more often use a kin term. Kin terms often used this way are:

| | | | | | |
|-------|------|---------------|-----------------------|---------|--------------|
| ဦးလေး | Ù-lè | uncle | ဒေါ်ဒေါ် ¹ | Daw-daw | aunt |
| အကို | Āko | older brother | အမ | Āmá | older sister |
| သား | Thà | son | သမီး | Thāmì | daughter |

So if you want to ask the way from a man who looks about the right age to be your uncle, you call out ဦးလေး: (Ù-lè), and so on for people of other ages and gender.

You will also find that some Burmese of the appropriate age group will call you by one of the following —

| | | | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| အန်ကယ် | An-keh | uncle | အန်တီ | An-ti | aunty |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

Since they are foreign terms, these words are particularly favoured for addressing foreigners. When a youngster addresses you in this way, remember that the appropriate term for you to address him/her by is သား/သမီး: (Thà/Thāmì) — despite the genealogical anomaly.

1. Repetition is used in Burmese to form affectionate diminutives in much the same way as -y (or -ie) is used in English (as in *sweet/sweetie*, *aunt/aunty*, *pot/potty*, and so on). For example:

| <i>simple</i> | <i>repeated</i> | <i>simple</i> | <i>repeated</i> | <i>simple</i> | <i>repeated</i> | <i>simple</i> | <i>repeated</i> |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| အဖေ | ဖေဖေ | အမေ | မေမေ | အ်ပဲ | ပဲ-ပဲ | အ်မေ | မေ-မေ |
| ဦးလေး | ဦးဦး or လေးလေး | အဒေါ် | ဒေါ်ဒေါ် | အ်-လဲ | လဲ-လဲ or လဲ-လဲ | အ်သေ | သေ-သေ |
| အကို | ကိုကို | အမ | မမ | အ်ကို | ကို-ကို | အ်မာ | မာ-မာ |
| သား | သားသား | သမီး | မီးမီး | ထာ | ထာ-ထာ | ထမ် | မိ-မိ |

As a term of address အဒေါ် (Ādaw) sounds stark, which is why we recommend the repeated form ဒေါ်ဒေါ် (Daw-daw) here. The other diminutives in the list are used for closer, more affectionate relationships.

2. For a longer list of shops, see Appendix 6, section 14.



Restaurant in Mandalay

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 goes up to S2 to ask the way.

Scene 1

S1: အကို။

Excuse me! ["Brother"]

Āko.

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဘာလဲ။

Yes? What is it?

houq-kèh. Ba-lèh?

S1: ဒီနားမှာ ဈေး ရှိလား။

Is there a market near here?

Di-nà-hma zè shí-là?

S2: ရှိပါတယ်။ ဒီဘက် သွား။

Yes, there is. Go this way.

Shí-ba-deh. Di-beq- thwà.

S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။

Thank you.

Cè-zù tin-ba-deh, K'in-bya.

S2: ရပါတယ်။

That's all right.

Yá-ba-deh.

ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။

No trouble.

Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù.

Scene 2

S1: အမ။

Excuse me! ["Sister"]

Āmá.

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်

Yes?

Houq-kèh Shin.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| S1: ဒီနားမှာ စားသောက်ဆိုင် ရှိလား။ | Is there a restaurant near here? | Di-nà-hma sà-thauq-s'ain shí-là? |
| S2: ဒီနားမှာ မရှိပါဘူး။ | There isn't one near here. | Di-nà-hma mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် ရှိတယ်။ | There's a café. | Lǎp'eq-ye-zain shí-deh. |
| ဟိုဘက်မှာ။ | Over there. | Ho-beq-hma. |
| S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ | That's all right. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။ | No trouble. | Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| <i>Scene 3</i> | | |
| S1: ဦးလေး။ | Excuse me! ["Uncle"] | Ù-lè. |
| S2: ဘာလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။ | What is it? | Ba-lèh K'in-bya? |
| S1: ဒီနားမှာ စာကြည့်တိုက် ရှိလား။ | Is there a library near here? | Di-nà-hma sa-cí-daiq shí-là? |
| S2: မသိပါဘူး။ ဆောရီနော်။ | I don't know. Sorry. | Mǎthí-ba-bù. S'àw-rì-naw? |
| S1: ကိစ္စမရှိပါဘူး။ | Never mind. | Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| ရပါတယ်။ | It's OK. | Yá-ba-deh. |

Exercises on the new places

Ex. 1: Use the List for the Practice Dialogues below.

Prompt: Ask U Maung Maung where he wants to go.

L/S2: ဦးမောင်မောင် ဘယ်သွားချင်သလဲ။ S1: အအေးဆိုင် သွားချင်ပါတယ်။

L/S2: အအေးဆိုင်လား။ S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အအေးဆိုင်ပါ။

Ex. 2: Use the List for the Practice Dialogues to find the answers to the questions.

The names are not taken in the order you see on the List.

S1: ဒေါ်ခင်ခင်စိုး ဘယ်သွားချင်သလဲ။ L/S2: လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် သွားချင်ပါတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Follow the Prompt and use the list below to ask your question.

| နာမည် | asks a person who could be his/her | wants to go to | name |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| ဒေါ်သန်းမြင့် | sister | a market | Daw Than Myint |
| ဦးစောလွင် | aunt | a restaurant | U Saw Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း | uncle | a park | Daw Myint Myint Win |
| ဦးမောင်မောင် | son ¹ | a cold drinks bar | U Maung Maung |
| ဒေါ်ခင်ခင်စိုး | daughter ¹ | a café | Daw Khin Khin So |
| ဦးအုံးဟန် | sister | a restaurant | U Ohn Han |
| ဒေါ်မိမိစိန် | aunt | a public toilet | Daw Mi Mi Sein |
| ဦးစံတင် | daughter ¹ | a restaurant | U San Tin |
| ဒေါ်ကက်သရင်အေး | uncle | a public toilet | Daw Catherine Aye |
| ဦးတင်ဦး | son ¹ | a cold drinks bar | U Tin Oo |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မေကြည် | sister | a café | Daw Khin May Kyee |

1. Remember that the polite tags ရှင် and ခင်ဗျာ (Shin/K'in-bya) imply a degree of deference to the person addressed. It is not appropriate for adults to show such deference to children,

so when people are speaking to children — people they call သား or သမီး (Thà/Thămi) — they normally omit polite tags. You will find this code observed in many of the Practice Dialogues.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the dialogue below into Burmese. S2 is a young girl.

1. S1: Daughter.
2. S2: Yes (+tag). What is it?
3. S1: Is there a cold drinks shop near here?
4. S2: There isn't one near here (+tag).
5. S2: There's one over there.
6. S1: Thank you.
7. S1: Should I go this way?
8. S2: Yes. This way.
9. S1: Fine. Thanks.
10. S2: That's all right (+tag).

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

သမီး။
ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်။ ဘာလဲ။
ဒီနားမှာ အအေးဆိုင် ရှိသလား။
ဒီနားမှာ မရှိပါဘူး ရှင်။
ဟိုဘက်မှာ ရှိပါတယ်။
ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။
ဒီဘက် သွားရမလား။
ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဒီဘက်ပါ။
ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ကျေးဇူးပဲ။
ရပါတယ် ရှင်။

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 2

TAKING PHOTOGRAPHS

New words

Level 2: Taking photographs expands the Level 1 material by adding an assortment of phrases useful in this situation. You met some of them in the Common Phrases Supplement to Part 1.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| S1: ခဏလေး။ / ခန့်- / | Just a minute. | K'ǎná-lè. |
| S1: နေပါအုံး။ | Hold it! Wait! | Ne-ba-oùn. |
| | ["remain-polite-further"] | |
| S1: ရယ်ဒီပဲလား။ | Are you ready? | Reh-dí-bèh-là? |
| S2: ရယ်ဒီပဲ။ or ရပါတယ်။ | Yes, ready. [or] All right. | Reh-dí-bèh, or Yá-ba-deh. |
| or: ခဏလေးနော်။ | Just a minute — OK? | K'ǎná-lè-naw? |
| S1: ပြီးပြီလား။ / ပီးမီး- / 2 | Have you finished? | Pì-bi-là? |
| S2: ပြီးပြီ။ / ပီးမီး / | Yes, I have. | Pì-bi. |
| or: မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ | Not yet. | Mǎpì-dhè-ba-bù. |
| S1: ရှိပြီလား။ / ယခုမီးလား / 2 | Is it all right now? Ready now? | Yá-bi-là? |
| S2: ရှိပြီ။ / ယခုမီး / | It is. | Yá-bi. |
| or: မရသေးပါဘူး။ | Not yet. | Mǎyá-dhè-ba-bù. |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| S1: ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ ¹ | I'll shoot now — OK? | Yaiq-meh-naw? |
| S2: ရိုက်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | Go ahead. It's all right. | Yaiq-pa. Yá-ba-deh. |
| or: မရိုက်ပါနဲ့။ ခဏလေး။ | No, don't. Just a minute. | Măyaiq-pa-néh. K'ǎná-lè. |

1. [verb]-မယ်နော် is a way of finding out if the other person minds what you are about to do.

More examples:

| | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| သွားမယ်နော်။ | I'll go — OK? [= Goodbye] | Thwà-meh-naw? |
| ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။ | I'll keep on looking — OK? | Cí-oùn-meh-naw? |
| မိတ်ဆက်ပေးမယ်နော်။ | I'll introduce you — OK? | Meiq-s'eq-pè-meh-naw? |
| ဒီမှာ ထိုင်မယ်နော်။ | I'll sit here — OK? | Di-hma t'ain-meh-naw? |
| ပန်ကာ ဖွင့်မယ်နော်။ | I'll turn on the fan — OK? | Pan-ka p'wín-meh-naw? |
| တံခါး ပိတ်မယ်နော်။ | I'll close the door — OK? | Tǎgà peiq-meh-naw? |

2. [verb]-ပြီလား: asks if a specified condition has been achieved yet:

| | | |
|--------------|--|-------------|
| ပြီးပြီလား။ | Is it finished yet? Is it over? | Pì-bi-là? |
| ရပြီလား။ | Is it all right yet? Is it OK now? | Yá-bi-là? |
| သွားပြီလား။ | Have they gone yet? Have they left? | Thwà-bi-là? |
| ရောက်ပြီလား။ | Have they arrived yet? Are they there now? | Yauq-pi-là? |

The answer "Yes" takes the form [verb]-ပြီ —

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|
| ပြီးပြီ။ | Yes, it's finished. | Pì-bi. |
| ရပြီ။ | Yes, it's OK now. | Yá-bi. |
| သွားပြီ။ | Yes, they've left. | Thwà-bi. |
| ရောက်ပြီ။ | Yes, they are there now. | Yauq-pi. |

The answer "No, not yet" takes the form မ-[verb]-သေးပါဘူး: —

| | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ | It's not finished yet. | mǎpì-dhè-ba-bù. |
| မရသေးပါဘူး။ | It's not OK yet. | mǎyá-dhè-ba-bù. |
| မသွားသေးပါဘူး။ | They haven't left yet. | mǎthwà-dhè-ba-bù. |
| မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ | They aren't there yet. | mǎyauq-thè-ba-bù. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: in a market in Burma.

S2 is in charge of a flower stall, and S1 wants to take a photograph of it.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| S1: ဒေါ်ဒေါ်။ | Excuse me, please. | Daw-daw. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်။ | Yes? | Houq-kéh, Shin? |
| S1: ဒီမှာ ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်ချင်ပါတယ်။ | I'd like to take a photograph here. | Di-hma daq-poun yaiq-c'in-ba-deh. |
| ရတယ်နော်။ | It's all right, isn't it? | Yá-deh-naw? |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ ရိုက်ပါ။ | It's OK. Go ahead. | Yá-ba-deh. Yaiq-pa. |
| S1 adjusts the camera, saying — | | |
| S1: ခဏလေးနော်။ | Just a moment. | K'ǎná-lè-naw? |
| When he stops, S2 asks — | | |
| S2: ရပြီလား။ | Is it all right now? | Yá-bi-là? |
| S1: ရပြီ။ | Yes, it is. | Yá-bi. |

| | | |
|--|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ | I'll shoot now — OK? | Yaiq-meh-naw? |
| S2: နေပါအုံး။ | Hold on! | Ne-ba-oùn. |
| <i>S2 rearranges her flowers to more advantageous effect. When she steps back to look, S1 asks —</i> | | |
| S1: ပြီးပြီလား။ | Have you finished yet? | Pì-bi-là? |
| S2: မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ ခဏလေး။ | Not yet. Just a minute. | Mǎpì-dhè-bàbù. K'ǎná-lè. |
| <i>S2 makes further adjustments, then sits back again, saying —</i> | | |
| S2: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ ရယ်ဒီပဲ။ | Right. That's done. I'm ready. | Kèh. Pì-bi. Reh-dí-bèh. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ | OK. I'm going to shoot — OK? | Kaùn-ba-bi. Yaiq-meh-naw? |
| S2: ရိုက်ပါ။ ရပြီ။ | Go ahead. It's all right now. | Yaiq-pa. Yá-bi. |
| <i>S1 takes his photograph. S2 asks —</i> | | |
| S2: ပြီးပြီလား။ | Have you finished now? | Pì-bi-là? |
| S1: မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ ခဏလေး။ | Not yet. Just a minute. | Mǎpì-dhè-bàbù. K'ǎná-lè. |
| <i>S1 takes a second photograph, then says —</i> | | |
| S1: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ | There we are. I've finished now. | Kèh. Pì-bi. |
| ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ | That's all right. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။ | No trouble. | Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| S1: သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye then. | Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Houq-kéh. Kaùn-ba-bi. |



Cold drinks shop in Nyaung-U

For the Practice Dialogues

Follow the Prompt.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Man mending a fishing net. | 5. Boy on a bullock cart. |
| 2. Girl weaving at a loom. | 6. Guard at a checkpoint. |
| 3. Soldier on guard outside a shop. | 7. Café proprietor. |
| 4. Lady at a fruit stall. | 8. Lady offering flowers at a pagoda. |

Exercise for written answer

Match each answer in Column B to the appropriate question in Column A.

| Column A | Column B jumbled | Column B KEY |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| ၁။ ရယ်ဒီပဲလား။ | ၁။ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ | ၁၀။ ရယ်ဒီပဲ။ |
| ၂။ ရယ်ဒီပဲလား။ | ၂။ ရောက်ပြီ။ | ၃။ ခဏလေး။ |
| ၃။ ပြီးပြီလား။ | ၃။ ခဏလေး။ | ၁၃။ ပြီးပြီ။ |
| ၄။ ပြီးပြီလား။ | ၄။ မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ | ၈။ မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ |
| ၅။ ရပြီလား။ | ၅။ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | ၆။ မရသေးပါဘူး။ |
| ၆။ ရပြီလား။ | ၆။ မရသေးပါဘူး။ | ၁၁။ ရပြီ။ |
| ၇။ ရောက်ပြီလား။ | ၇။ မရိုက်ပါနဲ့။ ခဏလေး။ | ၄။ မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ |
| ၈။ ရောက်ပြီလား။ | ၈။ မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ | ၂။ ရောက်ပြီ။ |
| ၉။ ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ | ၉။ ရိုက်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | ၁။ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ |
| ၁၀။ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ | ၁၀။ ရယ်ဒီပဲ။ | ၉။ ရိုက်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ |
| ၁၁။ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ | ၁၁။ ရပြီ။ | ၇။ မရိုက်ပါနဲ့။ ခဏလေး။ |
| ၁၂။ ကြည့်မယ်နော်။ | ၁၂။ ထိုင်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | ၁၄။ ကြည့်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ |
| ၁၃။ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးမယ်နော်။ | ၁၃။ ပြီးပြီ။ | ၅။ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ |
| ၁၄။ ထိုင်မယ်နော်။ | ၁၄။ ကြည့်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | ၁၂။ ထိုင်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 3

TAKING A TAXI

New words

| | | |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| များ- | to be many, much; | myà- |
| — များပါတယ်။ | too many, too much | |
| | That's too much. | Myà-ba-deh. |
| | (short for ဈေး များပါတယ်။) | |
| — ဈေး များပါတယ်။ | The price is too high. | Zè myà-ba-deh. |
| — နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ | That's a bit too much. | Nèh-nèh myà-ba-deh. |
| လျှော့- | to slacken, reduce [price] | sháw- |
| — လျှော့နိုင်- | to be able to reduce | sháw-nain- |
| — မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူး။ | I can't reduce [the price]. | Mǎsháw-nain-bù. |
| — မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ | Can't you reduce [the price]? | Mǎsháw-nain-bù-là? |
| ဒီလိုဆို | In that case. If that is so. ["This-way-say"] | Di-lo-s'ò |
| စီး- | ride, travel by, take | sì- |
| | [train, bus, taxi and so on] | |
| — မစီးပါဘူး။ | I don't (or won't) go by taxi. | Mǎsì-ba-bù. |
| — မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။ | I won't go by taxi after all. | Mǎsì-dáw-ba-bù. |
| | [conveys the message "I had meant to, but now I'm not going to"] | |

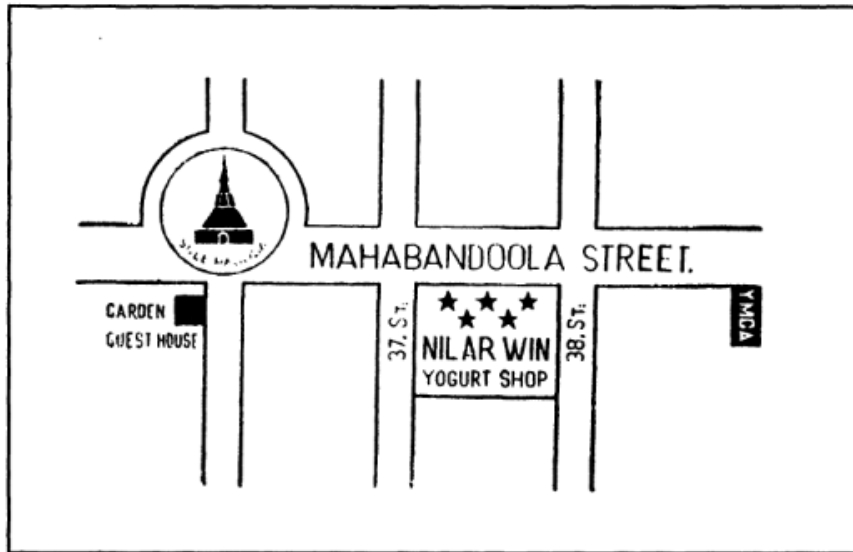
Some new places —

| | | |
|--------------|------|--------------|
| ဝိုင်အမ်စီအေ | YMCA | Wain-an-si-e |
|--------------|------|--------------|

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|----------------------|
| နိုင်ငံခြားသားများ | | Nain-ngan-jà-dhà-myà |
| ကျောင်းဆောင် /-စောင်/ | Foreign Students' Hostel | caùn-zaun |
| —နိုင်ငံ | country, state | nain-ngan |
| —နိုင်ငံခြား | foreign country | nain-ngan-jà |
| —နိုင်ငံခြားသား | foreigner ["resident of a foreign country"] | nain-ngan-jà-dhà |
| —နိုင်ငံခြားသားများ | foreigners | nain-ngan-jà-dhà-myà |
| —ကျောင်း | school, university | caùn |
| —ကျောင်းဆောင် | students' residence, hostel, dorm | caùn-zaun |

For reference: some hotel names (not practised on the tape)

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| စခန်းသာဟိုတယ် /-သုာ-/ | Sakhantha Hotel | Sāk'àn-dha Ho-teh |
| ဂါဒင်ဟိုတယ် | Garden Hotel | Ga-din Ho-teh |
| ကန်တော်ကြီးဟိုတယ် /-ဒေကြီး-/ | Kandawgyi Hotel | Kan-daw-jì Ho-teh |
| ဒဂုန်ဟိုတယ် | Dagon Hotel | Dăgoun Ho-teh |



From a publicity handout

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 is a taxi driver, and S2 has just hailed the taxi.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| S1: ဘယ် သွားမလဲ။ | Where are you going? | Beh thwà-mālèh? |
| S2: အမေရိကန်သံရုံး သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to the American Embassy. | Āme-rí-kan Than-yòun thwà-meh. |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ တက်ပါ။ | OK. Climb in. | Yá-ba-deh. Teq-pa. |
| S2: ဘယ်လောက် ကျမလဲ။ ¹ | How much will it cost? | Beh-lauq cá-mālèh? |
| S1: ၅၀/- ပေးပါ။ | Let me have K50. | Ngà-zeh pè-ba. |
| S2: နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ | That's rather too much. Can't you reduce it? | Nèh-nèh myà-ba-deh. Măsháw-nain-bù-là? |
| S1: မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။ | No, I can't. | Măsháw-nain-ba-bù. |

FORK

branch 1 (the fare is too high) ²

| | | |
|--|--|----------------------------------|
| S2: အော်။ ဒီလိုဆို မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။ | Oh. In that case I won't take the taxi. | Aw. Di-lo-s'o māsì-dáw-ba-bù. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| <i>branch 2 (the fare is acceptable)</i> | | |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ သွားမယ်။ | All right. Let's go. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Thwà-meh. |
| <i>At the end of the journey</i> | | |
| S2: ၅၀/- နော်။ | It was K50 wasn't it? | Ngà-zeh-naw? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh. |
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ | Here's the money. | Paiq-s'an di-hma. |
| သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye. | Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

- ဘယ်လောက် ကျမလဲ "How much will it cost?" is used as an alternative to ဘယ်လောက် ပေးရမလဲ "How much will I have to pay?"
- If you think a price is too high, you can often negotiate a lower one. Ways of doing this come up later, in Topic 5: Shops.

For the Practice Dialogues

You take the part of the people in the list below.

| နာမည် | place | acceptable fare | name |
|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| ဒေါ်ရီရီ | Inya Lake Hotel | K100 | Daw Yi Yi |
| ဦးအောင်ကြိုင် | Karaweik Hotel | K70 | U Aung Kyaing |
| ဒေါ်ယုဇနာကြင် | the railway station | K50 | Daw Yuzana Kyin |
| ဦးကိုကိုလေး | Mingaladon Airport | K600 | U Ko Ko Lay |
| ဒေါ်စောရီ | Tourist Burma office | K40 | Daw Saw Yi |
| ဦးလှမြင့် | Australian Embassy | K50 | U Hla Myint |
| ဒေါ်လှကြည် | YMCA | K30 | Daw Hla Kyi |
| ဦးအောင်ခင်ဆင့် | Foreign Students' Hostel | K60 | U Aung Khin Hsint |

Exercise for written answer

Reorder the lines below to make up a dialogue between a taxi driver and his passenger, and show which character speaks which lines (S1: ... S2: ...). The speakers do not necessarily speak alternate lines.

တက်ပါ။
နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။
မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။
ဘယ် သွားမလဲ။
ကောင်းပါပြီ။
ကောင်းပါပြီ။
ဘယ်လောက် ကျမလဲ။
၈၀/- ပေးပါ။
ဒီလိုဆို မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။
မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။
နိုင်ငံခြားသားများကျောင်းဆောင် သွားမယ်။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

S1: ဘယ် သွားမလဲ။
S2: နိုင်ငံခြားသားများကျောင်းဆောင် သွားမယ်။
S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။
S1: တက်ပါ။
S2: ဘယ်လောက် ကျမလဲ။
S1: ၈၀/- ပေးပါ။
S2: နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။
S2: မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။
S1: မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။
S2: ဒီလိုဆို မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။
S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 4

CAFÉS AND RESTAURANTS

New words

| | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ရှိ- | there is, to have | shí- |
| —စပါကလင် ရှိသလား။ | Is there any Sparkling? | Săpa-kălin shí-dhălà? |
| | Do you have any Sparkling? | |
| ကုန်- or ကုန်သွား- | to run out, be used up, be all gone | koun-, koun-dhwà- |
| —ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | It's sold out. | Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| စား- | to eat | sà- |
| —ဘာ စားမလဲ။ | What are you going to eat? | Ba sà-mălèh? |
| —ဟံဘာဂါ စားမယ်။ | I'm going to have a hamburger. | Han-ba-ga sà-meh. |
| ရ- | to get, obtain, be able to get | yá- |
| —စပါကလင် ရမလား။ | Could we get any Sparkling? | Săpa-kălin yá-mălà? |
| | Would you have any Sparkling? | |

Some things to eat in cafés —

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| ပလာတာ | parata (see note below) | păla-ta |
| စမူဆာ | samosa (see note below) | sămu-s'a |
| ပူဒင်: | pudding (see note below) | pu-dìn |
| ကိတ်မုန့် | cake ["cake-confection"] | keiq-moún |
| ဟန်ဘာဂါ | hamburger | han-ba-ga |
| ရေခဲမုန့် /-ဂဲ-/ | ice cream ["water-solid-confection"] | ye-gèh-moún |

How many? Foods like those above are ordered by the ခု — "piece, item, unit":

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| ပလာတာ နှစ်ခု | "parata two piece" | two paratas | păla-ta hnăk'ú |
| စမူဆာ နှစ်ခု | "samosa two piece" | two samosas | sămu-s'a hnăk'ú |

Sometimes you will find other measures used; for example:

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| ရေခဲမုန့် နှစ်ခွက် | "ice cream two cup" | two bowls of ice cream | ye-gèh-moún hnăk'weq |
| ပလာတာ နှစ်ချပ် | "parata two slice" | two paratas | păla-ta hnăc'aq |

Note the neat parallel in structure between these phrases and the following:

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| ကော်ဖီ နှစ်ခွက် | "coffee two cup" | two cups of coffee | kaw-p'i hnăk'weq |
| ဒေါ်လာ နှစ်ရာ | "dollar two hundred" | two hundred dollars | daw-la hnăya |

Parata is like a pancake, made from coarse batter, and served with a helping of curry. Samosa is a patty with a savoury filling. Both are Indian foods, and are to be found in Burma in Indian-run cafés rather than Chinese-run cafés.

ပူဒင်: is a sweet dish like caramel custard, made with eggs, milk and butter.

The element မုန့် (moún) in the word ကိတ်မုန့် (ye-gèh-moún), here translated "confection," normally denotes something made with flour. It is applied to bread, cakes and biscuits (mainly introduced from India and the West), all forms of noodles (introduced by the

Chinese), and the vast range of indigenous Burmese flour-based “confections” or မုန့်. Its use in the word ရေခဲမုန့်, “ice cream” is anomalous: ice cream in Burma is not made with flour, but has nonetheless been classified as a variety of မုန့်, perhaps because it is eaten in the same way: between meals, or as a sweet course.

For a fuller list of foods found in cafés, see Appendix 6, section 8.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a café in Burma. S1 is a waiter, and S2 is a customer.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| S1: ဘာ မှာမလဲ။ | What would you like to order? | Ba hma-mālèh? |
| S2: စပါကလင် ရှိသလား။ | Have you got any Sparkling? | Săpa-kālin shí-dhālà? |
| FORK | | |
| <i>branch 1 (they have it)</i> | | |
| S1: ရှိပါတယ်။ | We have. | Shí-ba-deh. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို | In that case, give us | Di-lo-s'o |
| စပါကလင် နှစ်လုံး ပေးပါ။ | two bottles of Sparkling. | Săpa-kālin hnāloun pè-ba. |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ | OK. | Yá-ba-deh. |

The same with the alternative question and answer:

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S1: ဘာ မှာမလဲ။ | What would you like to order? | Ba hma-mālèh? |
| S2: လိမ္မော်ရည် ရမလား။ | Could I have some orange juice? | Lein-maw-ye yá-mālà? |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ | You can. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို | In that case, give us | Di-lo-s'o |
| လိမ္မော်ရည် နှစ်ခွက် ပေးပါ။ | two glasses of orange juice. | lein-maw-ye hnāk'weq pè-ba. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

branch 2 (they don't have it)

| | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| S1: စပါကလင် မရှိပါဘူး။ | There isn't any Sparkling. | Săpa-kālin mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | It's run out. | Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို | In that case, give us | Di-lo-s'o |
| ပက်စီ နှစ်လုံး ပေးပါ။ | two bottles of Pepsi. | Peq-si hnāloun pè-ba. |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ | OK. | Yá-ba-deh. |

After eating and drinking

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ရှင်းမယ်။ | We'll settle up. | Paiq-s'an shìn-meh. |
| ဘယ်လောက် ကျသလဲ။ | What does it come to? | Beh-lauq cá-dhālèh? |
| S1: ၇၀/- ပါ။ | K70. | K'un-nās'eh-ba. |
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ | Here's the money. | Paiq-s'an di-hma. |
| သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye. | Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

Exercises on the new things to eat

Ex. 1: Prompt: Ask ဦးသော်ကောင်း: what he's going to have

L/S2: ဦးသော်ကောင်း ဘာ စားမလဲ။ S1: ပလာတာ စားမယ်။
 Prompt: Check that: L/S2: ပလာတာလား။ S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ပလာတာပါ။

Ex. 2: Use the list below to answer the questions.

S1: ကိုစိုးသိန်း ဘာ မှာသလဲ။ L/S2: ရေခဲမုန့် မှာပါတယ်။
 S1: သုံးခု မှာသလား။ L/S2: မမှာပါဘူး။ နှစ်ခု မှာပါတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Imagine you are in a café in Burma. You take the part of the people in the list below. When the waiter comes, first ask if they've got what you want. If they have, order it. If not, ask for your second choice, which is always the next item down in the list (if deprived of parata you'll settle for samosa, and so on). For the purposes of this Practice Dialogue, don't ask for drinks or state any quantities until you're asked. Ask for the bill when you hear the prompt, and make a note of the cost in the blanks. Cover up the Key while you fill in the blanks.

| နာမည် | eats | qty | drink | qty | cost | name | KEY |
|--------------|-----------|-----|--------------|------------|------|---------------|------|
| ဦးသော်ကောင်း | parata | 2 | Sparkling | 1 "object" | K... | U Thaw Kaung | K38 |
| ဒေါ်ခင်သန်း | samosa | 4 | tea | 4 cups | K... | Daw Khin Than | K32 |
| စမ်းစမ်းမေ | pudding | 1 | Coca-cola | 1 bottle | K... | San San Me | K40 |
| ကိုအောင်ခင် | cake | 3 | coffee | 2 cups | K... | Ko Aung Khin | K26 |
| အဝင်း | hamburger | 5 | Pepsi | 5 bottles | K... | Ahwin | K300 |
| ကိုစိုးသိန်း | ice cream | 2 | orange juice | 1 glass | K... | Ko So Thein | K46 |

Exercise for written answer

An exercise in counting. Write out the Burmese for the following.

- one parata
- two samosas
- three bowls of ice cream
- four cups of coffee
- five cakes
- six hamburgers
- seven glasses of orange juice
- eight bottles of Pepsi
- nine puddings
- ten bottles of Sparkling
- 900 dollars
- 80 pounds
- 7,000 yen
- 600 kyats

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ပလာတာ တစ်ခု
 စမူဆာ နှစ်ခု
 ရေခဲမုန့် သုံးခု (or သုံးခွက်)
 ကော်ဖီ လေးခွက်
 ကိတ်မုန့် ငါးခု
 ဟံဘာဂါ ခြောက်ခု
 လိမ်းမော်ရည် ခုနစ်ခွက်
 ပက်စီ ရှစ်လုံး (or ရှစ်ပုလင်း)
 ပူဒင်း ကိုးခု
 စပါကလင် ဆယ်လုံး (or ဆယ်ပုလင်း)
 ဒေါ်လာ ကိုးရာ
 ပေါင် ရှစ်ဆယ်
 ယန်း ခုနစ်ထောင်
 ဗမာငွေ ခြောက်ရာ

Menu board from a restaurant at the Shwe Dagon Pagoda



| ရတနာ စားသောက်ဆိုင် ရန်ပုံသော အစားအစာများ | | | |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| လွှက်ရည် | နန်းကြီးသုပ် | ရေခဲမုန့် | ပီကင်းအစားအစာ |
| နက်(စ်)ကော်ဖီ | ရှမ်းခေါက်ဆွဲ | ဖါလူဒါ | ယူနန်အစားအစာ |
| မိုင်လို | မြီးရှည် | ကူလ်ဖီး | ရှန်ဟဲအစားအစာ |
| ဟောလစ်(စ်) | ဟန်ဘာဂါ | ဖျော်ရည်မျိုးစုံ | ဟောင်ကောင်အစားအစာ |
| အိုဗာတင်း | ဟော့တော့ | သစ်သီးစုံ | ရတနာအထူးဟင်းပွဲများ |
| ပူတင်း | ဆန်းဝီ(ရှ်) | မင်္ဂလာရွှေခဲပွဲ | စေ့စပ်မင်္ဂလာရွှေခဲပွဲ |
| အဟာရ | ကော်ပြန့်ကြော် | ဧည့်သည်အမျိုးမျိုးကို | မွေးနေ့ရွှေခဲပွဲ၊ မိတ်ဆုံစားပွဲနှင့် |
| | | ခန်းခန်းနားနား | တည်ခင်းပေးပါသည်။ |

As you see, the hot drinks include not only tea (written လွှက်ရည် in place of the usual လက်ဖက်ရည်), but also Nescafé, Milo, Horlicks, and Ovaltine. Alongside traditional snacks such as ပူတင်း၊ ကော်ပြန့်ကြော် (spring rolls), ခေါက်ဆွဲ and နန်းကြီးသုပ် and မြီးရှည် (noodle dishes), you can also order Western-style foods like hamburgers, hotdogs and sandwiches. This restaurant lists Chinese dishes (အစားအစာ) from four different places. Can you see what the places are?

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 5

SHOPS

New words

| | | |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| လျှော့- | to slacken off, reduce [price] | sháw- |
| —၁၀/- လျှော့ပါ။ | Knock off K10. | Tās'eh sháw-ba. |
| —၁၀/- လျှော့ပါအုံး။ | Knock off K10 [more persuasive] | Tās'eh sháw-ba-oùn. |
| —၁၀/- လျှော့ပါအုံးလား။ | Why don't you knock off K10? | Tās'eh sháw-ba-oùn-là. |
| —မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူး | I can't reduce it. | Māsháw-nain-bù. |
| ပေး- | to give, pay | pè- |
| —၄၀/- ပေးမယ်။ | I'll pay K40. | Lè-zeh pè-meh. |
| ထား- | to put, keep, set in position | t'à- |
| —၄၀/- ထားပါ။ | Make it K40. | Lè-zeh t'à-ba. |
| ရ- | to get, gain, succeed, manage, ... | yá- |
| —ရမလား။ | Would that be acceptable? | Yá-mǎlà? |
| ဗျာ | Sir/Madam (man speaking) | Bya |
| | [shortened form of ခင်ဗျာ။ More familiar and less formal.] | |
| —မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူး ဗျာ။ | I can't reduce it, man. | Māsháw-nain-bù, Bya. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a shop in Burma. S1 is a customer, and S2 is the shopkeeper.

Shop 1: buyer accepts seller's price.

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| S1: ဒါ ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။ | How much is this? | Da beh-lauq-lèh? |
| S2: ၅၀/-ပါ။ | K50. | Ngà-zeh-ba. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ယူမယ်။ | All right. I'll have it. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Yu-meh. |
| ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | Here you are. Goodbye. | Di-hma. Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

Shop 2: buyer negotiates, but seller stays firm.

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| S1: ဒါ ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။ | How much is this? | Da beh-lauq-lèh? |
| S2: ၅၀/-ပါ။ | K50. | Ngà-zeh-ba. |
| S1: နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ | That's a bit too much. | Nèh-nèh myà-ba-deh. |
| မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ ¹ | Can't you reduce the price? | Māsháw-nain-bù-là? |
| | How about dropping the price? | |
| S2: မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။ | I can't. | Māsháw-nain-ba-bù. |
| — Buyer accepts (A), or declines (B). | | |
| S1: (A) ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ယူမယ်။ | All right. I'll have it. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Yu-meh. |
| ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | Here you are. Goodbye. | Di-hma. Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| S1: (B) ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh. |
| ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။ | I'll carry on looking. | Cí-oùn-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

Shop 3: buyer negotiates, and seller drops price.

| | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| S1: ဒါ ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။ | How much is that? | Da beh-lauq-lèh? |
| S2: ၅၀/- ပါ။ | K50. | Ngà-zeh-ba. |
| S1: နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ | That's a bit on the high side. | Nèh-nèh myà-ba-deh. |
| မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ ¹ | Can't you drop the price a bit? | Māsháw-nain-bù-là? |
| S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးမလဲ။ | How much will you pay for it? | Beh-lauq pè-mālèh? |
| or: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးချင်သလဲ။ | How much do you want to pay for it? | Beh-lauq pè-jin-dhālèh? |
| S1: ၁၀/- လျှော့ပါ။ | Knock off K10. | Tās'eh sháw-ba. |
| ၄၀/- ထားပါ။ ² | Put it at K40. | Lè-zeh t'à-ba. |
| ရမလား။ | Would you accept that? | Yá-mālà? |
| <i>Seller accepts buyer's price (A) or suggests revised price (B)</i> | | |
| S2: (A) ရပါတယ်။ ဒီမှာ။ | All right. Here you are. | Yá-ba-deh. Di-hma. |
| S2: (B) မရဘူးဗျာ။ | No I don't. | Māyá-bù, Bya. |
| ၄၅/- ထားပါ။ | Make it K45. | Lè-zéh ngà-jaq t'à-ba. |
| <i>Buyer accepts revised price (A) or declines (B).</i> | | |
| S1: (A) ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ယူမယ်။ | All right. I'll have it. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Yu-meh. |
| ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | Here you are. Goodbye. | Di-hma. Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| S1: (B) ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh. |
| ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။ | I'll carry on looking. | Cí-òun-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

Variants

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. လျှော့ပါအုံးလား။ | How about bringing that down? | Sáw-ba-òun-là? |
| 2. ၄၀/- ပေးမယ်။ | I'll pay K40. | Lè-zeh pè-meh. |

For reference: some other phrases you may hear (but don't need to say yourself)

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| ဒါ အနိဆုံးပဲ။ | That is the least | Da ānèh-zòun-bèh. |
| | [the lowest/bottom price] | |
| ပိုမပြောပါဘူး။ | I don't inflate my prices. | Po-māpyàw-ba-bù. |
| | ["extra-not-say"] | |
| ဒါ အရင်းအတိုင်းပါပဲ။ | That's what I pay for them myself. | Da āyìn-ātain-bèh. |
| | ["That — outlay-matching"] | |
| မမြတ်ပါဘူး။ | I make no profit. | Māmyaq-pa-bù. |
| ဒါ ဈေးမှန်ပဲ။ | That is the regular price. | Da zè-hman-bèh. |
| | ["That — price-true"] | |
| နဲ့တယ်။ ¹ | That's too little, too low. | Nèh-deh. |
| ဒီလောက်နဲ့ မရောင်းနိုင်ဘူး။ | I can't sell it for that much | Di-lauq-néh māyàun-nain-bù. |
| | ["This-amount-with — not-sell-can-negative"] | |
| ၅/- ပိုပေးပါ။ | Pay me K5 more. | Ngà-jaq po-pè-ba. |
| ၅/- တိုးပေးပါ။ | Increase your price by K5. | Ngà-jaq tò-pè-ba. |
| ၁၅/-နဲ့ ဝယ်ပါ။ | Buy it for K15. | S'éh-ngà-jaq-néh weh-ba. |

[in other words: Raise your price to K15]

1. The officially approved spelling of this word is နည်း-, but we use နဲ့- here as this is the spelling that most people use when writing in colloquial style.

For the Practice Dialogues

You play the part of the people in the list below. You ask what the item costs. If it's above your ceiling price, try negotiating. If the shopkeeper asks you for a price, offer your bargaining price from the list. If you can get the shopkeeper to come within your range, accept. If not, refuse.

| နာမည် | ပစ္စည်း | ceiling price | bargaining price | item | name |
|--------------|------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| ဆရာဝန် | ပို့စကဒ် | ၅/- | ၄/- | postcard | Saya Win |
| တင်တင်ဝင်း | ဘောပင် | ၈/- | ၆/- | ballpoint pen | Tin Tin Win |
| ကိုရဲမြင့် | ဖလင် | ၄၀၀/- | ၃၅၀/- | film | Ko Ye Myint |
| မခင်ရီ | စာအိတ် | ၂/- | ၁/၅၀ | envelope | Ma Khin Yi |
| ကိုဌေးလှိုင် | ဘီစကွတ် | ၁၂/- | ၁၂/- | biscuits | Ko Htay Hlaing |
| ကိုဆုမြိုင် | ကိုကာကိုလာ | ၄၅/- | ၄၀/- | Coke | Ko Hsu Myaing |
| တက်မြိုးဝင်း | စာရွက် | ၂၀/- | ၁၆/- | writing paper | Tet Pyo Win |
| ကိုဇေယျ | ဆယ်လိုတိပ် | ၁၅/- | ၁၂/- | sellotape/Scotch tape | Ko Zeyya |
| သန္တာဝင်း | မြေပုံ | ၃၀/- | ၂၅/- | map | Thanda Win |
| ချိုဇင်နွယ် | တိပ်ခွေ | ၇၅/- | ၇၅/- | tape | Cho Zin Nwe |



Toy shop by a pagoda in Mandalay

Exercise for written answer

Fill in the gaps in the following sentences.

1. S1: ဒါ ...လောက်လဲ။
2. S2: ၅၀/-...။
3. S1: နဲ့နဲ့ ...ပါတယ်။
4. S1: မလျော့...ဘူးလား။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- S1: ဒါ ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။
 S2: ၅၀/-ပါ။
 S1: နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။
 S1: မလျော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 5. S2: ဘယ်လောက် ...မလဲ။ | S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးမလဲ။ |
| 6. S1: ၁၀/- ...ပါ။ | S1: ၁၀/- လျှော့ပါ။ |
| 7. S1: ၄၀/- ...ပါ။ ရမလား။ | S1: ၄၀/- ထားပါ။ ရမလား။ |
| 8. S2: မရ...ဗျာ။ ၄၅/- ထားပါ။ | S2: မရဘူးဗျာ။ ၄၅/- ထားပါ။ |
| 9. S1: ...ဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ | S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ |
| 10. S1: ...အုံးမယ်နော်။ | S1: ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။ |
| 11. S2: ...ပါပြီ။ | S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 6 YOUR COMMAND OF BURMESE

New words

| | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ဗမာစကား / ဇဂါး/ | Burmese spoken language | Băma sǎgà |
| ဗမာလို | in Burmese | Băma-lo ["Burmese-way, manner"] |
| ပြော- | to speak, say, tell, talk | pyàw- |
| ပြောတတ်- | to know how to speak, can speak | pyàw-daq- |
| — ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ်။ | He can speak Burmese. | Băma-lo pyàw-daq-teh. |
| — ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်တယ်။ | He can speak Burmese. | Băma sǎgà pyàw-daq-teh. |
| ကြား- | to hear | cà- |

Ways of making an inquiry

| | | |
|--|---|------------------|
| [statement] ကြားရတယ်။ | I hear, it has come to my ear, | — cà-yá-deh |
| | that [statement] | |
| [statement] ဆို | I have heard/read [statement]: | — s'o |
| | is it true? [the literal meaning of ဆို is "say"] | |
| [statement]-နော်။ | [statement] is true, isn't it? | — naw? |
| [statement] ဟုတ်လား။ | [statement]: is that true? | — houq-là? |
| [statement] မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။ | [statement]: isn't that so? | — mǎhouq-p'ù-là? |
| [Often shortened in fast speech to မဟုတ်လား and even မှတ်လား or မလား: (mǎhouq-là, hmouq-là, mǎlà)] | | |

The variants above are set out only to help you recognize them when someone says them to you: you are not expected to be able to use them all yourself. The words for "a little" and "a lot," however, which follow, are very useful, and you will find some exercises in using them below.

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| နဲနဲ | a little, a bit | nèh-nèh |
| သိပ် | very, very much, a lot | theiq |
| Examples: | | |
| — ဈေး များတယ်။ | The price is high. | Zè myà-deh. |
| — ဈေး နဲနဲ များတယ်။ | The price is a little high. | Zè nèh-nèh myà-deh. |
| — ဈေး သိပ် များတယ်။ | The price is very high. | Zè theiq myà-deh. |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| —ဈေး သိပ် မများဘူး။ | The price is not very high. | Zè theiq mǎmyà-bù. |
| | [it is high, but not <i>very</i> high] | |
| —ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။ | He can speak Burmese. | Bǎma sāgà pyàw-da-q-teh. |
| —ဗမာစကား နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။ | He can speak Burmese a little. | Bǎma sāgà nèh-nèh pyàw-da-q-teh. |
| —ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်ပါဘူး။ | He can't speak Burmese. | Bǎma sāgà mǎpyàw-da-q-pa-bù. |
| —ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | He can't speak Burmese yet. | Bǎma sāgà mǎpyàw-da-q-thè-ba-bù. |
| —ဗမာစကား သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | He can't speak much Burmese yet. | Bǎma sāgà theiq mǎpyàw-da-q-thè-ba-bù. |
| For recognition only: | | |
| —ဗမာစကား နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။ | He can only speak a little Burmese so far. | Bǎma sāgà nèh-nèh-bèh pyàw-da-q-pa-dhè-teh. |
| | [but we expect his command of the language to improve] | |

Note that suffix -သေး- with a negated verb has a different meaning from suffix -သေး- with a positive verb:

မ-[verb]-သေးပါဘူး (mǎ—dhè-ba-bù) means “not yet [verb],” but
[verb]-ပါသေးတယ် (-ba-dhè-deh) means “[verb] so far, as yet”

Sample Dialogue

Exchanges between a Burmese and a foreigner who is learning the language.

Inquiries

— I hear you speak Burmese?

| | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်တယ် | You can speak Burmese, | Bǎma sāgà pyàw-da-q-teh |
| ကြားရတယ်။ | I hear. | cà-yá-dèh. |
| ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ် ဆို | I'm told you can speak Burmese? | Bǎma-lo pyàw-da-q-teh s'o? |

— So you speak Burmese?

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်တယ် | You can speak Burmese, | Bǎma sāgà pyàw-da-q-teh |
| နော်။ | can't you? | naw? |
| ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်သလား။ | Can you speak Burmese? | Bǎma sāgà pyàw-da-q-thǎlà? |
| ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ် | You can speak Burmese, | Bǎma-lo pyàw-da-q-teh |
| ဟုတ်လား။ | is that so? | houq-là? |
| ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ် | You can speak Burmese, | Bǎma-lo pyàw-da-q-teh |
| မဟုတ်(ဘူး)လား။ | can't you? | mǎhouq-p'ù-là? |

Replies

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| * နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။ | I can speak a bit. | Nèh-nèh pyàw-da-q-pa-deh. |
| နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။ | I can only speak a bit so far. | Nèh-nèh-bèh pyàw-da-q-pa-dhè-deh. |
| သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | I can't speak much yet. | Theiq mǎpyàw-da-q-thè-ba-bù. |

Compliments

| | | |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ | You speak Burmese | Bǎma sāgà pyàw-da |
| အရမ်း ပီတာပဲ။ | beautifully. | ǎyàn pi-da-bèh |

ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ
သိပ် ကောင်းတာပဲ။

You speak Burmese
extremely well.

Băma sǎgà pyàw-da
theiq kaùn-da-bèh.

Responses

1. အော်။ တကယ်ပဲလား။

Oh, really?

Aw. Tǎgeh-bèh-là?

2. ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။

Thank you.

Cè-zù tin-ba-deh.

3. သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။

It's not too good yet.

Theiq mǎhouq-thè-ba-bù.



Exercises on “very,” “not very,” “a bit”

Use the lists to answer the question.

Ex. 1: S1: ဆိုင် နံပါတ်(၁) ဈေး များသလား။

L/S2: များပါတယ်။

Ex. 2: S1: Mr. A လုပ်စရာ များသလား။

L/S2: နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။

Expensive shops

Shop n° 1: yes
Shop n° 2: very
Shop n° 3: a bit
Shop n° 4: no
Shop n° 5: not very
Shop n° 6: yes
Shop n° 7: very
Shop n° 8: a bit
Shop n° 9: no
Shop n° 10: not very

Busy teachers

Mr. A: a bit
Mr. B: yes
Mr. C: very
Mr. D: not very
Mr. E: no
Mr. F: not very
Mr. G: a bit
Mr. H: very
Mr. I: a bit
Mr. J: yes

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues 1-6. The Replies to the Inquiries are alternatives from which you can choose. For practising, however, we need to standardize on one reply, and we use the one starred in the Sample Dialogue above. Likewise, the Responses to the Compliments can be used in

almost any mix, but for predictability in the Practice we shall use Responses 2 and 3 together.

Exercise for written answer

Each of the following sentences has one inappropriate word or syllable added to it. Identify the alien word.

- ၁။ ဗမာစကား ပြောနိုင်တတ်တယ် ကြားရတယ်။
- ၂။ ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ်လား ဆို
- ၃။ ဗမာစကားလို ပြောတတ်တယ်နော်။
- ၄။ ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်သလားနော်။
- ၅။ ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ် ဟုတ်မလား။
- ၆။ ဗမာလို ပြောတာတတ်တယ် မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ဗမာစကား ပြောနိုင်တတ်တယ် ကြားရတယ်။
 ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ်လား ဆို
 ဗမာစကားလို ပြောတတ်တယ်နော်။
 ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်သလားနော်။
 ဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ် ဟုတ်မလား။
 ဗမာလို ပြောတာတတ်တယ် မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။

In the following sentences you need to replace a wrong syllable with the right one.

- ၇။ နဲနဲ ပြောတတ်ပါတာ။
- ၈။ နဲနဲပဲ ပြောတတ်ပါရတယ်။
- ၉။ သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါတယ်။
- ၁၀။ ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ အရမ်း ပီတတ်ပဲ။
- ၁၁။ ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ကောင်းနော်ပဲ။
- ၁၂။ အော်။ တကောင်းပဲလား။
- ၁၃။ ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါအုံး။
- ၁၄။ သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပဲဘူး။

- နဲနဲ ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။
 နဲနဲပဲ ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။
 သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။
 ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ အရမ်း ပီတာပဲ။
 ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ကောင်းတာပဲ။
 အော်။ တကယ်ပဲလား။
 ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။
 သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 7

TRAVELS: PAST TRIPS

New words

| | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------|
| ဘယ်တုန်းက /-ဒုန်းဂါ/ | When [in the past]? | beh-doũn-gá |
| ရောက်ခဲ့- | to have been [somewhere else] | yauq-k'éh- |
| [-ခဲ့- is suffixed to verbs when you are talking about the past, or when the action took place somewhere else; for example: when someone arrives home saying they've been to the market, you would ask, not ဘာ ဝယ်သလဲ, but ဘာ ဝယ်ခဲ့သလဲ။ "What did you buy (back there, in that place where you were)"] | | |
| —ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။ | When were you there? | Beh-doũn-gá yauq-k'éh-dhǎlèh? |
| လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ မေလက /-ဂဲဒဲ/ | last May | lun-géh-déh Me-lá-gá |
| —လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ | last, which is past | lun-géh-déh |
| | ["pass by-back there-attribute"] | |
| ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ မေလက /-ဂဲဒဲ/ | last May | pì-géh-déh Me-lá-gá |
| —ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ | last, which is past ["finish-back there-attribute"] | pì-géh-déh |
| —လ | month [always suffixed to month names] | lá |
| —က | [suffix marking a point of time in the past] | -gá/-ká |

| | | |
|--|-------------------------|--------------------|
| မနှစ်က | last year | mähniq-ká |
| —နှစ် | year | hniq |
| ထောင် ကိုးရာ ကိုးဆယ် | in 1991 | t'aún kò-yá kò-zéh |
| တစ်ခုနှစ်က | | tāk'ú hniq-ká |
| [-ခု "unit" is suffixed to the last digit in a year number. See more below.] | | |
| နောက်ဆုံး | last ["back-end, -est"] | nauq-s'òun |
| —နောက်ဆုံးအခေါက် | the last/latest trip | nauq-s'òun āk'auq |

Year numbers. Years with unround numbers are numbered in the way described above: the number followed by -ခု (-k'ú) "unit" and then the word နှစ် (hniq) "year." Purists will say that years with round numbers are numbered differently: in place of -ခု you say -ပြည့် (/ဗျေ/ byé or byí) "full":

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------|--------------------|-------|------|
| ထောင် ကိုးရာ ကိုးဆယ် တစ် ခု နှစ် | 1991 | t'aún kò-yá kò-zéh | tāk'ú | hniq |
| ထောင် ကိုးရာ ကိုးဆယ် ပြည့် နှစ် | 1990 | t'aún kò-yá kò-zeh | byé | hniq |
| ထောင် ကိုးရာ ပြည့် နှစ် | 1900 | t'aún kò-ya | byé | hniq |

In practice, however, many people use -ခုနှစ် after round numbers as well:

| | | | | |
|------------------------------|------|--------------------|----|------|
| ထောင် ကိုးရာ ကိုးဆယ် ခု နှစ် | 1990 | t'aún kò-yá kò-zeh | gú | hniq |
|------------------------------|------|--------------------|----|------|

As this version is more regular, and easier to learn, we adopt it here for practising.

Remember that in four-figure numbers beginning with 1, people sometimes use the တစ် (tā) before ထောင် (t'aun) but more often leave it out:

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------|------|
| တစ်ထောင် ကိုးရာ လေးဆယ် ရှစ်ခု နှစ် | 1948 | tāt'aún kò-yá lè-zéh shiq-k'ú | hniq |
| or: ထောင် ကိုးရာ လေးဆယ် ရှစ်ခု နှစ် | 1948 | t'aún kò-yá lè-zéh shiq-k'ú | hniq |

Month names. There is a traditional Burmese calendar with Burmese names for its 12 months, which don't correspond exactly with the Western months; and there is a Burmese Era, which counts the years from mid-April 638 A.D. (so Burmese Era 1352 corresponds to the twelve months from A.D. April 1990 to April 1991). This calendar is used mainly by people engaged in traditional occupations — farmers, weavers, musicians and their like, and by monks. Government offices, factories and schools use the Western calendar, with the pronunciation of the English names of the months adapted to fit comfortably within the sound system of Burmese. Burmans who know English will say the month-names with a pronunciation closer to British English than the more "Burmanized" pronunciations shown below.

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|------------------|-----------|
| ဂျန်နဝါရီ / ဂျန်နဝါရီ/ * | January | ဇူလိုင် * | July |
| ဖေဖော်ဝါရီ / ဖေဖော်ဝါရီ/ | February | ဩဂုတ် / အောဂုတ်/ | August |
| မတ် | March | စက်တင်ဘာ | September |
| ဧပြီ / အေပီ/ | April | အောက်တိုဘာ | October |
| မေ | May | နိုဝင်ဘာ | November |
| ဇွန် * | June | ဒီဇင်ဘာ | December |

* Month names beginning with J in English were first taken into the language with initial ခ (z-). Nowadays most people know enough English, or enough about English, to write and pronounce the J as ဂျ (j-). But others, either through less familiarity with English, or through deliberate adherence to traditional forms, still use the ခ spelling:

နေ့စဉ် / နေ့စဉ် /
စုစုပေါင်း

January
June
July

ပဏ္ဍိတ

၁၃၅၄ - ၅၅

1993



မန္တလေးတိုင်းသမဂ္ဂဗဟိုအသင်းစု
Mandalay Division Co. Operative Syndicate

တစ်ခု: ကဆုန်

APRIL

| တနင်္ဂနွေ Sun | တနင်္လာ Mon | အင်္ဂါ Tue | ဗုဒ္ဓဟူး Wed | ကြာသပတေး Thur | သောကြာ Fri | စနေ Sat |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| | | | | ၁၀ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၁၁ | ၁၂ |
| | | | | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| ၁၃ | ၁၄ | ၁၅ | ၁၆ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၂ | ၃ | ၄ |
| 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| ၅ | ၆ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၇ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၈ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၉ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၁၀ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၁၁ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ |
| 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| ၁၂ | ၁၃ | ၁၄ | ၁၅ ဆုလှူသောနေ့ | ၂ | ၃ | ၄ |
| 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| ၅ | ၆ | ၇ | ၈ | ၉ | ၁၀ | |
| 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | |

ဒီဇိုင်း၊ နှင်းပုံနှိပ်ခြင်း၊ လုံခြုံရေး၊ နှင်းဆိုင်သော ပုံနှိပ်လုပ်ငန်းများ၊ စက်ခွံ။

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

S1: ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ Have you ever been to Burma? Băma-pye yauq-p'ù-dhālà?

S2: ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ Yes, I have. Yauq-p'ù-ba-deh.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။ | How many times have you been? | Beh-hnāk'auq yauq-p'ù-dhālèh? |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|

FORK

branch 1 (has been once)

S2: တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ I've been once.

S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။ When were you there?

S2: ၁. လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ ဂျန်နဝါရီလက
 ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။ I was there
 last January.

or: 2. **မနှစ်က** **ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။** I was there last year.

or: 3.၁၉၉၁-ခုနှစ်က
ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။ I was there
in 1991.

branch 2 (has been twice)

S2: နှစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ I've been twice.

S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။ When were you there?

Tăk'auq yauq-p'ù-ba-deh.
Beh-dòun-gá yauq-k'éh-dhălèh?
Lun-géh-déh Jan-năwa-ri-lá-gá
yauq-k'éh-ba-deh.
Măhniq-ká yauq-k'éh-ba-deh.
1991-gú-hniq-ká
yauq-k'éh-ba-deh.

Hnăk'auq yauq-p'ù-ba-deh.
Beh-doùn-gá yauq-k'éh-dhălèh?

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S2: ၁၉၈၇-ခုနှစ်က တစ်ခေါက်၊ ၁၉၉၁-ခုနှစ်က တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။ | I was there once in 1987, and once in 1991. | 1987-gú-hniq-ká tāk'auq, 1991-gú-hniq-ká tāk'auq, yauq-k'éh-ba-deh. |
| branch 3 (has been many times) | | |
| S2: ခဏခဏ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ နောက်ဆုံးအခေါက်က ၁၉၉၁-ခုနှစ်ကပါ။ | I've been many times. The last time was in 1991. | K'áná-k'áná yauq-p'ù-ba-deh. Nauq-s'òun āk'auq-ká 1991-gú-hniq-ká-ba. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions and make a note of the answers.

List 1

| နာမည် | country | n° of times | when | name |
|--------------------|---------|-------------|------|-------------------|
| ဒေါ်မြမြစမ်း | ... | ... | ... | Daw Mya Mya San |
| ဦးငွေရ | ... | ... | ... | U Ngwe Ya |
| ကိုစိန်ဌေး | ... | ... | ... | Ko Sein Htay |
| မခင်သန်းသန်း | ... | ... | ... | Ma Khin Than Than |
| ဆရာဘစောမြင့် | ... | ... | ... | Saya Ba Saw Myint |
| ဒေါ်စိန်စိန် | ... | ... | ... | Daw Sein Sein |
| မစံလေး | ... | ... | ... | Ma San Lay |
| ကိုဝင်းမောင် | ... | ... | ... | Ko Win Maung |
| ဒေါက်တာဦးကျော်စိန် | ... | ... | ... | Dr. U Kyaw Sein |
| မပြုံး | ... | ... | ... | Ma Pyone |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions.

List 2

| name | country | n° of times | when |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| Ms Tailor | Burma | 1 | last May |
| Mr. Draper | Burma | 1 | last June |
| Mrs. Weaver | Burma | 1 | last year |
| Mr. Dyer | Thailand | 1 | 1985 |
| Ms. Tanner | Indonesia | 1 | 1990 |
| Mr. Fuller | Singapore | 2 | 1988, 1992 |
| Mr. Skinner | Philippines | 2 | 1987, 1991 |
| Mr. Glover | Burma | many | last time: 1989 |
| Mrs. Hatter | Burma | many | last time: 1990 |
| Mr. Cutter | - | - | - |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following into Burmese.

1. Have you ever been abroad?
2. Yes, I have.
3. How many times have you been?
4. I've been once.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

နိုင်ငံခြား ရောက်ဖူးသလား။
ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။
ဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။
တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။

5. Which country have you been to?
6. The Philippines.
7. When were you there?
8. I was there in 1989.
9. I was there last year.
10. I was there last November.

ဘယ်နိုင်ငံ ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။
 ဖိလစ်ပိုင်ပါ။
 ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။
 ၁၉၈၉-ခုနှစ်က ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။
 မနှစ်က ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။
 လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ နိုဝင်ဘာလက ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။
 or: ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ နိုဝင်ဘာလက ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUE

| <i>name</i> | <i>country</i> | <i>n° of times</i> | <i>when</i> |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| ဒေါ်မြမြစမ်း | England | 1 | last May |
| ဦးငွေရ | Korea | 1 | last December |
| ကိုစိန်ဌေး | China | 1 | last year |
| မခင်သန်းသန်း | Japan | 1 | 1984 |
| ဆရာဘစောမြင့် | Thailand | 1 | 1989 |
| ဒေါ်စိန်စိန် | America | 2 | 1986, 1990 |
| မစ်လေး | Hong Kong | 3 | 1987, 1991, last January |
| ကိုဝင်းမောင် | Australia | many | last time: 1988 |
| ဒေါက်တာဦးကျော်စိန် | Singapore | many | last time: last year |
| မပြုံး | - | - | - |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 8

TRAVELS IN PROSPECT

New words

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------------|
| ဘယ်တော့ | when [asking about the future] | beh-dáw |
| -လောက် | approximately, roughly | -lauq |
| —ပေါင် တစ်ရာလောက် | about a hundred pounds | paun tăya-lauq |
| —ငါးပုလင်းလောက် | about five bottles | ngà-pǎlìn-lauq |
| —၁၉၈၅-ခုနှစ်လောက်က | in about 1985 | 1985-gú-hniq-lauq-ká |
| —လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ မေလလောက်က | in about last May | lun-géh-déh Me-lá-lauq-ká |
| —ဘယ်တုန်းကလောက် | roughly when [in the past] | beh-doùn-gá-lauq |
| —ဘယ်တော့လောက် | roughly when [in the future] | beh-dáw-lauq |
| သေချာ- | to be fixed, certain, definite | the-ja- |
| —မသေချာပါဘူး။ | It's not fixed, not definite. | Măthe-ja-ba-bù. |
| —မသေချာသေးပါဘူး။ | It's not fixed, not definite, yet. | Măthe-ja-dhè-ba-bù. |
| အနှစ် (but သုံးနှစ်) | year (three years) | ăhniq (thoùn-hniq) |
| လ | month | lá |
| အပတ် (but သုံးပတ်) | week (three weeks) | ăpaq (thoùn-baq) |
| ဗီဇာ | visa | bi-za |
| ရ- | get, obtain, acquire [and other meanings] | yá- |

Some points in future time

[point in time]-မှာ (-hma)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| —ရှေ့လမှာ | next month ["ahead-month-in"] | shé-lá-hma |
| —စက်တင်ဘာလမှာ | in September | Seq-tin-ba-lá-hma |
| —or: လာမဲ့ စက်တင်ဘာလမှာ | next September | la-méh Seq-tin-ba-lá-hma |

["come-attribute - September-month-in" = "in the month of September which is to come"]

| | | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| —ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ | next year ["ahead-year-in"] | shé-hniq-hma |
| —၉၉-ခုနှစ်မှာ | in '99 | 99-gú-hniq-hma |

[verb]-ရင် (-yin) = "when, if [verb]"

| | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| —ဗီဇာ ရရင် | when/if I get a visa | bi-za yá-yin |
| —ပိုက်ဆံ ရရင် | when/if I get the money | paic-s'an yá-yin |

[period of time] ကြာရင် (ca-yin) = "when [period of time] has passed/elapsed"

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| —သုံးလ ကြာရင် | in three months' time | thouñ-lá ca-yin |
| —နှစ်ပတ် ကြာရင် | in two weeks' time | hnäpaq ca-yin |
| —တစ်နှစ် ကြာရင် | in one year's time | tähniq ca-yin |

[point in time] ကျရင် (cá-yin) = "when we come to [point in time], when we get to [point in time]"

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| —ရှေ့လ ကျရင် | next month | shé-lá cá-yin |
| | ["ahead-month—get to-when"] | |
| —စက်တင်ဘာလ ကျရင် | in September | Seq-tin-ba-lá cá-yin |
| —or: လာမဲ့ စက်တင်ဘာလ ကျရင် | next September | la-méh Seq-tin-ba-lá cá-yin |
| —ရှေ့နှစ် ကျရင် | next year | shé-hniq cá-yin |
| —၉၉-ခုနှစ် ကျရင် | in '99 | 99-gú-hniq cá-yin |

"[point in time] ကျရင်" is used as a close equivalent of "[point in time]-မှာ"

Note the single but crucial difference in pronunciation between —

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------|------------------------|
| ကြာရင် | /ကျာယင်/ ca-yin | when [time] has passed |
| and ကျရင် | /ကျာယင်/ cá-yin | when we get to [time] |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|--|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S1: ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ | Are you planning | Băma-pye thwà-bó |
| အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလား။ | to go to Burma? | ăsi-ăsin shí-dhālà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes. I am. | Houq-kéh. Shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်တော့ ¹ သွားမလဲ။ ² | When are you going to go? | Beh-dáw thwà-mälèh? |
| S2: နိုဝင်ဘာလမှာ သွားမယ်။ ³ | I'm going to go in November. | No-win-ba-lá-hma thwà-meh. |
| or: မသေချာသေးပါဘူး။ | It's not fixed, not definite, yet. | Mäthe-ja-dhè-ba-bù. |

1. Variants

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလဲ။ | When are you going to go? | Beh-dáw thwà-mälèh? |
| or: ဘယ်တော့လောက် သွားမလဲ။ | About when are you going to go? | Beh-dáw-lauq thwà-mälèh? |

2. Variants

| | | |
|------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလဲ။ | When are you going to go? | Beh-dáw thwà-mälèh? |
| or: ဘယ်တော့ သွားမှာလဲ။ | ([verb]-မှာ is a variant form of [verb]-မယ်)* | Beh-dáw thwà-hma-lèh? |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလို့လဲ။ | When are you thinking of going? [Level 1] | Beh-dáw thwà-mǎló-lèh? |
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလဲ။ | When are you intending to go? [Level 1] | Beh-dáw thwà-bó ăsi-ăsin shí-dhălèh? |

You may find ဘယ်တော့လောက် in place of ဘယ်တော့ in all these variants.

3. People normally word their answer to match the wording of the question:

| Question | Answer |
|----------------------------------|--|
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလဲ။ | နီဝင်ဘာလမှာ သွားမယ်။ |
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားမှာလဲ။* | နီဝင်ဘာလမှာ သွားမယ်။ [sometimes သွားမှာပါ။]* |
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလို့လဲ။ | နီဝင်ဘာလမှာ သွားမလို့။ |
| ဘယ်တော့ သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလဲ။ | နီဝင်ဘာလမှာ သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။ |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Beh-dáw thwà-mǎlèh? | No-win-ba-lá-hma thwà-meh. |
| Beh-dáw thwà-hma-lèh? | No-win-ba-lá-hma thwà-meh (thwà-hma-ba). |
| Beh-dáw thwà-mǎló-lèh? | No-win-ba-lá-hma thwà-mǎló. |
| Beh-dáw thwà-bó ăsi-ăsin shí-dhălèh? | No-win-ba-lá-hma thwà-bó ăsi-ăsin shí-ba-deh. |

* You have now met all three forms of the verb suffix -မယ်။ They are

[verb]-မယ် the standard unmarked form (-meh)

[verb]-မ- frequent in the sequences [verb]-မလား and [verb]-မလဲ။ (-mǎlà, mǎlèh)

[verb]-မှာ frequent in the sequences [verb]-မှာလား၊ [verb]-မှာလဲ and [verb]-မှာပါ။
(-hma-là, -hma-lèh, -hma-ba)

For a note on the distinctive features of [verb]-မှာ see Level 4, Topic 8.

For the Practice Dialogues

The Practice Dialogues follow the familiar format. In Set 1 you quiz the people named in the list and jot down what they tell you in the blanks. To make sure your question matches the echo on the tape, we'll standardize on the following versions of the questions:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. နိုင်ငံခြား ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ | Nain-ngan-jà yauq-p'ù-dhălà? |
| 2. ဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။ | Beh-hnăk'auq yauq-p'ù-dhălèh? |
| 3. (နောက်ထပ်) သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလား။ | (Nauq-t'aq) thwà-bó ăsi-ăsin shí-dhălà? |
| 4. ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလို့လဲ။ | Beh-dáw thwà-mǎló-lèh? |

(နောက်ထပ်) is bracketed because you'll need it if the person has already been abroad, but not if she/he hasn't.

In Practice Dialogues Set 2, you use the data provided to answer S1's questions. Where variants are possible, make the wording of your answer match the wording of the question.



Blanks for the Practice Dialogues Set 1

| နာမည် | been abroad | plans to go | when | name |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|------|-------------------|
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | ... | ... | ... | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြမြသိန်း | ... | ... | ... | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | ... | ... | ... | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | ... | ... | ... | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | ... | ... | ... | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | ... | ... | ... | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | ... | ... | ... | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | ... | ... | ... | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | ... | ... | ... | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | ... | ... | ... | Ma Khin Win Kyi |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | ... | ... | ... | Ko Tin Lwin |

Data for Practice Dialogues Set 2

| name | been to Burma | plans to go | when |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|----------------------|
| Sarah | many times | yes | next month |
| Chris | 2 times | yes | in October |
| Elizabeth | 0 times | yes | next year |
| Dindy | 0 times | yes | in 1999 |
| Raymond | 3 times | yes | if he gets a visa |
| Arnd | 1 times | no | - |
| Lars | 0 times | yes | if he gets the money |
| Max | 2 times | yes | in four months' time |
| Zunetta | many times | yes | in three weeks' time |
| Roger | 1 times | yes | in a year's time |
| Miranda | 4 times | yes | not definite yet |

Exercise for written answer

Fill in the gaps in the following sentences.

- ၁။ ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ ...အစဉ် ရှိသလား။
- ၂။ ဗမာပြည် သွား...လို့လား။
- ၃။ ဘယ်တော့ သွားမ...လဲ။
- ၄။ ရှေ့နှစ်... သွားမယ်။
- ၅။ လာ... မေလမှာ သွားမယ်။
- ၆။ ပိုက်ဆံ ...ရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၇။ ဗီဇာ ရ... သွားမယ်။
- ၈။ ခြောက်လ ကြာ... သွားမယ်။
- ၉။ တစ်နှစ် ...ရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၁၀။ ဒီဇင်ဘာလ ကျ... သွားမယ်။
- ၁၁။ ရှေ့လ ...ရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၁၂။ မတ်လမှာ သွားဖို့ ... ရှိပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလား။
- ၂။ ဗမာပြည် သွားမလို့လား။
- ၃။ ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလို့လဲ။
- ၄။ ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ သွားမယ်။
- ၅။ လာမဲ့ မေလမှာ သွားမယ်။
- ၆။ ပိုက်ဆံ ရရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၇။ ဗီဇာ ရရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၈။ ခြောက်လ ကြာရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၉။ တစ်နှစ် ကြာရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၁၀။ ဒီဇင်ဘာလ ကျရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၁၁။ ရှေ့လ ကျရင် သွားမယ်။
- ၁၂။ မတ်လမှာ သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES SET 1

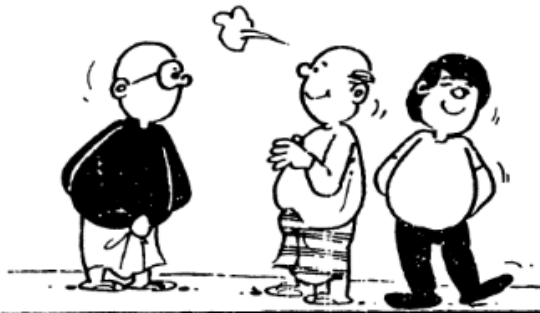
| နာမည် | been abroad | plans to go | when | name |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | 4 times | yes | next month | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြသိန်း | 0 times | yes | in June | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | 3 times | yes | next year | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | 1 times | yes | in 1995 | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | many times | yes | if I get the money | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | 0 times | yes | if I get a passport | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | 1 times | yes | in two years' time | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | many times | yes | in one month's time | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | 0 times | yes | in three weeks' time | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | 1 times | no | - | Ma Khin Win Kyi |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | 2 times | yes | not fixed yet | Ko Tin Lwin |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 9

TRAVELS: CURRENT TRIP

New words

| | | |
|-------------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| -ရက် | day [for dates and measuring time] | -yeq |
| —၁၆—ရက်နေ့ | the 15th (see Dates below) | 16-yeq-né |
| မနေ့က /-ဂါ/ | yesterday | māné-gá |
| ရောက်- | arrive at, reach, get to | yauq- |
| ပြန်- | to return, go/come home | pyan- |



Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere in Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်သလဲ။ | When did you arrive? | Beh-doùn-gá yauq-thǎlèh? |
| S2: ဒီဇင်ဘာလက ရောက်ပါတယ်။ | When did you get here? | Di-zin-ba-lá-gá yauq-pa-dèh. |
| S1: အင်္ဂလန် ဘယ်တော့ ပြန်မလဲ။ | I came in December. | In-gǎlan beh-dáw pyan-mǎlèh? |
| S2: မေလမှာ ပြန်မယ်။ | When are you going to go back to England? | Me-lá-hma pyan-meh. |
| | I'm going to go back in May. | |

Points in time

The following list includes material from earlier Lessons for completeness.

Points in time in the past

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| မေလက | in May | Me-lá-gá |
| or: လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ မေလက | last May | lun-géh-déh Me-lá-gá |
| ၁၉၉၁-ခုနှစ်က | in 1991 | 1991-k'ú-hniq-ká |
| မနှစ်က | last year | măhniq-ká |
| ၁၄-ရက်နေ့က | on the 14th | 14-yeq-né-gá |
| or: လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ ၁၄-ရက်နေ့က | (ditto) | lun-géh-déh 14-yeq-né-gá |
| မနေ့က | yesterday | măné-gá |

Points in time in the future

[point in time]-မှာ (-hma) = "at [point in time]"

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| —မေလမှာ | in May | Me-lá-hma |
| —or: လာမဲ့ မေလမှာ | in May "that is to come" | la-méh Me-lá-hma |
| —ရှေ့လမှာ | next month | shé-lá-hma |
| —၉၉-ခုနှစ်မှာ | in '99 | 99-gú-hniq-hma |
| —ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ | next year | shé-hniq-hma |
| —၂၈-ရက်နေ့မှာ | on the 28th | 28-yeq-né-hma |
| —or: လာမဲ့ ၂၈-ရက်နေ့မှာ | on the 28th "that is to come" | la-méh 28-yeq-né-hma |

[point in time] ကျရင် = "when we get to [point in time]" (cá-yin)

as above, but with -မှာ replaced by ကျရင် throughout:

မေလ ကျရင်၊ ရှေ့လကျရင်၊ ၉၉-ခုနှစ် ကျရင်၊ ၂၈-ရက်နေ့ ကျရင် and so on

Me-lá cá-yin, shé-lá cá-yin, 99-gú-hniq cá-yin, 28-yeq-né cá-yin, and so on

point in time specified by [verb]-ရင် = "when/if [verb]" (-yin)

| | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| —ကိစ္စ ပြီးရင် / ကိတ်စာ ပီးယင်/ | when my business is finished | keiq-sá pì-yin |
| —ခွင့် ရရင် | when/if I get permission | k'wín yá-yin |

[period of time] ကြာရင် = "when [period of time] has passed/elapsed" (ca-yin)

| | | |
|-----------------|--|------------------|
| —သုံးရက် ကြာရင် | in three days' time ["three-days—pass-when"] | thoùn-yeq ca-yin |
| —သုံးပတ် ကြာရင် | in three weeks' time ["three-weeks—pass-when"] | thoùn-baq ca-yin |
| —သုံးလ ကြာရင် | in three months' time ["three-months—pass-when"] | thoùn-lá ca-yin |

Dates. For a note on the traditional Burmese calendar see Topic 7 on this Level. Dates in the Western calendar are expressed by the formula: [number]-ရက်နေ့ (-yeq-né); for example:

| | | |
|----------------------|----------|-------------------|
| ၁-ရက်နေ့. / တယက်နေ့/ | the 1st | tăyeq-né |
| ၁၅-ရက်နေ့. | the 15th | s'éh-ngà-yeq-né |
| ၂၂-ရက်နေ့. | the 22nd | hnăs'éh hnăyeq-né |

Strangely, round number dates follow the same pattern; for example:

| | | |
|------------|----------|------------------|
| ၁၀-ရက်နေ့. | the 10th | s'eh-yeq-né |
| ၂၀-ရက်နေ့. | the 20th | hnăs'eh-yeq-né |
| ၃၀-ရက်နေ့. | the 30th | thoùn-zeh-yeq-né |

Dates that include year, month and date start with the largest unit and proceed to the smallest; for example:

| | | |
|--|------------------|--|
| ၁၉၇၉-ခုနှစ်၊ ဖေဖော်ဝါရီလ၊ ၂၂-ရက်နေ့ | 22 February 1979 | 1979-gú-hniq P'e-baw-wa-ri-lá 22-yeq-né |
| ၁၉၈၂-ခုနှစ်၊ ဇန်နဝါရီလ၊ ၄-ရက်နေ့ | 4 January 1982 | 1982-k'ú-hniq Jan-nāwa-ri-lá 4-yeq-né |

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions and make a note of the answers in the blanks.

Setting: imagine the exchange takes place at a function held by some Burma-interest group in a country outside Burma. As you collect a cup of coffee from the counter, you find yourself alongside a Burmese-looking person you haven't met before, and decide to open a conversation.

Format for Practice Dialogues Set 1: note the repetitions after S2's answer.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| L/S1: ဗမာပြည်ကလား။ | S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ or a variant |
| L/S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်သလဲ။ | S2/L: မတ်လက ရောက်ပါတယ်။ |
| L/S1: ဗမာပြည် ဘယ်တော့ ပြန်မလို့လဲ။ | S2/L: သြဂုတ်လမှာ ပြန်မယ်။ |

L writes the answers in the blanks

| N ° | arrived here | due to return home |
|-----|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... |
| 6 | ... | ... |
| 7 | ... | ... |
| 8 | ... | ... |
| 9 | ... | ... |
| 10 | ... | ... |

KEY

| arrived here | due to return home |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| in March | in August |
| last January | next month |
| in 1988 | next year |
| last year | in 1995 |
| on the 8th | on Sept. 13th |
| yesterday | on the 29th |
| last July | when his job is over |
| in 1993 | when he gets permission |
| on Oct. 4th | in three weeks' time |
| on April 30th | in two month's time |

Sometimes, when we met Burmans in the forest, we asked for information. ... I do not speak Burmese, but I can set out what was said, for I heard it a hundred times during the campaign. ... *Oo galay ba wa galay? Kalay galay ma shee bu. Ma thee bu. Ya malay? Ooo. Nga galay, pa kalay thet galay. Ywathitkon ooo malay? Ma thee bu. Ma shee bu.* It was impossible not to be impressed when John turned to the brigadier after each of these exactly similar colloquies and told him, in his usual loud definite voice, that the man had said "The nearest village is that way. There are ten Japanese in Ywathitgale and a hundred in Ngapigon. There is no water in the Yindaik chaung," — or something totally different.

From: *The Road past Mandalay*, by John Masters. Reprinted 1963, Sevenoaks, The Companion Book Club, p.193-4

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions.

| <i>name</i> | <i>country</i> | <i>arrived in Burma</i> | <i>due to return home</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Mr. Bull | England | in May | in July |
| Ms. Doe | America | last May | next month |
| Mr. Keating | Australia | in 1990 | in 1994 |
| Mrs. Mount | Canada | last year | next year |
| Mr. Wellington | New Zealand | yesterday | on June 6th |
| Mrs. Finch | England | on the 10th | on the 21st |
| Mr. Hawk | America | on Dec. 5th | when his job is over |
| Ms. Coot | Australia | on Oct. 28th | when she gets permission |
| Mr. Nightingale | Canada | last November | in two weeks' time |
| Mrs. Sparrow | New Zealand | in 1992 | in a month's time |

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following sentences have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

- ၁။ -သလဲ-က-ဘယ်-ရောက်-တုန်း
- ၂။ -ပါတယ်-တဲ့-ကျူလိုင်-လွန်ခဲ့-ရောက်-လက
- ၃။ -ခု-က-ပါတယ်-နှစ်-ရောက်-၁၉၉၃
- ၄။ -ဗုဒ္ဓဟူး-က-ပါတယ်-ရောက်-နေ့
- ၅။ -ရောက်-၂၀-ရက်-လ-စက်တင်ဘာ-နေ့-ပါတယ်-က
- ၆။ -က-ရောက်ပါ-မနှစ်-တယ်
- ၇။ -မလဲ-တော့-ဘယ်-ပြန်
- ၈။ -ကျ-မယ်-လာမဲ့-လ-ရင်-ဧပြီ-ပြန်
- ၉။ -လ-မယ်-ပြန်-မှာ-ရှေ့
- ၁၀။ -မယ်-ရင်-ကိစ္စ-ပြန်-ပြီး
- ၁၁။ -လ-နှစ်-မယ်-ရင်-ပြန်-ကြာ
- ၁၂။ -နေ့-ဩဂုတ်-မယ်-၂၈-ရက်-ပြန်-လ

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ -ဘယ်-တုန်း-က -ရောက်-သလဲ။
- ၂။ -လွန်ခဲ့-တဲ့ -ကျူလိုင်-လက -ရောက်-ပါတယ်။
- ၃။ -၁၉၉၃-ခု-နှစ်-က -ရောက်-ပါတယ်။
- ၄။ -ဗုဒ္ဓဟူး-နေ့-က -ရောက်-ပါတယ်။
- ၅။ -စက်တင်ဘာ-လ -၂၀-ရက်-နေ့-က -ရောက်-ပါတယ်။
- ၆။ -မနှစ်-က -ရောက်ပါ-တယ်။
- ၇။ -ဘယ်-တော့ -ပြန်-မလဲ။
- ၈။ -လာမဲ့ -ဧပြီ-လ -ကျ-ရင် -ပြန်-မယ်။
- ၉။ -ရှေ့-လ-မှာ -ပြန်-မယ်။
- ၁၀။ -ကိစ္စ -ပြီး-ရင် -ပြန်-မယ်။
- ၁၁။ -နှစ်-လ -ကြာ-ရင် -ပြန်-မယ်။
- ၁၂။ -ဩဂုတ်-လ -၂၈-ရက်-နေ့ -ပြန်-မယ်။

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 10A

YOU AND YOURS

New words

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| အလုပ် | work, job, occupation | ălouq |
| လုပ်- | to do, make | louq- |
| —အလုပ် လုပ်- | to do a job, to work | ălouq louq- |
| —အိမ်မှုကိစ္စ လုပ်ပါတယ်။ | I do the housework. | Ein-hmu/-keiq-sá louq-pa-deh. |
| | ["house-affair-business"] | |
| —သုံးရုံးမှာ အလုပ် လုပ်ပါတယ်။ | I work at an embassy. | Than-yòun-hma älouq louq-pa-deh. |
| အလုပ် မလုပ်ပါဘူး။ | He doesn't work. | Älouq mälouq-pa-bù. |
| —မ-[verb]-တော့ပါဘူး။ | doesn't [verb] any more, any longer | Mă—dáv-ba-bù. |
| —အလုပ် မလုပ်တော့ပါဘူး။ | He doesn't work any longer. | Älouq mälouq-táv-ba-bù. |
| —မ-[verb]-သေးပါဘူး။ | doesn't [verb] yet | Mă—dhè-ba-bù. |
| —အလုပ် မလုပ်သေးပါဘူး။ | He doesn't have a job yet. | Älouq mälouq-thè-ba-bù. |
| ပင်စင် ယူ- | to take a pension, retire | pin-sin yu- |
| —ပင်စင် ယူလိုက်ပြီ။ | He is retired. | Pin-sin yu-laiq-pi. |
| | [For [verb]-[ပြ] see Level 2, Topic 2] | |
| အရင်တုန်းက | formerly, previously, in the past | äyin-dòun-gá |
| | [Compare ဘယ်တုန်းက "when (in the past)?"] | |
| —အရင်တုန်းက ဘာ အလုပ် လုပ်သလဲ။ | What did you do previously? | Äyin-dòun-gá ba älouq louq-thälèh? |
| ကျောင်း တက်- | to attend school/university | caùn teq- ["school—attend"] |
| အတန်း: | Standard, Grade, Class, Year | ātàn |
| —လေးတန်း: | 4th Standard | lè-dàn |
| —ဆယ်တန်း: | 10th Standard | s'eh-dàn |
| —ဘယ်နှစ်တန်း: | which Standard | beh-hnātàn |
| | ["how many-Standard"] | |
| —ဘယ်နှစ်တန်း ရောက်ပြီလဲ။ | What Standard have you got to? | Beh-hnātàn yauq-pi-lèh? |
| —ဆယ်တန်း ရောက်ပြီ။ | I'm in 10th Standard now. | S'eh-dàn yauq-pi. |
| Some occupations | | |
| ကုန်သည် /-သွယ်/ | trader, businessman | koun-dheh [as in "Merchant St"] |
| ကျောင်းဆရာ (ဆရာမ) | school teacher (female teacher) | caùn-s'äya (s'äya-má) |
| ကျောင်းသား (ကျောင်းသူ) | student (female student) | caùn-dhà (caùn-dhu) |
| | ["school-member"] | |
| ဆရာဝန် | doctor | s'äya-wun |
| စစ်ဗိုလ် /-ဗို/ | army officer | siq-bo |
| — <i>New workplaces</i> | | |
| ဘဏ်တိုက် /ဗန်ဒိုက်/ | bank | ban-daiq |
| ရေနံကုမ္ပဏီ /-ကုန်ပနီ/ | oil company | ye-nan-koun-pāni |

For a longer list of occupations, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 20.

[Verb]-ပြီ Some examples of the meaning of this suffix were set out in Level 2, Topic 2 above. You have now met enough verbs to provide some more examples. The earlier examples are repeated here for comparison. Each question is followed by a *Yes* answer, and a *No* answer.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ပြီးပြီလား။ | Is it finished yet? Is it over? | Pì-bi-là? |
| — ပြီးပြီ။ မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ | Yes, it is. No, not yet. | Pì-bi. Mǎpì-dhè-ba-bù. |
| ရပြီလား။ | Is it all right yet? Is it OK now? | Yá-bi-là? |
| — ရပြီ။ မရသေးပါဘူး။ | Yes, it's OK now. No, not yet. | Yá-bi. Mǎyá-dhè-ba-bù. |
| သွားပြီလား။ | Have they gone yet? | Thwà-bi-là? |
| | Have they left? | |
| — သွားပြီ။ မသွားသေးပါဘူး။ | Yes, they've left. No, not yet. | Thwà-bi. Mǎthwà-dhè-ba-bù. |
| ရောက်ပြီလား။ | Have they arrived yet? | Yauq-pi-là? |
| | Are they there now? | |
| — ရောက်ပြီ။ | Yes, they are there now. | Yauq-pi. |
| မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ | No, not yet. | Mǎyauq-thè-ba-bù. |
| ကုန်သွားပြီလား။ | Is it sold out yet? | Koun-dhwà-bi-là? |
| — ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | Yes, it is. | Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| မကုန်သေးပါဘူး။ | No, not yet. | Mǎkoun-dhè-ba-bù. |
| ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။ | Can he speak Burmese now? | Bǎma sǎgà pyàw-da-q-pi-là? |
| — ပြောတတ်ပြီ။ | Yes, he can. | Pyàw-da-q-pi. |
| မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | No, not yet. | Mǎpyàw-da-q-thè-ba-bù. |
| ပင်စင် ယူလိုက်ပြီလား။ | Is he retired now? | Pin-sin yu-laiq-pi-là? |
| — ယူလိုက်ပြီ။ မယူသေးပါဘူး။ | Yes, he is. No, not yet. | Yu-laiq-pi. Mǎyu-dhè-ba-bù. |
| ရှစ်တန်း ရောက်ပြီလား။ | Is he in 8th Standard yet/now? | Shiq-tàn yauq-pi-là? |
| — ရောက်ပြီ။ မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ | Yes, he is. No, not yet. | Yauq-pi. Mǎyauq-thè-ba-bù. |

[Verb]-နေ As for [verb]-ပြီ The examples of Level 1, Topic 12 are reproduced below (some slightly modified) together with some new ones.

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ဒီမှာ ထိုင်ပါတယ်။ | They sat here. | Di-hma t'ain-ba-deh. |
| — ဒီမှာ ထိုင်နေပါတယ်။ | They were sitting here. | Di-hma t'ain-ne-ba-deh. |
| မိန်း ကြည့်ပါတယ်။ | They look at the menu. | Mi-nù cí-ba-deh. |
| — မိန်း ကြည့်နေပါတယ်။ | They are looking at the menu. | Mi-nù cí-ne-ba-deh. |
| ဗမာလို ပြောပါတယ်။ | He spoke in Burmese. | Bǎma-lo pyàw-ba-deh. |
| — ဗမာလို ပြောနေပါတယ်။ | He was speaking in Burmese. | Bǎma-lo pyàw-ne-ba-deh. |
| ခါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်ပါတယ်။ | He takes photographs. | Daq-poun yaiq-pa-deh. |
| — ခါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်နေပါတယ်။ | He is taking some photographs. | Daq-poun yaiq-ne-ba-deh. |
| ဟံဘာဂါ စားပါတယ်။ | He eats hamburgers. | Han-ba-ga sà-ba-deh. |
| — ဟံဘာဂါ စားနေပါတယ်။ | He is eating a hamburger. | Han-ba-ga sà-ne-ba-deh. |
| ကျောင်း တက်ပါတယ်။ | He goes to school. | Caùn teq-pa-deh. |
| — ကျောင်း တက်နေပါတယ်။ | He is going to school. | Caùn teq-ne-ba-deh. |



တို့တာဝန်

ရဲသားကြီးက ကိုလှရွှေ
လူဆိုးဖမ်းဖို့ တာဝန်ကျေ။
တို့လုံမေ မခင်မြ
ယာဉ်ထိန်းရာတွင် ကျမ်းကျင်လှ။

ဦးစိန်ဘက ဆရာဝန်
ကုသရေးမှာ သူထူးချွန်။
မလှမွန် သူနာပြု
စေတနာဖြင့် သူပြုစု။

ဦးသာနုက ခေါင်းဆောင်ကာ
ကျေးရွာကောင်းကျိုး သယ်ပိုးမှာ။
ကားဆရာ ကိုဘသောင်း
ဘေးရန်ကြည့်၍ သတိနှင့်မောင်း။

ကျောင်းသူကျောင်းသား တို့အဖော်
အရွယ်ရောက်လို့ ကြီးပြင်းသော်။
ပညာတော် မြတ်စိတ်ထား
တာဝန်ကိုယ်စီ ထမ်းစို့လား။



From the school reader for Standard 1 (children of 5-6 years old)

The text is in verse and contains two of the occupations you have learned and two more that are in the reference list.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 asks S2 about his/her job.

1. People in work

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S1: အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | Are you working? | Ālouq louq-ne-dhālā? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ | Yes, I am. | Houq-kéh. Louq-ne-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘာ အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလဲ။ | What job are you doing? | Ba ālouq louq-ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: ဆရာဝန်ပါ။ | I'm a doctor. | S'āya-wun-ba. |
| or: | | |
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလဲ။ | Where are you working? | Beh-hma ālouq louq-ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: သံရုံးမှာ လုပ်ပါတယ်။ | I work at an embassy. | Than-yoùn-hma louq-pa-deh. |

2. Retired people

| | | |
|---|------------------------------------|--|
| S1: အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | Are you working? | Ālouq louq-ne-dhālā? |
| S2: မလုပ်တော့ပါဘူး။ ပင်စင် ယူလိုက်ပြီ။ | No, not any more. I am retired. | Mālouq-táw-ba-bù. Pin-sin yu-laiq-pi. |
| S1: အရင်တုန်းက ဘာ အလုပ် လုပ်သလဲ။ | What did you do previously? | Āyin-dòun-gá ba ālouq louq-thālèh? |

3. People studying

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S1: အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | Are you working? | Ālouq louq-ne-dhālā? |
| S2: မလုပ်သေးပါဘူး။ ကျောင်း တက်နေပါတယ်။ | No, not yet. I am going to school/university. | Mālouq-thè-ba-bù. Caùn teq-ne-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်တန်း ရောက်ပြီလဲ။ | What Standard have you got to? | Beh-hnātàn yauq-pi-lèh? |
| S2: ရှစ်တန်းပါ။ | 8th Standard. | Shiq-tàn-ba. |

4. People who run the family

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| S1: အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | Are you working? | Ālouq louq-ne-dhālā? |
| S2: မလုပ်ပါဘူး။ အိမ်မှုကိစ္စ လုပ်ပါတယ်။ | No, I'm not. I look after the household. | Mālouq-pa-bù. Ein-hmú-keiq-sá louq-pa-deh. |

For reference: some other occupations (not practised on the tape)

| | |
|---|---|
| ရဲအရာရှိ > police officer | အဆိုတော် > singer |
| ရဲသား > policeman | ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသား > film actor |
| စစ်သား > soldier | ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသမီး > film actress |
| အင်ဂျင်နီယာ > engineer | သတင်းထောက် / သုဒ္ဓင်ဒေါက် / > reporter |
| အစိုးရ ဝန်ထမ်း / -ဒန်း / > civil servant | အယ်ဒီတာ > editor |
| စာရေး / စာရေး / > clerk | စာရေးဆရာ > writer |
| ဓာတ်ပုံဆရာ > photographer | စာရင်းကိုင် / စာရင်းရိုင်း / > accountant |
| အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဆရာ > English teacher (male) | ဆိုင်ရှင် > shopkeeper |
| အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဆရာမ > English teacher (fem.) | ဈေးသည် / ဇေးသုယ် / > market stallholder |
| တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာ / တက်ကသို- / > university teacher (male) | ကားသမား or ကားဆရာ or ယဉ်မောင်း / ယင်း- / > driver |
| တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာမ > university teacher (fem.) | အလုပ်သမား > labourer |
| ရှေ့နေ > lawyer | ဆိုက်ကားသမား > sidecar pedaller |
| ပိသူကာ > architect | လယ်သမား > rice farmer |
| အကြံပေး ပုဂ္ဂိုလ် / -ဗေးပုတ်ဂို / > adviser | နတ်စမ > nurse (fem.) |

For reference: some other places of work (not practised on the tape)

| | |
|--|---|
| အသံလွှင့်ဌာန /ထာနာ/ > broadcasting station | ဝပ်ရှော > workshop (for car repairs) |
| လေယာဉ်ရုံ: /-ယင်-/ > airline office | ဟိုတယ် > hotel |
| သစ်စက် > sawmill | အလုပ်ရုံ > workshop (small-scale manufacture or processing) |
| ဆန်စက် > rice mill | |
| စက်ရုံ > factory | |

Exercises on words for occupations

Ex. 1: Prompt: Looking at List 1, ask what job Ben does.

L/S1: Ben ဘာအလုပ် လုပ်သလဲ။ S2: Benက ကုန်သည်ပါ။ L/S1: အော်၊ ကုန်သည်လား။

[Note the “Oh I see” question: see Level 1, Topic 10A]

Ex. 2: Answer S1’s questions, referring to List 1 for the answers.

S1: Ben ဘာအလုပ် လုပ်သလဲ။ L/S2: Benက ကုန်သည်ပါ။

For the Practice Dialogues

The first set of Practice Dialogues are like the dialogues in Level 1: imagine you have met someone who has pulled out a bunch of family photographs to show you. You are pointing to individuals in the photographs and asking about them. When you hear the answer you make a note of it in the blanks in List 2 below. As before, since you can’t point on tape, we’ll identify the people by number.

For the second set of Practice Dialogues turn back to List 1. Imagine that the people listed are your relatives, and answer S1’s questions about them.

Warning. Not all names in the lists appear in the Exercises: that would have made too many Exercises. The extra names are provided for use in class. So be prepared to find a name missed out here and there.

List 1.

Relatives of woman speaker

| | <i>name</i> | <i>relationship</i> | <i>works as —</i> |
|-----|-------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 11. | Ben | brother | businessman |
| 12. | Dana | mother | school teacher |
| 13. | David | husband | doctor |
| 14. | Manat | son | student (8th Standard) |
| 15. | Nigel | father | (retired) army officer |

Relatives of male speaker

| | <i>name</i> | <i>relationship</i> | <i>works in —</i> |
|-----|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 16. | Rachel | daughter | bank |
| 17. | Elizabeth | wife | oil company |
| 18. | John | uncle | (retired) airport |
| 19. | Robina | aunt | does housework |
| 20. | Ursula | sister | oil company |

Blanks for List 2.

Relatives of male speaker

| | <i>name</i> | <i>relationship</i> | <i>occupation</i> |
|----|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. | ... | ... | ... |
| 2. | ... | ... | ... |
| 3. | ... | ... | ... |
| 4. | ... | ... | ... |
| 5. | ... | ... | ... |

Relatives of woman speaker

| | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 6. | ... | ... | ... |
| 7. | ... | ... | ... |
| 8. | ... | ... | ... |
| 9. | ... | ... | ... |
| 10. | ... | ... | ... |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese.

Sentences with [verb]-နေ-

1. They are buying postcards.
2. They are sitting outside.
3. They are taking photographs.

Sentences with [verb]-ပြီ

4. Have they arrived yet?
5. — Yes, they have.
6. — No, they haven't.
7. Have they finished yet?
8. — Yes, they have.
9. — No, they haven't.
10. Have they retired yet?
11. — Yes, they have.
12. — No, they haven't. (omit လိုက်)

Sentences to practise "not yet" and "no longer"

13. They don't work.
14. They don't work yet.
15. They don't work any more.
16. They don't go to school.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ပို့စကဒ် ဝယ်နေပါတယ်။
အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်နေတယ်။
ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်နေပါတယ်။

ရောက်ပြီလား။
ရောက်ပြီ။
မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။
ပြီးပြီလား။
ပြီးပြီ။
မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။
ပင်စင် ယူလိုက်ပြီလား။
ယူလိုက်ပြီ။
မယူသေးပါဘူး။

အလုပ် မလုပ်ပါဘူး။
အလုပ် မလုပ်သေးပါဘူး။
အလုပ် မလုပ်တော့ပါဘူး။
ကျောင်း မတက်ပါဘူး။

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 17. They don't go to school yet. | ကျောင်း မတက်သေးပါဘူး။ |
| 18. They don't go to school any more. | ကျောင်း မတက်တော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 19. They don't have a lot to do. | လုပ်စရာ မများပါဘူး။ |
| 20. They don't have a lot to do yet. | လုပ်စရာ မများသေးပါဘူး။ |
| 21. They don't have a lot to do any more. | လုပ်စရာ မများတော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 22. They can't speak Burmese. | ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်ပါဘူး။ |
| 23. They can't speak Burmese yet. | ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ |
| 24. They can't speak Burmese any more. | ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်တော့ပါဘူး။ |

KEY TO LIST 2

Relatives of male speaker

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ဦးခင်မောင်ဒင် | father | businessman | U Khin Maung Din |
| 2. ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | mother | (retired) school teacher | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| 3. မမာလေး | sister | student (10th Standard) | Ma Mar Lay |
| 4. ဗိုလ်မှူးမင်းဦး | uncle | army officer | Major Min Oo |
| 5. မသိန်း | wife | doctor | Ma Thein |

Relatives of woman speaker

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 6. ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | aunt | (retired) oil company | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| 7. ကိုစိန်လင်း | brother | embassy | Ko Sein Lin |
| 8. ညွန့်တင် | daughter | housework | Nyunt Tin |
| 9. ဦးဝင်း | husband | bank | U Winn |
| 10. ကိုညွန့်သောင်း | son | station | Ko Nyunt Thaung |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 10B YOU AND YOURS continued

This Lesson varies the usual pattern.

Don't look at the New words first, but go straight to Exercise 1 and do that.

Exercises on the new words for relatives

Ex. 1. This exercise introduces the two new words ညီ and မောင် (nyi, maun). See if you can puzzle out what they mean, and how they differ. At the end of the Exercise, look at the New Words below and see if your conclusion is right.

Imagine that ဦးငယ် n° 3 is showing you his family photographs. You point to someone's picture and ask who it is. For the Exercise, we use the numbers from the family tree below to identify who you are asking about.

Prompt: Ask about n° 2.

S1: ဒါက ကျနော် အမပါ။

L/S2: နံပါတ် (၂) ဘယ်သူလဲ။

L/S2: အော်။ အမလား။

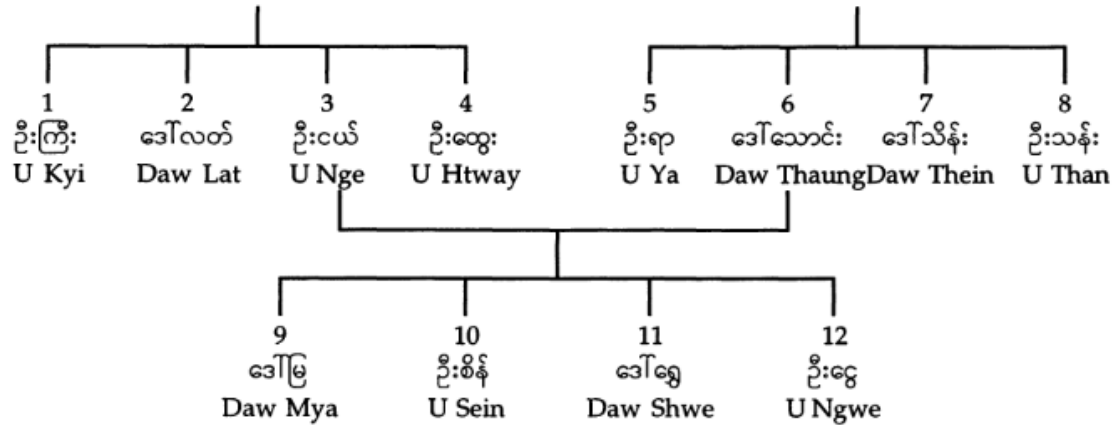
Ex. 2 is to let you have some practice at using the words for brothers and sister, including the three new ones.

Prompt: Keep the family tree within sight, and imagine you are Daw Mya n° 9.

S1: နံပါတ် (၁၀) ဘယ်သူလဲ။

L/S2: ဒါက ကျမ မောင်ပါ။

For Exercises 1 and 2: Family tree



New words

တဲ-
အသက်

to stay [temporarily], put up
age [also = life, breath]

tèh-
ătheq

New places to stay —

မိတ်ဆွေအိမ်

a friend's house ["friend-house"]

meiq-s'we ein

ကျောင်းဆောင် /-စောင်/

student hostel ["school-building"]

caùn-zaun

Asking someone's age —

အသက်

age [also "life"]

ătheq

— အသက် ဘယ်လောက် ရှိပြီလဲ။

How old are you?

Ătheq beh-lauq shí-bi-lèh?

— သက် ၂၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။

I am 25.

Ătheq hnăs'éh ngà-hniq shí-bi.

— အသက် ၂၀ ရှိပြီ။

I am 20.

Ătheq hnăs'eh shí-bi.

New relatives ⁵ —

မောင်

younger brother [of female] ³

maun

ညီ

younger brother [of male] ³

nyi

ညီမ

younger sister ⁴

nyi-má

3. Referring to a younger brother, a woman will say ကျမ မောင် and a man will say ကျနော် ညီ (cǎmá maun, cǎnáy nyi). Likewise, "Daw Thant's younger brother" is ဒေါ်သန်း မောင်, but "U Thant's younger brother" is ဦးသန်း ညီ (Daw Thán maun, ù Thán nyi)

4. In earlier times there were also separate terms for the younger sister of a man and the younger sister of a woman: respectively နမ and ညီမ (hnǎmá, nyi-má). In everyday conversation နမ has largely been replaced by ညီမ, but you will find it still enshrined in certain compound words, like မောင်နမ (maun-hnǎmá) "brother and sister."

5. For a fuller list of relatives, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 17.

Some words found on application forms and the like

| | | |
|------------------|---|-------------------|
| အမှတ် | number | āhmaq |
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | relationship ["family-relate-connect-manner"] | āmyò-taw-zaq-poun |
| အမည် / အမျိုး | name [the form used official contexts] | āmyi |
| အသက် | age | ātheq |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | occupation ["work-handling"] | ālouq-ākain |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | address | ne-yaq-leiq-sa |
| —နေရပ် | place of residence ["live-place"] | ne-yaq |
| —လိပ်စာ | address ["address-writing"] | leiq-sa |

Reminder

[name]–တဲ့ (-déh) means "it is called [name]." For more see Part 1 Groundwork, Lesson 36. You will hear this suffix in the Practice Dialogues.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 asks S2 about his/her accommodation and age.

| | | |
|---|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ တဲနေသလဲ။ | Where are you staying? | Beh-hma tèh-ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: ဟိုတယ်မှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။ | I am staying in a hotel. | Ho-teh-hma tèh-ne-ba-deh. |
| S1: အသက် ဘယ်လောက် ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What is your age? | Ātheq beh-lauq shí-bi-lèh? |
| S2: အသက် သုံးဆယ့် သုံးနှစ် ရှိပြီ။ ¹ | I am 33. | Ātheq thoùn-zéh thoùn-hniq shí-bi. |
| or: အသက် သုံးဆယ့် ရှိပြီ။ ² | I am 30. | Ātheq thoùn-zeh shí-bi. |

1. Asking and telling someone's age.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| အသက် ဘယ်လောက် ရှိပြီလဲ။ | Ātheq beh-lauq shí-bi-lèh? |
| | "age — how much — have-so far-question" |
| အသက် သုံးဆယ့် သုံးနှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | Ātheq thoùn-zéh thoùn-hniq shí-bi. |
| | "age — 33-year — have-so far" |

Why use ရှိပြီလဲ and ရှိပြီ rather than ရှိသလဲ and ရှိတယ် (shí-bi-lèh vs. shí-dhālèh, shí-bi vs. shí-dèh)? As you have seen in notes in earlier Lessons, the verb suffix –ပြီ is used where the speaker is concerned with (a) a change from one state to another, and (b) whether it has taken place by the time of speaking: "Is it over yet? Are they here yet?" and so on. The change from one age in years to the next is a change of state, and since a person's age is changing all the time ("Is he 20 yet?"), it is appropriate to use [verb]–ပြီ rather than [verb]–တယ်။ The passing of time is closely parallel to ageing ("Is it 12 o'clock yet?" and so on), so it is no surprise that telling the time in Burmese also uses ရှိပြီလဲ and ရှိပြီ rather than ရှိသလဲ and ရှိတယ်။

2. The Round Number Rule operates on years in the usual way:

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------|------------------|
| လေးဆယ့် သုံးနှစ် | four-ten—three-years | 43 years | lèzéh thoùn-hniq |
| အနှစ် လေးဆယ် | years—four-ten | 40 years | āhniq lè-zeh |

However, when telling someone's age in years it is normal to omit the အနှစ် in the round numbers; so in place of —

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| အသက် အနှစ် လေးဆယ် ရှိပြီ။ | age years four-ten have-so far |
| ātheq āhniq lè-zeh shí-bi. | He is 40 years old. |

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| you more often say — | |
| အသက် လေးဆယ် ရှိပြီ။ | age four-ten have-so far |
| ātheq lè-zeh shí-bi. | He is 40 years old. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. Imagine you are filling in a form for someone who has come to see you with three companions. Point to one of the companions (n° 1) and ask who it is, then ask for the information you need to fill in the blanks on the form, in the order shown on the page.

Blank form for Practice Dialogues Set 1

For the meaning of the words in the left-hand column, see the New Words section above.

| | | | |
|------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| အမှတ် | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | ... | ... | ... |
| အမည် | ... | ... | ... |
| အသက် | ... | ... | ... |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | ... | ... | ... |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | ... | ... | ... |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions.

| | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| အမှတ် | number | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| အမည် | name | Mike | Maureen | George |
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | relationship | older brother | ygr sister | ygr brother |
| အသက် | age | 39 | 30 | 28 |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | staying at | Strand Hotel | friend's house | students' hostel |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | occupation | teacher | student (Ph.D.) | army officer |

In the classroom. Prepare blank forms like the above, and have the students ask each other the questions needed to complete the form.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following message of introduction into Burmese.

1. U Sein.
2. I would like to introduce you to my younger brother.
3. His name is Mark.
4. He is 20 years old.
5. He can speak a little Burmese.
6. He is working in an oil company.
7. For the time being he is staying at the Sakantha Hotel.
8. It is arranged that he should go to Mandalay in two weeks' time.
9. In Mandalay he would like to meet ¹ your younger brother.
10. Thank you.
11. Mary.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဦးစိန်။

ကျွန်ုပ် မောင်နဲ့ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးချင်ပါတယ်။

နာမည်က Mark-လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

အသက်-၂၀ ရှိပြီ။

ဗမာစကား နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။

ရေနံကုမ္ပဏီမှာ အလုပ် လုပ်နေပါတယ်။

လောလောဆယ် စခန်းသာဟိုတယ်မှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။

နှစ်ပတ် ကြာရင် မန္တလေး သွားဖို့

အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။

မန္တလေးမှာ ဦးစိန် ညီနဲ့ တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။

ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။

မေရီ။


1. "to meet [someone]" = [someone]-နဲ့ တွေ့တယ်။

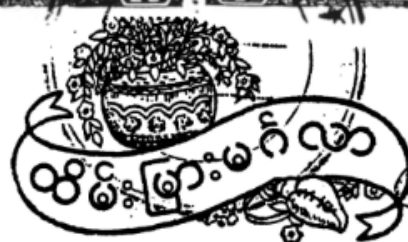
KEY TO PRACTICE DIALOGUES SET 1

| | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|-------------|
| အမှတ် | number | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | relationship | ygr brother | ygr sister | son |
| အမည် | name | ဦးစိုးမောင် | ဒေါ်ဝင်းဝင်းချို | ကိုသန်းထွတ် |
| အသက် | age | 60 | 57 | 21 |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | address | Mandalay | Rangoon | Bangkok |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | occupation | doctor (retd) | business | student |

Part of a form for a marriage contract

Showing the formal words for name, age, address, and so on





12 JUL 1990

က ဝိ သ ခွ ဝ မြ လွှ ဝ

သ ဟို သ ဝ :

အမည်.....

အသက်.....

မှတ်ပုံတင်အမှတ်.....

လူမျိုးနှင့်ဘာသာ.....

အလုပ်အကိုင်.....

အဘအမည်.....

အမိအမည်.....

နေရပ်လိပ်စာ.....

သ ဟို သ မိ :

အမည်.....

အသက်.....

မှတ်ပုံတင်အမှတ်.....

လူမျိုးနှင့်ဘာသာ.....

အလုပ်အကိုင်.....

အဘအမည်.....

အမိအမည်.....

နေရပ်လိပ်စာ.....

Vocabulary for words in the form opposite
(other than those already listed under New words)

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|-------------------|
| ထိမ်းမြားမင်္ဂလာ | marriage ceremony | —မှတ်ပုံ တင်- | to register |
| ကတိသစ္စာပြုလွှာ (/ဂဒိ-/) | | —အမှတ် | number |
| —ကတိ | written undertaking | လူမျိုးနှင့် ဘာသာ | race and religion |
| —သစ္စာပြု- | promise | —လူမျိုး | race ["man-kind"] |
| | to state allegiance, | —ဘာသာ | religion |
| | plight troth | အဘ | father |
| —လွှာ | sheet, document | အမိ | mother |
| သတို့သား | bridegroom | In an official context အဘ and အမိ are preferred to the more colloquial အဖေ and အမေ ။ | |
| သတို့သမီး | bride | | |
| မှတ်ပုံတင်အမှတ် | identity card number | | |

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 11

TO MEET AGAIN

New words

| | | |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------|
| နေ့ | day [mainly used for day as opposed to night (ည nyá), and day of week as opposed to day of month (ရက် yeq)] | né |
| —ဘယ်နေ့ | which day | beh-né |
| —ဒီနေ့ | today ["this-day"] | di-né |
| အား- | to be free, not engaged | à- |
| —ဘယ်နေ့ အားသလဲ။ | Which day are you free? | Beh-né à-dhālèh? |
| ကောင်း- | to be good | kaùn- |
| သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have to go somewhere | Thwà-zăya shí-ba-deh. |
| —သွားစရာ | "going that has to be done" | thwà-zăya |
| —ရှိပါတယ် | "I have" | shí-ba-deh |

Days

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| *ဒီနေ့ = ဒီဂနေ့ = ဂနေ့ | today | di-né, di-găné, găné |
| *မနက်ဖန် = မနက်ဖြန် = မနက်ဖြင် | tomorrow | măneq-p'an, măneq-p'yan, măneq-p'yin |
| နက်ဖန် = နက်ဖြန် = နက်ဖြင် | tomorrow | neq-p'an, neq-p'yan, neq-p'yin |

All forms of both these words are used widely. In real life you can choose the form you fancy, but here, for consistency in practising, we shall standardize on the starred form in each group.

Days of the week

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------|----------------|
| တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့ /-နင်း-/ | Sunday | Tănìn-gănwe-né |
| တနင်္လာနေ့ /-နင်း-/ | Monday | Tănìn-la-né |
| အင်္ဂါနေ့ | Tuesday | In-ga-né |
| ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ /ဗုတ်-/ | Wednesday | Bouq-dāhù-né |
| ကြာသပတေးနေ့ /-သုဗဒေး-/ | Thursday | Ca-dhăbădè-né |
| သောကြာနေ့ /သောက်ကျာ/ | Friday | Thauq-ca-né |
| စနေနေ့ | Saturday | Săne-né |

The names of all seven days of the week are given here for completeness. To learn the whole set in one Lesson imposes a heavy strain on the memory, so for this Lesson we shall be practising only Friday, Saturday and Sunday. The rest of the week will come in a later Lesson. In the meantime, if you desperately need one of the other days before you know its Burmese name, you can always try using the English name. Many Burmese are familiar with the English weekday names, even if they have not learned much English.

Each name has the word နေ့ on the end of it. You always use the နေ့ when you're talking about a particular day, but if you're reciting a set of days as a list you leave it off: တနင်္ဂနွေ၊ တနင်္လာ၊ အင်္ဂါ and so on.



Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 and S2 have been talking and are about to part, but want to arrange to meet again.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်နေ့ အားသလဲ။ | What day are you free? | Beh-né à-dhǎlèh? |
| မနက်ဖန် အားသလား။ | Are you free tomorrow? | Māneq-p'an à-dhǎlà? |
| S2: အားပါတယ်။ | Yes, I am. | À-ba-deh. |
| ဘယ်အချိန် တွေ့ချင်သလဲ။ | What time do you want to meet? | Beh-ǎc'ein twé-jin-dhǎlèh? |
| S1: ဘယ်အချိန် အားသလဲ။ | What time are you free? | Beh-ǎc'ein à-dhǎlèh? |
| ၁၀-နာရီ အားသလား။ | Are you free at 10? | S'eh-na-yi à-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ၁၀-နာရီလား။ | 10? | S'eh-na-yi-là? |
| ၁၀-နာရီမှာ မအားပါဘူး။ | No, I'm not free at 10. | S'eh-na-yi-hma mǎà-ba-bù. |
| သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have to go somewhere. | Thwà-zǎya shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ၃-နာရီကော။ | How about 3 o'clock? | Thoùn-na-yi-gàw? |
| ၃-နာရီ ရမလား။ | Would 3 o'clock be all right? | Thoùn-na-yi yá-mǎla? |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ | Yes, it would. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| ၃-နာရီ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | 3 o'clock is good. | Thoùn-na-yi kaùn-ba-deh. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| မနက်ဖြန် ၃-နာရီမှာ | We'll meet at 12 | Māneq-p'an thoùn-na-yi-hma |
| တွေ့မယ်။ | tomorrow. | twé-meh. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | Yes. That's good. | Houq-kèh. Kaùn-ba-deh. |
| S1: သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye then. | Thwà-meh-naw? |

S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။

Goodbye.

Kaùn-ba-bi.

မနက်ဖြန် တွေ့သေးတာပေါ့။

See you tomorrow.

Mǎneq-p'an twé-dhè-da-báw.

Exercises on the new days

| နာမည် | today | tomorrow | Friday | Saturday | Sunday | name |
|-----------------|-------|----------|--------|----------|--------|-------------------|
| ဒေါ်ကြည်ကြည်ရင် | ✓ | | | | | Daw Kyi Kyi Yin |
| ဦးအောင်ခင်မြင့် | | ✓ | | | | U Aung Khin Myint |
| ဒေါ်မေစု | | | ✓ | | | Daw Me Su |
| မြသိန်း | | | | ✓ | | Mya Thein |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မေကြည် | | | | | ✓ | Daw Khin Me Kyi |
| ဦးသိန်းလွင် | | ✓ | | | | U Thein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်သိန်းနီ | | | | ✓ | | Daw Thane Nee |
| ဦးအောင်သန်း | ✓ | | | | | U Aung Thann |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မေ | | | | | ✓ | Daw Khin May |
| ဦးစိုးသိန်း | | | ✓ | | | U Soe Thein |

Ex. 1. Look at the chart to see which day S1 is referring to.

Ask ဒေါ်ကြည်ကြည်ရင် what day she's free. L: ဒေါ်ကြည်ကြည်ရင် ဘယ်နေ့ အားသလဲ။

S1: ဒီနေ့ အားပါတယ်။

L: ဒီနေ့လား။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ဒီနေ့ တွေ့ကြရအောင်။

Ex. 2 S1 asks if you're free on a certain day. You say "No," you have to go somewhere, but you're free on the next day. Here are the days:

today — tomorrow — Friday — Saturday — Sunday

S1: သောကြာနေ့ အားသလား။

L: သောကြာနေ့လား။ မအားပါဘူး။ သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ စနေနေ့ အားပါတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogue 1. Foreign tourist woman speaks to Burmese lady on pagoda platform.

Dialogue 2. Foreign man talks to Burmese man in noodle shop.

Dialogue 3. Foreigner talks to earnest incomprehensible man.

In the classroom. Prepare sheets as from engagement diaries, each with different days and times marked as free and not free. Each student is issued a sheet, and, working with another student, has to try to find a time when both are free to meet.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following message into Burmese.

1. Daw Mya.
 2. I came yesterday.
 3. You were not at home.
 4. I want to introduce you to my younger brother.
 5. What day are you free?
 6. If you are free tomorrow, come to my house at about 11.
 7. Robert.
1. "if [verb]" = [verb]-ရင်

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဒေါ်မြ။
မနေ့က လာပါတယ်။
ဒေါ်မြ အိမ်မှာ မရှိဘူး။
ကျွန်တော့် ညီနဲ့ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးချင်ပါတယ်။
ဘယ်နေ့ အားသလဲ။
မနက်ဖန် အားရင်
၁၁-နာရီလောက်မှာ ကျွန်တော့်အိမ် လာပါ။
ရောဘတ်။

LEVEL 2, TOPIC 12

MAKING A PHONE CALL

New words

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ဖုန်း ဆက်- | to call, make a phone call | p'òun s'eq- ["phone—connect"] |
| ပြော- | to say [also = speak, tell, talk] | pyàw- |
| A ဘယ်သူ ဆက်သလဲ။ | Who called? Who is speaking? | Beh-dhu s'eq-thālèh? |
| B ဘာ ပြောရမလဲ။ | What should I say? | Ba pyàw-yá-mālèh? |
| C ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။ | Who should I say is calling? | Beh-dhu s'eq-teh-ló pyàw-yá-mālèh? |

Question C is a combination of questions A and B. In question C the ဘာ (ba) of question B is replaced by ဘယ်သူ ဆက်သလဲ (Beh-dhu s'eq-thālèh?) from question A; and ဆက်တယ် (s'eq-thālèh) is converted to ဆက်တယ် (s'eq-teh) with the suffix -လို့ (-lò) "[mark of reported speech]" added.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S2 telephones S1.

Dialogue 1

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့် ရှိပါ။ | Yes? Who is it? | Houq-kéh. Āmeín shí-ba. |
| S2: ဦးတင်လှိုင် ရှိလား ခင်ဗျာ။ | Is U Tin Hlaing there? | Ù Tin Hlain shí-là, K'in-bya? |
| S1: စကားပြောနေပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Speaking. | Sāgà pyàw-ne-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S2: အော်။ ဦးတင်လှိုင်လား။ | Oh. Is that U Tin Hlaing? | Aw. Ù Tin Hlain-là? |
| ကျနော့် နံမည်က David ပါ။ | My name is David. | Cānāw nan-meh-gá David-ba. |
| သြစတြေးလျကပါ။ | I'm from Australia. | Àw-sātrè-lyá-gá-ba. |

Dialogue 2

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| S1: ဟယ်လို။ | Hallo. | Heh-lo. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Hallo. | Houq-kéh. |
| ဦးတင်လှိုင်နဲ့ | I'd like to speak | Ù Tin Hlain-néh |
| စကားပြောချင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | to U Tin Hlaing. | săgà pyàw-jin-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S1: သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။ | I'll fetch him for you. | Thwà-k'aw-pè-meh. |
| ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ | Who should I say | Beh-dhu s'eq-teh-lo/ |
| ပြောရမလဲ။ | is calling? | pyàw-yá-mălèh? |
| S2: ကျနော် နံမည်က စောထွန်းပါ။ | My name is Saw Tun. | Cănaw nan-meh-gá Sàw T'un-ba. |
| အမေရိကကပါ။ | From America. | Ăme-rí-ká-gá-ba. |
| S1: ခဏ ကိုင်ထားပါ ရှင်။ | Please hold on a minute. | K'ăná kain-t'à-ba, Shin. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Phone calls. You take the part of the callers in the list below. Ask if your contact is there, using the polite tag. If the contact is speaking, follow the model below. If someone else answers, respond appropriately.

Model for the Practice Dialogues Set 1: You are calling.

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့် ရှိပါ။ | L/S2: ဒေါ်မေအုံး ရှိလား ခင်ဗျာ။ |
| S1: စကားပြောနေပါတယ် ရှင်။ | L/S2: အော်။ ဒေါ်မေအုံးလား။ |
| | L/S2: ကျနော် နံမည်က David-ပါ။ Australia ကပါ။ |

| Caller | from | Call for | |
|-----------|-----------|----------------|-----------------|
| David | Australia | ဒေါ်မေအုံး | Daw May Ohn |
| U Saw Tun | America | ဦးဝင်းနိုင် | U Win Naing |
| Annemarie | Germany | ဒေါ်ဝင်းဝင်းမေ | Daw Win Win Mae |
| Denise | France | ဦးမြင့်ဆွေ | U Myint Swe |
| John | England | ဒေါ်သီတာအောင် | Daw Thida Aung |

In the Practice Dialogues in Set 2 you are answering the phone. The prompt tells you whose part you play: if the caller asks for you, say it's you speaking; if they ask for someone else, follow the prompt. Use the polite tag when you answer the caller's query. Here's a model:

Prompt: You are David

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| L/S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့် ရှိပါ။ | S1: David ရှိလား ရှင်။ |
| L/S2: စကားပြောနေပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | S1: အော်။ David-လား။ ကျမ နံမည်က ဒေါ်မေအုံးပါ။ |

Exercise for written answer

Imagine that you have recently arrived in Burma, and you phone a contact who turns out to be not at home. Translate the following message to leave on her answerphone.

1. Daw Nila.
2. I am Adriaan Zecha.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဒေါ်နီလာ။
ကျွန်တော်က Adriaan Zecha-ပါ။

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. I arrived in Burma yesterday. | မနေ့က ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ပါတယ်။ |
| 4. I would like to meet you. | ဒေါ်နီလာနဲ့ တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။ |
| 5. It is arranged for me to stay here a further five days. | ဒီမှာ နောက်ထပ် ၅-ရက် နေဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။ |
| 6. I am staying at a friend's house. | မိတ်ဆွေ အိမ်မှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။ |
| 7. The friend's name is Pe Win. | မိတ်ဆွေ နာမည်က ဖေဝင်းပါ။ |
| 8. On Sunday I am going to go to Thailand. | တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့ ကျရင် ယိုးဒယားပြည် သွားမယ်။ |
| 9. If you are free, please phone. | အားရင် ဖုန်း ဆက်ပါ။ |
| 10. The phone number is 52288. | တယ်လီဖုန်း နံပါတ်က ၅၂၂၈၈။ |
| 11. That is all. | ဒါပါပဲ။ |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 1

ASKING THE WAY

New words

| | | |
|--|---|------------------------------------|
| သိ- | to know | thí |
| —ဘောပင် ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ။ | | Bàw-pin beh-hma yá-mālèh? |
| | Where could I get a ball pen? | |
| —ဘောပင် ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ သိလား။ | | Bàw-pin beh-hma yá-mālèh thí-là? |
| | Do you know where I can get a ball pen? | |
| —ဘောပင် ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ မသိဘူး။ | | Bàw-pin beh-hma yá-mālèh mǎthí-bù? |
| | I wonder where I might get a ball pen? | |
| [“I don’t know where ... ?”: often used where English might say “Do you know where ... ?”] | | |

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| [noun]-နားမှာ | near [noun] | -nà-hma |
| —ဈေးနားမှာ | near the market | zè-nà-hma |
| —ကျောင်းဆောင်နားမှာ | near the hostel | caùn-zaun-nà-hma |
| —ဘယ်နားမှာ | near where? whereabouts? | beh-nà-hma |
| —ဒီနားမှာ | near here, around here | di-nà-hma |

New things to buy —

| | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| ခဲတံ /-ဒန့်/ | pencil [“lead-rod”] | k’èh-dan |
| ပြက္ခဒိန် /ပျက်ခဒိန်/ | calendar | pyeq-k’ǎdein |
| အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ /-သုာသုန်းစက်ကူ/ | toilet paper | ein-dha-dhòun seq-ku |
| | [“toilet-use-paper”] | |
| တီရှပ် | T-shirt | ti-shaq |
| ခါတ်ခဲ /ဒတ်-/ | battery | daq-k’èh |
| ဦးထုပ် /အုတ်ထုတ်/ | hat [“head-wrap”] | ouq-t’ouq |
| ဖိနပ် /ဖနတ်/ | sandals | p’ānaq |

For a longer list of things to buy, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, sections 1 to 5.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Burma. S1 goes up to S2 to ask directions.

The question

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| S1: ဦးလေး။ | Excuse me. | Ù-lè. |
| ဘောပင် ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want to buy a ballpoint pen. | Bàw-pin weh-jin-ba-deh. |
| ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ သိလား။ | Do you know where I can get one round here? | Di-nà-hma beh-hma yá-mālèh thí-là? |
| or: ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ မသိဘူး။ | I wonder where I might get one round here ... ? | Di-nà-hma beh-hma yá-mālèh mǎthí-bù? |

The reply

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. | | |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | There are some. | Shí-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| ဒီဘက် သွား။ or a variant | Go this way, ... | Di-beq thwà. |
| S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| 2. | | |
| S2: ဒီနားမှာ မရှိပါဘူး။ | There aren't any near here. | Di-nà-hma mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| ဈေးနားမှာ ရမယ် or a variant | You'll get some near the market. | Zè-nà-hma yá-meh. |
| S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| 3. | | |
| S2: မသိပါဘူး။ ဆောရီးနော်။ or similar | I don't know. I am sorry. | Mǎthí-ba-bù. S'àw-rì-naw? |
| S1: အော်၊ ကိစ္စမရှိပါဘူး။ | Oh. Never mind. | Aw. Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| ရပါတယ်။ | It's all right. | Yá-ba-deh. |



A shopping street in Mandalay

Exercises on the new things

Format for Ex. 1. Look at the list to see what the new words mean.

Ask if ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း wants to buy a ballpoint pen. L/S2: ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း ဘောပင် ဝယ်ချင်သလား။
S1: မဝယ်ချင်ပါဘူး။ ခဲတံ ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ်။ L/S2: ခဲတံ ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ်။

Ex. 2 Use the list below (following the model for the Practice Dialogues) to provide the answers to the questions.

S1: ဒေါ်ကကံသရင်အေး ဘာဝယ်ချင်သလဲ။ L/S2: အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Use the list below to see what you want to buy and who you are accosting. The prompt will tell you whose part you play. Use a polite tag for your first and last sentences. Here's a model:

Prompt: You are ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း

L/S2: ဦးလေး။

S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ or a variant

L/S2: ခဲတံ ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ် ရှင်။ ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ သိသလား။

S1: ရပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ဒီလမ်းအတိုင်း ဆက်သွားရင် ညာဘက်မှာ ဆိုင်လေး တစ်ဆိုင် တွေ့မယ်။ အဲဒီမှာ ခဲတံ ရောင်းပါတယ်။ or some variant

L/S2: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ရှင်။

S1: ရပါတယ်။ or similar

| နာမည် | asks a person who could be his/her | wants to buy | wants to go to | name |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| ဒေါ်သန်းမြင့် | older sister | postcards | a market | Daw Than Myint |
| ဦးစောလွင် | aunt | a ballpoint pen | a museum | U saw Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း | uncle | a pencil | a park | Daw Myint Myint Win |
| ဦးမောင်မောင် | son | a calendar | a cold drinks bar | U Maung Maung |
| ဒေါ်ခင်ခင်စိုး | daughter | sandals | a café | Daw Khin Khin So |
| ဦးအုံးဟန် | older sister | T-shirts | a restaurant | U Ohn Han |
| ဒေါ်မိမိစိန် | aunt | batteries | a public toilet | Daw Mi Mi Sein |
| ဦးစံတင် | daughter | a hat | a restaurant | U San Tin |
| ဒေါ်ကကံသရင်အေး | uncle | toilet paper | a public toilet | Daw Catherine Aye |
| ဦးတင်ဦး | son | envelopes | a cold drinks bar | U Tin Oo |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မေကြည် | older sister | writing paper | a café | Daw Khin Me Kyi |

Exercise for written answer

Reorder the sentences in Column B below so that each forms a natural sequel to the sentence in Column A. In some cases both A and B are spoken by the same speaker, in others by different speakers. Example:

၁။ ဘယ်လို သွားရမလဲ။

၁၁။ ဒီဘက် သွားပါ။

Use the Key to check your answers.

Column A

၁။ ပြက္ခဒိန် ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ်။

၂။ မသိပါဘူး ရှင်။

Column B

၁။ နာမည်က မောင်ဖြိုးလို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

၂။ သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။

၃။ ဒီနားမှာ မရှိပါဘူး။
 ၄။ သွားခေါ်ပေးပါမယ်။
 ၅။ ကိုညိုနဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်ပါတယ်။
 ၆။ မနက်ဖန် မအားပါဘူး။
 ၇။ ဒါက ကျမ မောင်ပါ။
 ၈။ ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ပီတာပဲ။
 ၉။ နဲနဲ များပါတယ်။
 ၁၀။ ပက်စီ မရှိပါဘူး။
 ၁၁။ မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။
 ၁၂။ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။

၃။ ဆောရီးနော်။
 ၄။ ဒီလိုဆို မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။
 ၅။ ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ သိလား။
 ၆။ ကုန်သွားပြီ။
 ၇။ မရိုက်နဲ့။ ခဏလေး။
 ၈။ ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။
 ၉။ သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။
 ၁၀။ လျှော့ပါအုံးလား။
 ၁၁။ အိမ်မှာ ရှိလား။
 ၁၂။ ဗိုလ်ချုပ်ဈေးနားမှာ ရပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

၁။ ပြကခဒိန် ဝယ်ချင်ပါတယ်။
 ၂။ မသိပါဘူး ရှင်။
 ၃။ ဒီနားမှာ မရှိပါဘူး။
 ၄။ သွားခေါ်ပေးပါမယ်။
 ၅။ ကိုညိုနဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်ပါတယ်။
 ၆။ မနက်ဖန် မအားပါဘူး။
 ၇။ ဒါက ကျမ မောင်ပါ။
 ၈။ ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ပီတာပဲ။
 ၉။ နဲနဲ များပါတယ်။
 ၁၀။ ပက်စီ မရှိပါဘူး။
 ၁၁။ မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။
 ၁၂။ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။

၅။ ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ သိလား။
 ၃။ ဆောရီးနော်။
 ၁၂။ ဗိုလ်ချုပ်ဈေးနားမှာ ရပါတယ်။
 ၈။ ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။
 ၁၁။ အိမ်မှာ ရှိလား။
 ၂။ သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။
 ၁။ နာမည်က မောင်ဖြိုးလို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။
 ၉။ သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။
 ၁၀။ လျှော့ပါအုံးလား။
 ၆။ ကုန်သွားပြီ။
 ၄။ ဒီလိုဆို မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။
 ၇။ မရိုက်နဲ့။ ခဏလေး။

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 2

TAKING PHOTOGRAPHS

New words

ရွှေ-
 —ဒီဘက် ရွှေပါ။
 —ဒီဘက် နဲနဲ ရွှေပါ။
 ရပ်-
 —ဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါ။
 [request]-နော်
 —ဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါ။
 —ဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါနော်။
 —ဒီမှာ ထိုင်ပါနော်။
 လုပ်-
 ဒီလို
 —ဒီလို လုပ်ပါ
 —ဒီလို မလုပ်ပါနဲ့။

to move, shift
 Move this way.
 Please move a little this way.
 to stop, stand
 Please stand here.
 [request], if you don't mind.
 — I hope that's all right?
 Please stand here.
 Please stand here, if you don't mind.
 Please sit here, if you don't mind.
 to do, act
 this way, like this
 Do this ["Act like this"]¹
 Don't do this ["Don't act like this"]²

shwé-
 Di-beq shwé-ba.
 Di-beq nèh-nèh shwé-ba.
 yaq-
 Di-hma yaq-pa.
 -naw
 Di-hma yaq-pa.
 Di-hma yaq-pa-naw?
 Di-hma t'ain-ba-naw?
 louq-
 di-lo
 Di-lo louq-pa.
 Di-lo mālouq-pa-néh.

1. Useful when you don't know the words you need: you can demonstrate the pose and use this phrase.
2. Likewise useful for demonstrating something — scowling, for example — that you'd prefer the subject not to do.



In the market at Nyaung-U

Sample Dialogue

Scene: on a river bank in Burma. S2 is a man mending a fishing net, helped by his son, and S1 wants to take a photograph of the scene.

S1: ဦးလေး။

Excuse me.

Ù-lè.

S2: အေး။ ဘာလဲ။

Yes? What is it?

È. Ba-lèh?

S1: ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်ချင်ပါတယ်။

I'd like to take a picture.

Daq-poun yaiq-c'in-ba-deh.

ရတယ်နော်။

You don't mind do you?

Yá-deh-naw?

S2: ရပါတယ်။ ရိုက်ပါ။

That's all right. Go ahead.

Yá-ba-deh. Yaiq-pa.

S1: ဦးလေး ဒီဘက် နဲ့နဲ့

Could you move a bit

Ù-lè di-beq nèh-nèh

ရွှေ့ပါနော်။

this way?

shwé-ba-naw?

ကောင်းတယ်။

That's good.

Kaùn-deh.

သား ဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါ။

[to the boy] You stand here.

Thà: di-hma yaq-pa.

ကဲ။ ရပြီ။

There! That's just right.

Kèh. Yá-bi.

ရိုက်မယ်နော်။

I'll take it now.

Yaiq-meh-naw?

S1 takes the picture.

S1: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။

There. I've taken it.

Kèh. Pì-bi.

ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။

Thank you.

Cè-zù tin-ba-deh.

S2: ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။

No problem.

Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù. K'in-bya.

S1: သွားမယ်နော်။

Goodbye.

Thwà-meh-naw.

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။

Goodbye.

Houq-kéh. Kaùn-ba-bi.

For the Practice Dialogues

| N° | You are | You want to photograph | She/he could be your |
|----|---------|--|----------------------|
| 1 | male | Lady and daughter washing Buddha image at pagoda | older sister |
| 2 | female | Man with hardware stall | older brother |
| 3 | male | Lady at jewellery shop in market | aunt |
| 4 | female | Man making wood carvings | uncle |
| 5 | male | Lady frying bananas at roadside | aunt |

In the classroom. Students act out photographing each other as usual. To give more directed activity and ensure they cover the full range of new expressions, prepare a set of rough sketches of possible poses for a subject: standing/sitting, left/right of the blackboard, behind/in front of the desk, holding book/pencil, and so on. Each student is dealt one of the sketches and has to direct the subject to adopt the pose in the sketch. For more practice, exchange diagrams and take further turns.

Exercise for written answer

Fill in the gaps in the following sentences.

၁။ ဒီ... နဲ့ ချစ်သူပါ။

၂။ ဒီ... ရုပ်ပါ။

၃။ ဒီ... လုပ်ပါ။

၄။ ဒီ... ထိုင်ပါ။

၅။ ပြီး...လား။

၆။ ရယ်ဒီ...လား။

၇။ တကယ်...လား။

၈။ မရှိပါ...။ ခဏလေး။

၉။ ဒီလို ...လုပ်ပါနဲ့။

၁၀။ ဒီလို... မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။

၁၁။ ခါတ်ပုံ ...မယ်နော်။

၁၂။ သွားခေါ်...မယ်။

၁၃။ ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်... ပြောရမလဲ။

၁၄။ မနက်ဖန် ...အချိန် တွေ့ချင်သလဲ။

၁၅။ ဘယ်တုန်း... ရောက်သလဲ။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဒီဘက် နဲ့ ချစ်သူပါ။

ဒီမှာ ရုပ်ပါ။

ဒီလို လုပ်ပါ။

ဒီမှာ ထိုင်ပါ။

ပြီးပြီလား။

ရယ်ဒီပဲလား။

တကယ်ပဲလား။

မရှိပါနဲ့။ ခဏလေး။

ဒီလို မလုပ်ပါနဲ့။

ဒီလိုဆို မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။

ခါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။

သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။

ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။

မနက်ဖန် ဘယ်အချိန် တွေ့ချင်သလဲ။

ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်သလဲ။

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 3

TAKING A TAXI

New words

This Lesson is about negotiating a price with a taxi driver. The words you need have been used already in bargaining with shopkeepers (2.5), so you can go straight to the Sample Dialogue on the tape.



Rangoon

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 is a taxi driver, and S2 has just hailed the taxi.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ် သွားမလဲ။ | Where are you going? | Beh thwà-mālèh? |
| S2: ဗြိတိသျှသံရုံး သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to the British Embassy. | Byí-tí-shá than-yoùn thwà-meh. |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ တက်ပါ။ | OK. Get in. | Yá-ba-deh. Teq-pa. |
| S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးရမလဲ။ | How much will you charge? | Beh-lauq pè-yá-mālèh? |
| S1: ၈၀/- ပေးပါ။ | Give me K80. | Shiq-s'eh pè-ba. |
| S2: ၈၀/-လား။ များပါတယ်။ | K80? That's too much. | Shiq-s'eh-là? Myà-ba-deh. |
| မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ | Can't you bring it down? | Māsháw-nain-bù-là? |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးမလဲ။ | How much will you pay? | Beh-lauq pè-mālèh? |
| or: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးချင်သလဲ။ | How much do you want to pay? | Beh-lauq pè-jin-dhālèh? |
| S2: ၆၀/- ပေးမယ်။ ရမလား။ | I'll give you K60. Do you agree? | C'auq-s'eh pè-meh. Yá-mālà? |
| or: ၆၀/- ထားပါ။ ရမလား။ | Make it K60. Do you agree? | C'auq-s'eh t'à-ba. Yá-mālà? |

FORK

branch 1. Driver accepts, and passenger gets in.

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| S1: ကောင်းပြီလေ။ ရပါတယ်။ | All right. That's OK. | Kaùn-bi-le. Yá-ba-deh. |
| တက်တက်။ | Get in. | Teq, teq. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ သွားမယ်။ | Fine. Let's go. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Thwà-meh. |

branch 2. Driver rejects passenger's fare, and suggests a higher one.

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| S1: နဲ့တယ်ဗျာ။ | That's too little. | Nèh-ba-deh, Bya. |
| ၇၀/-လောက် ပေးပါ။ | Give me about K70. | K'un-nās'eh-lauq pè-ba. |

Passenger then accepts, or declines, or negotiates further.

Journey's end

| | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| S2: ၇၀/- နော်။ | It was K70, wasn't it? | K'un-nās'eh-naw? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh. |
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | Here's the money. Goodbye. | Paiq-s'an di-hma. Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Right. Goodbye. | Houq-kéh. Kaùn-ba-bi. |

For the Practice Dialogues

You play the part of the people in the list. You tell the driver where you want to go and ask what the fare will be. If it's above your ceiling fare, try negotiating. If the driver asks you for a fare, offer your bargaining fare from the list. If you can get the driver to come within your range, accept. If not, refuse.

| နာမည် | place | ceiling fare | bargaining fare | name |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| ဒေါ်ရီရီ | Inya Lake Hotel | ၁၀၀/- | ၈၀/- | Daw Yi Yi |
| ဦးအောင်ကြိုင် | Karaweik Hotel | ၆၅/- | ၅၀/- | U Aung Kyaing |
| ဒေါ်ယုနုနု | the railway station | ၅၀/- | ၃၅/- | Daw Yuzana Kyin |
| ဦးကိုကိုလေး | Mingaladon Airport | ၇၀၀/- | ၅၀၀/- | U Ko Ko Le |
| ဒေါ်စောရီ | Tourist Burma office | ၄၀/- | ၃၀/- | Daw Saw Yi |
| ဦးလှမြင့် | Australian Embassy | ၅၀/- | ၃၅/- | U Hla Myint |
| ဒေါ်လှကြည် | YMCA | ၃၀/- | ၂၀/- | Daw Hla Kyi |
| ဦးအောင်ခင်ဆင့် | Foreign Students' Hostel | ၆၀/- | ၄၅/- | U Aung Khin Hsint |

Exercise for written answer

Reorder the lines below to make up two separate dialogues between a taxi driver and his passenger, and show which character speaks which lines (S1: ... S2: ..., where S1 is the taxi driver, and S2 is the passenger). The speakers do not necessarily speak alternate lines.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE**Dialogue 1**

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. ၆၀/- ပေးပါဗျာ။ | 11. S1: ဘယ် သွားချင်လဲ။ |
| 2. ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ၆၀/-။ | 18. S2: ဘူတာကြီး သွားမယ်။ |
| 3. ၃၅/- ပေးမယ်။ ရမလား။ | 9. S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ တက်ပါ။ |
| 4. ၅၀/- နော်။ | 13. S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးရမလဲ။ |
| 5. ၆၀/- လား။ | 1. S1: ၆၀/- ပေးပါဗျာ |
| 6. ၅၀/- ထားပါ။ | 5. S2: ၆၀/- လား။ |
| 7. ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | 2. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ၆၀/-။ |
| 8. ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ | 15. S2: နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ |
| 9. ကောင်းပါပြီ။ တက်ပါ။ | 17. S2: မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ |
| 10. ကောင်းပါပြီ။ သွားမယ်။ | 12. S1: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးမလဲ။ |
| 11. ဘယ် သွားချင်လဲ။ | 3. S2: ၃၅/- ပေးမယ်။ ရမလား။ |
| 12. ဘယ်လောက် ပေးမလဲ။ | 16. S1: သိပ် နဲ့တယ်ဗျာ။ နဲ့နဲ့ တိုးပေးပါအုံး။ |
| 13. ဘယ်လောက် ပေးရမလဲ။ | 6. S1: ၅၀/- ထားပါ။ |
| 14. ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | 10. S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ သွားမယ်။ |
| 15. နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ | 4. Dialogue 2: S2: ၅၀/- နော်။ |
| 16. သိပ် နဲ့တယ်ဗျာ။ နဲ့နဲ့ တိုးပေးပါအုံး။ | 8. S1: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ |
| 17. မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ | 14. S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ |
| 18. ဘူတာကြီး သွားမယ်။ | 7. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 4

CAFÉS AND RESTAURANTS

New words

Some new foods —

| | | |
|-----------------|---|-----------------|
| ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် | fried noodles ["noodle-fried"] | k'auq-s'wèh-jaw |
| ထမင်းကြော် | fried rice ["rice-fried"] | t'āmìn-jaw |
| အစိမ်းကြော် | fried vegetables ["raw-fried"] | āsèin-jaw |
| တောက်တောက်ကြော် | fried minced meat ["ground meat patty-fried"] | tauq-tauq-caw |

These dishes include meat and fried vegetables. If you don't specify the meat, the default is usually pork.

| | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| —ပွဲ | dish, serving, portion | pwèh |
| —ထမင်းကြော် သုံးပွဲ | three dishes of fried rice | t'āmìn-jaw thoùn-bwèh |

Foods. For more on words for restaurant dishes, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 9.

Restaurants. Needless to say, there are different kinds of restaurant to be found in Burma. The dishes used in this Lesson are the sort you would find in a fairly large Chinese restaurant. There are also Indian restaurants, where you'll find a different range of dishes (and no pork), and Burmese restaurants with a different cuisine again. A step down in size from this class of establishment come the cafés and cold drinks bars, again with fare differing according to national traditions and inclinations, and after them the market and roadside stalls, each with its own set of specialities. Here are some of the names:

| | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ထမင်းဆိုင် | restaurant | "rice-shop" | t'āmìn-zain |
| စားသောက်ဆိုင် | restaurant (genteel) | "eat-drink-shop" | sà-thauq-s'ain |
| တရုတ်ဆိုင် | Chinese restaurant | "Chinese-eat-drink-shop" | tāyouq-s'ain |
| or တရုတ်စားသောက်ဆိုင် | | | tāyouq sà-thauq-s'ain |
| ကုလားဆိုင် | Indian restaurant | "Indian-rice-shop" | kālā-zain |
| or ကုလားထမင်းဆိုင် | kālā t'āmìn-zain | | |
| စားတော်ဆက် | restaurant (pretentious) | "eat-honorific-present" * | sà-daw-zeq |
| စားရိပ်မြို့ | restaurant (pretentious) | "eat-refuge, haven" | sà-yeiq-myoun |
| ပျော်ပွဲစားရုံ | restaurant (pretentious) | "enjoy-feast-eat-establishment" | pyaw-pwèh-sà-youn |
| လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် | café (Burmese or Indian) | "tea-juice-shop" | lāp'eq-ye-zain |
| ကဖီ | café | [from the English] | kāp'i |
| အအေးဆိုင် | cold drinks bar | "cold-shop" | āè-zain |

* [the allusion is to the days of the Burmese court: presenters of the royal repast]

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a restaurant in Burma. S1 is a waiter, and S2 is a customer.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S1: ဘာ စားမလဲ။ | What will you have? | Ba sà-mālèh? |
| S2: ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် ရမလား။ | Could we have some fried noodles? | K'auq-s'wèh-jaw yá-mālà? |
| S1: ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် မရှိတော့ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | There aren't any fried noodles left. | K'auq-s'wèh-jaw mǎshí-dáw-ba-bù, K'in-bya |
| ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | They've all gone. | Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| S2: ထမင်းကြော်ကော။ | How about fried rice? | T'ǎmìn-jaw-gàw? |
| ထမင်းကြော် ရမလား။ | Have you got any fried rice? | T'ǎmìn-jaw yá-mālà? |
| S1: ရပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Yes. | Yá-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို ထမင်းကြော် ပေးပါ။ | Then give us some fried rice. | Di-lo-s'ò t'ǎmìn-jaw pè-ba. |
| S1: ထမင်းကြော် ဘယ်နှစ်ပွဲ ယူမလဲ။ | How many plates of fried rice would you like? | T'ǎmìn-jaw beh-hnǎpmèh yu-mālèh? |
| S2: သုံးပွဲ။ | Three. | Thoùn-bwèh. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| <i>Time passes</i> | | |
| S2: ဒီမှာ အိမ်သာ ရှိသလား။ | Is there a toilet here? | Di-hma ein-dha shí-dhǎlà? |
| S1: ရှိပါတယ်။ ဟိုဘက်မှာ။ | Yes, there is. Over there. | Shí-ba-deh. Ho-beq-hma. |
| or: မရှိပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No, there isn't. | Mǎshí-ba-bù, K'in-bya. |
| ဆောရီးပဲ။ | Sorry. | S'àw-rì-bèh. |
| <i>More time passes</i> | | |
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ရှင်းမယ်။ | Can we settle up now? | Paiq-s'an shìn-meh. |
| ဘယ်လောက် ကျသလဲ။ | What does it come to? | Beh-lauq cá-dhǎlèh? |
| S1: ၉၀/-ပါ။ | K90. | Kò-zeh-ba. |
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ | Here you are. | Paiq-s'an di-hma. |
| သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye. | Thwà-meh-naw. |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Houq-kéh. Kaùn-ba-bi. |

Exercises on the new dishes

Format for Ex. 1. Look at List 1 to what each dish is.

Prompt: Ask ဦးသော်ကောင်း what he's going to have.

L/S2: ဦးသော်ကောင်း ဘာ စားမလဲ။

S1: ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် စားမယ်။

L/S2: ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော်လား။

S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော်ပါ။

Format for Ex. 2. Get your answers from List 1 below.

S1: ဦးသော်ကောင်း ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် မှာသလား။ L/S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် မှာပါတယ်။

S1: လေးပွဲ မှာသလား။ L/S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော်လေးပွဲ မှာပါတယ်။

Reminder: "fried rice and fried noodles" = ထမင်းကြော်နဲ့ ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော်

For the Practice Dialogues

Imagine that one of the people in the list below is taking a group of friends out to a restaurant.

You take the part of the host. First ask if the restaurant has what you want (use ရမလား:

rather than ရှိသလား). If it has, order it; if not, ask for your second choice (the dish below the one on the list). Then follow the prompt.

Dialogue 1. You take the part of U Thaw Kaung.

Dialogue 2. You take the part of Awin.

Practice Dialogue 3 is here to keep alive your memory of the café foods and drinks. It uses the List in a different way. Ignore the second and subsequent columns and just concentrate on the names. Imagine that they are a group of people that U Thaw Kaung has taken out to a café. You take U Thaw Kaung's part, and you ask each person in turn what he or she would like to eat. As you go along you keep a running list of what you're going to order, and recite it after each person has added his or her choice. When the waiter comes you recite the whole list.

List 1: restaurant fare

| နာမည် | eats | qty | and | qty | cost | name |
|---------------|-------------------|-----|-------------|-----------|-------|---------------|
| ဦးသော်ကောင်: | fried noodles | 4 | beer | 4 bottles | ၂၇၀/- | U Thaw Kaung |
| ဒေါ်ခင်သန်း: | fried rice | 4 | - | - | ၅၀/- | Daw Khin Than |
| စမ်းစမ်းမေ | fried vegetables | 1 | - | - | ၂၀/- | San San Me |
| ကိုအောင်ခင် | fried mince/patty | 3 | - | - | ၁၀၅/- | Ko Aung Khin |
| အဝင်း: | fried noodles | 2 | fried rice | 3 | ၁၃၅/- | Ahwin |
| ကိုစိုးသိန်း: | fried vegetables | 1 | fried mince | 2 | ၉၀/- | Ko So Thein |

List 2: café fare

| နာမည် | eats | qty | and | qty | cost | name |
|---------------|-----------|-----|--------------|------------|-------|---------------|
| ဦးသော်ကောင်: | parata | 2 | Sparkling | 1 "object" | ၃၈/- | U Thaw Kaung |
| ဒေါ်ခင်သန်း: | samosa | 4 | tea | 4 cups | ၃၂/- | Daw Khin Than |
| စမ်းစမ်းမေ | pudding | 1 | Coca-cola | 1 bottle | ၄၀/- | San San Me |
| ကိုအောင်ခင် | cake | 3 | coffee | 2 cups | ၂၆/- | Ko Aung Khin |
| အဝင်း: | hamburger | 5 | Pepsi | 5 bottles | ၃၀၀/- | Ahwin- |
| ကိုစိုးသိန်း: | ice cream | 2 | orange juice | 1 glass | ၄၆/- | Ko So Thein |

Not all of the above orders are used in the Exercises and Practice Dialogues. They are reproduced here in full for use in class.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following message into Burmese.

1. Ma Ma Cho.
2. Today I have to go to the library.
3. I can't come to the house at 12.
4. I'll come at 5.
5. At 4.30 go to the Mingala Restaurant.
6. It's near the YMCA.
7. There buy a helping of fried rice and

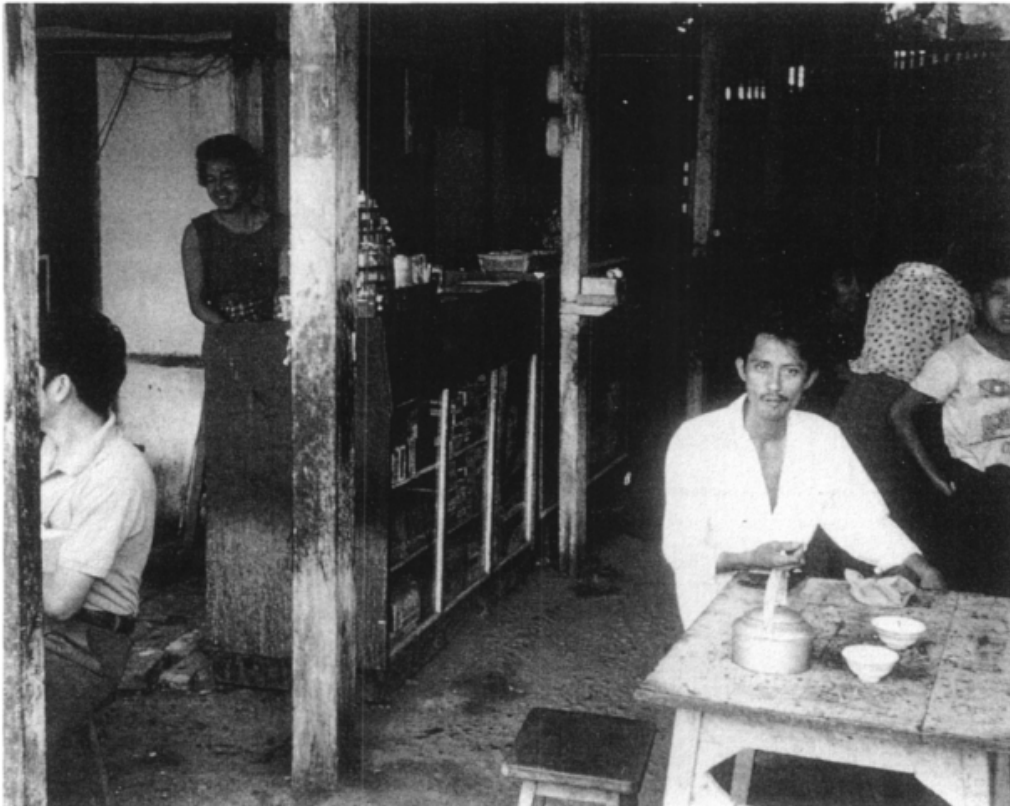
KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

မမချို။
ဒီနေ့ ကျွန်ုပ်တို့ သွားရမယ်။
၁၂-နာရီမှာ အိမ် မလာနိုင်ပါဘူး။
၅-နာရီမှာ လာမယ်။
၄-နာရီခွဲမှာ မင်္ဂလာစားသောက်ဆိုင် သွားပါ။
ဝိုင်အမ်စီအေနားမှာ။
အဲဒီမှာ ထမင်းကြော် တစ်ပွဲနဲ့။

- two helpings of fried noodles.
8. We'll eat them at home.
 9. Don't pay any money.
 10. Say that² I ordered it.
 11. I'll settle the bill later.
 12. Ko Aye wants to come too.
 13. He wants to see you.
 14. That's all.

ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် နှစ်ပွဲ ဝယ်ပါ။
 အိမ်မှာ စားမယ်။
 ပိုက်ဆံ မပေးပါနဲ့။
 ကျမ မှာတယ်လို့ ပြောပါ။
 နောက်မှ ပိုက်ဆံ ရှင်းမယ်။
 ကိုအေးလဲ လာချင်ပါတယ်။
 မမချိုနဲ့ တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။
 ဒါပါပဲ။

1. "can [verb]" = [verb]-နိုင်-။ "cannot [verb]" = မ-[verb]-နိုင်-။
2. "to say that [sentence]" = [sentence]-လို့ ပြော-။



At a small café in Mandalay.

The kettle on the table contains "plain tea" (လက်ဖက်ရည်ကြမ်း or ရေနွေး): see Level 5, Topic 4.

Extracts from a restaurant menu

Note dishes numbered 9, 23, 97, 100

ထော့ယဉ်စားရိပ်မြို့

၃၉၆၊ ၈၁ - လမ်း ၃၀/၃၁ လမ်းကြား၊ မန္တလေးမြို့။

Htaw Yin Restaurant

ကြက်သားဟင်းများ။

Assorted Chicken

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| ၁။ ကြက်အခြောက်ကြော် | Deep Fried Chicken | 50 |
| ၂။ ကြက်စဉ်းကြော် | Fried Chicken Spicy | 50 |
| ၃။ ကြက်ကောင်လုံးကြော် | Deepfried Whole Chicken | 120 |
| ၄။ ကြက်သားပေါင်း | Chicken Steamed | |
| ၅။ ကြက်သားမြည်လုံးချမ်းသာ | Chicken With Assorted Meat | 55 |
| ၆။ ကြက်သားပွတ် | Chicken Boiled | 60 |
| ၇။ ကြက်ကုန်းပေါင်းကြော် | Fried Chicken with dry chilli Onion | 45 |
| ၈။ ကြောက်မကျည်း | Boiledchicken With Gyo Ma | 60 |
| ၉။ ကြက်အစိမ်းကြော် | Fried Chicken with Assorted vegetable | 50 |
| ၁၀။ ကြက်တောက်တောက်ကြော် | Chicken Mince | 45 |
| ၁၁။ ကြက်ပိပ္ပားအစုံကြော် | Chicken With Beancurd | 30 |
| ၁၂။ ကြက်မျှစ်ချဉ် | Chicken With Sour Bamboo Shoots | 45 |
| ၁၃။ ကြက်မျှစ် | Chicken With Mushroom | 50 |
| ၁၄။ ကြက်မုန့်ချဉ်ကြော် | Chicken With Sour Mustard | 45 |
| ၁၅။ ကြက်ချိုချဉ် | Chicken With Sweet And Sour | 45 |
| ၁၆။ ကြက်သားလုံးခြောက်ကြော် | Deep Fried Chicken Ball | 50 |
| ၁၇။ တောင်ပံအစုံကြော် | Chicken Wing With Onion Tomato | 50 |
| ၁၈။ သော်လှကျည်း | Fried Hot Mince-chicken | 45 |
| ၁၉။ ကြက်မြစ်ကြက်သဲကြော် | Chicken Liver And Gizard Fried | 45 |
| ၂၀။ ကြက်ခြေထောက်ချဉ်စင် | Chicken Leg With Chilli And Sour | 45 |
| ၂၁။ ကြက်ချဉ်စင်ကြော် | Chicken With Chilli And Sour | 45 |
| ၂၂။ ကြက်ခြေထောက်သုတ် | Chicken Leg Salad | 75 |

ဝက်သားဟင်းများ။

Assorted Pork

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|----|
| ၂၃။ ဝက်အစိမ်းကြော် | Pork With Assorted Vegetable | 40 |
| ၂၄။ ဝက်တောက်တောက်ကြော် | Pork Mince | 45 |
| ၂၅။ ဝက်မုန့်ချဉ် | Pork With Sour Mustard | 45 |
| ၂၆။ ဝက်ကုန်းပေါင်းကြော် | Pork With Dry Chilli And Onion | 45 |
| ၂၇။ ဝက်ပဲငပိ | Pork With Soy Bean Sauce | 45 |
| ၂၈။ ဝက်အစုံကြော် | Pork With Onion And Tomato | 45 |
| ၂၉။ ဝက်ချဉ်စင် | Pork With Chilli And Sour | 45 |
| ၃၀။ ဝက်ချိုချဉ် | pork With Sweet And Sour | 45 |
| ၃၁။ သုံးထပ်သားချဉ်ပေါင်း | pork with Sour Mustard Steamed | |
| ၃၂။ ဝက်စားပေါင်း | Pork Leg Stewed | |
| ၃၃။ ဝက်သားလုံးခြောက်ကြော် | Deep Fried Pork Ball | |
| ၃၄။ သော်လှလှ | Fried Hot Mince-Pork | |
| ၃၅။ ဝက်သားကင်သုတ် | Pork Roast Salad | |
| ၃၆။ ဝက်သားကင် | Pork Roast | |
| ၃၇။ ဝက်နံကင် | Pork Side Roast | |
| ၃၈။ နံရိုးအခြောက်ကြော် | Deep Fried Pork Chops | |
| ၃၉။ ဝက်ခွေးနောက်အခြောက်ကြော် | Deep Fried Pork Brains | |

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ၄၀။ ဝက်ခေါက်ချဉ်စင် | Pork Sk'in With Hot Sour Sauce |
| ၄၁။ ဝက်မျှစ်ချဉ်ကျော် | Pork With Sour BamBoo Shoots |
| ၄၂။ ဝက်မျှစ်ကြော် | Pork With Mushroom |
| ၄၃။ ဝက်မြည်လုံးချမ်းသာ | Pork With Assorted Meat |
| ၄၄။ ဝက်သဲအစုံကြော် | Pork Liver With Onion Tomato |
| ၄၅။ ဝက်ကျောက်ကပ်အစုံကြော် | Pork Kidney with Onion Tomato |

ခေါက်ဆွဲများ။

Assorted Fried Noodle

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| ၉၆။ ကြက်ခွေးခေါက်ဆွဲ | Yifu Noodle |
| ၉၇။ ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် | Fried Noodle with Meat |
| ၉၈။ ကြာဇံကြော် | Fried Vermicelli with Meat |
| ၉၉။ မြေပင်ကြော် | Fried Rice-Vermicelli with Meat |

ထမင်းများ။

Assorted Rice

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ၁၀၀။ ထမင်းကြော် | Fried Rice with Meat |
| ၁၀၁။ ထမင်းပေါင်း | Steamed Rice with Meat And Vegetable |
| ၁၀၂။ ၁၂-မျိုးထမင်းပေါင်း | Mixed Meat Rice |

ပဲပြားဟင်းများ။

Assorted Bean Curd

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ၁၀၃။ ပုဇွန်ပဲပြားကြော် | Stewed Bean Curd with Shrimp |
| ၁၀၄။ ပဲငပိပဲပြားကြော် | Bean Curd with Soy Bean Sauce |

အထူးဟင်းများ။

Assorted Special Dish

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ၁၀၅။ ဆေးပွင့် | Ma Aye Pwint |
| ၁၀၆။ ဝက်သားလိပ် | Deep Fried Pork Rolls |
| ၁၀၇။ အကြော်စုံ | Deep Fried Assorted Meat |
| ၁၀၈။ ကင်စုံ | Assorted Pork Roast |
| ၁၀၉။ ကြက်သားစက္ကူထုပ် | Paper-wrapped Chicken |
| ၁၁၀။ ပုဇွန်စက္ကူထုပ် | Paper-wrapped Shrimp |
| ၁၁၁။ ပုဇွန်ပေါင်ပုဇွန်ကြော် | Fried Shrimp with Bread Slice |
| ၁၁၂။ စည်သုပ်ပြောင်းဖူးသေး | Young Sweet Corn |
| ၁၁၃။ စည်သုပ်စတော်ပဲ | Green Pea Seeds |
| ၁၁၄။ ပင်လယ်ပျော့ချဉ်စင် | Sea Cucumber with Hot Sour |
| ၁၁၅။ မြည်ကြိုးငါးချဉ်စင် | Squid Rolls with Hot Sour |
| ၁၁၆။ ငါးမန်းတောင်ကြော် | Shark'S Fin with Assorted Meat |
| ၁၁၇။ ငါးမန်းတောင်ဟင်းရည် | Shark'S Fin Soup |
| ၁၁၈။ ငှက်သိုက် | Bird Nest |
| ၁၁၉။ ဂဏန်းအစာသုတ် | Fried Crabs with Meat |
| ၁၂၀။ ဂဏန်းလက်မကြော် | Fried Crab Claws |
| ၁၂၁။ ဂဏန်းချဉ်စင်ကြော် | Crab-Meat with Chilli And Sour |
| ၁၂၂။ ဂဏန်းအစုံကြော် | Crab-Meat with Onion Tomato |
| ၁၂၃။ ကညတ်နုကြော် | Asparagus Spear |
| ၁၂၄။ ဝက်ပေါင်ခြောက်မုန့်ချဉ်ဖြူ | Fried Cabbage with Ham |
| ၁၂၅။ ယူနန်ဝက်ပေါင်ခြောက် | Yunnan Ham |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 5

SHOPS

To make a change, you can start this Lesson with a puzzle:
don't look at the New words, but go straight to Exercise 1 and do that.

New words

| | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| ကြည့်- | to look, look at | cí- |
| —ကြည့်မယ်။ | I'm going to look. | Cí-meh. |
| —ကြည့်မယ်နော်။ | I'm going to look. Is that all right? | Cí-meh-naw? |
| —ကြည့်ပါ။ | Go ahead. Feel free. ["Look."] | Cí-ba. |
| —ကြည့်ရအောင်။ | Can I have a look? | Cí-yá-aun. |
| ["Let's have a look," but used in the same context as ကြည့်မယ်နော်။] | | |
| ကီးချိန်: | key chain | kì-c'èin |

Words for measuring and counting —

| | | |
|---------|--|-------|
| ခွက် | cup, glass | k'weq |
| ပုလင်း: | bottle | pālìn |
| ပွဲ | dish, serving | p'mèh |
| ခု | piece, item, article | k'ú |
| ဘူး: | jar, pot, tin/can, tube, box, pack, carton | bù |
| လိပ် | roll (of film, toilet paper, ...) | leiq |
| လုံး: | "item" | loùn |

"globe-shape" from လုံးတယ် "to be spherical": used as a count word for —

- A. appropriately shaped objects (tennis balls, light bulbs, oranges); also extended to cover
- B. cylindrical objects (bamboo poles, bottles, bananas);
- C. cube-shaped objects (houses, tables, chairs, computers);
- D. objects of roughly comparable shape (bags, envelopes, hats)

Examples of count words

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| ကော်ဖီ လေးခွက် | "coffee-four-cup" | four cups of coffee | kaw-p'i lè-gweq |
| ပက်စီ လေးပုလင်း: | "Pepsi-four-bottle" | four bottles of Pepsi | wi-săki lè-pālìn |
| အစိမ်းကြော် လေးပွဲ | "fried veg-four-dish" | four servings of fried vegetables | ăseìn-jaw lè-pwèh |
| နို့မှုန့် လေးဘူး: | "milk powder-four-jar" | four jars of milk powder | nó-hmóun lè-bù |
| ဖလင် လေးလိပ် | "film-four-roll" | four rolls of film | p'ălin lè-leiq |
| ပြက္ခဒိန် လေးခု | "calendar-four-item" | four calendars | pyeq-k'ădein lè-gú |
| ခါတ်ခဲ လေးလုံး: | "battery-four-object" | four batteries | daq-k'èh lè-loùn |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a shop in Burma. S1 is a customer, and S2 is the shopkeeper.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S1: ကော်ဖီမှုန့် ရှိလား။ | Have you got any instant coffee? | Kaw-p'i-hmóun shí-là? |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ဒီမှာ။ | Yes. Here. | Shí-ba-deh, K'in-bya. Di-hma. |
| S1 reaches out to pick up the jar. | | |
| S1: ကြည့်မယ်နော်။ | Is it all right if I have a look? | Cí-meh-naw? |

| | | |
|---|--|----------------------------------|
| S2: ကြည့်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | Go ahead. That's all right. | Cí-ba. Yá-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဒါ ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။ | How much is this? | Da beh-lauq-lèh? |
| S2: ၇၀/-ပါ။ | K70. | K'un-hnäs'eh-ba. |
| S1: များတယ်။ | That's too much. | Myà-deh. |
| လျှော့ပါအုံးလား။ | How about dropping the price? | Sháw-ba-oùn-là? |
| S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးချင်သလဲ။ | How much do you want to pay? | Beh-lauq pè-jin-dhǎlèh? |
| S1: ၅၀/- ထားပါ။ | Make it K50. | Ngà-zèh t'à-ba. |
| ရမလား။ | Would you accept that? | Yá-mǎlà? |
| S2: မရပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No, it wouldn't. | Mǎyá-bù, K'in-bya. |
| နဲပါတယ်။ | That's too little. | Nè-ba-deh. |
| ဘယ်နှစ်ဘူး ယူမှာလဲ။ | How many jars are you going to have? | Beh-hnǎbù yu-hma-lèh? |
| S1: နှစ်ဘူး ယူမယ်။ | Two. | Hnǎbù yu-mèh. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို ၁၂၀/- ပေးပါ။ | In that case, let me have K120. | Dì-lo-s'ò tǎyá hnäs'eh pè-ba. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| S2: ဒါပဲလား။ | Is that all? | Da-bèh-là? |
| S1: ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | No, there's something else. | Shí-ba-dhè-deh. |
| နို့မှုန့် ရှိလား။ | Have you got any milk powder? | Nó-hmoún shí-là? |
| S2: နို့မှုန့် မရှိတော့ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No, I haven't any more. | Nó-hmoún mǎshí-dáw-bù. K'in-bya. |
| ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | It's sold out. | Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| S1: အော်။ ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ | Oh. Do you know where I | Aw. Dì-nà-hma beh-hma |
| ရမလဲ သိလား။ | could get some near here? | yá-mǎlèh thí-là? |
| S2 points over the road. | | |
| S2: ဟိုဘက်ဆိုင်မှာ | You might get some in that | Ho-beq-s'ain-hma |
| ရမလား မသိဘူး။ | shop over there. | yá-mǎlà mǎthí-bù. |
| | ["I don't know if you would get some in that shop."] | |
| S1: အော်။ ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Oh. Right. | Aw. Houq-kéh. |
| S1 hands over the money and takes the change. | | |
| S1: သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye. | Thwà-mèh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi, K'in-bya. |

Exercises on the new countwords

| နာမည် | commodity | how much/many? | name |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| ဆရာဝင်: | tea | 4 cups | Saya Win |
| တင်တင်ဝင်း: | Sparkling | 3 bottles | Tin Tin Win |
| ကိုရဲမြင့် | fried rice | 2 dishes | Ko Ye Myint |
| မခင်ရီ | instant coffee | 2 jars | Ma Khin Yi |
| ကိုဌေးလှိုင် | milk powder | 1 jar | Ko Htay Hlaing |
| ကိုဆုမြိုင် | film | 2 rolls | Ko Hsu Myaing |
| မခင်အေး | toilet paper | 1 roll | Ma Khin Aye |
| မခင်မေစီ | parata | 3 | Ma Khin May Si |
| ကိုဇေယျ | key chain | 8 | Ko Zeyya |
| တက်ဖြိုးဝင်း | calendar | 6 | Tet Pyo Win |
| သန္တာဝင်း | battery | 4 | Thanda Win |
| ချိုဇင်နွယ် | hat | 1 | Cho Zin Nwe |
| ဦးလှသိန်း | envelope | 6 | U Hla Thein |

Model for Ex. 1

This Exercise begins on familiar ground. That is to demonstrate how neatly the new words that are brought in later follow the old pattern. There is a puzzle when you get to some of the later exchanges.

Prompt: Look at the List to check the answers to your question. Here comes Saya Win.

Ask what he wants to drink — and use the female tag on the question.

L/S2: ဘာ သောက်ချင်သလဲ ရှင်။ S1: လက်ဖက်ရည် ရလား။

Prompt: Say he can have some.

L/S2: ရပါတယ်။ S1: လေးခွက် ပေးပါ။

Prompt: Say four cups of tea: OK.

L/S2: လက်ဖက်ရည် လေးခွက်။ ရပါတယ်။

Model for Ex. 2. This exercise gives you some practice in using the new count words.

Use the list to find the answer to S1's question.

S1: မခင်ရီ ဘာ ဝယ်သလဲ။ L/S2: ကော်ဖီမှုန့် နှစ်ဘူး ဝယ်ပါတယ်။



Pavement sales, Rangoon

For the Practice Dialogues

Imagine you are out to buy something in a shop. Follow the prompt.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Man shops for audio tapes. | 3. Man shops for toilet paper. |
| 2. Woman shops for T-shirts. | 4. Woman shops for batteries. |

Exercise for written answer

Another exercise in counting. Write out the Burmese for the following. Use full words, not figures (သုံးဆယ် not ၃၀): they better reflect the regularity of the structure of the phrases.

1. 50 pounds
2. 20 minutes
3. 800 dollars
4. 100 envelopes
5. 4,000 metres
6. 7,000 baht
7. three glasses of orange juice
8. two cups of tea
9. four bottles of Coca-cola
10. one bottle of Sparkling
11. four dishes of fried mince/patty
12. five dishes of fried vegetables
13. six jars of milk powder
14. four jars of instant coffee
15. ten rolls of toilet paper
16. thirty six rolls of film
17. twelve calendars
18. three paratas
19. one hat
20. six batteries

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ပေါင် ငါးဆယ်
မိနစ် နှစ်ဆယ်
ဒေါ်လာ ရှစ်ရာ
စာအိတ် တစ်ရာ
မီတာ လေးထောင်
ဘတ် ခုနစ်ထောင်
လိမ္မော်ရည် သုံးခွက်
လက်ဖက်ရည် နှစ်ခွက်
ကိုကာကိုလာ လေးပုလင်း
စပါကလင် တစ်ပုလင်း
တောက်တောက်ကြော် လေးပွဲ
အစိမ်းကြော် ငါးပွဲ
နို့မှုန့် ခြောက်ဘူး
ကော်ဖီမှုန့် လေးဘူး
အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ ဆယ်လိပ်
ဖလင် သုံးဆယ်ခြောက်လိပ်
ပြက္ခဒိန် ဆယ်နှစ်ခု
ပလာတာ သုံးခု
ဦးထုပ် တစ်လုံး
ခါတ်ခဲ ခြောက်လုံး

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 6 YOUR COMMAND OF BURMESE

New words

သင်-

— ဗမာစကား သင်တယ်။

— ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ်။

to learn

He learns/learned Burmese.

He is/was learning Burmese.

[For a note on [verb]-နေ- see 2.10A]

thin-

Băma sǎgà thin-deh.

Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh.

Openings

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ်
ဟုတ်လား။

You're learning Burmese,
is that so?

Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh
houq-là?

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ်
ကြားတယ်။

I hear you're learning
Burmese.

Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh
cà-deh.

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် ဆို။

I'm told you're learning
Burmese?

Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh s'o?

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် နော်။

You're learning Burmese,
aren't you?

Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh-naw?

Responses

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ Yes. Houq-kéh.
 S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ သင်နေပါတယ်။ That's right. I am. Houq-pa-deh. Thin-ne-ba-deh.

Next question and response

S1: တော်တော် ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။ Can you speak it quite a bit now? Taw-daw pyàw-da-q-pi-là?
 S2: သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ I can't speak it very well yet. Theiq mǎpyàw-da-q-thè-ba-bù.

— တော်တော် /တော်ဒေ/ quite a bit, pretty well taw-daw

You could make up other responses that would be *linguistically* acceptable ("I can speak quite a bit" and similar), but social constraints limit you to this one response only — or something in a similar vein.

Sample Dialogue

S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner who is learning the language.

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် I hear you're learning Bǎma sǎgà thin-ne-deh
 ကြားတယ်။ Burmese. cà-deh.
 S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ That's right. Houq-pa-deh.
 သင်နေပါတယ်။ I am. Thin-ne-ba-deh.
 S1: တော်တော် ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။ Can you speak it quite a bit now? Taw-daw pyàw-da-q-pi-là?
 S2: သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ I can't speak it very well yet. Theiq mǎpyàw-da-q-thè-ba-bù.
 S1: စကား ပြောတာ You pronounce it very well. Sǎgà pyàw-da
 သိပ် ပီတာပဲ။ theiq pi-da-bèh.
 S2: အော်။ တကယ်ပဲလား။ Oh. Really? Aw. Tǎgeh-bèh-là?
 ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ Thank you. Cè-zù tin-ba-deh.

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues 1-4. Use the responses set out in the Sample Dialogue above.

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following dialogue have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

1. S1: -သင်-စကား-ဆို-နေတယ်-ဗမာ
2. S2: -သင်နေ-ဟုတ်ပါ-တယ်-ပါတယ်
3. S1: -လား-ပြောတတ်-တော်တော်-ပြီ
4. S2: -မပြော-ဘူး-သိပ်-တတ်သေး-ပါ
5. S1: -အရမ်း-ပြော-စကား-ပဲ-ပီတာ-တာ
6. S2: -ပဲ-တကယ်-အော်-လား
7. S2: -သိပ်-သေး-ဘူး-ပါ-မဟုတ်

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

S1: -ဗမာ-စကား: -သင်-နေတယ် -ဆို။
 S2: -ဟုတ်ပါ-တယ်။ -သင်နေ-ပါတယ်။
 S1: -တော်တော် -ပြောတတ်-ပြီ-လား။
 S2: -သိပ် -မပြော-တတ်သေး-ပါ-ဘူး။
 S1: -စကား: -ပြော-တာ -အရမ်း: -ပီတာ-ပဲ။
 S2: -အော်။ -တကယ်-ပဲ-လား။
 S2: -သိပ် -မဟုတ်-သေး-ပါ-ဘူး။

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 7

TRAVELS: PAST TRIPS

New words

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| ကြာ- | to take/last/spend a long time | ca- |
| — ကြာကြာ / ကျာကျာ/ | for a long time | ca-ja |
| — ကြာကြာ နေသလား။ | Did you stay long? | Ca-ja ne-dhālà? |
| — ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလား။ | Did you stay there long? | Ca-ja ne-géh-dhālà? |

[From Level 2, Topic 7: -ခဲ့- (-k'éh-, -géh-) is suffixed verbs when you are talking about the past, or when the action took place somewhere else; for example, when someone arrives home saying they've been to the market, you would ask, not ဘာ ဝယ်သလဲ , but ဘာ ဝယ်ခဲ့သလဲ။ "What did you buy (back there, in that place where you were)?"]

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ | for how long | beh-lauq ca-ja |
| — ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေသလဲ။ | How long did you stay? | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-dhālèh? |
| — ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလဲ။ | How long did you stay there? | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-géhdhālèh? |

| | | |
|--|------------------|-------------------|
| [quantity]-ပဲ (/ -ပဲ/ or voiced / -ပဲ/) | only [quantity] | -p'èh, -bèh |
| [not as much as I hoped/feared, not as much as you might expect/hope/fear] | | |
| — တစ်လပဲ | only a month | tālā-bèh |
| — ဆယ့်ငါးကျပ်ပဲ | only 15 kyats | s'éh-ngà-jaq-p'èh |
| — နှစ်ပုလင်းပဲ | only two bottles | hnäpālìn-bèh |
| Meaning 2: indeed; adds slight emphasis to a sentence. Examples: | | |
| — တစ်လပဲ | only a month | tālā-bèh |

| | | |
|---|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| — S1: ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလား။ | Did you stay long? | Ca-ja ne-géh-dhālà? |
| — S2: ကြာကြာ မနေခဲ့ပါဘူး။ | No, I didn't. | Ca-ja māne-géh-ba-bù. |
| or, more commonly — | | |
| — S2: မကြာပါဘူး။ | No [I didn't spend long]. | Māca-ba-bù. |
| often followed by a statement of how long — | | |
| — S2: တစ်လပဲ နေခဲ့ပါတယ်။ | I only stayed a month. | Tālā-bèh ne-géh-ba-deh. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S1: ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ | Have you ever been to Burma? | Bāma-pye yauq-p'ù-dhālà? |
| S2: ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ | Yes, I have. | Yauq-p'ù-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက် | How many times | Beh-hnāk'auq |
| ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။ | have you been? | yauq-p'ù-dhālèh? |
| S2: တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ | I've been once. | Tāk'auq yauq-p'ù-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။ | When were you there? | Beh-dòun-gá yauq-k'éh-dhālèh? |
| S2: ၁၉၈၇-ခုနှစ်က ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။ | I was there in 1987. | 1987-k'ú-hníq-ká yauq-k'éh-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလဲ။ | How long did you stay? | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-géh-dhālèh? |
| S2: ၃-လ နေခဲ့ပါတယ်။ | I stayed three months. | Thoùn-lá ne-gé-ba-deh. |

Variants

S1: ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလား။

Did you stay long?

Ca-ja ne-géh-dhālà?

S2: မကြာပါဘူး။

No.

Măca-ba-bù.

တစ်လပဲ နေခဲ့ပါတယ်။

I only stayed a month.

Tălă-bèh ne-géh-ba-deh.

For the sake of completeness, most of the answers in the Sample Dialogue are “full sentence answers”: When were you there? I was there in 1987. In face-to-face conversation, many of them would be shortened; for example:

S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။

Beh-dòun-gá yauq-k'éh-dhālèh?

S2: ၁၉၈၇-ခုနှစ်ကပါ။

1987-k'ú-hniq-ká-ba.

S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလဲ။

Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-géh-dhālèh?

S2: ၃-လ။

Thoùn-lá.

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions and make a note of the answers in the blanks. There will be no prompt, except to start you off. Just ask the questions you need to fill in the blanks, following the order on the page. When you have been given one answer, proceed with the next question.

Not all the people in the Lists below figure in the Practice Dialogues. Those that don't can be used in class.

List 1. (NB no prompt)

| နာမည် | country | n° of times | when | how long | name |
|--------------------|---------|-------------|------|----------|-------------------|
| ဒေါ်မြမြစမ်း | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Mya Mya San |
| ဦးငွေရ | ... | ... | ... | ... | U Ngwe Ya |
| ကိုစိန်ဌေး | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ko Sein Htay |
| မခင်သန်းသန်း | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ma Khin Than Than |
| ဆရာဘစောမြင့် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Saya Ba Saw Myint |
| ဒေါ်စိန်စိန် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Sein Sein |
| မစံလေး | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ma San Lay |
| ကိုဝင်းမောင် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ko Win Maung |
| ဒေါက်တာဦးကျော်စိန် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Dr U Kyaw Sein |
| မပြုံး | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ma Pyone |

Dialogues Set 2. You use List 2 below to answer the questions. Give a full sentence answer: this gives you practice in speaking whole sentences, and it's easy enough to change to shorter sentences when you want to later.

List 2

| <i>name</i> | <i>country</i> | <i>n° of times</i> | <i>when</i> | <i>how long</i> |
|-------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Ms Tailor | Burma | 1 | last May | 14 days |
| Mr. Draper | Burma | 1 | last June | 7 days |
| Mrs. Weaver | Burma | 1 | last year | 1 month |
| Mr. Dyer | Thailand | 1 | 1985 | 1 year |
| Ms. Tanner | Indonesia | 1 | 1990 | 2 months |
| Mr. Fuller | Singapore | 2 | 1988, 1992 | 1 year, 2 weeks |
| Mr. Skinner | Philippines | 2 | 1988, 1991 | 2 days, 1 week |
| Mr. Glover | Burma | many | last time: 1989 | 2 weeks |
| Mrs. Hatter | Burma | many | last time: 1990 | 10 days |
| Mr. Cutter | - | - | - | - |

Exercise for written answer

Each sentence in the following dialogue has one wrong word or syllable. Scan the sentences to identify the wrong words, and replace them with the right words.

1. S1: တရုပ်ပြည် ရောက်ပဲသလား။
2. S2: ရောက်ဖူးပါတာ။
3. S1: ဘယ်တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။
4. S2: တစ်လုံးပဲ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။
5. S1: ဘယ်တော့က ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။
6. S2: ၁၉၈၉-ခုနှစ်ကြာ ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။
7. S1: ဘယ်လိုကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလဲ။
8. S2: ၆-လ နေခဲ့ပါပြီ။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- S1: တရုပ်ပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။
 S2: ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။
 S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးသလဲ။
 S2: တစ်ခေါက်ပဲ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။
 S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။
 S2: ၁၉၈၉-ခုနှစ်က ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။
 S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလဲ။
 S2: ၆-လ နေခဲ့ပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUE

| <i>name</i> | <i>country</i> | <i>n° of times</i> | <i>when</i> | <i>how long</i> |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| ဒေါ်မြစုမိန်း | England | 1 | last May | 2 months |
| ဦးဇွေရ | Korea | 1 | last December | 1 ½ months |
| ကိုစိန်ဌေး | China | 1 | last year | 3 weeks |
| မခင်သန်းသန်း | Japan | 1 | 1984 | 1 year |
| ဆရာဘစောမြင့် | Thailand | 1 | 1989 | 2 weeks |
| ဒေါ်စိန်စိန် | America | 2 | 1986, 1990 | 2 yrs, 2 weeks |
| မစ်လေး | Hong Kong | 3 | 1987, 1991, last Jan. | 5 days, 2 wks, 2 days |
| ကိုဝင်းမောင် | Australia | many | last time: 1988 | 6 months |
| ဒေါက်တာဦးကျော်စိန် | Singapore | many | last time: last year | 3 months |
| မပြုံး | - | - | - | - |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 8

TRAVELS IN PROSPECT

New words

There are no new words in this Lesson. What is new is using ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ in inquiries about travel plans for the future. The sentences below are not a continuous dialogue, but sets of question and answer pairs illustrating some of the forms the exchange may take.

| | |
|---|---|
| S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေမလဲ။ | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-mālèh? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေမယ်။ | C'auq-lá ne-meh. |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေမှာလဲ။ | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-hma-lèh? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေမှာပါ။ | C'auq-lá ne-hma-ba. |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေမလို့လဲ။ | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-mäló-lèh? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေမလို့။ | C'auq-lá ne-mäló. |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလဲ။ | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-bó äsi-äsin shí-dhālèh? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။ | C'auq-lá ne-bó äsi-äsin shí-ba-deh.. |

The variant form of the question (the answers are the same as those above):

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S1: ကြာကြာ နေမလား။ | Ca-ja ne-mälà? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေမယ်။ | C'auq-lá ne-meh. |
| S1: ကြာကြာ နေမှာလား။ | Ca-ja ne-hma-là? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေမယ်။ | C'auq-lá ne-meh. |
| S1: ကြာကြာ နေမလို့လား။ | Ca-ja ne-mäló-là? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေမလို့။ | C'auq-lá ne-mäló. |
| S1: ကြာကြာ နေဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလား။ | Ca-ja ne-bó äsi-äsin shí-dhālà? |
| S2: ခြောက်လ နေဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။ | C'auq-lá ne-bó äsi-äsin shí-ba-deh. |

If the planned stay is short, the answer may be prefaced by မကြာပါဘူး: (mäca-ba-bù), and the time period may carry a -ဝဲ (as for comparable statements about travels past) —

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| S1: ကြာကြာ နေမလား။ | Ca-ja ne-mälà? |
| S2: မကြာပါဘူး။ လေးရက်ပဲ နေမယ်။ | Mäca-ba-bù. Lè-yeq-p'èh ne-meh. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S1: ဗမာပြည် နောက်ထပ် | Do you have any plans to | Băma-pye nauq-t'aq |
| သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလား။ | go to Burma again? | thwà-bó äsi-äsin shí-dhālà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes, I have. | Houq-kéh. Shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်တော့လောက် သွားမလို့လဲ။ | When are thinking of going? | Beh-dáw-lauq thwà-mäló-lèh? |
| S2: ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to go next year. | Shé-hniq-hma thwà-meh. |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက် ကြာကြာ နေမှာလဲ။ | How long will you stay? | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-hma-lèh? |
| S2: ၆-လလောက် နေမယ်။ | I'm going to stay about 6 months. | C'auq-lá-lauq ne-meh. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions you need to fill in the blanks. Given the variety of forms the question can take, we have to standardize on one form so that what you say will match what the tape says. So here's the plan —

when you're asking about plans to go abroad, use သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိလား။

when you're asking about the date of departure, use သွားမလဲ။

when you're asking about the planned length of stay, use နေမလို့လဲ။

Blanks for the Practice Dialogues Set 1 for Level 3, Topic 8: Travel in prospect

| နာမည် | been abroad | plans to go | when | for how long | name |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|------|--------------|-------------------|
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | ... | ... | ... | ... | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြမြသိန်း | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | ... | ... | ... | ... | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | ... | ... | ... | ... | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | ... | ... | ... | ... | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | ... | ... | ... | ... | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ma Khin Win Kyi |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | ... | ... | ... | ... | Ko Tin Lwin |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions. In this set too you need to know which of the several possible forms of answer the tape is going to use. So we'll establish a convention that if the question uses သွားမလို့, then the answer will use သွားမလို့, too, and so on with the other forms. Don't get the idea that you have to follow this rule in face to face conversation as well: it is adopted here just for this language exercise, to ensure that the tape's answers match yours.

Data for Practice Dialogues Set 2 for Level 3, Topic 8: Travels in prospect

| name | been to Burma | plans to go | when | for how long |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Sarah | many times | yes | next month | 14 days |
| Chris | 2 times | yes | in October | about 3 years |
| Elizabeth | 0 times | yes | next year | 6 months |
| Dindy | 0 times | yes | in 1999 | 1 week |
| Raymond | 3 times | yes | if he gets a visa | not fixed yet |
| Amd | 1 time | no | - | - |
| Lars | 0 times | yes | if he gets the money | 1 year |
| Max | 2 times | yes | in three months' time | about 4 months |
| Zunetta | 3 times | yes | in three weeks' time | 2 weeks |
| Roger | 1 time | yes | in a year's time | not fixed yet |
| Miranda | 4 times | yes | not definite yet | 10 days |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following two dialogues into Burmese. Keep your translations in the same two-column format as the two dialogues below. The juxtaposition helps to highlight the differences between talking about the past and talking about the future.

Dialogue 1 (about the past)

1. S1: Have you ever been to Burma?
2. S1: Yes, I have.
3. S1: When were you there?
4. S1: I was there last year.
5. S1: Did you stay long?
6. S1: No.
7. S1: I only stayed for 3 weeks.

Dialogue 2 (about the future)

- S1: Do you have plans to go to Burma?
- S1: Yes, I have.
- S1: When are you thinking of going?
- S1: I'm going to go next year.
- S1: Will you stay long?
- S1: No.
- S1: I'm only going to stay for 3 weeks.



Mingaladon airport

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

Dialogue 1 (about the past)

1. S1: ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။
2. S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။
3. S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။
4. S2: မနှစ်က ရောက်ခဲ့ပါတယ်။
5. S1: ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလား။
6. S2: မနေပါဘူး။
7. S2: ၃-ပတ်ပဲ နေခဲ့ပါတယ်။

Dialogue 2 (about the future)

- S1: ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိသလား။
- S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရှိပါတယ်။
- S1: ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလို့လဲ။
- S2: ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ သွားမယ်။
- S1: ကြာကြာ နေမလား။
- S2: မနေပါဘူး။
- S2: ၃-ပတ်ပဲ နေမယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES SET 1

| နာမည် | been abroad | plans to go | when | for how long | name |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | 4 times | yes | next month | 3 weeks | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြသိန်း | 0 times | yes | in June | 2 years | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | 3 times | yes | next year | 10 days | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | 1 time | yes | in 1995 | 2 years | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | many times | yes | if I get the money | not fixed yet | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | 0 times | yes | if I get a passport | 3 months | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | 1 time | yes | in two years' time | not fixed yet | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | many times | yes | in one month's time | 6 weeks | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | 0 times | yes | in three weeks' time | 5 days | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | 1 time | no | - | | Ma Khin Win Kyi |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | 2 times | yes | not fixed yet | 6 months | Ko Tin Lwin |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 9

TRAVELS: CURRENT TRIP

New words

| | | |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| [verb]-အုံးမယ် | will [verb] yet more, will continue [verb]-ing | -oùn-meh |
| သုံးလ နေမယ်။ | I'm going to stay for three months. | Thoùn-lá ne-meh. |
| —နောက်ထပ် | I'm going to stay on | Nauq-t'aq |
| သုံးလ နေအုံးမယ်။ | for another three months. | thoùn-lá ne-oùn-meh. |
| ဒီမှာ ထိုင်မယ်။ | I'm going to sit here. | Di-hma t'ain-meh. |
| —ဒီမှာ ခဏ ထိုင်အုံးမယ်။ | I'm going to sit here | Di-hma k'ăná t'ain-oùn-meh. |
| | for a little while longer. | |
| ဘာ မှာမလဲ။ | What are you going to order? | Ba hma-mālèh? |
| —ဘာ မှာအုံးမလဲ။ | What else are you going to order? | Ba hma-oùn-mālèh? |
| ကြည့်မယ်။ | I'll look around. | Cí-meh. |
| —ကြည့်အုံးမယ်။ | I'll carry on looking around. | Cí-oùn-meh. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere in Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S1: ဘယ်နိုင်ငံကလဲ။ | What country are you come from? | Beh-nain-ngan-gá-lèh? |
| S2: နယ်သာလန်ကပါ။ | The Netherlands. | Neh-dha-lin-gá-ba. |
| S1: ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်သလဲ။ | When did you get here? | Beh-doùn-gá yauq-thǎlèh? |
| S2: လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ ဒီဇင်ဘာလက ရောက်ပါတယ်။ | I arrived last December. | Lun-géh-déh Di-zin-ba-lá-gá yauq-pa-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက် ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမှာလဲ။ | How long will you stay on? | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-oùn-hma-lèh? |
| S2: နောက်ထပ် သုံးလလောက် နေအုံးမယ်။ | I'm going to stay for about another three months. | Nauq-t'aq thoùn-lá-lauq ne-oùn-meh. |

S1: အော်။ — ဒီလိုဆို ဂျွန်လ ကျရင် ပြန်မယ် ဟုတ်လား။ Oh. — In that case you'll leave in June, won't you? Aw. Di-lo-s'o Jun-lá cá-yin pyan-meh, houq-là?
S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ Yes. Houq-pa-deh.

Variant questions: how much longer?

S1: ဘယ်လောက် ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမှာလဲ။ How long will you stay on? Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-oùn-hma-lèh?
S1: ဘယ်လောက် ကြာအုံးမှာလဲ။ How long will you stay on? Beh-lauq ca-oùn-hma-lèh?

Variant questions: much longer?

S1: ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမှာလား။ Are you going to stay on much longer? Ca-ja ne-oùn-hma-là?
S1: ကြာအုံးမှာလား။ Will you be here much longer? Ca-oùn-hma-là?

Answers to the "much longer" questions

S2: ကြာအုံးမယ်။ နောက်ထပ် တစ်နှစ် နေအုံးမယ်။ Yes. I'm going to stay for a further year. Ca-oùn-meh. Nauq-t'aq tǎhniq ne-oùn-meh.
S2: မကြာတော့ပါဘူး။ No. Măca-dáw-ba-bù.
တစ်ပတ် ကြာရင် ပြန်မယ်။ I'm leaving in a week's time. Tǎbaq ca-yin pyan-meh.

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions and make a note of the answers in the blanks. Asking about how long someone is going to stay on has several alternative forms: we will take ဘယ်လောက် ကြာအုံးမှာလဲ။ as our preferred version for practice. Cover the Key columns while you fill in the blanks.

Dialogue 1. Person n° 2.
Dialogue 2. Person n° 3.
Dialogue 3. Person n° 6.

Dialogue 4. Person n° 8.
Dialogue 5. Person n° 10.

| N ° | arr Bangkok | further stay |
|-----|-------------|--------------|
| 1 | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... |
| 6 | ... | ... |
| 7 | ... | ... |
| 8 | ... | ... |
| 9 | ... | ... |
| 10 | ... | ... |

KEY

| arr Bangkok | further stay |
|---------------|----------------|
| in March | 1 ½ months |
| last January | 1 month |
| in 1988 | about 9 months |
| last year | about 2 years |
| on the 8th | 3 weeks |
| yesterday | 4 days |
| last July | not fixed |
| in 1993 | not fixed |
| on Oct. 4th | 3 weeks |
| on April 13th | about 2 months |

Dialogues Set 2. You take the part of the people named and use the list below to answer the questions.

Dialogue 6. Ms. Doe.
Dialogue 7. Mrs. Mount.

Dialogue 8. Mr. Hawk.
Dialogue 9. Mr. Nightingale.

| <i>name</i> | <i>from country</i> | <i>arrived</i> | <i>further stay in Burma</i> | <i>due to return home</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Mr. Bull | England | in May | 1 month | in July |
| Ms. Doe | America | last May | 1 ½ months | next month |
| Mr. Keating | Australia | in 1990 | 1 ½ years | in 1994 |
| Mrs. Mount | Canada | last year | about 6 months | next year |
| Mr. Wellington | New Zealand | yesterday | 2 weeks | on June 6th |
| Mrs. Finch | England | on the 10th | 5 days | on the 21st |
| Mr. Hawk | America | on Dec. 5th | not fixed | when his job is over |
| Ms. Coot | Australia | on Oct. 28th | not fixed | when she gets permission |
| Mr. Nightingale | Canada | last November | 2 weeks | in two weeks' time |
| Mrs. Sparrow | New Zealand | in 1992 | about 1 month | in a month's time |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate some uses of [verb]-အုံးမယ် "will [verb] more" and မ-[verb]-တော့ပါဘူး: "will not [verb] any more."

- Will you stay long?
- Will you stay on for much longer?
- How much longer will you stay on for?
- I'm going to stay on for a week longer.
- She's going to sit outside for a bit.
- She's going to sit outside for a bit longer.
- Please carry on sitting outside.
- She's not going to sit outside any more.
- I'll look at the postcards for a bit, OK?
- I'll look at the postcards for a bit longer, OK?
- Do carry on looking at the postcards.
- I won't look at the postcards any longer.
- Aren't you going to look at the postcards any longer?
- I'm going to have some fried noodles.
- I'm going to have a little more fried noodles.
- Please have a little more fried noodles.
- I'm not going to have any more fried noodles.
- Won't you have any more fried noodles?

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ကြာကြာ နေမလား။
 ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမလား။
 ဘယ်လောက် ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမလဲ။
 နောက်ထပ် တစ်ပတ် နေအုံးမယ်။
- အပြင်မှာ ခဏ ထိုင်မယ်။
 အပြင်မှာ ခဏ ထိုင်အုံးမယ်။
 အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်ပါအုံး။
 အပြင်မှာ မထိုင်တော့ပါဘူး။
- ပို့စကဒ် ခဏ ကြည့်မယ်နော်။
 ပို့စကဒ် ခဏ ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။
 ပို့စကဒ် ကြည့်ပါအုံး။
 ပို့စကဒ် မကြည့်တော့ပါဘူး။
- ပို့စကဒ် မကြည့်တော့ဘူးလား
- ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် စားမယ်။
 ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် နံနဲ စားအုံးမယ်။
 ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် နံနဲ စားပါအုံး။
 ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် မစားတော့ပါဘူး။
 ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် မစားတော့ဘူးလား။

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 10A

YOU AND YOURS

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| အိမ်ထောင် /-ဒေါင်/ | household ["house—set up, establish"] | ein-daun |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ- | to be married ["household—have"] | ein-daun shí- |
| —အိမ်ထောင် ရှိသလား။ | Is she/he married? | Ein-daun shí-dhǎlà? |
| —အိမ်ထောင် ရှိပါတယ်။ | She/he is married. | Ein-daun shí-ba-deh. |
| —အိမ်ထောင် မရှိပါဘူး။ | She/he is not married. | Ein-daun mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| —အိမ်ထောင် မရှိသေးပါဘူး။ | She/he is not married yet. | Ein-daun mǎshí-dhè-ba-bù. |
| —အိမ်ထောင် မရှိတော့ပါဘူး။ | She/he is not married any more. | Ein-daun mǎshí-dáw-ba-bù. |
| ကွဲ- | to separate, split up | kwèh- |
| —ကွဲသွားပါပြီ။ | She/he is separated, divorced. | Kwèh-dhwà-ba-bi. |
| ဆုံး- | to come to an end, die | s'òun- |
| —ဆုံးသွားပါပြီ။ | She/he is dead, has died. | S'òun-dhwà-ba-bi. |

| | | |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| အိမ်ထောင် ကျ- | to get married ["household—reach, attain"] | ein-daun cá- |
| —အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။ | Is she/he married yet? | Ein-daun cá-bi-là? |
| —အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီ။ | She/he is. | Ein-daun cá-bi. |
| —အိမ်ထောင် မကျသေးပါဘူး။ | She/he isn't. | Ein-daun mǎcá-dhè-ba-bù. |

[You use အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား (Ein-daun cá-bi-là?) when talking about people aged around 20-30, the age when people are expected to marry; whereas အိမ်ထောင် ရှိသလား (Ein-daun shí-dhǎlà?) is appropriate for older people, of an age by which you would expect them to have married already if they were going to marry at all.]

The new words provide further examples of the verb suffix -ပြီ (-pi/-bi), which asks and answers questions about whether a specified condition has been achieved yet: she/he is married (now), is separated, is dead. For some earlier examples, see 2-10A: it is over, it is all right (now), it is used up, she/he can speak Burmese, is in 10th Standard, is retired, is 15 years old, and so on.

Some new occupations —

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|--------------------|
| အင်ဂျင်နီယာ | engineer | in-jin-ni-ya |
| အစိုးရအမှုထမ်း /-ဒန့်:/ | civil servant | ǎsò-yá ǎhmú-dàn |
| —အစိုးရ | government ["control-get"] | ǎsò-yá |
| —အမှုထမ်း | official ["affair-carry"] | ǎhmú-dàn |
| တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာ | university teacher [male] | teq-kǎtho s'ǎya |
| တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာမ | university teacher [female] | teq-kǎtho s'ǎya-má |
| စစ်သား | soldier ["military-member, son"] | siq-thà |
| သတင်းထောက် | reporter ["news-suss out, reconnoitre"] | thǎdìn-dauq |
| အလုပ်သမား | labourer ["work-doer"] | ǎlouq-thǎmà |

For more words for occupations, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 20.

Sample Dialogues

Scene: S2 is showing his/her family photographs to S1.

Dialogue 1

| | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S1: ဒါ ဘယ်သူလဲ။ | Who is this? | Da beh-dhu-lèh? |
| S2: ဒါက ကျမ ဦးလေးပါ ရှင်။ | That's my uncle. | Da-gá cǎmá ù-lè-ba, Shin. |
| S1: နာမည် ဘယ်လို ခေါ်သလဲ။ | What is his name? | Nan-meh beh-lo k'aw-dhǎlèh? |
| S2: ဦးမြင့်မောင်လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ | He's called U Myint Maung. | Ù Myín Maun-ló k'aw-ba-deh. |
| S1: အော်။ ဦးမြင့်မောင်လား။ | Oh. U Myint Maung. | Aw. ù Myín Maun-là? |
| အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | Is he working? | Ālouq louq-ne-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ | Yes, he is. | Houq-kéh. Louq-ne-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘာ အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလဲ။ | What is his job? | Ba ālouq louq-ne-dhǎlèh? |
| S2: ဆရာဝန်ပါ။ | He's a doctor. | S'āya-wun-ba. |
| S1: အိမ်ထောင် ရှိသလား။ | Is he married? | Ein-daun shí-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes, he is. | Houq-kéh. Shí-ba-deh. |

Dialogue 2

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S1: ဒါ ဘယ်သူလဲ။ | Who is that? | Da beh-dhu-lèh? |
| S2: ဒါက ကျနော် အမမိ ခင်ဗျာ။ | That's my sister. | Da-gá cǎnāw āmá-ba, K'in-bya. |
| S1: အော်။ အမလား။ | Oh. Your sister? | Aw. Āmá-là? |
| နာမည် ဘယ်လို ခေါ်သလဲ။ | What is her name? | Nan-meh beh-lo k'aw-dhǎlèh? |
| S2: ဒေါ်သန်းနုလို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ | She's called Daw Than Nu. | Daw Thàn Nú-ló k'aw-ba-deh. |
| S1: အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | Is she working? | Ālouq louq-ne-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ | Yes, she is. | Louq-ne-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘာ အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလဲ။ | What is her job? | Ba ālouq louq-ne-dhǎlèh? |
| S2: ဆရာဝန်ပါ။ | She's a doctor. | S'āya-wun-ba. |
| S1: အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။ | Is she married yet? | Ein-daun cá-bi-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကျပြီ။ | Yes, she is. | Houq-kéh. Cá-bi. |
| or: မကျသေးပါဘူး။ | No, not yet. | Mācá-dhè-ba-bù. |

Variant answers:

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| S1: အိမ်ထောင် ရှိသလား။ | Is she/he married? | Ein-daun shí-dhǎlà? |
| S2: မရှိသေးပါဘူး။ | Not yet. | Māshí-dhè-ba-bù. |
| S2: မရှိတော့ပါဘူး။ | Not any longer. | Māshí-dàw-ba-bù. |
| ကွဲသွားပါပြီ။ | She/he is separated/divorced. | Kwèh-dhwà-ba-bi. |
| S2: မရှိတော့ပါဘူး။ | Not any longer. | Māshí-dàw-ba-bù. |
| အမျိုးသား ဆုံးသွားပါပြီ။ | Her husband is dead. | Āmyò-dhà s'òun-dhwà-ba-bi. |
| or: မရှိတော့ပါဘူး။ | Not any longer. | Māshí-dàw-ba-bù. |
| အမျိုးသမီး ဆုံးသွားပါပြီ။ | His wife is dead. | Āmyò-dhǎmì s'òun-dhwà-ba-bi. |



ဖတ်စာ ၂၇

တို့တာဝန်

လယ်သမားကြီး ဦးသာအောင်
စပါးစိုက်ကာ ပြည်ကျိုးဆောင်။
ကိုမိုးမောင် အလုပ်သမား
ကုန်ထုတ်လုပ်ဖို့ သူကြိုးစား။



ဦးမိုးကျားက ကျောင်းဆရာ
စာပေတတ်ဖို့ သင်ပေးတာ။
မောင်ထွန်းသာ စစ်သားကလေး
နိုင်ငံရန်ကို ကာကွယ်ပေး။



စာပြန်ပြူးရေး မောင်သိန်းတန်
စာပို့ရာတွင် အချိန်မှန်။
ကိုသာဇံ မီးသတ်သမား
မီးသတ်ရာတွင် သူစွန့်စား။



From the school reader for Standard 1 (children of 5-6 years old)

The text is in verse and contains two of the occupations you have learned in Level 3 and one more that is in the reference list for Level 2, Topic 10A.

Exercises on words for the new occupations

Ex. 1: Prompt: Looking at List 2 —

Ask what job Maureen does.

L/S1: Maureen ဘာအလုပ် လုပ်သလဲ။

S2: Maureen-က အစိုးရအမှုထမ်းပါ။

L/S1: အော်၊ အစိုးရအမှုထမ်းလား။

Ex. 2: Answer S1's questions, referring to List 2 for the answers.

S1: Maureen ဘာအလုပ် လုပ်သလဲ။

L/S2: Maureen-က အစိုးရအမှုထမ်းပါ။

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. Form-filling time again. S1 will tell you most of what you need to know about each person on her list. Ask her for the bits she doesn't tell you, and note it all down in the blanks. When you come to the marital status question, use အိမ်ထောင် ရှိသလား: (ein-daun shí-dhālà?) for the older generation, and အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား: (ein-daun cá-bi-là?) for the younger generation.

List 1: Blanks

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|--------------------|-------|------|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| အမှတ် | | | | | | |
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | uncle | aunt | oldr sis | oldr bro | ygr sis | ygr bro |
| အမည် | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အသက် | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ/မရှိ | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Dialogues Set 2. Use List 2 to answer S1's questions. Use male speaker's forms for "I" and "my" and the tag.

List 2: Data

| | <i>name</i> | <i>relationship</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>married</i> |
|-----|-------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------|----------------|
| 7. | Maureen | aunt | civil servant | 50 | yes |
| 8. | George | uncle | retd: engineer | 47 | no (widowed) |
| 9. | Mary | older sister | university teacher | 32 | no (separated) |
| 10. | Jim | older brother | soldier | 30 | not yet |
| 11. | Frances | ygr sister | reporter | 28 | yes |
| 12. | Julian | ygr brother | labourer | 26 | yes |
| 13. | Sarah | friend | student: 10th Std | 17 | not yet |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese.

Sentences to practise "not yet"

- Does he attend school yet?
- Not yet.
- Can he speak Burmese yet?
- Not yet.
- Is he married yet? (use ကျ-)
- Not yet.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ကျောင်း တက်ပြီလား။

— မတက်သေးပါဘူး။

ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။

— မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။

အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။

— မကျသေးပါဘူး။

Sentences to practise "not any more"

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 7. He doesn't attend school any more. | ကျောင်း မတက်တော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 8. He can't speak Burmese any more. | ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်တော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 9. He isn't married any more. (use ရှိ-) | အိမ်ထောင် မရှိတော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 10. He doesn't learn Burmese any more. | ဗမာစကား မသင်တော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 11. He doesn't work at the airport any more. | လေဆိပ်မှာ အလုပ် မလုပ်တော့ပါဘူး။ |
| 12. He doesn't want to return to England any more. | အင်္ဂလန် မပြန်ချင်တော့ပါဘူး။ |

Sentences to practise "is still"

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 13. Is he still attending school? | ကျောင်း တက်နေသေးသလား။ |
| 14. Is he still learning Burmese? | ဗမာစကား သင်နေသေးသလား။ |
| 15. Is he still living in Bogyoke Street? | ဗိုလ်ချုပ်လမ်းမှာ နေနေသေးသလား။ |
| 16. Is he still taking photographs? | ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်နေသေးသလား။ |
| 17. Is he still talking to Daw Tin Hla? | ဒေါ်တင်လှနဲ့ စကား ပြောနေသေးသလား။ |
| 18. Does he still want to go abroad? | နိုင်ငံခြား သွားချင်သေးသလား။ |
| 19. Does he still want to meet Mr. Major? | Mr. Major-နဲ့ တွေ့ချင်သေးသလား။ |
| 20. Does he still want to buy a T-shirt? | တီရှပ် ဝယ်ချင်သေးသလား။ |

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUE

| အမှတ် | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | uncle | aunt | older sister | older bro | younger sis | younger bro |
| အမည် | ဦးခင်မောင်ဒင် | ဒေါ်တင်မြင့် | ဒေါ်မာလေး | ကိုမင်းဦး | မသိန်း | ညွန့်သောင်း |
| အသက် | 60 | 56 | 30 | 28 | 25 | 16 |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | business (retired) | doctor | teacher | officer | oil co. | student (10th Std) |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ/မရှိ | yes | no (widowed) | no (separated) | yes | yes | not yet |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 10B YOU AND YOURS continued

There are no new words for this Lesson: it reviews some of the material you have already learned.

Listen to the Sample Dialogue on the tape, then work through the Practice Dialogues

Sample Dialogue

Scene: in a shop in Mandalay. S0 is the shopkeeper, S1 is a foreign visitor to Burma, and S2 is the shopkeeper's wife.

S0: ကျနော် အမျိုးသမီးနဲ့
မိတ်ဆက်ပေးမယ်နော်။

I'll introduce you to
my wife — all right?

Cănaw ämyò-dhāmì-néh
meiq-s'eq-pè-meh-naw?

S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးပါ။

Yes. Do.

Houq-kéh. Meiq-s'eq-pè-ba.

S0: ဒါက ကျနော် အမျိုးသမီးပါ။

This is my wife.

Da-gá cānaw ämyò-dhāmì-ba.

S1: တွေ့ရတာ

I am happy to meet you.

Twé-yáda

ဝမ်းသာပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။

wùn tha-ba-deh, K'in-bya.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| S2: ကျမလဲ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ | And I'm happy to meet you too. | Cămá-lèh wùn tha-ba-deh. |
| S1: နာမည် ဘယ်လို ခေါ်သလဲ။ | What is your name? | Nan-meh beh-lo k'aw-dhālèh? |
| S2: အေးအေးရွှေပါ။ | Aye Aye Shwe. | È È Shwe-ba. |
| S1: ဒေါ်အေးအေးရွှေလား။ | Daw Aye Aye Shwe, is it? | Daw È È Shwe-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh, Shin. |
| S1: အော်။ ကျနော် နာမည်က Heinz တဲ့။ ¹ | Oh. My name is Heinz. | Aw. Cănáw nan-meh-gá Heinz-déh. |
| S2: အော်။ Mr. Heinz က ဘယ်နိုင်ငံကလဲ ရှင်။ | Oh. What country do you come from? | Aw. Mr. Heinz-gá beh nain-ngan-gá-lèh, Shin? |
| S1: ဂျာမနီကပါ။ | From Germany. | Ja-măni-gá-ba. |
| S2: အော်။ ဂျာမနီကပါလား။ | Oh. Germany? | Aw. Ja-măni-gá-ba-là? |
| ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်သလဲ။ | When did you get here? | Beh-dòun-gá yauq-thālèh? |
| S1: လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ စက်တင်ဘာလက ရောက်ပါတယ်။ | I got here last September. | Lun-géh-déh Seq-tin-ba-lá-gá yauq-pa-deh. |
| S2: ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမလား။ | Will you be staying much longer? | Ca-ja ne-oùn-mälà? |
| S1: မနေတော့ပါဘူး။ | Not much longer now. | Măne-dáw-ba-bù. |
| တစ်ပတ် ကြာရင် ပြန်မယ်။ | I'm going to go home in a week's time. | Tăbaq ca-yin pyan-meh. |
| S2: ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ အရမ်း ကောင်းတာပဲ။ | You speak Burmese extremely well. | Băma sǎgà pyàw-da ǎyàn kaùn-da-bèh. |
| S1: အော်။ တကယ်ပဲလား။ | Oh, really? | Aw. Tǎgeh-bèh-là? |
| ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh. |
| S2: ဗမာစကား ဘယ်မှာ သင်သလဲ။ | Where did you learn Burmese? | Băma sǎgà beh-hma thin-dhālèh? |
| ဂျာမနီမှာ သင်သလား။ | Did you learn it in Germany? | Ja-măni-hma thin-dhālè? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဘာလင်မြို့ Humboldt | Yes. I learned it at | Houq-kéh. Ba-lin-myó Humboldt |
| တက္ကသိုလ်မှာ သင်ပါတယ်။ | Humboldt University in Berlin. | Teq-kǎtho-hma thin-ba-deh. |
| S2: အရမ်း ပီတာပဲ ရှင်။ | You have an excellent pronunciation. | ǎyàn pi-da-bèh, Shin. |
| S1: ဒေါ်အေးအေးရွှေ နိုင်ငံခြား ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ | Have you ever been abroad? | Daw È È Shwe nain-ngan-jà yauq-p'ù-dhālà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဖိလစ်ပိုင်နိုင်ငံ တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ခဲ့ဖူးပါတယ်။ | Yes. I went once to the Philippines. | Houq-kéh. P'í-liq-pain Nain-ngan tǎk'auq yauq-k'éh-bù-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်တုန်းကလဲ။ | When was that? | Beh-dòun-gá-lèh? |
| S2: ၁၉၈၆-ခုနှစ်က။ | In 1986. | 1986-k'ú-hniq-ká. |
| ခဏလေးပါ။ | It was only for a short time. | K'ǎnǎ-lè-ba. |
| နှစ်ပတ်ပဲ ကြာပါတယ်။ | I only stayed for two weeks. | Hnāpaq-p'èh ca-ba-deh. |
| Mr. Heinz က ဂျာမနီမှာ ဘာ အလုပ် လုပ်ပါသလဲ။ | What is your job in Germany? | Mr. Heinz-gá Ja-măni-hma ba ǎlouq louq-pa-thālèh? |
| S1: ဘဏ်တိုက်မှာ အလုပ် လုပ်ပါတယ်။ | I work in a bank. | Ban-daiq-hma ǎlouq louq-pa-deh. |
| ဒေါ်အေးအေးရွှေကော၊ အလုပ် လုပ်နေသလား။ | How about you: are you working? | Daw È È Shwe-gàw: ǎlouq louq-ne-dhālà? |
| S2: မလုပ်ပါဘူး ရှင်။ ကျမက အိမ်မှုကိစ္စပဲ လုပ်ပါတယ်။ | No, I'm not. I just look after the household. | Mǎlouq-pa-bù, Shin. Cămá-gá ein-hmú-keiq-sá-bèh louq-pa-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ နေသလဲ။ | Where do you live? | Beh-hma ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: မင်္ဂလာဈေးနားမှာ နေပါတယ်။ | We live near the Mingala Market. | Min-gǎla Zè-nà-hma ne-ba-deh. |
| Mr. Heinz ကော၊ | How about you? | Mr. Heinz-gàw: |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ဘယ်မှာ တဲနေသလဲ။ | Where are you staying? | Beh-hma tèh-ne-dhālèh? |
| S1: မန္တလေးဟိုတယ်မှာပါ။ | At the Mandalay Hotel. | Màn-dālè Ho-teh-hma-ba. |
| S2: အသက် ဘယ်လောက်ရှိပြီလဲ။ | How old are you? | Ātheq beh-lauq shí-bi-lèh? |
| S1: ၂၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | I'm 25. | 25-hniq shí-bi. |
| S2: အော်။ ၂၅-နှစ်ပဲ ရှိသေးတယ်။ | Oh: you're still only 25. | Aw. 25-hniq-p'èh shí-dhè-deh. |
| အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။ | Are you married yet? | Ein-daun cá-bi-là? |
| S1: မကျသေးပါဘူး။ | Not yet. | Măcá-dhè-ba-bù. |
| S2: ကဲ။ စကားပြောလို့ | Well. I have enjoyed | Kèh. Săgà pyàw-ló |
| ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | talking to you. | kaùn-ba-deh. |
| နဲနဲ သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have to go somewhere. | Nèh-nèh thwà-zāya shí-ba-deh. |
| ခွင့် ပြုပါအုံးနော်။ | Please excuse me. | K'wín pyú-ba-oùn-naw? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Certainly. | Houq-kéh, K'in-bya. |
| ထပ်တွေ့သေးတာပေါ့။ | See you again. | T'aq-twé-dhè-da-báw. |

1. Reminder: [name]-တဲ့ means "it is called [name]." For more see Part 1, Lesson 36.

For the Practice Dialogues

There are two Practice Dialogues for this Lesson. In Dialogue 1 you are introduced to a Burmese speaker in London, and in Dialogue 2 you are introduced to someone in Burma. The lists below contain information about the part you play: use this to answer any questions that may come your way. They also contain blanks for you to fill in with information about the person you are talking to. Cover the Key column so that you can't see it, and use the blanks for making a note of any information that comes up as a result of questions the Prompt tells you to ask.



A young couple in traditional Burmese dress.
From a book cover, designed by the artist Paw Oo Thet

Dialogue 1: in London

| | <i>you (male)</i> | <i>the other speaker</i> | |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| | | <i>blanks</i> | KEY |
| အမည် | Chris | ... | Daw San San Maw |
| အသက် | 19 | ... | 24 |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | student | ... | in library |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | Hackney | ... | hostel |
| နိုင်ငံသား | British | ... | Burmese |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ/မရှိ | married | ... | single |
| date of arrival | - | ... | March 18 |
| date of departure | - | ... | October 95 |
| how long stay on? | - | ... | 5 months |
| been here before? | - | ... | no |
| been to Burma? | yes | - | - |
| how many times | once | - | - |
| when? | 1987 | - | - |
| duration of stay | 2 weeks | - | - |
| plans to go (again)? | yes | - | - |
| when? | not fixed | - | - |
| for how long? | not fixed | - | - |

Dialogue 2: in Burma

| | <i>you (female)</i> | <i>the other speaker</i> | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| | | <i>blanks</i> | KEY |
| အမည် | Mary | ... | Ko So Tint |
| မြန်မာအမည် | ကြည်ကြည် | - | - |
| အသက် | 35 | ... | 40 |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | university teacher | ... | doctor |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | Foreign Students Hostel | ... | Mandalay |
| နိုင်ငံသား | American | ... | Burmese |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ/မရှိ | separated | ... | widowed |
| date of arrival | November 15th | - | - |
| date of departure | June | - | - |
| how long stay on? | 4 months | - | - |
| been abroad? | - | ... | yes |
| which country? | - | ... | Australia |
| how many times? | - | ... | once |
| when? | - | ... | 1990 |
| for how long? | - | ... | 6 months |
| plans to go again? | - | ... | yes |
| which country? | - | ... | England |
| when? | - | ... | next year |
| for how long? | - | ... | 3 months |

Further data for use in class: L1 to act as the foreigner, and L2 as the Burman, using the Key.

Dialogue 3: in Burma

| | <i>you (female)</i> | <i>the other speaker</i> | |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| | | <i>blanks</i> | KEY |
| အမည် | Elizabeth | ... | U Thein Oo |
| အသက် | 35 | ... | 46 |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | oil company | ... | computer company |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | friend's house | ... | Maha Bandoola Rd. |
| နိုင်ငံသား | American | ... | Burmese |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ/မရှိ | separated | ... | widowed |
| date of arrival | January 6th | - | - |
| date of departure | July | - | - |
| how long stay on? | 2 months | - | - |
| been abroad? | - | ... | yes |
| which country? | - | ... | America |
| how many times? | - | ... | once |
| when? | - | ... | 1985 |
| for how long? | - | ... | 10 months |
| plans to go again? | - | ... | no |
| which country? | - | - | - |
| when? | - | - | - |
| for how long? | - | - | - |

Dialogue 4: in Thailand

| | <i>you (male)</i> | <i>the other speaker</i> | |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| | | <i>blanks</i> | KEY |
| အမည် | Roger | ... | Ma Khin Than |
| အသက် | 39 | ... | 28 |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | reporter | ... | doctor |
| နေရပ်လိပ်စာ | Suvanna Hotel | ... | Chiang Mai |
| နိုင်ငံသား | Swiss | ... | Burmese |
| အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ/မရှိ | single | ... | married |
| date of arrival | March 21 | ... | 1988 |
| date of departure | April 5 | ... | not fixed |
| how long stay on? | 10 days | ... | not fixed |
| been abroad? | - | ... | yes |
| which country? | - | ... | Russia |
| how many times? | - | ... | once |
| when? | - | ... | 1984 |
| for how long? | - | ... | 1 year |

In the classroom. Use blank forms as outlined at Level 2, Topic 10B.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following dialogue into Burmese. Imagine that it takes place at a reception in London, between an English woman (S1) and a Burmese man (S2).

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. S1: Are you from Burma? | S2: Yes (+ tag). You speak Burmese very well. |
| 2. S1: Oh. Thank you. It's not up to much yet. | S2: Have you been to Burma? |
| 3. S1: No, I haven't. It is arranged that I should go. | S2: Oh. When are you thinking of going? |
| 4. S1: Next May. | S2: That's good. Where did you learn Burmese? |
| 5. S1: I learned it here. At London University. | S2: You speak Burmese with a very good pronunciation. What is your name? |
| 6. S1: Emma. | S2: Emma? I am happy to meet you. My name is Zaw Min Htway. |
| 7. S1: I'm happy to have met you too. What are you doing here? | S2: I'm attending school. How about you: are you still attending school? |
| 8. S1: Yes. I'm doing a Ph.D. ¹ | S2: Well now. It has been good talking to you. I have to go somewhere. Let's meet again. |
| 9. S1: Yes. That's good. | S2: What is your phone number? |
| 10. S1: My phone number is 609 0604. | S2: 609 0604. Fine (+ tag). I'll give you a ring, OK? |
| 11. S1: Fine. | |

1. "I'm doing a Ph.D." = Ph.D. လုပ်နေပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. S1: ဗမာပြည်ကလား။ | S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ကောင်းတာပဲ။ |
| 2. S1: အော်။ ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | S2: ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ |
| 3. S1: မရောက်ဖူးပါဘူး။ သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။ | S2: အော်။ ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလို့လဲ။ |
| 4. S1: လာမဲ့ မေလမှာပါ။ | S2: ကောင်းပါတယ်။ ဗမာစကား ဘယ်မှာ သင်သလဲ။ |
| 5. S1: ဒီမှာ သင်ပါတယ်။ လန်ဒန် တက္ကသိုလ်မှာ။ | S2: ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ပီတာပဲ။ နာမည် ဘယ်လို ခေါ်သလဲ။ |
| 6. S1: Emma-ပါ။ | S2: Emma-လား။ တွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ ကျနော် နာမည်က ဇော်မင်းထွေးပါ။ |
| 7. S1: ကျမလဲ တွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ ကိုဇော်မင်းထွေး ဒီမှာ ဘာ လုပ်နေသလဲ။ | S2: ကျောင်း တက်နေပါတယ်။ Emma-ကော။ ကျောင်း တက်နေသေးသလား။ |
| 8. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ Ph.D. လုပ်နေတယ်။ | S2: ကဲ။ စကား ပြောလို့ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ ကျနော် သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ ထပ် တွေ့ကြရအောင်။ |
| 9. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | S2: တယ်လီဖုန်း နံပါတ် ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။ |
| 10. S1: ကျမ တယ်လီဖုန်း နံပါတ်က ၆၀၉ ၀၆၀၄-ပါ။ | S2: ၆၀၉ ၀၆၀၄။ ကောင်းပါပြီ ခင်ဗျာ။ ဖုန်းဆက်မယ်နော်။ |
| 11. S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | |

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 11

TO MEET AGAIN

New words

| | | |
|----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| [time] နောက်ပိုင်း | after [time] | nauq-pain ["later-part"] |
| — ၂-နာရီနောက်ပိုင်း | after two o'clock | hnāna-yi nauq-pain |
| ဒီလိုဆိုရင် = ဒီလိုဆို | in that case, if that is the way things are | di-lo s'o-yin ["this-way-say-if"] |
| [time/place] ဆိုရင် | if we were to say [time/place], | s'o-yin ["say-if"] |
| — ၃-နာရီ ဆိုရင် | if we took [time/place] as a basis | |
| — ၃-နာရီ ဆိုရင် ကောင်းမယ်။ | if we were to say 3 o'clock | thouñ-na-yi s'o-yin |
| | If we were to say 3 o'clock, that would be good; 3 o'clock would be good. | thouñ-na-yi s'o-yin kaùn-meh |

To translate ဆိုရင် as "if we were to say" often gives it more prominence and weight than it carries in Burmese. Often it is best omitted in translation. But "if we were to say" gives an idea of the effect the phrase has.

| | | |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| လာ- | to come | la- |
| လာခဲ့- | to come from there, come round, come over, come back | la-géh |
| — ၁၀-နာရီမှာ လာခဲ့မယ် | I'll come over at 10 o'clock. | s'eh-na-yi-hma la-géh-meh |
| [noun]-တော့ | Meaning 1: as for [noun] | -dāw, -tāw |
| — S1: မနက်ဖန် အားသလား။ | Are you free tomorrow? | Māneq-p'an à-dhālà? |
| — S2: မနက်ဖန်တော့ မအားပါဘူး။ | [As for] tomorrow, I'm not free. | Māneq-p'an-dāw mǎà-bù. |
| [noun]-တော့ | Meaning 2: [noun] however | -dāw, -tāw |
| — S1: ဒီနေ့ မအားဘူး။ | I'm not free today. | Di-né mǎà-bù. |
| မနက်ဖန်တော့ အားပါတယ်။ | But I am free tomorrow | Māneq-p'an-dāw à-ba-deh. |
| | ["Tomorrow, however, ..."] | |

Days from today

| | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ဒီနေ့ = ဒီဂနေ့ = ဂနေ့ | today | di-né, di-gǎné, gǎné |
| မနက်ဖန် = မနက်ဖြန် = မနက်ဖြင့် | tomorrow | māneq-p'an, māneq-p'yan, māneq-p'yin |
| နက်ဖန် = နက်ဖြန် = နက်ဖြင့် | tomorrow | neq-p'an, neq-p'yan, neq-p'yin |
| သန့်ဘက်ခါ / သဘက်- | the day after tomorrow | thābeq-k'a |

Days of the week

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------|----------------|
| တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့ / -နင်း- | Sunday | Tānìn-gǎnwe-né |
| တနင်္လာနေ့ / -နင်း- | Monday | Tānìn-la-né |
| အင်္ဂါနေ့ | Tuesday | In-ga-né |
| ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ / ဗုတ်- | Wednesday | Bouq-dǎhù-né |
| ကြာသပတေးနေ့ / -သုဗဒေး- | Thursday | Ca-dhǎbǎdè-né |
| သောကြာနေ့ / သောက်ကျာ/ | Friday | Thauq-ca-né |
| စနေနေ့ | Saturday | Sǎne-né |

At this point it is helpful to learn the names of the weekdays as a list by heart.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 and S2 have just met each other. They have had a short conversation, and are now about to part.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| S1: နောက်ထပ် တွေ့ကြရအောင်။ | How about meeting again? | Nauq-t'aq twé-já-yá-aun. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။ | Yes, I'd like to. | Houq-kéh. Twé-jin-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နေ့ အားသလဲ။ ¹ | What day are you free? | Beh-né à-dhălèh? |
| မနက်ဖန် အားသလား။ | Are you free tomorrow? | Măneq-p'an à-dhălà? |
| S2: မနက်ဖန်တော့ မအားပါဘူး။ | [As for] tomorrow, I'm not free. | Măheq-p'an-dáw mǎà-ba-bù. |
| သန့်ဘက်ခါ ရမလား။ | Would the day after tomorrow | Thăbeq-k'a yá-mǎlà? |
| | be all right? | |
| S1: သန့်ဘက်ခါက ဘာနေ့လဲ။ ¹ | What day is the day after tomorrow? | Thăbeq-k'a-gá ba-né-lèh? |
| S2: အင်္ဂါနေ့။ | Tuesday. | In-ga-né. |
| S1: အင်္ဂါနေ့ ရပါတယ်။ | Tuesday's all right. | In-ga-né yá-ba-deh. |
| ဘယ်အချိန် လာခဲ့ရမလဲ။ | What time should I come round? | Beh ác'ein la-géh-yá-mǎlèh? |
| S2: ၁၀-နာရီလောက် ဆိုရင် | [If we said] around 10, | S'eh-na-yi-lauq s'o-yin |
| ကောင်းမလား။ | would that be good? | kaùn-mǎlà? |
| S1: ဆယ်နာရီတော့ မရဘူး။ | [As for] 10 o'clock, that's not all right. | S'eh-na-yi-dáw mǎyá-bù. |
| လုပ်စရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have some things to do. | Louq-săya shí-ba-deh. |
| ၂-နာရီနောက်ပိုင်းမှာတော့ | After 2, however, | Hnăna-yi nauq-pain-hma-dáw |
| အားပါတယ်။ | I am free. | à-ba-deh. |
| ၂-နာရီနောက်ပိုင်း ရမလား။ | Could you manage after 2 o'clock? | Hnăna-yi nauq-pain yá-mǎlà? |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | I could. That's a good time. | Yá-ba-deh. Kaùn-ba-deh. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| ဒီလိုဆိုရင် သန့်ဘက်ခါ — | In that case, I'll come round — | Di-lo s'o-yin thăbeq-k'a |
| ၂-နာရီလောက် လာခဲ့မယ်။ | the day after tomorrow at about 2. | hnăna-yi-lauq la-géh-meh. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi, K'in-bya. |

1. ဘယ်နေ့ vs. ဘာနေ့။ People use ဘယ်နေ့လဲ (beh-né-lèh?) when asking someone to select a day (as in "Which day are you free?"). When you are asking what day of the week a certain day is ("What day is the 23rd?") you normally use ဘာနေ့လဲ (ba-né-lèh?).

Exercises on the new days

Ex. 1. An exercise to help fix the sequence of days in your memory.

S1: တနင်္လာ။ L: တနင်္လာ။ အင်္ဂါ။ ဗုဒ္ဓဟူး။

Ex. 2. S1 asks if you're free on a certain day. You say No, you have things to do, but you're free on the next day, so how about that. Here are the days, as a visual guide:

today — tomorrow — the next day

Sunday — Monday — Tuesday — Wednesday — Thursday — Friday — Saturday

S1: သောကြာနေ့ အားသလား။

L: သောကြာနေ့လား။ မအားပါဘူး။ သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။

L: စနေနေ့တော့ အားပါတယ်။ စနေနေ့ ဆိုရင် ကောင်းမလား။

Ex. 3. Imagine that the chart below is a duty rota. A ✓ marks the person's free day. Look at the chart to see which day S1 is referring to. We start with the four last names in the list.

Prompt: Ask ဒေါ်သိန်းနီ if she's free on Sunday.

L/S2: ဒေါ်သိန်းနီ တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့ အားသလား။

S1: မအားပါဘူး။ တနင်္လာနေ့ အားပါတယ်။

L/S2: တနင်္လာနေ့လား။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ဒီလိုဆိုရင် တနင်္လာနေ့ လာခဲ့မယ်။

Assume that today is Friday

| name | Fri | Sat | Sun | Mon | Tues | Wed | Thurs | name |
|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-------|-------------------|
| ဒေါ်ကြည်ကြည်ရင် | ✓ | | | | | | | Daw Kyi Kyi Yin |
| ဦးအောင်ခင်မြင့် | | | ✓ | | | | | U Aung Khin Myint |
| ဒေါ်မေစု | | | ✓ | | | | | Daw May Su |
| မြသိန်း | | | | ✓ | | | | Mya Thein |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မေကြည် | | | | | ✓ | | | Daw Khin Me Kyi |
| ဦးသိန်းလွင် | | | | | | ✓ | | U Thein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြသောင်း | | | | | | | ✓ | Daw Mya Thaung |
| ဒေါ်သိန်းနီ | | | | ✓ | | | | Daw Thein Ni |
| ဦးအောင်သန်း | | | | | ✓ | | | U Aung Than |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မေ | | | | | | ✓ | | Daw Khin Me |
| ဦးစိုးသိန်း | | | | | | | ✓ | U So Thein |



For the Practice Dialogues

Follow the prompt. You take the part of —

1. A foreign man talking to Ko Aung Khin.
2. A foreign woman talking to a boring Burmese lady.
3. A foreign man talking to an importunate lady cooking enthusiast.
4. A foreign woman talking to Ma Khin Win Kyi.

In the classroom. Use engagement diaries, as outlined for Level 2, Topic 11, but on this Level the diaries can cover more days.

Exercise for written answer

In the dialogue below the lines have been put in the wrong order. Reorder them so that they make sense. The speakers do not necessarily speak alternate lines.

1. S1: ကျွန်တော် သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။
2. S2: သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။
3. S1: သွားမယ်နော်။
4. S1: ခွင့်ပြုပါအုံး။
5. S1: ကဲ။ စကားပြောလို့ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
6. S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။
7. S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။
8. S1: ရပါတယ်။
9. S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။
10. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
11. S2: ကျနော်လဲ ထပ်တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။
12. S1: ငှ-နာရီ အားပါတယ်။
13. S1: ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ အားလား။
14. S2: ကြာသပတေးနေ့တော့ အားပါတယ်။
15. S2: ဒီလိုဆိုရင် ကြာသပတေးနေ့ ငှ-နာရီမှာ တွေ့မယ်။
16. S2: ကြာသပတေးနေ့ ဆိုရင် ရမလား။
17. S2: ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့မှာတော့ မအားပါဘူး။
18. S1: ဘယ်နေ့ အားလဲ။
19. S2: ဘယ်အချိန် အားသလဲ။
20. S1: ထပ် တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

5. S1: ကဲ။ စကားပြောလို့ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
1. S1: ကျွန်တော် သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။
20. S1: ထပ် တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။
11. S2: ကျနော်လဲ ထပ်တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။
18. S1: ဘယ်နေ့ အားလဲ။
13. S1: ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ အားလား။
17. S2: ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့မှာတော့ မအားပါဘူး။
2. S2: သွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။
14. S2: ကြာသပတေးနေ့တော့ အားပါတယ်။
16. S2: ကြာသပတေးနေ့ ဆိုရင် ရမလား။
8. S1: ရပါတယ်။
19. S2: ဘယ်အချိန် အားသလဲ။
12. S1: ငှ-နာရီ အားပါတယ်။
- 6/7. S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။
15. S2: ဒီလိုဆိုရင် ကြာသပတေးနေ့ ငှ-နာရီမှာ တွေ့မယ်။
10. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
4. S1: ခွင့်ပြုပါအုံး။
9. S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။
3. S1: သွားမယ်နော်။
- 7/6. S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။

LEVEL 3, TOPIC 12

MAKING A PHONE CALL

New words

ကျယ်ကျယ်
— ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောပါ။
ဖြည်းဖြည်း
— ဖြည်းဖြည်း ပြောပါ။
ကြား-
ကြားရ-
— မကြားရဘူး။
ကောင်းကောင်း

loudly
Please speak up.
slowly
Please speak slowly.
to hear
to be able to hear *
I can't hear.
well

ceh-jeh
Ceh-jeh pyàw-ba.
p'yè-byè
P'yè-byè pyàw-ba.
cà-
cà-yá-
Măcà-yá-bù.
kaùn-kaùn

| | | |
|------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| —ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားရဘူး။ လိုင်း | I can't hear you very well. line | Kaùn-gaùn mǎcà-yá-bù. lǎin |
| —လိုင်း မကောင်းဘူး။ | It's a bad line. [“line — not-be good-negative”] | Laìn mǎkaùn-bù. |

* Note that [verb]-ရ- (-yá-) with “receptive” verbs (such as *hear, see, notice, find*) normally means “be able to [verb]”; whereas with “action” verbs (such as *come, go, sit, eat, drink, switch on, say*) it normally means “have to [verb], ought to [verb], should [verb].”

Sample Dialogues

Scene: S2 telephones S1.

Dialogue 1

| | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့် ရှိပါ။ | Yes? Who is it? | Houq-kéh. Āmeín shí-ba. |
| S2: မစန္ဒာ ရှိလား ခင်ဗျာ။ | Is Ma Sanda there? | Ma San-da shí-là, K'in-bya? |
| S1: ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောပါ ရှင်။ လိုင်း မကောင်းပါဘူး။ | Please speak up. It's a bad line. | Ceh-jeh pyàw-ba, Shin. Laìn mǎkaùn-ba-bù. |
| S2 (louder): မစန္ဒာ ရှိလား ခင်ဗျာ။ | Is Ma Sanda there? | Ma San-da shí-là, K'in-bya? |
| S1: စကားပြောနေပါတယ် ရှင်။ | Speaking. | Sǎgà pyàw-ne-ba-deh, Shin. |
| S2: အော်။ မစန္ဒာလား။ | Oh. Is that Ma Sanda? | Aw. Má San-da-là? |
| ကျနော် နံမည်က Bob ပါ။ | My name is Bob. | Cǎnǎw nan-meh-gá Bob-ba. |
| အင်္ဂလန်ကပါ။ | I'm from England. | In-gǎlan-gá-ba. |

Dialogue 2

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| S1: ဟယ်လို။ | Hallo. | heh-lo. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ မစန္ဒာနဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်ပါတယ် ရှင်။ | Hallo. I'd like to speak to Ma Sanda. | Houq-kéh. Má San-da-néh sǎgà pyàw-jin-ba-deh, Shin. |
| S1: သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။ ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။ | I'll fetch her for you. Who should I say is calling? | Thwà-k'aw-pè-meh. Beh-dhu s'eq-teh-ló pyàw-yá-mǎlèh? |
| S2: ဖြည်းဖြည်း ပြောပါ ရှင်။ ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားရဘူး။ | Please speak slowly. I can't hear you very well. | P'yè-byè pyàw-ba, Shin. Kaùn-kaùn mǎcà-yá-bù. |
| S1 (slow): ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။ | Who should I say is calling? | Beh-dhu s'eq-teh-ló pyàw-yá-mǎlèh? |
| S2: အော်။ ကျမ နံမည်က Maureen ပါ။ | My name is Maureen. | Aw. Cǎmá nan-meh-gá Maureen-ba. |
| အမေရိကကပါ။ | From America. | Āme-rí-ká-gá-ba. |
| S1: ခဏ ကိုင်ထားပါ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Please hold on a minute. | K'ǎnǎ kain-t'à-ba, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Practice Dialogues Set 1. You make the call.

| Caller | from | Call for | Caller | from | Call for |
|-------------|---------|----------------|--------|---------|-------------|
| Haig | Hawaii | ဦးမောင်မောင် | Ryuji | Japan | ဦးဇော်ဝင်း |
| Daw Mar Lay | Burma | ဦးစောထွန်း | Anna | England | ဒေါ်ခင်လှလှ |
| Julian | America | ဒေါ်တင်တင်ဝင်း | Rudi | Russia | ဦးလှတင် |

Practice Dialogues set 2. You take the call.

Imagine you are living in a hostel in Burma with a bunch of other foreigners, and there's just one public phone, in the lobby. When the phone rings, you happen to be nearest, so you pick it up and say ဟလို။ If the call is for you, answer accordingly. If it's for someone else, say you'll fetch them, ask who's calling, repeat the caller's name, adding a Daw or U to it, and tell him/her to hold on. For practice purposes, make a note on the blanks below after each call. There's a Key at the end of the Lesson.

Blanks for Practice Dialogues Set 2

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------|
| 1. Bob answers: | Call from ... | for ... |
| 2. Debby answers: | Call from ... | for ... |
| 3. Tom answers: | Call from ... | for ... |
| 4. May answers: | Call from ... | for ... |
| 5. Joe answers: | Call from ... | for ... |
| 6. Maureen answers: | Call from ... | for ... |
| 7. Hal answers: | Call from ... | for ... |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following two dialogues into Burmese.

Dialogue 1 (a man S2 phones a woman S1)

S1: Yes? Go ahead.
 S2: Is Daw Hla there? (+ tag).
 S1: Please speak more slowly (+ tag).
 S1: The line is not very good.
 S2: I'd like to speak to Daw Tin Hla.
 S1: This is me Tin Hla speaking (+ tag).
 S2: Oh. Is that you?
 S2: My name is Zaw Win.
 S2: I'm from America.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့်ရှိပါ။
 S2: ဒေါ်တင်လှ ရှိလား ခင်ဗျာ။
 S1: ဖြည်းဖြည်း ပြောပါ ရှင်။
 S1: လိုင်း သိပ်မကောင်းဘူး။
 S2: ဒေါ်တင်လှနဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်ပါတယ်။
 S1: ကျမ တင်လှ စကားပြောနေပါတယ် ရှင်။
 S2: အော်။ ဒေါ်တင်လှလား။
 S2: ကျနော်နဲ့မည်က ဇော်ဝင်းပါ။
 S2: အမေရိကကပါ။

Dialogue 2 (a man S2 phones a woman S1)

S1: Yes (+ tag).
 S2: I'd like to speak to Ma Thida (+ tag).
 S1: I'll go and fetch her.
 S1: Just a moment, please.
 S1: Who should I say is calling?

S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်။
 S2: မသိတာနဲ့ စကားပြောချင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။
 S1: သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။
 S1: ခဏလေးနော်။
 S1: ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။

S2: Please speak up (+ tag).
 S2: I can't hear very well.
 S1: Who should I say is calling?
 S2: Oh. My name is Thissa.
 S2: I'm from Japan.
 S1: Fine. Please hold on a moment.
 S2: Right.

S2: ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောပါ ခင်ဗျာ။
 S2: ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားရပါဘူး။
 S1: ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။
 S2: အော်။ ကျနော် နံမည်က သစ္စာပါ။
 S2: ဂျပန်ကပါ။
 S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ခဏကိုင်ထားပါ။
 S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES SET 2

| | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------|---------|
| 1. Bob answers: | Call from ... | ဒေါ်သန်းသန်းနွဲ့ | for ... | self |
| 2. Debby answers: | Call from ... | ဒေါ်တင်တင်စိန် | for ... | Hal |
| 3. Tom answers: | Call from ... | ဦးကျော်ဝင်း | for ... | Maureen |
| 4. May answers: | Call from ... | ဦးတင့်ဝေ | for ... | self |
| 5. Joe answers: | Call from ... | ဒေါ်တင်တင်ကြည် | for ... | Bob |
| 6. Maureen answers: | Call from ... | ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့် | for ... | Debby |
| 7. Hal answers: | Call from ... | ဦးအောင်ကျော်ထွန်း | for ... | self |

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 1

ASKING THE WAY

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| ညာဘက်မှာ | on the right ["right-side-on"] | nya-beq-hma |
| ဘယ်ဘက်မှာ ¹ | on the left ["left-side-on"] | beh-beq-hma |
| တွေ့- | to see, find, notice, meet | twé- |
| —ညာဘက်မှာ တွေ့မယ်။ | You'll see it on the right. | Nya-beq-hma twé-meh. |
| ကျော်- | to pass beyond, go past, cross | caw- |
| —ကျော်ပြီးရင် ² | when you've passed | caw-pì-yin ["pass-finish-when"] |
| —နှစ်လမ်း ကျော်ပြီးရင် တွေ့မယ်။ | When you've crossed two roads, you'll see it. | Hnālàn caw-pì-yin twé-meh. |
| မီးပွိုင့် | traffic lights ["light-point"] | mì-pwain |
| တံတား /ဒေါ့/ | bridge | tādà |
| | [in this context a pedestrian bridge for crossing the road safely] | |

1. Don't confuse sentences like these:

| | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| ဘယ်ဘက်မှာလဲ။ | Which way? On which side? | Beh-beq-hma-lèh? |
| ဘယ်ဘက်မှာပါ။ | On the left | Beh-beq-hma-ba. |
| ဘယ်ဘက်မှာလား။ | Is it on the left? | Beh-beq-hma-là? |

The key is that -လဲ (-lèh) marks a *which*-question, so any ဘယ် (beh) before it must be the ဘယ် meaning "which?" Hence ဘယ်ဘက်မှာလဲ (Beh-beq-hma-lèh?) can only mean "on which side? Which way?" Any ဘယ်ဘက်မှာ (beh-beq-hma) without a -လဲ has to mean "on the left side."

2. Variants for "when you've passed"

| | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| ကျော်ပြီးရင် | ["pass-finish-when"] | caw-pì-yin |
| ကျော်သွားရင် | ["pass-go-when"] | caw-dhwà-yin |
| ကျော်သွားပြီးရင် | ["pass-go-finish-when"] | caw-dhwà-pì-yin |



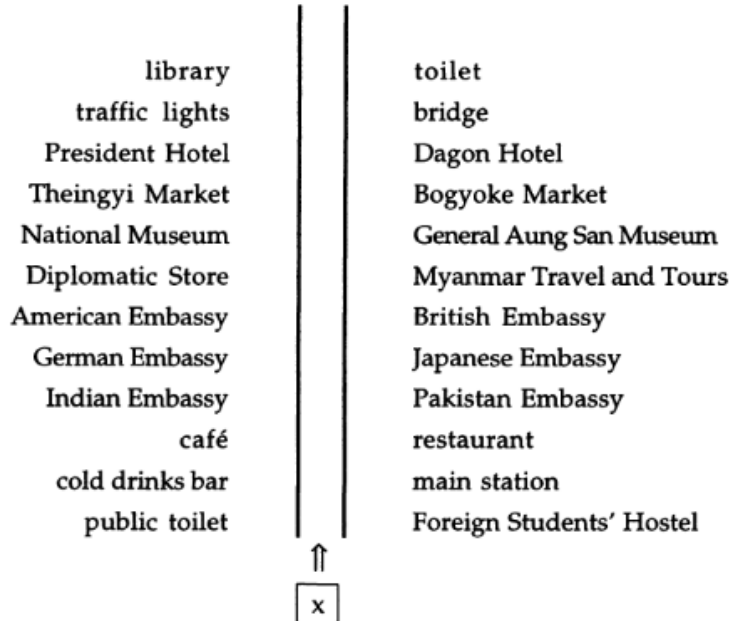
Rangoon. Note the pedestrian bridge.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 goes up to S2 to ask for directions.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| S1: ဦးလေး။ | Excuse me. | Ù-lè. |
| S2: ခင်ဗျာ။ | Yes? | K'in-bya? |
| S1: သံတမန်ကုန်တိုက် သွားချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want to go to the Diplomatic Store. | Than-dāman Koun-daiq thwà-jin-ba-deh. |
| ဘယ်လို သွားရမလဲ။ | How can I get there? | Beh-lo thwà-yá-mālèh? |
| S2: ဒီဘက် သွား။ | Go this way. | Dì-beq thwà. |
| အနော်ရထာလမ်း ကျော်ပြီးရင် ညာဘက်မှာ တွေ့မယ်။ | When you've crossed Anawrahta Road you'll see it on the right. | Ānaw-yāt'a Làn caw-pì-yin nya-beq-hma twé-meh. |
| S1: အနော်ရထာလမ်း ကျော်ပြီးရင် ညာဘက်မှာ တွေ့မယ်၊ ဟုတ်လား။ | When I've crossed Anawrahta Road I'll see it on the right. Is that right? | Ānaw-yāt'a Làn caw-pì-yin nya-beq-hma twé-meh: houq-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ | That's all right. | Yá-ba-deh. |

Exercise on left and right



Imagine that you are at X, looking up the road in the direction of the arrow. When S1 asks you which side of the road something is on, tell her whether it's on the left or the right.

Format for Ex. 1

S1: အိမ်သာ ဘယ်ဘက်မှာလဲ။

L/S2: ညာဘက်မှာပါ။

For the Practice Dialogues

Blanks for the Practice Dialogues

| <i>name</i> | <i>wants to go to</i> | <i>asks a person who cd be his/her</i> | <i>go past</i> | <i>which side</i> |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|----------------|-----------------------|
| Mr. Black | Bogyoke Market | daughter | ... | ... |
| Mrs. White | Aung San Museum | older sister | ... | ... |
| Mr. Grey | Tourist Burma office | uncle | ... | ... |
| Ms. Green | American Embassy | son | ... | ... |
| ဒေါ်သန်းမြင့် | a market | older brother | ... | ... |
| ဦးစောလွင် | a museum | aunt | ... | ... |
| ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း | a park | uncle | ... | ... |
| ဦးမောင်မောင် | a cold drinks bar | daughter | ... | ... |

More names for classroom practice

| | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|---|
| Mr. Ross | British Embassy | aunt | restaurant | L |
| Mrs. Brown | Australian Embassy | older brother | cold drinks bar | R |
| ဒေါ်ခင်ခင်စိုး | a café | daughter | 2 roads | L |
| ဦးအုံးဟန် | a restaurant | older sister | Bo Aung Kyaw | R |
| ဒေါ်မိမိစိန် | a public toilet | aunt | — there isn't one | |

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following sentences have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

1. S1: -သိမ်ကြီး-သွား-ရ-သွား-မလဲ-ပါတယ်-ဘယ်လို-ဈေး-ချင်
2. S2: -ကျော်ပြီး-ညာဘက်-ဒီဘက်-တွေ့-ရင်-သွားပါ-မယ်-တံတား-မှာ
3. S1: -အောင်ဆန်း-ပါတယ်-ဘယ်-မလဲ-ပြတိုက်-သွား-သွား-ဗိုလ်ချုပ်-လို-ချင်-ရ
4. S2: -တွေ့-ပြီး-ကျော်-သွား-ရ-ဘက်-ဘက်-မယ်-လမ်း-မှာ-ရင်-ဘယ်-ဒီ-မယ်-နှစ်
5. S1: -ချင်-လဲ-သွား-သံရုံး-သွား-ပါ-မ-လို-ရ-အမေရိကန်-တယ်-ဘယ်
6. S2: -ဘက်-မယ်-ဘယ်-မယ်-ဘက်-ရင်-သွား-ဒီ-ပန်းခြံ-ပြီး-မှာ-တွေ့-ရ-ကျော်

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

1. S1: -သိမ်ကြီး-ဈေး-သွား-ချင်-ပါတယ်။ -ဘယ်လို-သွား-ရ-မလဲ။
2. S2: -ဒီဘက်-သွား-ပါ။ -တံတား-ကျော်ပြီး-ရင်-ညာဘက်-မှာ-တွေ့-မယ်။
3. S1: -ဗိုလ်ချုပ်-အောင်ဆန်း-ပြတိုက်-သွား-ချင်-ပါတယ်။ -ဘယ်-လို-သွား-ရ-မလဲ။
4. S2: -ဒီ-ဘက်-သွား-ရ-မယ်။ -နှစ်-လမ်း-ကျော်ပြီး-ရင်-ဘယ်-ဘက်-မှာ-တွေ့-မယ်။
5. S1: -အမေရိကန်-သံရုံး-သွား-ချင်-ပါ-တယ်။ -ဘယ်-လို-သွား-ရ-မလဲ။
6. S2: -ဒီ-ဘက်-သွား-ရ-မယ်။ -ပန်းခြံ-ကျော်ပြီး-ရင်-ဘယ်-ဘက်-မှာ-တွေ့-မယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES

| <i>name</i> | <i>wants to go to</i> | <i>asks a person who cd be his/her</i> | <i>go past</i> | <i>which side</i> |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Mr. Black | Bogyoke Market | daughter | 2 roads | R |
| Mrs. White | Aung San Museum | older sister | café | L |
| Mr. Grey | Tourist Burma office | uncle | bridge | L |
| Ms. Green | American Embassy | son | 1 road | R |
| ဒေါ်သန်းမြင့် | a market | older brother | Maha Bandoola St. | R |
| ဦးစောလွင် | a museum | aunt | — don't know | |
| ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်ဝင်း | a park | uncle | Sule Pagoda | L |
| ဦးမောင်မောင် | a cold drinks bar | daughter | — there isn't one | |

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 2

TAKING PHOTOGRAPHS

New words

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| နောက် ဆုတ်- | to move back, retreat | nauq s'ouq- ["back—retreat"] |
| —နဲ့နဲ့ နောက်ဆုတ်ပါနော်။ | Could you move back a little? | Nèh-nèh nauq s'ouq-pa-naw? |
| ရှေ့တိုး- | to come forward | shé tò- ["front—advance"] |
| —နဲ့နဲ့ ရှေ့တိုးပါ။ | Come forward a little. | Nèh-nèh shé tò-ba. |
| လှည့်- / လှဲ- / | to turn | hléh- |

—ဒီဘက် လှည့်ပါ။
ဒီလို
—ဒီလိုလား။

Turn this way.
like this ["this-manner"]
Like this?
[= Do you mean like this?]

Di-beq hléh-ba.
di-lo
Di-lo-là?



Weaving in Anarapura

Sample Dialogue

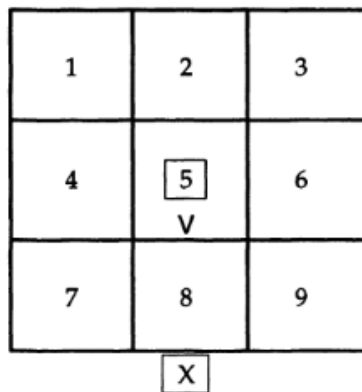
Scene: somewhere in Burma. S2 is a lady in a photogenic spot, and S1 wants to take a photograph of the scene.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S1: အမေ။ | Excuse me. | Ā má. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ရှင်။ | Yes? | Houq-kéh, Shin? |
| S1: ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်ချင်ပါတယ်။ | I'd like to take a photograph. | Daq-poun yaiq-c'in-ba-deh. |
| ရတယ်နော်။ | You don't mind, so you? | Yá-deh-naw? |
| S2: ရပါတယ် ရှင်။ ရိုက်ပါ။ | No, that's all right. Go ahead. | Yá-ba-deh, Shin. Yaiq-pa. |
| S1: နဲ့နဲ့ နောက်ဆုတ်ပါနော်။ | Could you move back a little? | Nèh-nèh nauq s'ouq-pa-naw? |
| ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | That's good. | Kaùn-ba-deh. |
| ဒီဘက် လှည့်ပါ။ | Now turn this way. | Di-beq hléh-ba. |
| S2: ဒီလိုလား။ | Like this? | Di-lo-là? |

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အဲဒီမှာ ထိုင်ပါ။ | Yes. Sit down there. | Houq-kéh. È-di-hma t'ain-ba. |
| နဲ့ ရှေ့တိုးပါ။ | Come forward a little. | Nèh-nèh shé tò-ba. |
| ကဲ။ ရပြီ။ | There. That's it. | Kèh. Yá-bi. |
| ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ | I'll shoot now, right? | Yaiq-mèh-naw? |
| ပြီးပြီ။ ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ | I've done it. Thank you. | Pì-bi. Cè-zù tin-ba-deh. |
| သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye. | Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ ရင်။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi, Shin. |

You would have to be quite thick-skinned to give so many instructions for a single photograph. No doubt you appreciate that they are crammed into the dialogue so that all the new words get a showing.

Exercise on giving directions



Imagine that S1 is at the point marked X, and the school-aged girl who is the subject of his photograph is sitting in square 5, facing him. Mask the Key below, listen to S1's instructions, and write down in the blanks how he poses the subject. If S1 moves her back, she'll be in Square 2, and likewise for the other directions. Under "facing" mark L for Left, R for Right, and F for Front. When you've worked through all five subjects, compare your answers with the Key.

Blanks for the Exercise

| <i>Subject</i> | <i>square n°</i> | <i>facing</i> | <i>sit/stand</i> |
|----------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... | ... |

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues 1-4. Imagine you are walking round a market, taking photographs of the stalls that interest you. Follow the Prompt.

In the classroom. Students direct each other to adopt poses to match sketches, as outlined at Level 3, Topic 2.

Exercise for written answer

The sentences in the list below have been split into two halves. Find an appropriate half in Column B for each half in Column A.

Column A

1. နောက်
2. ဒီဘက်
3. ဒီမှာ
4. ဒီဘက်
5. ဒီလို
6. ဒီဘက်
7. နောက်
8. ညာဘက်
9. ရှေ့
10. ဒီလို
11. ဘယ်ဘက်
12. ဒီမှာ

Column B jumbled

- မလုပ်ပါနဲ့။
- လုပ်ပါ။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။
- ဆုတ်ပါ။
- လှည့်ပါ။
- တိုးပါ။
- ရပ်ပါ။
- မဆုတ်ပါနဲ့။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။
- မလှည့်ပါနဲ့။
- ထိုင်ပါ။
- လှည့်ပါ။

KEY: ACCEPTABLE MATCHES

- ဆုတ်ပါ။/ မဆုတ်ပါနဲ့။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။/ လှည့်ပါ။/ မလှည့်ပါနဲ့။
- ထိုင်ပါ။/ ရပ်ပါ။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။/ လှည့်ပါ။/ မလှည့်ပါနဲ့။
- လုပ်ပါ။/ မလုပ်ပါနဲ့။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။/ လှည့်ပါ။/ မလှည့်ပါနဲ့။
- ဆုတ်ပါ။/ မဆုတ်ပါနဲ့။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။/ လှည့်ပါ။/ မလှည့်ပါနဲ့။
- တိုးပါ။
- လုပ်ပါ။/ မလုပ်ပါနဲ့။
- ရွှေ့ပါ။/ လှည့်ပါ။/ မလှည့်ပါနဲ့။
- ထိုင်ပါ။/ ရပ်ပါ။

KEY TO THE EXERCISE ON TAPE

| Subject | square n° | facing | sit/stand |
|---------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| 1 | 2 | F | sit |
| 2 | 8 | R | sit |
| 3 | 4 | R | sit |
| 4 | 6 | F | stand |
| 5 | 1 | F | stand |

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 3

TAKING A TAXI

New words

ချိုး-

- S1: ဒီမှာ ချိုးမလား။
- or: ဒီမှာ ချိုးရမလား။
- S2: မချိုးသေးဘူး။
- S1: ဘယ်မှာ ချိုးမလဲ။
- S2: ဗိုလ်ချုပ်လမ်း ကျရင် ချိုးမယ်။
- S1: ဘယ်ဘက် ချိုးမလဲ။

to break; break away from
the present road, turn off

Are we going to turn here?

Should we turn here?

Not yet.

Where are we going to turn?

We'll turn when we get to

Bogyoke Street.

Which way shall we turn?

c'ò-

Di-hma c'ò-mālā?

Di-hma c'ò-yá-mālā?

Māc'ò-dhè-ba-bù.

Beh-hma c'ò-mālèh?

Bo-jouq Làn cá-yin

c'ò-meh.

Beh-beq c'ò-mālèh?

In Mandalay, and all over Upper Burma, people give directions using north, south, east and west:

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| မြောက်ဘက် | to the north | myauq-p'eq |
| အနောက်ဘက် + အရှေ့ဘက် | to the west + to the east | ānauq-p'eq + āshé-beq |
| တောင်ဘက် | to the south | taun-beq |

If you try using these words for directions in Rangoon people get muddled. However, if you think they should be educated in this respect, persevere.

Note that the word ဘက် "direction" is pronounced /ʔn̩/ after the glottal stops in အနောက် and မြောက်။

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 is a taxi driver, and S2 has just hailed the taxi.

At start of journey

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| S1: ဘယ် သွားမလဲ။ | Where are you going? | Beh thwà-mālèh? |
| S2: သံတမန်ကုန်တိုက် သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to the Diplomatic Store. | Than-dāman Koun-daiq thwà-meh. |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ တက်ပါ။ | All right. Climb in. | Yá-ba-deh. Teq-pa. |
| S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးရမလဲ။ | How much will you charge? | Beh-lauq pè-yá-mālèh? |
| S1: သံတမန်ကုန်တိုက်က ဘယ်လမ်းမှာလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။ | What road is the Diplomatic Store in? | Than-dāman Koun-daiq-ká beh-làn-hma-lèh, K'in-bya? |
| S2: ဆူးလေဘုရားလမ်းမှာ။ | In Sule Pagoda Road. | S'ù-le P'āyà Làn-hma. |
| S1: ဒီလိုဆို ၅၀/- ပေးပါ။ | In that case, give me K50. | Di-lo-s'ò ngà-zeh pè-ba. |
| S2: နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ မလျော့နိုင်ဘူးလား။ | That's a bit too much. Can't you reduce it? | Nèh-nèh myà-ba-deh. Māshāw-nain-bù-là? |
| S1: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးချင်သလဲ။ | How much do you want to pay? | Beh-lauq pè-jin-dhālèh? |
| S2: ၄၀/- ပေးမယ်။ ရမလား။ | I'll give you K40. Would you accept that? | Lè-zeh pè-meh. Yá-mālà? |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ တက်ပါ။ | All right. Get in. | Yá-ba-deh. Teq-pa. |

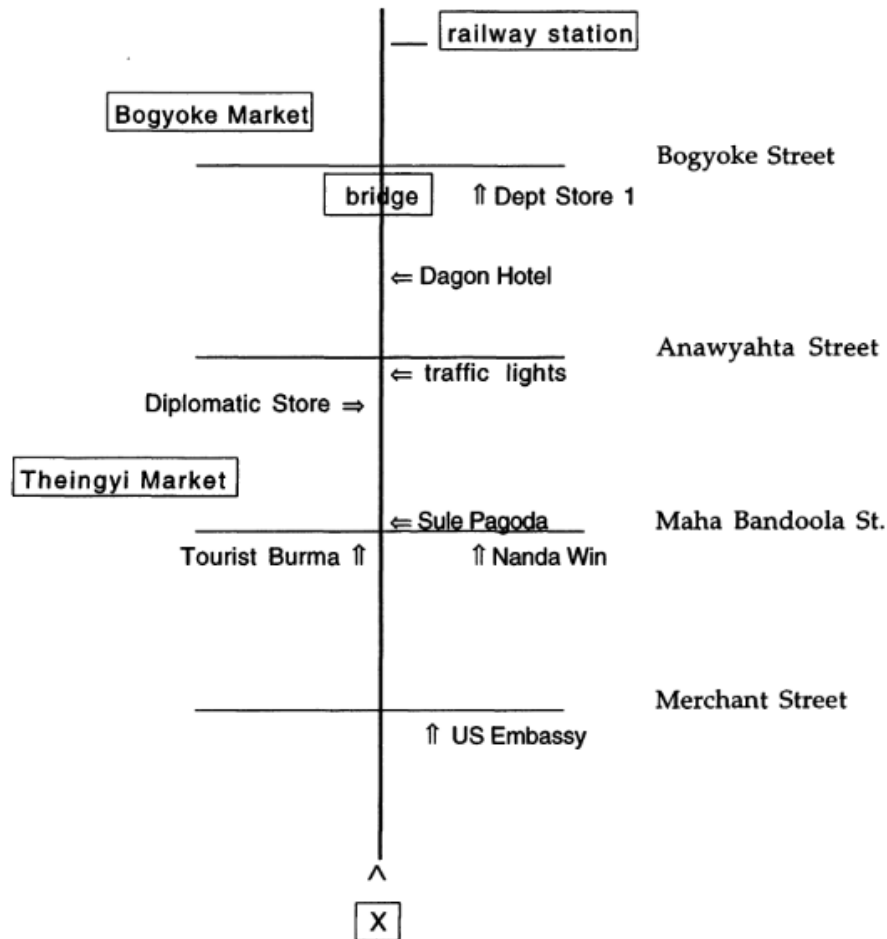
During the journey

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S1: ဆူးလေဘုရား ကျရင် ဘယ်ဘက် ချိုးမလဲ။ | Which way do we turn when we get to the Sule Pagoda? | S'ù-le P'āyà cá-yin beh-beq c'ò-mālèh? |
| S2: မချိုးပါဘူး။ ရှေ့တည့်တည့် သွားမယ်။ | We don't turn. We go straight on. | Māc'ò-ba-bù. Shé-téh-déh thwà-meh. |

At end of journey

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S2: ၄၀/- နော်။ | It was K40 wasn't it? | Lè-zeh-naw? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh. |
| S2: ပိုက်ဆံ ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | Here's the money. Goodbye. | Paiq-s'an di-hma. Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. Fine. | Houq-kéh. Kaùn-ba-bi. |

Exercises on the new directions



The map is only partially accurate.
Some items are altered to provide more variety for the practice.

For the Exercise, all our exchanges take place in a taxi driving from the point marked X, and travelling in the direction shown by the arrow. Look at the map while you're doing the exercise. The prompt will tell you where you're headed for and how far you've got. The driver will ask for directions.

In practice, of course, taxi drivers know their way to well-known places like those in the list. But you may well find you need to give directions when you're going to less familiar places — such the Women's Hospital in Bogyoke Museum Road.

For the Practice Dialogues

Taking a taxi. You take the part of some of the people named.

| <i>name</i> | <i>destination</i> | <i>ceiling fare</i> | <i>bargaining fare</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| H. Hogan | Railway station | 120 | 100 |
| B. Hart | Bogyoke Market | 60 | 45 |
| R. Savage | Department Store 1 | 100 | 80 |
| T. DiBiase | Dagon Hotel | 50 | 40 |
| B. Heenan | Diplomatic Store | 40 | 30 |
| A. Giant | Theingyi Market | 70 | 55 |
| R. Piper | Tourist Burma | 30 | 20 |
| S. Justice | Nanda Win Café | 90 | 70 |
| R. Flair | U.S. Embassy | 80 | 70 |

Not all these names are used in the Exercise and Practice Dialogue. The additional ones are included for classroom use.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following message into Burmese. Imagine that you have arranged to meet a friend named Ko Aung, but your plans change and you have to leave him a written message telling him what to do. Use the male form for "I."

1. Ko Aung.
2. I phoned you today.
3. You were not at home.
4. I am no longer free tomorrow.
5. It has been arranged for me to go to Pegu.
6. However, I am free on the day after.
7. If you are free, please come to the hostel.
8. I will be there at about 12.30.
9. You will have to take a taxi.¹
10. It will cost about K50.
11. You'll have to go to Prome Road.²
12. When you get to Windsor Road
you have to turn left.
13. When you have passed the traffic lights,
turn right.
14. Straight ahead
you will see the Mingala Café.
15. Stop the taxi there.
16. The hostel is there.
17. If you can't come³, please phone.
18. That's all.
19. Derek.

Notes.

1. "to take a taxi" = တက်စီ စီး-။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ကိုအောင်။
ဒီနေ့ ဖုန်း ဆက်ပါတယ်။
ကိုအောင် အိမ်မှာ မရှိဘူး။
ကျနော် မနက်ဖန် မအားတော့ပါဘူး။
ပဲခူး သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။
သန်ဘက်ခါတော့ အားပါတယ်။
ကိုအောင် အားရင် ကျောင်းဆောင် လာပါ။
၁၂-နာရီခွဲလောက်မှာ ကျနော် ရှိမယ်။
ကိုအောင် တက်စီ စီးရမယ်။
ငွေ ငါးဆယ်လောက် ကျမယ်။
ပြည်လမ်း သွားရမယ်။
ဝင်ဆာလမ်း ကျရင်
ဘယ်ဘက် ချိုးရမယ်။
မိပိုင် ကျော်ပြီးရင်
ညာဘက် ချိုးပါ။
ရှေ့တည့်တည့်မှာ
မင်္ဂလာလက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် တွေ့မယ်။
အဲဒီမှာ တက်စီ ရပ်ပါ။
ကျောင်းဆောင်က အဲဒီမှာ ရှိပါတယ်။
မလာနိုင်ရင် ဖုန်းဆက်ပါ။
ဒါပါပဲ။
ဒဲရစ်။

2. "Prome Road" = ပြည်လမ်း။
3. "if you can't come" = မလာနိုင်ရင်။

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 4

CAFÉS AND RESTAURANTS

New words

| | | |
|---|--|----------------------------------|
| ထမင်း ¹ | cooked rice | t'ǎmìn |
| ဟင်း ² | curry | hìn |
| အသား | meat, flesh | ǎthà |
| ကြက် | chicken | ceq |
| ဘဲ | duck | bèh |
| ဝက် | pig | weq |
| ငါး | fish | ngà |
| ပုစွန် / ဗုစွန်/ | prawn, shrimp | pǎzun |
| ဥ / အု/ | egg | ú |
| ပဲ | pulse: bean, pea, lentil, ... | pèh |
| ပဲပြား / -ဗျား/ | bean curd ["bean-slab, cake"] | pèh-byà |
| သက်သတ်လွတ် | vegetarian diet | theq-thaq-luq ["life-kill-free"] |
| — Some say သတ်သတ်လွတ် | | thaq-thaq-luq |
| ပါ- | to include, have (with one, with it) | pa- |
| — S1: အသား ပါသလား။ | Does it have meat in it? | ǎthà pa-dhǎlà? |
| — S2: မပါပါဘူး။ | No, it doesn't. | Mǎpa-ba-bù. |
| — S1: ခဲတံ ပါသလား။ | Have you got a pencil on you? | K'èh-dan pa-dhǎlà? |
| — S2: ပါပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Pa-ba-deh. |
| [noun]-ပဲ / ဖဲ/ or voiced /ပဲ/ ³ | just [noun], only [noun] ³ | -p'èh, -bèh |
| [noun]-နဲ့ | with [noun] | -néh |
| — ထမင်း ဘာဟင်းနဲ့ စားမလဲ။ | With what curry will you eat the rice? | T'ǎmìn ba-hìn-néh sàmǎlèh? |
| — ကြက်သားဟင်းနဲ့ စားမယ်။ | I'll eat it with chicken curry. | Ceq-thà-hìn-néh sà-meh. |

Note the contrast between Burmese and Western priorities: in a Burmese context you think of the rice as primary and the curry as secondary: you eat the rice "with" the curry. In the West the order is reversed.

Some generic dishes ⁴

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| ကြက်သားဟင်း | chicken curry | ceq-thà hìn |
| ဝက်သားဟင်း | pork curry | weq-thà hìn |
| ငါးဟင်း | fish curry | ngà hìn |
| ပုစွန်ဟင်း | prawn curry | pǎzun hìn |
| ဘဲဥဟင်း | duck egg curry | bèh-ú hìn |
| ပဲဟင်း | bean curry, dal | pèh hìn |

1. ထမင်း (t'ǎmìn) is rice that has been cooked. The uncooked grain that you buy in the shop is called ဆန် (s'an), and the plant, or the grain with the husk still on it, is called စပါး (/ဇာ/ sǎbà)။

2. “Curry” is a convenient equivalent for ဟင်း, but not all ဟင်း are dishes with hot flavouring and thick sauce like the standard image of Indian curry. ဟင်း is the word for any cooked dish to be eaten as an accompaniment to rice.

3. You have met this suffix with quantities: တစ်လဲ (tālā-bèh) “just one month,” သုံးပုလင်းပဲ (thouñ-pālīn-bèh) “only three bottles,” and the like: see 3.7. In this Lesson you meet it with other nouns. Its effect is much the same:

| | | |
|-----------------|--|--------------------|
| ထမင်းပဲ စားမယ်။ | I’ll have just rice | Tāmìn-bèh sà-meh. |
| | [nothing fancy or more complicated]. | |
| သက်သတ်လွတ်ပဲ | I want to eat just | Theq-thaq-luq-p’èh |
| စားချင်ပါတယ်။ | vegetarian food | sà-jin-ba-dèh. |
| | [nothing more extravagant or pretentious]. | |

4. These dishes are called “generic” because there are many different kinds of each curry. The term ကြက်သားဟင်း (ceq-thà-hìn) covers sweet and sour chicken, chicken with mushroom, chicken with sour bamboo shoots, chicken with beancurd, and so on: see the sample menu reproduced at 3.4. The same goes for the other names in the list. As the menu shows, there are scores of different dishes to be had in restaurants, and it would be pointless to try and learn them all here. There would be many you would forget, and many you would not want to use. A better plan is to learn the names of new dishes one by one as you come across them outside the classroom. The list above provides you with a few high-frequency words to start you off.

Most meals will also include —

| | | |
|--|--------|---------|
| ဟင်းချို / -ဂျို/ | soup | hìn-jo |
| [most commonly a watery soup of leaves flavoured with a little meat] | | |
| တို့စရာ / -ဇယာ/ | salad | tó-zăya |
| [a small helping of fresh or preserved vegetables. Literally “things to be prodded,” because you pick up a piece and prod it into a sauce before eating it. For -စရာ compare လုပ်စရာ “things to be done.”] | | |
| အချဉ် / အချင်/ | relish | ăc’in |
| [a sauce with a vinegary taste, served in a small flat bowl] | | |

For a list of words common in restaurant menus, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 9.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a restaurant in Burma. S1 is a waiter, and S2 and S3 are customers, named မြင့်မောင် and လှသိန်း။

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ ထိုင်ကြမလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။ ¹ | Where would you like to sit? | Beh-hma t’ain-já-mālèh, K’in-bya? |
| S2: ဒီမှာ ထိုင်မယ်။ | We’ll sit here. | Di-hma t’ain-meh. |
| ဒီစားပွဲ အားတယ်နော်။ | This table is free, isn’t it? | Di sǎbwèh à-deh-naw? |
| S1: အားပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ထိုင်ပါ။ | Yes, it is. Go ahead. | À-ba-deh, K’in-bya. T’ain-ba. |
| ဘာ မှာကြမလဲ။ ¹ | What would you like to order? | Ba hma-já-mālèh? |
| S2 turns to S3 — | | |
| S2: ကိုမြင့်မောင် ဘာ စားချင်သလဲ။ | What do you want to have? | Ko Myín Maun ba sà-jin-dhālèh? |
| S3: ကျနော်က ထမင်းပဲ စားမယ်။ | I’ll just have rice. | Cānaw-gá t’āmìn-bèh sà-meh. |

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| S2: ထမင်း။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ဘာဟင်းနဲ့ စားမလဲ။ | Rice. All right. What curry will you have with it? | Tāmìn. Kaùn-ba-bi. Ba hìn-néh sà-mǎlèh? |
| S3: ဝက်သားဟင်း။ ကိုလှသိန်းကော ဘာ စားချင်သလဲ။ | Pork curry. What do you want to have? | Weq-thà-hìn. Ko Hlǎ Theìn-gàw — ba sà-jin-dhālèh? |
| S2: ကျနော်ကတော့ အသား သိပ်မစားဘူး။ သက်သတ်လွတ်ပဲ စားချင်ပါတယ်။ | I don't eat meat much. I'd just like to have something vegetarian. | Cǎnaw-gá-dáw ǎthà theiq māsà-bù. Theq-thaq-luq-p'èh sà-jin-ba-deh. |
| <i>To the waiter —</i> | | |
| S2: ပဲပြား ရမလား။ | Could you provide some bean curd? | Pèh-byà yá-mǎlà? |
| S1: ရပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ပဲပြားကြော် ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes. We have fried bean curd. | Yá-ba-deh, K'in-bya. Pèh-byà-jaw shí-ba-deh. |
| S2: အသား ပါသလား။ | Does it have any meat in it? | ǎthà pa-dhālà? |
| S1: အသား မပါပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ သက်သတ်လွတ်ပါ။ | No it doesn't contain meat. It is vegetarian. | ǎthà māpa-ba-bù, K'in-bya. Theq-thaq-luq-pa. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ဒီလိုဆို ဝက်သားဟင်း တစ်ပွဲ၊ ပဲပြားကြော် တစ်ပွဲ၊ ထမင်း နှစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။ | Fine. In that case, let us have one pork curry, one fried bean curd, and two helpings of rice. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Di-lo-s'ò weq-thà-hìn tǎbwèh, pèh-byà-jaw tǎbwèh, t'āmìn hnāpwèh pè-ba. |
| S1: ဒါပဲလား ခင်ဗျာ။ | Is that all? | Da-bèh-là, K'in-bya? |
| S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ | Yes. | Da-ba-bèh. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi, K'in-bya. |

1. [verb]-ကြ- (ǎ-jǎ-) is often (but not obligatorily) used when the verb has a plural subject.
Compare နောက်ထပ် တွေ့ကြုံရအောင် in 1.11 and elsewhere.

Exercises on the new dishes

| နာမည် | wants to eat | name | နာမည် | wants to eat | name |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| ဦးသော်ကောင်း | chicken curry | U Thaw Kaung | ကိုအောင်ခင် | prawn curry | Ko Aung Khin |
| ဒေါ်ခင်သန်း | pork curry | Daw Khin Than | အဝင်း | duck-egg curry | Ahwin |
| စမ်းစမ်းမေ | fish curry | San San Me | ကိုစိုးသိန်း | bean curd | Ko So Thein |

Ex. 1: Prompt: Ask ဦးသော်ကောင်း: what he's going to have

L/S2: ဦးသော်ကောင်း ဘာ စားမလဲ။ S1: ကြက်သားဟင်း စားမယ်။

Prompt: Check that: L/S2: ကြက်သားဟင်းလား။ S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကြက်သားဟင်းပါ။

Ex. 2 tests out your memory of the new dishes

S1: ဦးသော်ကောင်း ကြက်သားဟင်း မှာသလား။ L/S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကြက်သားဟင်း မှာပါတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Use the list above and follow the Prompt.

Dialogue 1. U Thaw Kaung and Daw Khin Than.

Dialogue 2. San San Me and Ko Aung Khin.

Dialogue 3. Awin and Ko So Thein.

Exercise for written answer

Fill in the gaps in the following dialogue. Imagine that it takes place in a restaurant between Ko Thein Naing (S1), Ma Thanda (S2), and the waiter (S3).

1. S1: မသန္တာ ... စားချင်သလဲ။
2. S2: ကျမကတော့ ထမင်းပဲ စားချင်ပါ...။
3. S1: ဘာ ဟင်း... စားမလဲ။
4. S2: ငါး...နဲ့ စားမယ်။
5. S2: ကိုသိန်းနိုင် ဘာ ...မလဲ။
6. S1: ...လဲ ထမင်းပဲ စားမယ်။
7. S2: ဘာဟင်းနဲ့ စား...လဲ။
8. S1: ကျနော်ကတော့ သက်...လွတ်ပဲ စားချင်ပါတယ်။
9. S1 (to waiter): သက်သတ်... ဘာ ရှိသလဲ။
10. S3: ပဲ...ကြော် ရှိပါတယ်။
11. S3 (to Thein Naing): ပဲ...ကြော် စားမလား။
12. S1: စားမယ်။ ကောင်းပါ...။
13. S1: ကဲ။ ...လိုဆို ငါးဟင်း တစ်ပွဲ၊
...ပြားကြော် တစ်ပွဲ၊ ထမင်း နှစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။
14. S3: ပဲပြား... ရမယ်။
15. S3: ငါးဟင်းတော့ ကုန်...ပြီ။
16. S1 (to Ma Thanda): ဒီ...ဆို မသန္တာ
ဘာဟင်း စားချင်သလဲ။
17. S2: ငါးဟင်း ကုန်သွားပြီ ဟုတ်...။
18. S2: ဒီလိုဆို ပုစွန်ဟင်း ရမလား မသိ...။
19. S3: ပုစွန်ဟင်း ...ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။
20. S1: ဒီလိုဆို ပုစွန်ဟင်း တစ်...၊
ပဲပြားကြော် တစ်ပွဲ၊ ... နှစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။
21. S3: ...ပါပြီ။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- S1: မသန္တာ ဘာ စားချင်သလဲ။
- S2: ကျမကတော့ ထမင်းပဲ စားချင်ပါတယ်။
- S1: ဘာ ဟင်းနဲ့ စားမလဲ။
- S2: ငါးဟင်းနဲ့ စားမယ်။
- S2: ကိုသိန်းနိုင် ဘာ စားမလဲ။
- S1: ကျနော်လဲ ထမင်းပဲ စားမယ်။
- S2: ဘာဟင်းနဲ့ စားမလဲ။
- S1: ကျနော်ကတော့ သက်သတ်လွတ်ပဲ စားချင်ပါတယ်။
- S1: သက်သတ်လွတ် ဘာ ရှိသလဲ။
- S3: ပဲပြားကြော် ရှိပါတယ်။
- S3: ပဲပြားကြော် စားမလား။
- S1: စားမယ်။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
- S1: ကဲ။ ဒီလိုဆို ငါးဟင်း တစ်ပွဲ၊
ပဲပြားကြော် တစ်ပွဲ၊ ထမင်း နှစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။
- S3: ပဲပြားကြော် ရမယ်။
- S3: ငါးဟင်းတော့ ကုန်သွားပြီ။
- S1: ဒီလိုဆို မသန္တာ
ဘာဟင်း စားချင်သလဲ။
- S2: ငါးဟင်း ကုန်သွားပြီ ဟုတ်လား။
- S2: ဒီလိုဆို ပုစွန်ဟင်း ရမလား မသိဘူး။
- S3: ပုစွန်ဟင်း ရပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။
- S1: ဒီလိုဆို ပုစွန်ဟင်း တစ်ပွဲ၊
ပဲပြားကြော် တစ်ပွဲ၊ ထမင်း နှစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။
- S3: ကောင်းပါပြီ။

Vocabulary for some words in the menu opposite

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| ထမင်းဟင်း တခါပြင် | rice and curry complete |
| တခါပြင် | "one-time-prepare" |
| ကြက် | chicken |
| ငါး | fish |
| ပုစွန် (/ဗဇွန်/) | prawn |
| ဘဲ | duck |
| ဝက် | pig |
| အမဲ | beef |
| ပဲ | bean, pea |
| ငုံ | quail |
| ဆိတ် | goat, sheep |
| ဥ | egg |
| -သား | meat, flesh |

| | |
|---------|--|
| -ငံ | salty |
| -စပ် | hot, spicy |
| -ချဉ် | sour |
| -နပ် | cooked till tender |
| -မြှတ် | boiled |
| -ကြော် | fried |
| -ပေါင်း | steamed |
| -ဆီပြန် | ["oil returned": a type of curry] |
| -ချက် | ["cooked": a type of curry] |
| -သုပ် | ["dressed": a dish of salad ingredients mixed together with oil and flavourings] |
| တပွဲ | one serving |
| ပွဲဝက် | half serving |

From a restaurant menu

မြိုင်

မိသားစု

မြန်မာ့စားနပ်ရိက္ခာ

စားနပ်ရိက္ခာ + ဟင်းတင်

| | | | |
|----------------------|--------|-----------------------------|--------|
| * ကြက်သားကြော် | (၂၃) | * ငါးသလောက်ပေါင်း | (၁၆) |
| * ကြက်သားကြော်သုပ် | (၂၄) | * ငါးသလောက်ဥ | (၁၇) |
| * ကြက်သားဆီပြန် | (၁၈) | * ငါးသားဆီပြန် | (-) |
| * ကြက်သားမြစ်စုံ | (၁၈) | * ငါးသားကြော် | (-) |
| * ဂျပန်ငါးသေတ္တာ | (၁၇) | * ငါးဥချဉ်ဆီပြန် | (-) |
| * ဂျပန်ငါးသေတ္တာသုပ် | (၁၈) | * ဆိတ်သားဆီပြန် | (၁၆) |
| * ငါးကြင်းကြော်နှစ် | (၁၄) | * ဆိတ်ကလီစာ | (၁၆) |
| * ငါးခူကြော်နှစ် | (၁၄) | * ဆိတ်ဦးကျောက် | (၂၃) |
| * ငါးဖယ်ငါးရုပ် | (၁၄) | * ပုဇွန်ထုပ်ကြီးဆီပြန် | (၁၇) |
| * ငါးဖယ်သုပ် | (၁၅) | * တံခွန်ချဉ်ဆီပြန် | (၁၇) |
| * ငါးမြင်းဆီပြန် | (၁၇) | * ငက်သားဆီပြန် | (၁၆) |
| * ငါးမြင်းချဉ်ချက် | (၁၅) | * ငက်သားပဲငါးပိ | (၁၆) |
| * ငါးခေါင်းချဉ်ချက် | (-) | * ငက်ကလီစာ | (၁၆) |
| * ငါးခုံးကြော်နှစ် | (-) | * အမဲနှစ် | (၁၄) |
| * ငါးခုံးဆီပြန် | (-) | * အမဲစင်းကောကြော် | (၁၆) |
| * ငါးရှဉ့်ချဉ်ငယ် | (၁၅) | * အမဲစင်းကောကြော်ချက် | (၁၄) |

အကြော် - အသုပ်များ

| | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|---------------------|--------|
| * ကြက်ဥကြော် | (၁၄/၁၁) | * မျှစ်ကြော် | (၃) |
| * ကြက်ဟင်းခါးသီးကြော် | (၃) | * ဝက်ဇူချောင်းကြော် | (၁၀) |
| * ခုန့်ပေါင်ကြော် | (၃) | * ခရမ်းချဉ်သီးသုပ် | (၃) |
| * ပဲပြုတ်ကြော် | (၃) | * ပုန်းရေကြီးသုပ် | (၄) |
| * အာလချောင်းကြော် | (၃) | * မြင်းခွာရွက်သုပ် | (၃) |

စားနပ်ရိက္ခာ (၃) ပွဲဝက် (၂ / -) ပြား

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 5

SHOPS

This Lesson varies the usual pattern:
start with the New Words as usual, but then go straight to the Exercises.

New words

လိုချင်- /-ဂျင်-/ 1 to want [something] 1 lo-jin-

Some new things to buy 3

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| လွယ်အိတ် | shoulder bag, Shan bag 2 | lweh-eiq |
| ခွက် | bowl; also cup, glass | k'weq |
| ဘိး | comb | bì |
| မုတ်ဆိတ်ရိပ်ဒါး | razor blade ["beard—shave-knife"] | mouq-s'eiq-yei-dà |
| ယပ်တောင် | fan [hand-held, not electric] | yaq-taun |

1. Take care not to confuse this word with [verb]-ချင်- "to want to [verb]":

Contrast A: "to want [something]"—

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| ဘာ လိုချင်သလဲ။ | What do you want? | Ba lo-jin-dhālèh? |
| ဘောပင် လိုချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want a pen. | Bàw-pin lo-jin-ba-deh. |

with B: "to want [to do something]" —

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| ဘာ စားချင်သလဲ။ | What do you want to eat? | Ba sà-jin-dhālèh? |
| စမူဆာ စားချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want to eat a samosa. | Sāmu-s'a sà-jin-ba-deh. |

Assigning meanings to the parts of လိုချင်- (lo-jin-) is misleading. On its own လို- (lo-) means "to be in need of, to be lacking," and ချင်- (c'in-) as you know means "to want to [verb]"; but together in လိုချင်- they *don't* mean "to want to lack."

2. Presumably so called because it was bags made in the Shan States that first came to the attention of Westerners. In fact they are also made in the Kachin State and other parts of Burma. They are bags woven from cotton and wool, with a woven strip that can be used to hang the bag from your shoulder: လွယ်အိတ် (lweh-eiq) = "hang from shoulder-bag."

3. For a fuller list of things you may want to buy, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, sections 1 to 5.

Now go to the Exercises on the tape.

Exercises on the new things to buy

Format for Ex. 1. This Exercise is to help you memorize the names of the new things to buy. Look at List 1 while you do this one.

| | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Prompt: Ask Ma Khin Aye what she wants | L: မခင်အေး ဘာ လိုချင်သလဲ။ |
| S1: အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ လိုချင်ပါတယ်။ | L: အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ |

Format for Ex. 2. This is an exercise where your part gets longer and longer.

Prompt: Ask S1 what she/he bought L: ဘာ ဝယ်သလဲ။
 S1: ဘီး ဝယ်တယ်။ L: ဘီး ဝယ်တယ်။ ဒါပဲလား။
 S: ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ ယပ်တောင်လဲ ဝယ်တယ်။ L: ဘီးနဲ့ ယပ်တောင် ဝယ်တယ်။ ဒါပဲလား။
 S: ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ and so on.

Format for Ex. 3

Prompt: Here's ချိုဇင်နွယ် Ask what she/he wants L: ဘာ လိုချင်သလဲ။
 S: ဖလင် ရှိလား။ L: ဖလင်လား။ ရှိပါတယ်။
 S: ဖလင် သုံးလိပ် ယူမယ်။ L: ဖလင် သုံးလိပ်။ ရပါတယ်။ ဒီမှာ။
 You take the part of a shopkeeper. Cover up the "KEY" columns in List 2 and at the end of each exchange fill in the blanks. At the end of the Exercise uncover the Key and check that we agree. Also look at the next section below this and see if your conclusions agree with ours.

A new count word

| | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| -ချောင်း: | [count word for rod-shaped objects] * | c'aùn |
| —ခဲတံ ဘယ်နှစ်ချောင်း: | How many pencils | K'èh-dan beh-hnăc'aùn |
| လိုချင်လဲ။ | do you want? | lo-jin-dhălèh? |
| —နှစ်ချောင်းပါ။ | Two. | Hnăc'aùn-ba. |

* The list includes: sticks, pens, pencils, and similar items; and by extension knives (hence razor blades, which are called "beard-shaving-knives"), teeth, legs, arms, fingers, fans and others.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a shop in Burma. S1 is the shopkeeper, and S2 is a customer.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| S1: ဘာ လိုချင်သလဲ ရှင်။ | What do you want? | Ba lo-jin-dhălèh, Shin? |
| S2: ဘောပင် ရှိလား။ | Do you have any ballpoint pens? | Bàw-pin shí-là? |
| S1: ရှိပါတယ်။ ဒီမှာ။ | Yes. Here. | Shí-ba-deh. Di-hma. |
| S2: ကြည့်ရအောင်။ | Let's have a look. | Cí-yá-aun. |
| S1: ကြည့်ပါ။ ရပါတယ်။ | Go ahead. That's all right. | Cí-ba. Yá-ba-deh. |
| S2: ဒါ ဘယ်လောက်လဲ။ | How much is this? | Da beh-lauq-lèh? |
| S1: ရှစ်ကျပ်ပါ။ | K8. | Shiq-caq-pa. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ယူမယ်။ | OK. I'll take it. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Yu-meh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ချောင်း ယူမလဲ။ | How many will you have? | Beh-hnăc'aùn yu-mălèh? |
| S2: နှစ်ချောင်း။ | Two. | Hnăc'aùn. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ ရှင်။ ဒါပဲလား။ | All right. Is that all? | Kaùn-ba-bi, Shin. Da-bèh-là? |
| S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ | Yes, that's all. | Da-ba-bèh. |
| S1: ဆယ့်ခြောက်ကျပ်ပါ ရှင်။ | K16 please. | S'éh-c'auq-caq-pa, Shin. |
| S2: ဒီမှာ။ သွားမယ်နော်။ | Here you are. Goodbye. | Di-hma. Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ ရှင်။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi, Shin. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Use List 1 for the Practice Dialogues.

List 1

| နာမည် | item | qty | ceiling | bargain | name |
|---------------|--------------|---------|---------|---------|----------------|
| ဆရာဝန်: | envelopes | 10 | 1 ½ | 1 | Saya Win |
| တင်တင်ဝင်း: | batteries | 6 | 8 | 6 | Tin Tin Win |
| ကိုရဲမြင့် | hats | 2 | 45 | 35 | Ko Ye Myint |
| မခင်ရီ | pens | 8 | 12 | 8 | Ma Khin Yi |
| ကိုဌေးလှိုင် | pencils | 4 | 8 | 6 | Ko Htay Hlaing |
| ကိုဆုမြိုင် | film | 2 rolls | 450 | 400 | Ko Hsu Myaing |
| မခင်အေး | toilet paper | 1 rolls | 20 | 16 | Ma Khin Aye |
| မခင်မေစီ | comb | 1 | 9 | 6 | Ma Khin Me Si |
| ကိုဇေယျ | fan | 3 | 8 | 6 | Ko Zeyya |
| တက်ဖြိုးဝင်း: | razor blade | 12 | 3 | 2 | Tet Pyo Win |
| သန္တာဝင်း: | Shan bag | 5 | 100 | 80 | Thanda Win |
| ချိုဇင်နွယ် | bowl | 3 | 80 | 60 | Cho Zin Nwe |

List 2 (for Ex. 3)

| BLANKS | | | | KEY | |
|---------------|------|-----|----------------|--------------|---------|
| နာမည် | item | qty | name | item | qty |
| ချိုဇင်နွယ် | ... | ... | Cho Zin Nwe | film | 3 rolls |
| သန္တာဝင်း: | ... | ... | Thanda Win | toilet paper | 1 rolls |
| ကိုဇေယျ | ... | ... | Ko Zeyya | envelopes | 24 |
| မခင်မေစီ | ... | ... | Ma Khin Me Si | batteries | 4 |
| မခင်ရီ | ... | ... | Ma Khin Yi | hats | 3 |
| ကိုဆုမြိုင် | ... | ... | Ko Hsu Myaing | Shan bag | 5 |
| တင်တင်ဝင်း: | ... | ... | Tin Tin Win | bowl | 2 |
| ဆရာဝန်: | ... | ... | Saya Win | pens | 6 |
| တက်ဖြိုးဝင်း: | ... | ... | Tet Pyo Win | pencils | 2 |
| ကိုရဲမြင့် | ... | ... | Ko Ye Myint | comb | 5 |
| ကိုဌေးလှိုင် | ... | ... | Ko Htay Hlaing | razor blade | 14 |
| မခင်အေး: | ... | ... | Ma Khin Aye | fan | 2 |

Exercise for written answer

Imagine that you have to write a shopping list for a friend who is going into town. Translate the following into Burmese.

1. 6 rolls of toilet paper
2. 12 combs
3. 4 parata
4. 10 batteries
5. 26 ballpoint pens
6. 3 jars of instant coffee
7. 28 pencils

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ ၆-လိပ်

ဘီး ၁၂-ချောင်း

ပလာတာ ၄-ခု

ခါတ်ခဲ ၁၀-လုံး

ဘောပင် ၂၆-ချောင်း

ကော်ဖီမှုန့် ၃-ဘူး

ခဲတံ ၂၈-ချောင်း

8. 15 bowls
9. 7 calendars
10. 11 Shan bags
11. 25 razor blades
12. 5 rolls of film
13. 14 envelopes
14. 8 fans
15. one hat
16. 9 key chains

ခွက် ၁၅-လုံး
ပြက္ခဒိန် ၇-ခု
လွယ်အိတ် ၁၁-လုံး
မုတ်ဆိတ်ရိပ်ဒါး ၂၅-ချောင်း
ဖလင် ၅-လိပ်
စာအိတ် ၁၄-လုံး
ယပ်တောင် ၈-ချောင်း
ဦးထုပ် ၁-လုံး
ကီးချိန် ၉-ခု



In Nyaung-U market

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 6 YOUR COMMAND OF BURMESE

New words

| | | |
|---|---|------------------------------------|
| ဖတ်- | to read | p'aq- |
| ရေး- | to write | yè- |
| ဗမာစာ /-စာ/ or /-စာ/ | written Burmese, Burmese texts, material written in Burmese ¹ | Băma-za, Băma-sa |
| နိုင်ငံခြားဘာသာသင်သိပ္ပံ /-သိပ္ပံပန်/ ² | Institute of Foreign Languages ² | Nain-ngan-jà Ba-dha-thin Theiq-pan |
| —နိုင်ငံခြား | foreign | nain-ngan-jà |
| —ဘာသာ | language [also = academic subject, religion] | ba-dha |
| —သင်- | to learn, to teach | thin- |
| —သိပ္ပံ | Institute [also = science] | theiq-pan |

1. As a rule, ဗမာစကား is used when you are referring to the spoken language. Hence —
ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်ပါတယ် They can speak Burmese. Băma sǎgà pyàw-da-q-pa-deh.

When you are talking about reading and writing Burmese, you use ဗမာစာ instead:

ဗမာစာ ဖတ်တတ်ပါတယ် They can read Burmese. Băma-za p'aq-taq-pa-deh.
ဗမာစာ ရေးတတ်ပါတယ် They can write Burmese. Băma-za yè-da-q-pa-deh.

2. A state educational establishment in Rangoon, set up originally to provide specialized tuition in languages like French, German, Italian, Russian, Japanese. Its coverage was later extended to include the teaching of Burmese to foreigners.

Sample Dialogue

S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner who is learning the language.

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် ဆို။ I gather you are learning Burmese? Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh s'o?
S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ Yes. Houq-kéh.
S1: တော်တော် ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။ Can you speak quite a bit now? Taw-daw pyàw-da-q-pi-là?
S2: နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။ I can only speak a little so far. Nèh-nèh-bèh pyàw-da-q-pa-dhè-deh.
S1: ဗမာစာကော How about reading: Băma-za-gàw
ဖတ်တတ်သလား။ can you read Burmese? p'aq-taq-thǎlà?
S2: သိပ် မဖတ်တတ်သေးပါဘူး။ I can't read much so far. Theiq mǎp'aq-taq-thè-ba-bù.
S1: ဒီမှာ သင်နေသလား။ Are you learning here? Di-hma thin-ne-dhǎlà?
S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ Yes. Houq-kéh.
နိုင်ငံခြားဘာသာသင်သိပ္ပံမှာ I'm learning Nain-ngan-jà Ba-dha-thin
သင်နေပါတယ်။ at the IFL. Theiq-pan-hma thin-ne-ba-deh.
S1: ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ You speak very well. Băma sǎgà pyàw-da
သိပ် ပီတာပဲ။ theiq pi-da-bèh.
S2: အော်။ တကယ်ပဲလား။ Oh, really? Aw. Tǎgeh-bèh-là?
ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ Thank you. Cè-zù tin-ba-deh.

Exercises on “reading” and “writing”

Ex. 1. Imagine that the couples named below have been learning Burmese. S1 asks about their attainments. Use the list to answer her questions. This is the format:

S1: Mr. Carpenter ဗမာစာ ဖတ်တတ်သလား။

L: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဖတ်တတ်ပါတယ်။

| <i>name</i> | <i>can speak</i> | <i>can read/write</i> |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| Mr. Carpenter | yes | yes |
| Mrs. Carpenter | yes: a bit | yes: well |
| Mr. Tiler | no | yes: a bit |
| Mrs. Tiler | yes: well | no |
| Mr. Slater | not much yet | not much yet |

| <i>name</i> | <i>can speak</i> | <i>can read/write</i> |
|---------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| Mrs. Slater | yes: a bit | yes |
| Mr. Thatcher | not much yet | yes: a bit |
| Mrs. Thatcher | yes: a bit | yes: well |
| Mr. Mason | yes: well | no |
| Mrs. Mason | yes | not much yet |

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues 1-3. Follow the prompt.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese. Most of the Burmese sentences contain the sequence [verb]-တတ်- “to know how to [verb]” where the English sentences have “can [verb],” but don’t be misled into thinking that every English “can [verb]” calls for Burmese [verb]-တတ်-။ You have already met expressions like မလျှော့နိုင်ဘူး: “I can’t reduce the price,” and there are other ways of conveying the meaning of “can” in Burmese. [Verb]-တတ်- is used in Burmese when the English “can [verb]” means “to know how to [verb].”

1. He is learning Burmese.
2. Can he speak quite a bit now?
3. — Yes, he can speak well.
4. — He can’t speak much yet.
5. — He can only speak a little so far.
6. How about Burmese writing:
can he read that yet?
7. — He can’t read much yet.
8. He can only read a little bit so far.
9. Can he write Burmese yet?
10. Yes, he can write well.
11. Do you know how to go to the
Bogyoke Market?
12. — Yes, I do.
13. Do you know how to come to my house?
14. — No, I don’t know yet.
15. Does he know how to take photographs?
16. — Yes, he can take them well.
17. Does he know how to make a phone call?
18. — No, he doesn’t yet.
19. Do you know how to open this window?
20. — No, I don’t.
21. — How do you have to open it?

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ဗမာစကား သင်နေပါတယ်။
တော်တော် ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။
— ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းကောင်း ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။
— သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။
— နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။
ဗမာစာကော
ဖတ်တတ်ပြီလား။
— သိပ် မဖတ်တတ်သေးပါဘူး။
— နဲ့နဲ့ ဖတ်တတ်ပါသေးတယ်။
ဗမာစာ ရေးတတ်ပြီလား။
— ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းကောင်း ရေးတတ်ပါတယ်။
ဗိုလ်ချုပ်ဈေး
သွားတတ်သလား။
— ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ သွားတတ်ပါတယ်။
ကျမအိမ် လာတတ်သလား။
— မလာတတ်သေးပါဘူး။
ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်တတ်သလား။
— ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းကောင်း ရိုက်တတ်ပါတယ်။
ဖုန်း ဆက်တတ်သလား။
— မဆက်တတ်သေးပါဘူး။
ဒီ ပြတင်းပေါက် ဖွင့်တတ်သလား။
— မဖွင့်တတ်ပါဘူး။
— ဘယ်လို ဖွင့်ရသလဲ။

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 7

TRAVELS: PAST TRIPS

New words

ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ / ကိတ်စာ/

what for, for what purpose

Ba keiq-sá-néh

[“What-business-with”]

[verb]-ဖို့

to [verb], for [verb]-ing

-p'ó, -bó

သုတေသန လုပ်-

to do research

thú-te-thǎná louq-

တရား အား ထုတ်-

to meditate

tǎyà à t'ouq-

[“doctrine—effort-put out,” = to exert oneself on the doctrine/the teaching/the principles]

အလည် / အလယ်/

a visit

ǎleh

Examples:

ဗမာပြည် ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့

What did you go to Burma for? Bǎm-pye ba-keiq-sá-néh

သွားသလဲ။

= What took you to Burma?

thwà-dhǎlèh?

ဗမာပြည် ဘာလုပ်ဖို့

What did you go to

Bǎm-pye ba louq-p'ó

သွားသလဲ။

Burma to do?

thwà-dhǎlèh?

သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်။

I went to do research.

Thú-te-thǎná louq-p'ó thwà-ba-deh.

အလုပ် လုပ်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်။¹

I went to work.

ǎlouq louq-p'ó thwà-ba-deh.

ဗမာစကား သင်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်။

I went to learn Burmese.

Bǎma sǎgà thin-bó thwà-ba-deh.

တရား အားထုတ်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်။

I went to meditate.

Tǎyà à t'ouq-p'ó thwà-ba-deh.

အလည်ပဲ သွားပါတယ်။

I just went for a visit.

ǎleh-bèh thwà-ba-deh.

This answer အလည်ပဲ သွားပါတယ် is appropriate for either going visiting a country as a tourist, or going there to visit friends and family,

1. A variant of this is to say —

အလုပ်နဲ့ သွားပါတယ်။

I went “with my work,”

ǎlouq-néh thwà-ba-deh.

= it was my job that took me there.

Variant for [verb]-ပါတယ်။

In answers to questions like those in the examples above, in place of the familiar [verb]-ပါတယ်။ ending you will sometimes find [verb]-တာပါ။ I call the second form a “da” form; for example:

ဗမာပြည် ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ သွားသလဲ။ What did you go to Burma to do? Bǎm-pye ba louq-p'ó thwà-dhǎlèh?

သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်။ I went to do research.

Thú-te-thǎná louq-p'ó thwà-ba-deh.

or: သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ သွားတာပါ။ I went to do research.

Thú-te-thǎná louq-p'ó thwà-da-ba.

Both forms are common, but opinions vary as to the difference in function between them. See the note below for my favoured interpretation at the time of writing. In the meantime, you may treat [verb]-တာပါ as a close equivalent of [verb]-ပါတယ်။ You will hear speakers on the tape using it, but at this stage you will not be asked to use it yourself.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| S1: ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ | Have you ever been to Burma? | Băma-pye yauq-p'ù-dhălà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| တစ်ခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ | I've been there once. | Tăk'auq yauq-p'ù-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘာ ကိစ္စနဲ့ သွားသလဲ။ | What did you go for? | Ba keiq-sá-néh thwà-dhălèh? |
| အလည်ပဲလား။ | Was it just for a visit? | Āleh-bèh-là? |
| S2: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ ဗမာစကား သင်ဖို့ သွားတာပါ။ | No. I went to learn Burmese. | Măhouq-pa-bù. Băma sǎgà thin-bó thwà-da-ba. |
| S1: အော်။ ဟုတ်လား။ | Oh. Is that so? | Aw. Houq-là? |
| ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလဲ။ | How long did you stay? | Beh-lauq ca-ja ne-géh-dhălèh? |
| S2: ၃-လပါ။ | Three months. | Thoùn-lá-ba. |
| S1: ဘယ်တုန်းကလဲ။ | When was that? | Beh-douñ-gá-lèh? |
| S2: ၁၉၈၇-ခုနှစ်ကပါ။ | In 1987. | 1987-k'ú-hniq-ká-ba. |

| | | |
|---------|-----------|-------|
| TG 614 | BEDING | 13.00 |
| RJ 185 | CALCUTTA | 13.30 |
| EK 050 | MANILA | 14.00 |
| IC 732 | CALCUTTA | 14.00 |
| VN 832A | HANOI | 14.05 |
| VN 832B | HANOI | 14.25 |
| CI 642 | HONG KONG | 14.30 |
| UL 422 | HONG KONG | 14.35 |
| TG 624 | MANILA | 14.50 |
| TG 305 | RANGOON | 14.50 |
| TG 630 | HONG KONG | 15.00 |
| MH 781 | PENANG | 15.00 |
| 50 25 | SINGAPORE | 15.00 |
| TG 409 | SINGAPORE | 15.00 |
| TG 606 | HONG KONG | 15.50 |

Exercises on reasons for going to Burma

Ex. 1. Imagine that you know that the people in List 2 have been to Burma. You ask S1 what she or he went for. Look at the list to see what her answer means, and repeat the answer after her.

Prompt: Ask why Ms Tailor went.

L/S2: Ms Tailor ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ သွားသလဲ။

S1/L: အလည်ပဲ သွားပါတယ်။

Ex. 2. S2 asks you about Mr. Skinner's reason for going to Burma.

S2: Mr. Skinner ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ သွားသလဲ။

L/S1: သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

The Practice Dialogues follow the familiar pattern. In the first set you question the people in List 1 and use their answers to fill in the blanks. In the second set of dialogues, you take the part of some of the people in List 2, and answer S1's questions.

Dialogues Set 1. We have to assume that you don't speak Japanese, and Mr. Ryuji and the rest find speaking Burmese easier than English. That is why the exchanges are in Burmese.

| <i>name</i> | <i>n° of times</i> | <i>when</i> | <i>how long</i> | <i>what for</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Mr. Ryuji | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| Ms. Migusa | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| Ms. Yoko | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| Mr. Toru | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| Ms. Keiko | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| trip 2: | - | ... | ... | ... |
| Mr. Yoneo | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| Ms. Hiroko | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions.

| <i>name</i> | <i>n° of times</i> | <i>when</i> | <i>how long</i> | <i>what for</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Ms. Tailor | 1 | last November | 7 days | for a visit |
| Mr. Draper | 1 | last January | 10 days | to work |
| Mrs. Weaver | 1 | last year | 2 weeks | to meditate |
| Mr. Dyer | 1 | 1988 | 1 week | for a visit |
| Ms. Tanner | 1 | 1990 | 6 months | to learn Burmese |
| Mr. Fuller | 2 | 1989, 1992 | 3 mths, 5 mths | to work |
| Mr. Skinner | 2 | 1985, 1991 | 1 year, 6 mths | to do research |
| Mr. Glover | many | last time: Feb. | 3 weeks | to meditate |
| Mrs. Hatter | many | last time: 1980 | 1 ½ years | to learn Burmese |
| Mr. Cutter | - | - | - | - |

Da forms: current hunch

There are some sentences where the listener already knows the information conveyed by the part of the sentence containing the verb. In the answers in the examples above, the verb is သွားတယ်, so when the speaker says သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ သွားပါတယ်, the သွားပါတယ် part of the sentence (meaning "I went there") doesn't tell the listener anything new: he already knows that the speaker went there, because he's just been told he did. The new information in the sentence is contained in the earlier part: "to do research." That is what the listener didn't know, and that is the information he learns from the sentence.

My current feeling is that “da forms” are used where the speaker wants to emphasize the fact that the information content of the verb is low, and the main message of the sentence is contained in the other part of the sentence. There is something similar in English:

1. I stayed indoors because it was raining so hard.
2. It was because it was raining so hard that I stayed indoors.

Sentences like example 2 are used where the listener already knows that the speaker stayed indoors: the new information is in the other part of the sentence.

This explanation of “da forms” is probably not the whole story. The world is eager for a more precise and comprehensive analysis.

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following pairs of sentences have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

၁။ -သလဲ-ပြည်-သွား-ဘာကိစ္စ-ဗမာ-နဲ့

၂။ -တာပါ-သွား-လုပ်ဖို့-သုတေသန

၃။ -ဘာ-ဖို့-ပြည်-လုပ်-တာလဲ-သွား-ဗမာ

၄။ -ထုတ်-ပါတယ်-အား-သွား-တရား-ဖို့

၅။ -တာ-အလည်-ပြည်-ပဲ-ဗမာ-လား-သွား

၆။ -ဖို့-စကား-မဟုတ်-သွား-ဗမာ-သင်-ပါ-ပါဘူး-တာ

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

၁။ -ဗမာ-ပြည် -ဘာကိစ္စ-နဲ့ -သွား-သလဲ။

၂။ -သုတေသန -လုပ်ဖို့ -သွား-တာပါ။

၃။ -ဗမာ-ပြည် -ဘာ-လုပ်-ဖို့ -သွား-တာလဲ။

၄။ -တရား-အား -ထုတ်-ဖို့ -သွား-ပါတယ်။

၅။ -ဗမာ-ပြည် -အလည်-ပဲ -သွား-တာ-လား။

၆။ -မဟုတ်-ပါဘူး။ -ဗမာ-စကား -သင်-ဖို့ -သွား-တာ-ပါ။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUE

| <i>name</i> | <i>n° of times</i> | <i>when</i> | <i>how long</i> | <i>what for</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Mr. Ryuji | many | last: last October | 1 month | research |
| Ms. Migusa | 1 | last year | 2 weeks | learn Burmese |
| Ms. Yoko | - | - | - | - |
| Mr. Toru | many | last: 1987 | 3 months | visit |
| Ms. Keiko | 2 | 1987 | 6 months | learn Burmese |
| trip 2: | | 1992 | 9 months | research |
| Mr. Yoneo | many | last: 1985 | 3 weeks | meditation |
| Ms. Hiroko | 3 | last: 1991 | 1 ½ months | work |

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 8

TRAVELS IN PROSPECT

New words

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| ပညာ /ပျင်ညာ/ | learning, skill, knowledge, wisdom | pyin-nya |
| ပညာ သင်- | to study, to undergo training | pyin-nya thin- |
| —ပညာ သင်ဖို့ | They are going to go abroad | Pyin-nya thin-bó |
| နိုင်ငံခြား သွားမယ်။ | for training. | nain-ngan-jà thwà-meh. |
| [person]-နဲ့ လိုက်သွား- | to go with [person] | -néh lai-q-thwà- |
| —အမျိုးသားနဲ့ | I shall be accompanying | Āmyò-thà-néh |
| လိုက်သွားမယ်။ | my husband. | lai-q-thwà-meh. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere in Burma. S1 is a foreigner and S2 is Burmese.

| | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S1: ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | I hear | Daw Tin Tin Myín |
| နိုင်ငံခြား သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် | you are due | nain-ngan-jà thwà-bó äsi-äsin |
| ရှိတယ် ကြားရတယ်။ | to go abroad. | shí-deh cà-yá-deh. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်။ | Yes. I'll be going | Houq-kéh, Shin. |
| သုံးလ ကြာရင် သွားမှာပါ။ ¹ | in three months' time. | Thoùn-lá ca-yin thwà-hma-ba. |
| S1: ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ သွားမှာလဲ။ ¹ | What are you going for? | Ba keiq-sá-néh thwà-hma-lèh? |
| S2: အလည်ပဲ သွားမယ်။ | I'm just going for a visit. | Āleh-bèh thwà-meh. |
| S1: ကြာကြာ နေမလို့လား။ | Are you thinking of staying long? | Ca-ja ne-mǎló-là? |
| S2: မကြာပါဘူး။ | No. I'll only | Măca-ba-bù. |
| ဆယ်ရက်ပဲ နေမှာပါ။ ¹ | be staying for 10 days. | S'eh-yeq-p'èh ne-hma-ba. |

1. Variant for [verb]-မယ်။ You will have noticed in the Sample Dialogue that where you might have expected [verb]-မယ် the speaker says [verb]-မှာပါ။ [Verb]-မယ် and [verb]-မှာ are related in the same way as [Verb]-တယ် and [Verb]-တာ။ Precisely the same considerations apply to [verb]-မှာ as to the “da forms” mentioned in the previous Lesson — including the fact that you will not be asked to use it till later in the course.

Exercises on reasons for going abroad

Ex. 1. To help learn the new words. Look at List 1 below and follow the prompt.

Prompt: Ask about U Sein Lwin

L/S1: ဦးစိန်လွင် ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ သွားမလဲ။

S2/L: အလည်ပဲ သွားမယ်။

Ex. 2. To practise the new words. Use List 1 to answer S1's questions.

S1: ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ သွားမလဲ။

L/S2: အမျိုးသားနဲ့ လိုက်သွားမယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Use List 1 below to answer S1's questions.

There are several alternative forms of words you can use for talking about plans for the future. To make sure that your reply uses the same form as the echo on the tape, let us adopt the convention that you always reply [verb]-မယ်, whether the question uses [verb]-မလဲ or [verb]-မှာလဲ or [verb]-မလို့လဲ။

List 1: Burmans going abroad.

| နာမည် | plans to go | when | for how long | what for | name |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | yes | next month | 3 months | for a visit | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြသိန်း | yes | in March | 6 months | for training | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | yes | next year | 1 month | acc parents | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | yes | in 1996 | 2 weeks | acc husband | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | yes | if I get the passport | not fixed yet | to work | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | yes | if I get permission | 2 years | to work | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | yes | in a years' time | not fixed yet | acc parents | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | yes | in 3 month's time | 10 days | for a visit | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | yes | in 2 weeks' time | 1 ½ years | for training | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | yes | not fixed yet | 3 weeks | acc wife | Ko Tin Lwin |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | no | - | - | - | Daw Khin Win Kyi |

List 2: Foreigners going to Burma. Not practised on tape: for class use if required

| name | plans to go | when | for how long | what for |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Sarah | yes | next month | 14 days | for a visit |
| Chris | yes | in October | about 3 years | to work |
| Elizabeth | yes | next year | 6 months | to do research |
| Dindy | yes | in 1999 | 1 week | acc husband |
| Raymond | yes | if he gets a visa | not fixed yet | to do research |
| Arnd | no | - | - | - |
| Lars | yes | if he gets the money | 1 year | to learn Burmese |
| Max | yes | in three months' time | about 4 months | to accompany wife |
| Zunetta | yes | in three weeks' time | 2 weeks | to work |
| Roger | yes | in a year's time | not fixed yet | to meditate |
| Miranda | yes | not definite yet | 10 days | for a visit |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese.

Sentences with the sequence [verb]-ရင် "if/when [verb]"

1. If he gets a visa he'll go to Thailand.
2. If she gets permission she'll go to Manila.
3. If she gets permission she'll go with her husband.
4. He's going to go to Poland in 2 months' time.
5. He's going to go to Japan next month.
6. We're going to go to Burma if/when we get the money.
7. They're going to meditate if /when they get to Burma.

8. If you want a Shan bag, buy one in the market.
9. If you want to meet Ma Sein, come over tomorrow.
10. If you want to make a phone call, make it here.
11. If/when you go to Myitkyina you'll meet Ko Kha Lum.

Sentences with the sequence [verb]-*နို့* "to [verb]"

12. She went to Hong Kong for training.
13. She went to Indonesia to do research.
14. She went to Sagaing to meditate.
15. She went to DeKalb to learn Burmese.
16. She went to the market to buy a comb.
17. She went to a café to drink coffee.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ ပီဇာ ရရင် ယိုးဒယား သွားမယ်။
- ၂။ ခွင့် ရရင် မနီလာ သွားမယ်။
- ၃။ ခွင့်ရရင် အမျိုးသားနဲ့ လိုက်သွားမယ်။
- ၄။ နှစ်လ ကြာရင် ပိုလန် သွားမယ်။
- ၅။ ရှေ့လ ကျရင် ဂျပန် သွားမယ်။
- ၆။ ပိုက်ဆံ ရရင် ဗမာပြည် သွားမယ်။
- ၇။ ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ရင် တရား အားထုတ်မယ်။
- ၈။ လွယ်အိတ် လိုချင်ရင် ဈေးမှာ ဝယ်ပါ။
- ၉။ မစိန်နဲ့ တွေ့ချင်ရင် မနက်ဖန် လာခဲ့ပါ။
- ၁၀။ တယ်လီဖုန်း ဆက်ချင်ရင် ဒီမှာ ဆက်ပါ။
- ၁၁။ မြစ်ကြီးနား သွားရင် ကိုခါလွမ်းနဲ့ တွေ့မယ်။
- ၁၂။ ပညာ သင်ဖို့ ဟောင်ကောင် သွားပါတယ်။
- ၁၃။ သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ အင်ဒိုနီးရှား သွားပါတယ်။
- ၁၄။ တရား အား ထုတ်ဖို့ စစ်ကိုင်း သွားပါတယ်။
- ၁၅။ ဗမာစကား သင်ဖို့ ဒီကပ် သွားပါတယ်။
- ၁၆။ ဘီး ဝယ်ဖို့ ဈေး သွားပါတယ်။
- ၁၇။ ကော်ဖီ သောက်ဖို့ လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် သွားပါတယ်။



LEVEL 4, TOPIC 9

TRAVELS: CURRENT TRIP

Start this Lesson with the New words,
and go to the Exercises at the point shown.

New words

Have you been here long?

ကြာ-

to take time, to take a long time

ca-

-ကြာပြီ

It has been a long time [up to now].

Ca-bi.

-ကြာပြီလား။

Has it been a long time [so far]?

Ca-bi-là?

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| ရောက်နေ- | to be (here) ["arrive-stay"] | yauq-ne- |
| —ရောက်နေတာ | (your) being here | yauq-ne-da |
| ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Have you been here long? | Yauq-ne-da ca-bi-là? |
| ရောက်နေတာ | How long have you been here? | Yauq-ne-da |
| ဘယ်လောက် ကြာပြီလဲ။ | | beh-lauq ca-bi-lèh? |

From here go straight to the Exercises.

Questions and answers on how long you have been here

| | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| S1: ရောက်နေတာ | How long have | Yauq-ne-da |
| ဘယ်လောက် ကြာပြီလဲ။ | you been here? | beh-lauq ca-bi-lèh? |
| S2: တစ်လ ရှိပြီ။ ¹ | It has been a month. | Tǎlá shí-bi. |
| S1: ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Have you been here long? | Yauq-ne-da ca-bi-là? |
| S2: တစ်လ ရှိပြီ။ ¹ | It has been a month. | Tǎlá shí-bi. |
| S2: ကြာပြီ။ | Yes (it has been a long time). | Ca-bi. |
| တစ်လ ရှိပြီ။ | It has been a month. | Tǎlá shí-bi. |
| S2: မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ | Not long (yet). | Mǎca-dhè-ba-bù. |
| တစ်လ ရှိပြီ။ | It has been a month. | Tǎlá shí-bi. |
| S2: မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ | Not long (yet). | Mǎca-dhè-ba-bù. |
| တစ်လပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | It has been only a month so far. | Tǎlá-bèh shí-ba-dhè-deh. |

Remember that မ-[verb]-သေးပါဘူး means “not yet [verb]”; but [verb]-ပါသေးတယ် means (among other things) “[verb] so far, [verb] as yet, [verb] up to this point.”

More reasons for coming here

| | | |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| အလည် / အလယ်/ | a visit | ǎleh |
| —အလည် လာပါတယ် | He came for a visit, came to visit. | ǎleh la-ba-deh. |
| [person]-ဆီ | to [person] | -s'i |
| —သမီးဆီ အလည် လာပါတယ်။ | He came for a visit to his daughter, Thǎmì-s'i ǎleh la-ba-deh. | |
| | He came to visit his daughter | |
| ဆွေမျိုး | relative, relation | s'we-myò |
| —ဆွေမျိုးဆီ အလည် လာပါတယ်။ | He came to visit his relations. | S'we-myò-s'i ǎleh la-ba-deh. |
| တူးရစ် (sometimes တိုးရစ်) | tourist | tù-riq, tò-riq |
| —S1: ဘာကိုစွန့် လာတာလဲ။ | What have you come for? | Ba keiq-sá-néh la-da-lèh? |
| —S2: တူးရစ်ပါပဲ။ | I'm just a tourist. | Tù-riq-pa-bèh. |
| —S3: ဆွေမျိုးဆီ အလည် လာတာပါ။ | I've come to visit my relations. | S'we-myò-s'i ǎleh la-da-ba. |

1. As you well know, if the answer to a question has a verb in it, the verb is the same as the verb used in the question. These questions and answers constitute a curious exception to that rule.



Sample Dialogue

Scene: Sydney, Australia. S1 is an eager Australian student of Burmese and S2 is a Burmese visitor to the country.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| S1: ဗမာပြည်ကလား ရှင်။ | Are you from Burma? | Băma-pye-gá-là, Shin? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh, K'in-bya. |
| S1: ဟာ။ တွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ် ရှင်။ | Ah. I'm happy to have met you. | Ha. Twé-yá-da wùn tha-ba-deh, Shin. |
| စစ်ဒနီ ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Is it long since you came to Sydney? | Siq-dāni yauq-ne-da ca-bi-là? |
| S2: သိပ် မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ နှစ်ပတ်လောက် ရှိပြီ။ | Not very. I've been here about two weeks. | Theiq mǎca-dhè-ba-bù. Hnāpaq-lauq shí-bi. |
| S1: အော်။ ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ နေအုံးမှာလဲ။ | Oh. How long are you going to stay on? | Aw. Beh-lauq-ca-ja ne-oùn-hma-lèh? |
| S2: နောက်ထပ် တစ်လ နေအုံးမယ်။ | I'll be staying another month. | Nauq-t'aq tǎlá ne-oùn-meh. |
| S1: အော်။ တစ်လလား။ ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ လာသလဲ။ | Oh. A month. What did you come here for? | Aw. Tǎlá-là? Ba keiq-sá-néh la-dhǎlèh? |
| S2: ဆွေမျိုးဆီ အလည် လာတာပါ။ | I came to visit relatives. | S'we-myò-s'i āleh la-da-ba. |

Exercises on “Have you been here long?”

The answers to the questions correspond to the “has been in Burma” column in List 2 below.

Ex. 1: Prompt: Ask Mr. Bull if he's been here long — and repeat his answer.

L/S1: ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ S2/L: နှစ်လ ရှိပြီ။

Ex. 2: Prompt: Ask Mrs. Mount if sh'e been here long — and repeat her answer.

L/S1: ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ S2/L: ကြာပြီ။ သုံးလ ရှိပြီ။

Ex. 3: Prompt: Take the part of Mr. Wellington.

S1: ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ L/S2: မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ ၃-ရက် ရှိပြီ။

Ex. 4: Prompt: Ask Mrs. Finch if she has been here long — and repeat her answer.

L/S1: ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ S2/L: မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ တပတ်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions and make a note of the answers in the blanks. Imagine that the dialogues take place in the U.S.A.

Dialogue 1. ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး။ Dialogue 2. ဦးစိန်လွင်။ Dialogue 3. ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့်။

List 1: Blanks.

| နာမည် | has been in the U.S.A | further stay | what for | name |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--------------|----------|-------------------|
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | ... | ... | ... | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြမြသိန်း | ... | ... | ... | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | ... | ... | ... | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | ... | ... | ... | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | ... | ... | ... | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | ... | ... | ... | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | ... | ... | ... | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | ... | ... | ... | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | ... | ... | ... | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | ... | ... | ... | Ko Tin Lwin |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | ... | ... | ... | Ma Khin Win Kyi |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions. The dialogues in this set take place in Burma.

Dialogue 4. Mr. Bull.

Dialogue 5. Ms. Doe.

Dialogue 6. Mr. Keating.

Dialogue 7. Ms. Coot.

Dialogue 8. Raymond: follow the Prompt.

List 2.

| name | country | has been in Burma | further stay | what for |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| Mr. Bull | England | 2 months | 1 month | to meditate |
| Ms. Doe | America | 3 weeks | 1 ½ months | to do research |
| Mr. Keating | Australia | 2 years | 1 ½ years | to work |
| Mrs. Mount | Canada | 3 months | about 6 months | acc husband |
| Mr. Wellington | New Zealand | 3 days | 2 weeks | as a tourist |
| Mrs. Finch | England | 1 week | 5 days | as a tourist |
| Mr. Hawk | America | about a year | not fixed yet | to do research |
| Ms. Coot | Australia | 6 months | not fixed yet | to accompany parents |
| Mr. Nightingale | Canada | 4 days | 2 weeks | to meditate |
| Mrs. Sparrow | New Zealand | 2 weeks | about 1 month | to work |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese.

They are all concerned with the question of "how long?"

1. Have you been meditating for long?

2. — Yes. It's been about five years.

3. Have you been living in Budd Road for long?

4. — Yes. It's been a year and a half.

5. Have you been in Burma for long?

6. — No. It's been 3 weeks.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

တရား အားထုတ်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။

— ကြာပြီ။ ငါးနှစ်လောက် ရှိပြီ။

ဘတ်လမ်းမှာ နေနေတာ ကြာပြီလား။

— ကြာပြီ။ တစ်နှစ်ခွဲ ရှိပြီ။

ဗမာပြည် ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။

— မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ ၃-ပတ် ရှိပြီ။

7. Have you been sitting here for long?
 8. — No. It's been about 10 minutes.
 9. Have you been learning Burmese for long?
 10. — No. It's only been 6 months so far.
 11. Have you been working in the library for long?
 12. — No. It's only been about 3 months so far.

ဒီမှာ ထိုင်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။
 — မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ ဆယ်မိနစ်လောက် ရှိပြီ။
 ဗမာစကား သင်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။
 — မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ ၆-လပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။
 စာကြည့်တိုက်မှာ အလုပ် လုပ်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။
 — မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ ၃-လလောက်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES SET 1

| နာမည် | has been | further stay | what for | name |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| | in the USA | | | |
| ဦးစိန်လွင် | 1 week | 3 months | for a visit | U Sein Lwin |
| ဒေါ်မြသိန်း | 4 months | 6 months | for training | Daw Mya Mya Thein |
| ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | 1 month | 1 month | accompany parents | U Chit Swe |
| ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း | 4 days | 2 weeks | accompany husband | Daw Si Si Win |
| ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | 2 years | not fixed yet | to work | U Tun Aung Chain |
| ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | 6 months | 2 years | to work | Daw Khin Mar Lay |
| ဦးတင်အုံး | 2 days | not fixed yet | accompany parents | U Tin Ohn |
| ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် | 3 weeks | 10 days | for a visit to son | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
| ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | 6 months | 1 ½ years | for training | Daw Nwe Nwe |
| ကိုတင်လွင် | 3 weeks | 3 weeks | accompany wife | Ko Tin Lwin |
| မခင်ဝင်းကြည် | - | - | - | Ma Khin Win Kyi |

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 10A

YOU AND YOURS

Start this Lesson with the Sample Dialogue on the tape.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 asks S2 about the marital status and children of some people S2 knows.

Dialogue 1

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| S1: အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။ | Has she married yet? | Ein-daun cá-bi-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့၊ ကျပြီ။ | Yes, she has. | Houq-kéh. Cá-bi. |
| S1: ကလေး ရှိသလား။ | Does she have any children? | K'ālè shí-dhālà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့၊ ကလေး သုံးယောက် ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes, she has three. | Houq-kéh. K'ālè thoùn-yauq shí-ba-deh. |
| သား တစ်ယောက်၊ | One son | Thà tǎyauq |
| သမီး နှစ်ယောက်။ | and two daughters. | thāmì hnǎyauq. |

Dialogue 2

| | | |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| S1: အိမ်ထောင် ရှိသလား။ | Is he married? | Ein-daun shí-dhālà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့၊ ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes, he is. | Houq-kéh. Shí-ba-deh. |

S1: ကလေး ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက်
ရှိသလဲ။

S2: တစ်ယောက်ပဲ ရှိပါတယ်။

S1: သားလား၊ သမီးလား။

S2: သမီးပါ။

Dialogue 3

S1: အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့၊ ကျပြီ။

S1: ကလေး ရှိသလား။

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့၊ သုံးယောက်
ရှိပါတယ်။

S1: သားတွေလား၊ သမီးတွေလား။

S2: သား နှစ်ယောက်၊
သမီး တစ်ယောက်ပါ။

How many children
has he got?

He's got just one.

Is it a boy or a girl?

A girl.

Is he married yet?

Yes, he is.

Has he got any children?

Yes, he's got three.

Are they boys or girls?

Two boys
and one girl.

K'älè beh-hnäyauq
shí-dhālèh?

Tăyauq-p'èh shí-ba-deh.

Thà-là? Thămì-là?

Thămì-ba.

Ein-daun cá-bi-là?

Houq-kéh. Cá-bi.

K'älè shí-dhālà?

Houq-kéh. Thoùn-yauq
shí-ba-deh.

Thà-de-là? Thămì-de-là?

Thà hnăyauq,

thămì tăyauq-pa.



New words

| | | |
|--|---|-------------------------|
| ကလေး / ခလေး / ¹ | child [literally “little one”] | k’ălè |
| -ယောက် | [count word for people] ² | -yauq |
| [noun-1]-လား၊ [noun-2]-လား။ | Is it [noun-1] or [noun-2]? | []-là? []-là? |
| —သားလား၊ သမီးလား။ | Is it a son or a daughter? | Thà-là? Thămì-là? |
| [noun]-တွေ / -ဒေ / or / ဒွေ / ³ | [noun]s: [the suffix marks plural number] | -de, -dwe |
| —သားတွေလား၊ သမီးတွေလား။ | Are they sons or daughters? ³ | Thà-de-là? Thămì-de-là? |

1. Pronounced /ကလေး/ in Upper Burma.

2. Examples of count words:

| | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| ကော်ဖီ လေးခွက် | “coffee-four-cup” | four cups of coffee | kaw-p’i lè-gweq |
| ပက်စီ လေးပုလင်း | “Pepsi-four-bottle” | four bottles of Pepsi | Peq-si lè-pālìn |
| အစိမ်းကြော် လေးပွဲ | “fried veg-four-dish” | four servings of fried vegetables | ăseìn-jaw lè-bwèh |
| နို့မှုန့် လေးဘူး | “milk powder-four-jar” | four jars of milk powder | nó-hmoún lè-bù |
| ဒေါ်လာ လေးရာ | “dollar-four-hundred” | four hundred dollars | daw-la lè-ya |
| ပြက္ခဒိန် လေးခု | “calendar-four-item” | four calendars | pyeq-k’ădein lè-gú |
| ဓါတ်ခဲ လေးလုံး | “battery-four-object” | four batteries | daq-k’èh lè-loùn |
| ခဲတံ လေးချောင်း | “pencil-four-rod” | four pencils | k’èh-dan lè-jaùn |
| သား လေးယောက် | “son-four-person” | four sons | thà lè-yauq |
| သမီး ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက်လဲ | “daughter-how many-person” | how many daughters | thămì beh-hnăyauq-lèh? |

3. Note that a plural noun in English is not always matched by [noun]-တွေ in Burmese: notably in number phrases like those listed above: ကော်ဖီ လေးခွက် “four cups of coffee,” သား လေးယောက် “four sons,” and so on. Likewise စမူဆာ ရှိသလား: “Do you have any samosas?” We shall point out the situations where you need to use suffix -တွေ။ This is the first.

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 2. You ask the questions and make a note of the answers in the blanks. We won’t attempt to cover all the bits of information in the lists: that would take too long. The setting is a showing of family photographs.

List 1: Blanks

| အမှတ် | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အမည် | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အသက် | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အိမ်ထောင်ရှိ/မရှိ | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| သားသမီးများ | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the list below to answer the questions.

List 2: Data

| | <i>name</i> | <i>relationship</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>married</i> | <i>children</i> |
|-----|-------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 7. | Maureen | aunt | civil servant | 50 | yes | 2s 1d |
| 8. | George | uncle | ret'd: in embassy | 47 | widowed | 3s |
| 9. | Mary | older sister | university teacher | 32 | separated | 2d |
| 10. | Jim | older brother | soldier | 30 | not yet | - |
| 11. | Frances | ygr sister | reporter | 28 | yes | 1s |
| 12. | Julian | ygr brother | labourer | 26 | yes | 1s 1d |
| 13. | Sarah | friend | student: Eighth Std | 17 | not yet | - |

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following sentences have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

- S1: -အိမ်-ရှိ-ဒေါ်မြ-လား-ထောင်
 S2: -ရှင်-ပါတယ်-ရှိ
 S1: -ရှိ-ယောက်-ကလေး-သလဲ-ဘယ်နှစ်
 S2: -ပါတယ်-ယောက်-သုံး-ရှိ
 S1: -သမီး-သားတွေ-တွေ-လား-လား
 S2: -ယောက်-ယောက်-နှစ်-တစ်-ပါ-သမီး-သား
 S1: -ကျကြ-ထောင်-လား-ပြီ-အိမ်
 S2: -ပြီ-က-ထောင်-သား-ကျ-အိမ်
 S2: -ယောက်-ပါဘူး-နှစ်-က-သေး-သမီး-မကျ
 S1: -က-ရှိ-သား-သလား-ကလေး
 S2: -ဟုတ်-တယ်-ရှိ-တစ်-သမီး-ယောက်-ပါ-ကဲ့

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- S1: -ဒေါ်မြ -အိမ်-ထောင် -ရှိ-လား။
 S2: -ရှိ-ပါတယ် -ရှင်။
 S1: -ကလေး -ဘယ်နှစ်-ယောက် -ရှိ-သလဲ။
 S2: -သုံး-ယောက် -ရှိ-ပါတယ်။
 S1: -သားတွေ-လား၊ -သမီး-တွေ-လား။
 S2: -သား -တစ်-ယောက်၊ -သမီး -နှစ်-ယောက်-ပါ။
 S1: -အိမ်-ထောင် -ကျကြ-ပြီ-လား။
 S2: -သား-က -အိမ်-ထောင် -ကျ-ပြီ။
 S2: -သမီး -နှစ်-ယောက်-က -မကျ-သေး-ပါဘူး။
 S1: -သား-က -ကလေး -ရှိ-သလား။
 S2: -ဟုတ်-ကဲ့။ -သမီး -တစ်-ယောက် -ရှိ-ပါ-တယ်။



KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| အမှတ် | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ | uncle | aunt | oldr sis | oldr bro | ygr sis | ygr bro |
| အမည် | ဦးခင်မောင်ဒင် | ဒေါ်တင်မြင့် | ဒေါ်မာလေး | ဗိုလ်ကြီးမင်းဦး | မသိန်း | ညွန့်သောင်း |
| အသက် | 60 | 56 | 30 | 28 | 25 | 16 |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | business (retired) | in bank | in embassy | army officer | housework | student (10th Std) |
| အိမ်ထောင်ရှိ/မရှိ | yes | widowed | separated | yes | yes | not yet |
| သားသမီးများ | 1s 2d * | 2s 1d | 3s 1d | 2d | - | - |

* s = son; d = daughter

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 10B YOU AND YOURS continued

Start this Lesson with the Sample Dialogue on the tape.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 asks S2 about his/her children.

Dialogue 1

| | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S1: ကလေး ရှိလား။ | Have you any children? | Kālè shí-là? |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက် ရှိသလဲ။ | How many have you got? | Beh-hnāyauq shí-dhālèh? |
| S2: သား တစ်ယောက်ပဲ ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have just one son. | Thà täyauq-p'èh shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်အရွယ် ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What age is he? | Beh äyweh shí-bi-lèh? |
| S2: ၁၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | He is 15. | 15-hniq shí-bi. |

Dialogue 2

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| S1: ကလေး ရှိလား။ | Have you any children? | Kālè shí-là? |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက် ရှိသလဲ။ | How many have you got? | Beh-hnāyauq shí-dhālèh? |
| S2: သား နှစ်ယောက် ရှိပါတယ်။ | I've got two sons. | Thà hnāyauq shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်အရွယ်တွေ ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What ages are they? | Beh äyweh-de shí-bi-lèh? |
| S2: သားအကြီးက ၁၅-နှစ်။ | The older son is 15. | Thà-äcì-gá 15-hniq. |
| အငယ်ကတော့ ၁၃-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | And [as for] the younger [he] is 13. | Ängeh-gá-dáw 13-hniq shí-bi. |

Dialogue 3

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S1: ကလေး ရှိလား။ | Have you any children? | Kālè shí-là? |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက် ရှိသလဲ။ | How many have you got? | Beh-hnāyauq shí-dhālèh? |
| S2: သား သုံးယောက် ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have three sons. | Thà hthoùn-yauq shí-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်အရွယ်တွေ ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What ages are they? | Beh äyweh-de shí-bi-lèh? |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| S2: အကြီးက ၁၅-နှစ်။ | The oldest is 15. | Ācì-gá 15-hniq. |
| အလတ်က ၁၃-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | The middle one is 13. | Ālaq-ká 13-hniq shí-bi. |
| အငယ်ကတော့ ၁၀-နှစ်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | And [as for] the youngest he is only 10. | Āngeh-gá-dáw s'eh-hniq-p'èh shí-ba-dhè-deh. |

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| အရွယ် | size; also “age” when talking about children | ăyweh |
| — S1: ဘယ်အရွယ် ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What age is he? | Beh äyweh shí-bi-lèh? |
| — S2: ၁၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | He is 15. | 15-hniq shí-bi. |
| အကြီး | the old [also = “older” or “oldest”] | ăcì |
| အလတ် | the middle | ălaq |
| အငယ် | the young [also = “younger” or “youngest”] | ăngeh |
| — S1: ဘယ်အရွယ်တွေ ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What ages are they? | Beh äyweh-de shí-bi-lèh? |
| — S2: သားအကြီးက ၁၅-နှစ်။ | The older son is 15. | Thà-ăcì-gá 15-hniq. |
| အလတ်က ၁၃-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | The middle one is 13. | Ālaq-ká 13-hniq shí-bi. |
| အငယ်ကတော့ ၁၀-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | And the youngest is 10. | Āngeh-gá-dáw s'eh-hniq shí-bi. |
| [age]-ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | is only [age] so far [implies still quite young] | -p'èh shí-ba-dhè-deh |
| — S2: သားအငယ်က ၁၀-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | My younger son is 10. | Thà-ăngeh-gá s'eh-hniq shí-bi. |
| သားအငယ်က ၁၀-နှစ်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | My younger son is only 10. | Thà-ăngeh-gá s'eh-hniq-p'èh shí-ba-dhè-deh. |

For the Practice Dialogues

Imagine a wedding ceremony at the People's Patisserie in Rangoon. A vast hall full of tables laden with brightly coloured foods and drinks, and sitting at them crowds of people wearing even more brightly coloured clothes and jewellery. Buzz of conversation. Bride and groom, sumptuously dressed, up on the stage. You are at one of the tables, talking to friends, when a lady approaches. She is a mature lady, with jewellery flashing from every mooring-point. One of your friends greets her.

It will be no surprise to you that the ensuing dialogue includes a lot of information about you and your family and about the lady and her family. Write down what you learn about her in the blanks in List 1. Not all the blanks will be filled. When she asks about you, tell her what you see in List 2.

List 1: The Burmese lady and her husband: Blanks

| | | |
|-------------|-----|-----|
| နာမည် | ... | ... |
| အသက် | ... | ... |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | ... | ... |
| ကလေးများ | ... | ... |

| | | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Their children: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| နာမည် | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အသက် | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အလုပ်အကိုင် | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| နေရပ် | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| အိမ်ထောင်ရှိ/မရှိ | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| ကလေးများ | ... | ... | ... | ... |

List 2: You and your wife

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------|
| <i>names</i> | Nick | Susan (wife) | |
| <i>been in Burma</i> | 3 months | [same] | |
| <i>to stay</i> | about 3 years | [same] | |
| <i>age</i> | 53 | 50 | |
| <i>occupation</i> | in embassy | teacher | |
| <i>children</i> | 1s 2d | | |
| <i>your children:</i> | son | daughter | daughter |
| <i>name</i> | Martin | Jenny | Anne |
| <i>age</i> | 26 | 22 | 20 |
| <i>occupation</i> | reporter | civil servant | student (university) |
| <i>where live</i> | USA | England | England |
| <i>married</i> | yes | no | no |
| <i>children</i> | 1s | - | - |

In the classroom. Use blank forms as outlined at Level 2, Topic 10B.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following dialogue into Burmese. Imagine that it takes place between a Burmese lady of mature years (S1) and a younger foreign lady visiting Burma (S2).

S1: What country do you come from? (+ tag)
 S2: From Finland.
 S1: How long have you been in Burma?
 S2: It's been about 3 months.
 S1: What did you come here for?
 S2: I came to do research.
 S1: Are you married?
 S2: Yes, I am.
 S1: Do you have any children?
 S2: Not yet.
 S2: How about you (Auntie)?
 How many children do you have?
 S1: I have three.
 Two daughters and one son.
 S2: What ages are they?

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဘယ်နိုင်ငံက လာသလဲ ရှင်။
 ဖင်လန်ကပါ။
 ဗမာပြည် ရောက်နေတာ ဘယ်လောက် ကြာပြီလဲ။
 ၃-လလောက် ရှိပါပြီ။
 ဘာ ကိစ္စနဲ့ လာသလဲ။
 သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ လာတာပါ။
 အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။
 ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကျပြီ။
 ကလေး ရှိလား။
 မရှိသေးပါဘူး။
 ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ကော၊
 ကလေး ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက် ရှိသလဲ။
 သုံးယောက် ရှိပါတယ်။
 သမီးနှစ်ယောက်၊ သား တစ်ယောက်။
 ဘယ်အရွယ်တွေ ရှိပြီလဲ။

S1: My older daughter is 23.

The younger one is 21.

And as for my son, he is still only 16.

S2: Are your daughters married yet?

S1: Yes, my older daughter is married.

The younger one however is not yet married.

သမီးအကြီးက ၂၃-နှစ်၊

အငယ်က ၂၁-နှစ်၊

သားကတော့ ၁၆-နှစ်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။

သမီးတွေ အိမ်ထောင် ကျကြပြီလား။

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ သမီးအကြီးက အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီ။

အငယ်ကတော့ မကျသေးပါဘူး။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUE

The Burmese lady and her husband

| | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| name | ဒေါ်ထွေးရီ | ဦးကြည်ခိုင် (အမျိုးသား) |
| age | 50 | deceased |
| occupation | univ library | army officer |
| children | 3s 1d | |

| | | | | |
|---------------|----------|----------|------------------|----------|
| her children: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| name | ဇော်ဝင်း | ဇော်မင်း | ဇော်လင်း | မာလာ |
| age | 24 | 22 | 19 | 16 |
| occupation | doctor | oil co | computer college | 10th Std |
| where live | Canada | Sagaing | Rangoon | Rangoon |
| married | yes | no | no | no |
| children | 1s | - | - | - |

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 11

TO MEET AGAIN

This is another Lesson with a discovery element.
Don't look at the New words first, but start with Exercise 1.



Exercises on parts of the day

Ex. 1: Ma Hla and Ko Tin fix a time to meet.
The wordsည၊ ညနေ၊ မနက် and နေ့လယ် (nyá-ne, māneq, né-leh) mean "morning, midday, afternoon, night" — but not in that order.

The dialogue on the tape is between Ko Tin and Ma Hla, and the timetable below shows when Ma Hla is free and when she is booked. If you listen to the dialogue carefully you can work out the meaning of each of the four new words.

Ma Hla's diary: x means booked, not free

| | Mon | Tue | Wed | Thu | Fri | Sat | Sun |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| morning | x | | x | | | | x |
| midday | x | x | x | | | | x |
| afternoon | | x | x | x | | x | |
| evening | x | x | x | x | | x | |

Ex. 2. Imagine you are Ma Hla, and that today is Monday. Look at your diary and answer S1's questions: either say you're free or you're not free.

S1: ဒီနေ့မနက် အားသလား။

L: မအားပါဘူး။

New words

Some times of day —

မနက်
နေ့လယ်
ညနေ
ည

morning
midday ["day-middle"]
afternoon ["night-sun"]
evening, night

māneq
né-leh
nyá-ne
nyá

Other words —

ဆုံ—
—ဘယ်မှာ ဆုံကြမလဲ။
—ဒီမှာပဲ ဆုံကြရအောင်။
စောင့်နေ—
—ဒီမှာ စောင့်နေပါနော်။
—စောင့်နေပါမယ်။

to meet by arrangement
Where shall we meet?
Let's meet right here.
to wait
Wait here, won't you?
I will.

s'oun-
Beh-hma s'oun-já-mālèh?
Di-hma-bèh s'oun-já-yá-aun.
saún-ne-
Di-hma saún-ne-ba-naw?
Saún-ne-ba-meh.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 and S2 have just met each other. They have had a short conversation, and are now about to part.

- S1: မနက်ဖန် ထပ်တွေ့ကြရအောင်။ Let's meet again tomorrow. Māneq-p'an t'aq-twé-já-yá-aun.
မနက်ဖန် အားတယ်နော်။ You are free tomorrow, aren't you? Māneq-p'an à-deh-naw?
S2: မနက်ဖန် မနက်လား။ Tomorrow morning Māneq-p'an māneq-là?
ညနေလား။ or afternoon? Nyá-ne-là?
၁၂-နာရီနောက်ပိုင်း အားပါတယ်။ I'm free after 12. 12-na-yi nauq-pain à-ba-deh.
S1: ညနေ ကျနော် မအားဘူး။ I'm not free in the afternoon. Nyá-ne cānaw mǎà-bù.
S2: ဒီလိုဆို သဘက်ခါ ရမလား။ In that case would the day after be possible? Di-lo-s'o thābeq-k'a yá-mālà?
S1: သဘက်ခါက ဘာနေ့လဲ။ What day is the day after tomorrow? Thābeq-k'a-gá ba-né-lèh?
S2: ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့။ Wednesday. Bouq-dǎhù-né.
S1: ရပါတယ်။ That's OK. Yá-ba-deh.
ညနေ ကောင်းမလား။ Would the afternoon be good? Nyá-ne kaùn-mālà?
S2: ကောင်းပါတယ်။ It's fine. Kaùn-ba-deh.
ဘယ်မှာ ဆုံကြမလဲ။ Where shall we meet? Beh-hma s'oun-já-mālèh?
S1: ဒီမှာပဲ ဆုံကြရအောင်။ Let's meet right here. Di-hma-bèh s'oun-já-yá-aun.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| S2: ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | That's good. | Kaùn-ba-dèh. |
| ဘယ်အချိန် လာခဲ့မလဲ။ | What time will you come over? | Beh-äc'èin la-géh-mälèh? |
| S1: နှစ်နာရီလောက် လာခဲ့မယ်။ | I'll come at about 2. | Hnäna-yi-lauq la-géh-meh. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| S1: ဒီမှာ စောင့်နေပါနော်။ | Wait here, won't you? | Di-hma saún-ne-ba-naw? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| သဘက်ခါ နှစ်နာရီ ဒီမှာ စောင့်နေပါမယ်။ | I'll wait here the day after tomorrow at 2 o'clock. | Thäbeq-k'a hnäna-yi di-hma saún-ne-ba-meh. |
| S1: ဒီလိုဆို သွားမယ်နော်။ | In that case I'll be off. | Di-lo-s'o thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Fine. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| သဘက်ခါ တွေ့သေးတာပေါ့။ | See you the day after tomorrow. | Thäbeq-k'a twé-dhè-da-báw. |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Right. | Houq-kéh. |

For the Practice Dialogues

- Follow the prompt.
1. Foreign man and Burmese man.
 2. Foreign woman and Burmese woman.
 3. Foreign woman and Burmese man.

In the classroom. Use engagement diaries, as outlined for Level 2, Topic 11.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese. They are all to do with times of the day.

1. Let's meet up at midday today in the hostel.
2. Wait for me at home the day after tomorrow in the morning.
3. I'll come round tomorrow evening, OK?
4. I'll phone you in the afternoon the day after tomorrow.
5. Let's meet again this afternoon.
6. We have arranged to meet up here tomorrow morning.
7. Phone me at midday the day after tomorrow.
8. I'll wait in the cold drinks bar tomorrow afternoon, OK?
9. Did you see him this morning?
10. Come round tomorrow morning.



KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ ဒီနေ့ နေ့လယ် ကျောင်းဆောင်မှာ ဆုံကြရအောင်။
 ၂။ သန်ဘက်ခါ မနက် အိမ်မှာ စောင့်နေပါ။
 ၃။ မနက်ဖန် ည လာခဲ့မယ်နော်။
 ၄။ သန်ဘက်ခါ ညနေ ဖုန်း ဆက်မယ်။
 ၅။ ဒီနေ့ ညနေ ထပ်တွေ့ကြရအောင်။
 ၆။ မနက်ဖန် မနက် ဒီမှာ ဆုံဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။
 ၇။ သန်ဘက်ခါ နေ့လယ် ဖုန်း ဆက်ပါ။
 ၈။ မနက်ဖန် ညနေ အအေးဆိုင်မှာ စောင့်နေမယ်နော်။
 ၉။ ဒီနေ့ မနက် တွေ့သလား။
 ၁၀။ မနက်ဖန် မနက် လာခဲ့ပါ။

LEVEL 4, TOPIC 12

MAKING A PHONE CALL

New words

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| ထွက်- | to emerge | t'weq- |
| —ထွက်သွား- | to go out | t'weq-thwà- |
| —ထွက်လာ- | to come out | t'weq-la- |
| —ခဏ အပြင် ထွက်သွားပါတယ်။ | She has gone out for a while. | K'ǎná ǎpyin t'weq-thwà-ba-deh. |
| အစည်းအဝေး | meeting | ǎsì-ǎwè |
| —အစည်းအဝေး တက်- | to attend a meeting | ǎsì-ǎwè teq- |
| —အစည်းအဝေး တက်နေပါတယ်။ | She is attending a meeting. | ǎsì-ǎwè teq-ne-ba-deh. |
| ဖုန်း ဆက်- | to make a phone call | p'òun s'eq- |
| —ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်- | to phone back, return a call | p'òun pyan-s'eq- |
| —ကျနော်ဆီ ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်ပါ။ | Please call me back [manspeak]. | Cǎnǎw-s'i p'òun pyan-s'eq-pa. |
| —ကျမဆီ ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်ပါ။ | Please call me back [womanspeak]. | Cǎmá-s'i p'òun pyan-s'eq-pa. |
| ပြောပါ။ | Please tell her/him. | Pyàw-ba. |
| —ပြောပေးပါ။ ¹ | Please tell her/him. | Pyàw-pè-ba. |
| —ပြောလိုက်ပါ။ ¹ | Please tell her/him. | Pyàw-laiq-pa. |
| —ကျနော်ဆီ ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်ဖို့ ပြောပေးပါနော်။ ² | Could you please tell her /him to phone me back? | Cǎnǎw-s'i p'òun pyan-s'eq-p'ó pyàw-pè-ba-naw? |

1. To use [verb]-ပေး- in place of the verb alone adds a hint of “for me” (or “for them” as the case may be). To use [verb]-လိုက်- adds a hint of “it’s not a serious imposition, it won’t take long, it’ll soon be done” and the like. The added meaning is hardly substantial enough to warrant translating. It is as small as the difference between these three English sentences:

I want you to write these words in your notebook.

I want you to write these words down in your notebook.

I want you to write these words out in your notebook.

They are undeniably different, but the difference is slight. [verb]-ပေး- and [verb]-လိုက်- are of the same order, and very frequent.

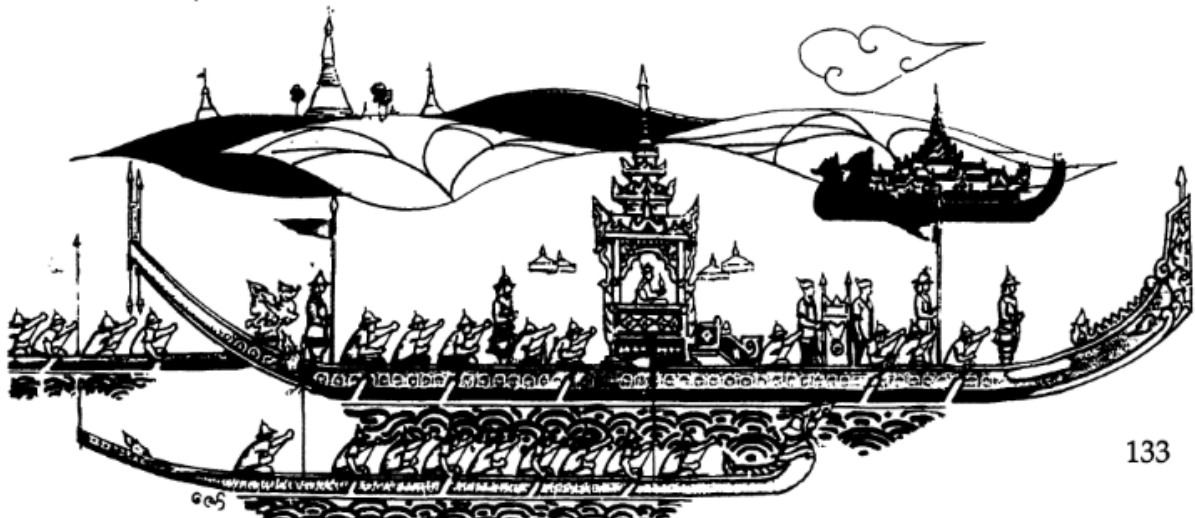
2. For [person]-ဆီ see 4.9.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S2 telephones S1.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့် ရှိပါ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Yes. Go ahead. | Houq-kéh. Āmeín shí-ba, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ဦးသိန်းထွန်းလား။ | Is that U Thein Tun? | Ù Thein T'un-là? |
| S1: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No. | Māhouq-pa-bù, K'in-bya. |
| ဦးသိန်းထွန်း ခဏ အပြင် | U Thein Tun has gone out | Ù Thein T'un k'ānā āpyin |
| ထွက်သွားပါတယ်။ | for a while. | t'weq-thwà-ba-deh. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို ကျနော်ဆီ | In that case, could you please | Di-lo-s'o cānāw-s'i |
| ပြန်ဆက်ဖို့ ပြောပေးပါနော်။ | ask him to phone me back? | pyan-s'eq-p'ó pyāw-pè-ba-naw? |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Certainly. | Kaùn-ba-bi, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ကျနော် နာမည်က David ပါ။ | My name is David. | Cānāw nan-meh-gá David-ba. |
| Australia ကပါ။ | I'm from Australia. | Australia-gá-ba. |
| S1: ကောင်းကောင်း | I can't hear you very well. | Kaùn-gaùn |
| မကြားရပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | Please speak up. | măcà-yá-ba-bù, K'in-bya. |
| ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောပါ။ | Oh. [louder] My name | Ceh-jeh pyāw-ba. |
| S2: အော်။ ကျနော် နာမည်က | is David. | Aw. Cānāw nan-meh-gá |
| David ပါ။ | David. Yes? | David-ba. |
| S1: David ။ ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | I'm from Australia. | David. Houq-kéh. |
| S2: Australia ကပါ။ | From Austria? | Australia-gá-ba. |
| S1: Austria ကလား။ | No. From Australia. | Austria-gá-là? |
| S2: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ Australia ကပါ။ | Right. | Māhouq-pa-bù. Australia-gá-ba. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Where are you staying? | Kaùn-ba-bi, K'in-bya. |
| တယ်မှာ တဲနေသလဲ။ | At the Sakhantha Hotel. | Beh-hma tèh-ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: စခန်းသာဟိုတယ်မှာပါ။ | Can you give me | Săk'àn-dha Ho-teh-hma-ba. |
| S1: တယ်လီဖုန်း နံပါတ် | the phone number? | Teh-li-p'òun nan-baq |
| ပေးပါအုံး။ | Yes. | pè-ba-oùn. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | The number is 82975. | Houq-kéh. |
| နံပါတ်က ၈၂၉၇၅-ပါ။ | 82975. I'll tell him. | Nan-baq-ká 82975-ba. |
| S1: ၈၂၉၇၅။ ပြောလိုက်ပါမယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ | Thank you. | 82975. Pyāw-laiq-pa-meh, K'in-bya. |
| S2: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ | Is that all? | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဒါပဲလား။ ³ | Yes, that's all. | Da-bèh-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဒါပါပဲ။ ³ | | Houq-kéh. Da-ba-bèh. |

3. S1: ဒါပဲလား။ — S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ is the standard way of ending a phone call. Sometimes varied to S1: ဒါပဲနော်။ — S2: ဒါပါပဲ။



For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You make the call.

| Caller | from | staying at | phone | Call for |
|--------|---------|-----------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| Haig | Hawaii | Inya Lake Hotel | 62857 | ဦးမောင်မောင် U Maung Maung |
| Julian | America | friend's house | 73300 | ဒေါ်မေကြည်ဝင်း Daw Me Kyi Win |
| Ryuji | Japan | Strand Hotel | 81530 | ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း Daw Si Si Win |
| Anna | England | President Hotel | 74884 | ဦးအောင်သင်း U Aung Thin |
| Rudi | Russia | Kandawgyi Hotel | 82255 | ဒေါ်နုနုဆွေ Daw Nu Nu Swe |
| Denise | France | friend's house | 30358 | ဒေါ်ခင်မြကြူ Daw Khin Mya Kyu |

Dialogues Set 2. You take the call. You need to imagine that you are on answering duty in some kind of hostel or shared housing. If the call is for you, answer accordingly. If it's for someone else, look at the list to see if they're in. If they are, say you'll fetch them, ask who's calling, and tell the caller to hold on. If they're not in, say where they are and take the caller's name and number, and ask if that's all. Cover the Key and fill in the blanks below after each call.

Blanks for Practice Dialogues Set 2

| Caller's name and n° | | | KEY |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----|------------------------|
| 1. Bob: | at a meeting | ... | ဒေါ်ဝင်းဝင်းမေ ၈၃၃၃၃ |
| 2. Debby: | gone out for a bit | ... | ဒေါ်စောရီ ၇၃၉၉၂ |
| 3. Tom: | in | ... | ဦးတင်မောင်အေး ၇၅၇၅၈ |
| 4. May: | gone to market | ... | ဦးအောင်သန်း ၈၆၃၈၅ |
| 5. Joe: | at a meeting | ... | ဒေါ်သန်းဟန် ၇၁၅၃၆ |
| 6. Maureen: | in | ... | ဒေါ်သီတာအောင် ၈၆၃၈၄ |
| 7. Hal: | gone to library | ... | ဦးသန်းထွန်းအောင် ၇၈၂၃၃ |
| 8. Laurie: | in | ... | ဒေါ်မေအုန်း ၈၅၉၉၈ |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following into Burmese.

Dialogue 1. Mrs. Clinton phones Ko Ne Win.

- S1: Hallo.
 S2: Is that Ko Ne Win?
 S1: No (+ tag).
 S1: U Ne Win is not free.
 S1: He is at a meeting.
 S2: In that case could you please tell him to phone me back?
 S2: My name is Mrs. Clinton.
 S2: I am staying at the Inya Lake Hotel.
 S2: Do you know the number?
 S1: No (+ tag). Please tell me.
 S2: The number is 50644.
 S1: 50644. Fine.
 S1: I will tell him. That's all, is it?
 S2: That's all.

KEY

ဟလို။
 ကိုနေဝင်းလား။
 မဟုတ်ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။
 ဦးနေဝင်းက မအားပါဘူး။
 အစည်းအဝေး တက်နေပါတယ်။
 ဒီလိုဆို ကျွန်မဆီ ပြန်ဆက်ဖို့ ပြောပေးပါနော်။
 ကျွန်မ နာမည်က Mrs. Clinton-ပါ။
 အင်းယားလိပ်ဟိုတယ်မှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။
 နံပါတ် သိလား။
 မသိပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ ပြောပေးပါအုံး။
 နံပါတ်က ၅၀၆၄၄။
 ၅၀၆၄၄။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။
 ပြောပေးပါမယ်။ ဒါပဲနော်။
 ဒါပါပဲ။

Dialogue 2. David Owen phones Ma Pyu.

- S1: Yes?
 S2: I want to speak to Ma Pyu (+ tag).
 S2: Is she at home?
 S1: No (+ tag).
 S1: She has gone out for a moment.
 S2: Do you know what time she will get back? ¹
 S1: She said she would get back ² at about 5 (+ tag)
 S2: In that case could you please tell her to phone me back?
 S1: Fine.
 S2: My name is David Owen.
 S1: I am staying in a friend's house.
 S2: The number is 53229.
 S1: 53229. Fine.
 S1: I will tell her. Is that all?
 S2: That's all.

KEY

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။
 မဖြူနဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။
 အိမ်မှာ ရှိလား။
 မရှိပါဘူး ရှင်။
 ခဏ အပြင် ထွက်သွားပါတယ်။
 ဘယ်အချိန် ပြန်ရောက်မလဲ
 သိသလား။
 ငါးနာရီလောက် ပြန်ရောက်မယ်
 ပြောပါတယ် ရှင်။
 ဒီလိုဆို ကျွန်တော့်ဆီ ပြန်ဆက်ဖို့
 ပြောပေးပါနော်။
 ကောင်းပါပြီ ရှင်။
 ကျွန်တော့် နာမည်က David Owen-ပါ။
 မိတ်ဆွေ အိမ်မှာ တဲနေတယ်။
 နံပါတ်က ၅၃၂၂၉။
 ၅၃၂၂၉။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။
 ပြောပေးပါမယ်။ ဒါပဲလား။
 ဒါပါပဲ။

1. "to get back" = ပြန်ရောက်-

2. "to say you will [verb]" = [verb]-မယ် ပြော-

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 1**ASKING THE WAY****New words**

| | | |
|--|---|-------------------------|
| ဝေး- | to be far, be distant | we- |
| —ဝေးသလား။ | Is it a far? | Wè-dhǎlà? |
| —သိပ် ဝေးသလား။ | Is it a very long way? | Theiq wè-dhǎlà? |
| —ဘယ်လောက် ဝေးသလဲ။ | How far is it? | Beh-lauq wè-dhǎlèh? |
| —သိပ် မဝေးပါဘူး။ | It's not very far. | Theiq mǎwè-ba-bù. |
| —နဲ့နဲ့ ဝေးတယ်။ | It is rather a long way. | Nèh-nèh wè-deh. |
| —တစ်မိုင်လောက် ဝေးတယ်။ | It's about a mile away. [NB မိုင် = mile] | Tāmain-lauq wè-deh. |
| နီး- | to be near | nì- |
| —နီးနီး or နီးနီးလေး | close, near by | nì-nì, nì-nì-lè |
| ရှေ့နားမှာ | just over there, ahead of us | shé-nà-hma |
| or ရှေ့နားတွင် or ရှေ့နားတင် | | shé-nà-dwin, shé-nà-din |
| [the suffix -တွင်, usually pronounced /-ဒင်/ and so sometimes spelled တင် to match, is an older word with the same meaning as -မှာ, which now survives in literary style and in a few phrases like ရှေ့နားတွင်] | | |
| ကျော်- | to pass, go beyond, cross | caw- |

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| —နှစ်လမ်း ကျော်ပြီးရင် ရောက်မယ်။ ¹ | When you've crossed two roads, you'll be there. = It's just two blocks away. | Hnālàn caw-pì-yin yauq-meh. |
| —တံတား ကျော်ပြီးရင် တွေ့မယ်။ | You'll see it when you get beyond the bridge. | Tādà caw-pì-yin twé-meh. |
| လမ်း လျှောက်- /ယောက်/ —ဆယ်မိနစ် လျှောက်သွားရင် ရောက်မယ်။ | to walk, go on foot ["road—proceed along"] làn shauq- If you walk for 10 minutes, you'll be there. | S'eh-māniq làn shauq-thwà-yin yauq-meh. |
| = It's 10 minutes' walk away. [The လမ်း is often omitted when the meaning is clear.] | | |
| [verb]-လို့ ရ- | to be able to [verb] | -lò yá- |
| —လမ်းလျှောက်လို့ မရဘူး။ | You couldn't walk it. [because it's too far, for example] | Làn shauq-lò mǎyá-bù. |
| —ဖုန်း ဆက်လို့ ရသလား။ | Were you able to phone? [after the line had been reconnected, for example] | Pòun s'eq-lò yá-dhālà? |
| —ဗမာစကား သင်လို့ ရပါတယ်။ | You can learn Burmese. | Bāma sāgà thin-lò yá-ba-deh. |
| —ဖတ်လို့ မရဘူး။ | I can't read it [because it is smudged, or because I didn't bring my glasses, for example] | P'aq-lò mǎyá-bù. |
| —ဘယ်ဘက် ချိုးလို့ ရသလား။ | Can you turn left? [for example, when there might be a No Left Turn sign] | Beh-beq c'ò-lò yá-dhālà? |
| ကား | car, used for private car, taxi or bus | kà |
| ကား စီး- | to go by car/taxi/bus ["car—ride"] | kà sì- |
| —ကား စီးရင် ကောင်းမယ်။ | It would be good [or better] to go by car. | Kà sì-yin kaùn-meh. |
| [verb]-လိမ့်မယ်။ | may have to [verb]. | -leín-meh |
| The verb suffix -လိမ့်မယ် is much like -မယ် (-meh) but adds a slight extra slant. One of its meanings is to indicate uncertainty, probability. It is also used to dilute the rather dictatorial effect of [verb]-မယ် "you will [verb]." In appropriate contexts [verb]-လိမ့်မယ် has more the flavour of "you will no doubt [verb]," "you will find yourself [verb]-ing," "I expect you will [verb]." With [verb]-ရ- "have to [verb]," as in the example below, -လိမ့်မယ် adds a warning note: like "I'm afraid you may have to walk a good way": | | |
| ၁၅-မိနစ်လောက် လျှောက်ရလိမ့်မယ်။ | You may have to walk about 15 minutes. | S'éh-ngà mǎniq-lauq shauq-yá-leín-meh. |
| ကား စီးရလိမ့်မယ်။ | You'll probably have to go by car/taxi/bus. | Kà sì-yá-leín-meh. |

Two words not practised but useful in connection with street directions

| | | |
|----------------------|--|-----------|
| လမ်းထိပ် /-ထိတ်/ | the end of the road | làn-t'eiq |
| လမ်းထောင့် /-ဒေါင့်/ | the corner of the block, road junction | làn-daún |

1. In Mandalay, "two blocks away" is နှစ်ပြင် ဝေးတယ် (hnābyá wè-dèh). The grounds of the royal palace are square, and the roads of the city around it run in a grid formation parallel with the high defensive walls round the grounds. The ပြင် are turreted strongpoints built at intervals along the walls, and constitute landmarks that are easily visible as you proceed along the roads. It is not, of course, appropriate to measure Rangoon distances in ပြင်, and most Rangoon people don't know the word anyway.

Exercises

Ex.1. Use List 1 below. Mask the last column (which gives the answers), use column 2 to answer the question, then listen to the answer, say it aloud after the tape, and make a note in English in the blank in column 3. At the end of the Exercise uncover the answers and check that yours correspond.

Prompt: First you take the part of Philip. S1: ဘယ်သွားမလဲ ရှင်။

L/S2: ဘဏ်တိုက် သွားမယ်။ ဝေးသလား။

S1/L: မဝေးပါဘူး။ မီးပွိုင့် ကျော်သွားရင် ရောက်မှာပါ။

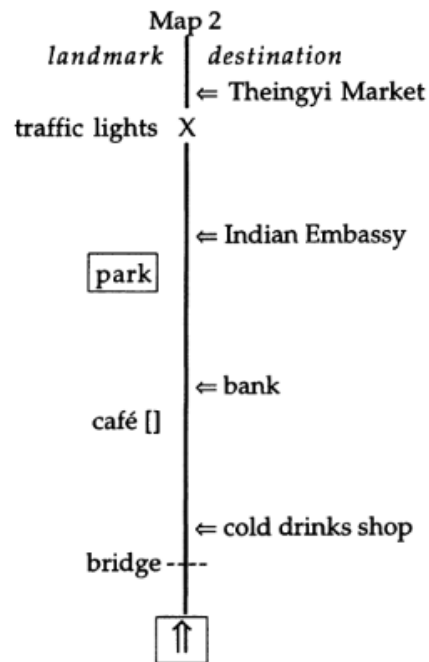
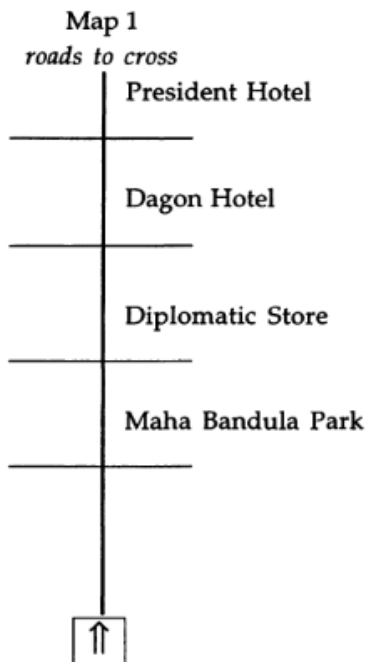
List 1 for Ex. 1

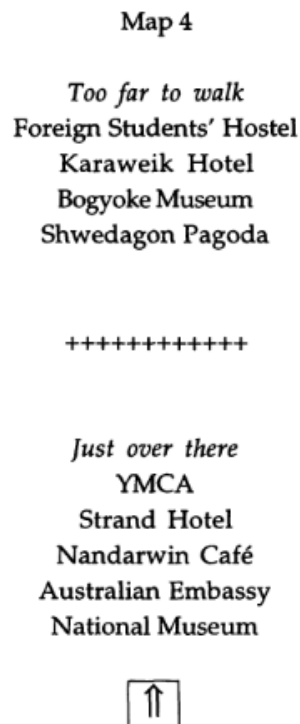
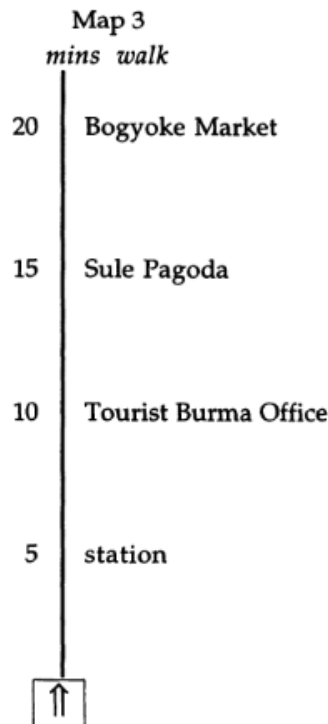
| <i>name</i> | <i>going to</i> | <i>how far</i> | KEY |
|--------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Philip | the bank | ... | beyond traffic lights |
| 2. Elizabeth | the YMCA | ... | 15 mins walk |
| 3. Charles | the British Embassy | ... | 20 mins walk |
| 4. Diana | the Inst of Foreign Languages | ... | take car |
| 5. Andrew | the Tourist Burma Office | ... | cross three roads |
| 6. Sarah | the public toilet | ... | just ahead |
| 7. Mark | the main station | ... | 10 mins walk |
| 8. Anne | the Foreign Students' Hostel | ... | take car |

Ex.2. Use the maps below and follow the prompt. The arrow marks the spot you start from.

Format: S1: မဟာဗန္ဓုလပန်းခြံ သွားမယ်။ ဘယ်လောက် ဝေးသလဲ။

L/S2: တစ်လမ်း ကျော်ပြီးရင် ရောက်မှာပါ။





Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 goes up to S2 to ask the way.

S1: အကို။

Excuse me.

Āko.

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဘာလဲ။

Yes? What is it?

Houq-kéh. Ba-lèh?

S1: ဖလင် ဝယ်ချင်တယ်။

I want to buy a film.

P'ālin weh-jin-deh.

ဒီနားမှာ ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ
သိလား။

Do you know where I could
get one around here?

Di-nà-hma beh-hma yá-mālèh
thí-là?

S2: ဖလင်လား။

A film?

P'ālin-là?

အနော်ရထာလမ်းမှာ
ကင်မရာဆိုင်တွေ ရှိတယ်။
အဲဒီမှာ ရမှာပါ။¹

There are some photographic
shops in Anawayhta St.
You'll surely get one there.

Ānaw-yā't'a Làn-hma
kin-māra-s'ain-de shí-deh.
Ē-di-hma yá-hma-ba.

S1: ဒီလိုဆို ဘယ်ဘက် သွားရမလဲ။

So, which way should I go?

Di-lo-s'o beh-beq thwà-yá-mālèh?

S2: ဒီဘက် သွား။

Go this way.

Di-beq thwà.

အနော်ရထာလမ်း ရောက်ရင်
ညာဘက် ချိုး။
ဘယ်ဘက်မှာ ဆိုင်တွေ
တွေ့ပါလိမ့်မယ်။

When you get to Anawyahta
Street, turn right.
You'll see the shops on the left.

Ānaw-yā't'a Làn yauq-yin
nya-beq c'ò.

S1: ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။
သိပ် ဝေးသလား။

Thank you.
Is it very far?

Cè-zù tin-ba-deh.
Theiq wè-dhālà?

S2: အော်။ မဝေးပါဘူး။
၁၀-မိနစ် လမ်းလျှောက်-
သွားရင် ရောက်မှာပါ။¹

Oh, not at all.
If you walk for 10 minutes
you'll get there.

Aw. Māwè-ba-bù.
S'eh māniq làn shauq-thwà-yin
yauq-hma-ba.

S1: ကျေးဇူးပဲ။ သွားမယ်နော်။

Thanks. Goodbye.

Cè-zù-bèh. Thwà-meh-naw?

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။

Right. Goodbye.

Houq-kéh. Kaùn-ba-bi.

1. Note. [verb]-မှာပါ is a variant sentence ending for [verb]-မယ်။ See the note at 4.8. An additional application of [verb]-မှာပါ is (as here) to reassure the listener: as if the speaker were saying "Don't worry: there's no danger you won't get a film: you'll undoubtedly get one at those shops," or "Don't worry: it's not as far as you may be thinking." In other examples you will find [verb]-မှာပါ used in preference to [verb]-မယ် when the speaker is correcting a misapprehension: "Oh no: it won't take you as long as 20 minutes: you'll be there in 5 minutes."

For the Practice Dialogues

You take the part of the people named in the List below. Following the Prompt, you ask for directions to the place named, and make a note of the route and how far you have to go. At the end of the list uncover the Key and check your answers.

List 2 for the Practice Dialogues.

| <i>name</i> | <i>informant could be his/her</i> | <i>wants</i> | <i>route</i> | <i>how far</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Elizabeth | uncle | a cold drinks shop | ... | ... |
| Philip | aunt | to buy instant coffee | ... | ... |
| Charles | sister | to go to Tourist Burma | ... | ... |
| Diana | brother | to go to Bogyoke Museum | ... | ... |

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following sentences have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

- ၁။ -ဖုန်း-ဆီ-သလား-ရ-ဆက်လို့-ဦးကျော်
- ၂။ -ရ-ပြန်ရောက်-လိမ့်မယ်-ပြည်-ဘဏ်တိုက်-ရင်-လုပ်-ပါ-ဗမာ-မှာ-အလုပ်
- ၃။ -ငါး-ရောက်-ရင်-လျှောက်သွား-မှာပါ-မိနစ်
- ၄။ -ညာဘက်-မှာ-ဘူး-လို့-မ-ရ-မီးပွိုင့်-ချိုး
- ၅။ -တက်-မယ်-ဒီ-အဝေး-ကောင်း-ရင်-အစည်း
- ၆။ -ရ-ဆယ်-မယ်-မိနစ်-လိမ့်-ပါ-စောင့်နေ
- ၇။ -ဘယ်-တံတား-တွေ-ရင်-ကျော်-ပါ-ပြီး-ဘက်-မှာ-မှာ

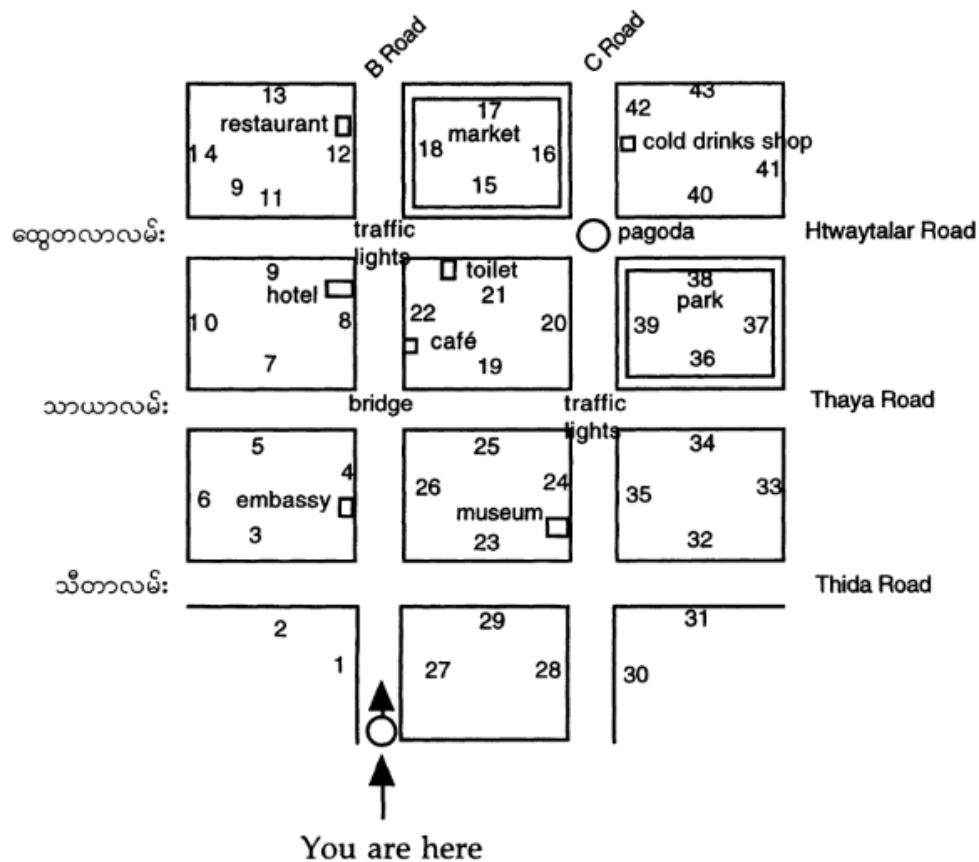
KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ -ဦးကျော်-ဆီ -ဖုန်း- ဆက်လို့ -ရ-သလား။
- ၂။ -ဗမာ-ပြည် -ပြန်ရောက်-ရင် -ဘဏ်တိုက်-မှာ -အလုပ်-လုပ်-ရ-ပါ-လိမ့်မယ်။
- ၃။ -ငါး-မိနစ် -လျှောက်သွား-ရင် -ရောက်-မှာပါ။
- ၄။ -မီးပွိုင့်-မှာ -ညာဘက် -ချိုး-လို့ -မ-ရ-ဘူး။
- ၅။ -ဒီ-အစည်း-အဝေး -တက်-ရင် -ကောင်း-မယ်။
- ၆။ -ဆယ်-မိနစ် -စောင့်နေ-ရ-ပါ-လိမ့်-မယ်။
- ၇။ -တံတား -ကျော်-ပြီး-ရင် -ဘယ်-ဘက်-မှာ တွေ့-မှာ-ပါ။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES

| <i>name</i> | <i>route</i> | <i>distance</i> |
|-------------|---|------------------|
| Elizabeth | This way. At Maha Bandula Street turn left. Shop is on the right. | Very close |
| Philip | This way. At Anawyahta Street turn right. Go past the traffic lights. Shop is on left. | 10 mins |
| Charles | Go to bridge and turn right. Tourist Burma office is about three roads down. | 15 mins |
| Diana | Near Sule Pagoda. Take bus/taxi. | Too far to walk. |

Street plan for use in class





First speaker: How do I get to the Community Development Office, young man?

Second speaker: Walk a little way down that road that smells of blocked ditches, then when you've passed the illegal pavement traders, go round the garbage tip, and you get to a place where the cars are parked all over the place, ...

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 2

TAKING PHOTOGRAPHS

New words

| | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------|
| —ပုံ | picture [also count word for pictures] | poun |
| —ဓာတ်ပုံ တစ်ပုံ | one photograph, a photograph | daq-poun tǎboun |
| —ကျွန်တော်လဲ တစ်ပုံ လိုချင်ပါတယ်။ | I would like a copy too. | Cǎnaw-lèh tǎboun lo-jin-ba-deh. |
| ပို့- | to send | pó- |
| —ဓာတ်ပုံ တစ်ပုံ ပို့မယ်။ | I'll send a photograph. | Daq-poun tǎboun pó-meh. |
| —ဓာတ်ပုံ တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးမယ်။ ¹ | I'll send you a photograph. | Daq-poun tǎboun pó-pè-meh. |
| [person]-ဆီ ² | "person's place," where a person is ² | -s'i |
| ကူး- | to cross over, transfer, copy | kù- |
| —ဓာတ်ပုံ ကူးမယ် | I'll copy (or print) the photograph. | Daq-poun kù-meh. |
| —ဓာတ်ပုံ ကူးပြီးရင် | I'll send the photograph to | Daq-poun kù-pì-yin |
| တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးမယ်။ | you when I've printed it. | tǎboun pó-pè-meh. |
| စိတ် ချပါ။ | Don't worry. Trust me. | Seiq c'á-ba. |
| | ["mind—drop, set down"] | |
| လိပ်စာ | address | leiq-sa |
| —လိပ်စာ ပေးပါအုံး။ | Give me your address. | Leiq-sa pè-ba-òun. |
| —လိပ်စာ ဒီမှာ ရေးပါ။ | Write your address here. | Leiq-sa di-hma yè-ba. |
| —လိပ်စာ ရေးပေးမယ်။ | I'll write my address for you. | Leiq-sa yè-pè-meh. |
| ပါ- | to have in it, to have with [one] | pa- |
| —အသား ပါသလား။ | Is there any meat in it? (see 4.4) | Āthà pa-dhǎlà? |
| —ခဲတံ ပါသလား။ | Have you got a pencil on you? | K'èh-dan pa-dhǎlà? |

1. -ပေး- in [verb]-ပေးတယ် conveys the idea of [verb]-ing *for someone*. You have already met examples like ခေါ်ပေးမယ် "I'll fetch her *for you*."

2. you can think of -ဆီ as having a meaning like "place," but it can't be translated as such into English. It is suffixed to a noun, when the noun refers to a person, in phrases like —

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| [noun]-မှာ | "at, in [noun]" | -hma |
| [noun]-က | "from [noun]" and | -ká, -gá |
| [noun]-[no suffix] | "to (towards) [noun]" | — |

For example:

| | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| မိတ်ဆွေဆီမှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။ | He is staying with a friend. | Meiq-s'we-s'i-hma tèh-ne-ba-deh. |
| | ("friend-place-at") | |
| ဒေါ်အဝင်းဆီက ရပါတယ်။ | We got it from Daw Ahwin. | Daw Āwìn-s'i-gá yá-ba-deh. |
| | ("Daw Awin-place-from") | |
| ကျွန်တော့်ဆီ ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်ပါ။ | Please phone me back. * | Cǎnaw-s'i p'òun pyan-s'eq-pa. |
| | ("my-place-[to]") | |
| ကျွန်တော့်ဆီ တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးပါအုံး။ | Please send me a copy. | Cǎnaw-s'i tǎboun pè-ba-òun. |
| | ("my-place-[to]") | |
| ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ဆီ တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးမယ်။ | I'll send you (aunt) a copy. | Daw-dáw-s'i tǎboun pó-pè-meh. |
| | ("Aunt's-place-[to]") | |

* See Part 2, 4.12

Note that although -ဆီ is used for *making a phone call to someone*, and *sending something to someone*, it is not used for *giving to someone*, or *saying to someone*. For *giving to* and *saying to* you use [person]-ကို။ For example:

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ကို တစ်ပုံ ပေးမယ်။ | I'll give you (aunt) a copy. | Daw-daw-go tǎboun pè-meh. |
| ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ကို ပြောမယ်။ | I'll tell you (aunt). | Daw-daw-go pyàw-meh. |



The welcome party for guests at a wedding reception in Mandalay.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere in Burma. S2 is a lady in a photogenic spot, and S1 is taking a photograph of the scene.

The camera clicks, and S2 says —

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S2: ပြီးပြီလား။ | Have you finished? | Pì-bi-là? |
| S1: မပြီးသေးပါဘူး ဒေါ်ဒေါ်။ | Not yet, Auntie. | Mǎpì-dhè-ba-bù, Daw-daw |
| နောက်ထပ် တစ်ပုံ | I'm going to take | Nauq-t'aq tǎboun |
| ရိုက်အုံးမယ်။ ၁ | another picture. | yaiq-oùn-meh. |
| S1 takes his second shot and says — | | |
| S1: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ ကျေးဇူးပဲ။ | There, I've finished. Thanks. | Kèh. Pì-bi. Cè-zù-bèh. |
| S2: ကျမလဲ အဲဒီဓါတ်ပုံ တစ်ပုံ | I'd like a copy of that photo as | Cǎmá-lèh èh-di daq-poun |
| လိုချင်ပါတယ်။ ရမလား။ | well. Could you manage that? | tǎboun lo-jin-ba-deh. Yá-mǎlà? |
| S1: ရပါတယ် ဒေါ်ဒေါ်။ | Certainly, Auntie. | Yá-ba-deh, Daw-daw. |
| ကူးပြီးရင် ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ဆီ | I'll send one to you when | Kù-pì-yin Daw-daw-s'i |
| ပို့ပေးမယ်။ | it's been printed. | pó-pè-meh. |
| S2: ကျေးဇူးပဲ ရှင်။ | Thanks. | Cè-zù-bèh Shin. |
| ကျမလိပ်စာ ရေးပေးမယ်နော်။ | I'll write my address out for | Cǎmá lei-q-sa yè-pè-meh-naw? |
| | you, shall I? | |

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကျွန်တော် စာရွက် ပါပါတယ်။ ဒီမှာ။ ခဲတံတော့ မပါဘူး။ ဒေါ်ဒေါ် ခဲတံ ပါသလား။ | Yes. I've got a piece of paper with me: here. But I haven't got a pencil on me. Have you got one? | Houq-kéh. Cănaw sa-yweq pa-ba-deh. Di-hma. K'èh-dan-dáw mǎpa-bù. Daw-daw k'èh-dan pa-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ပါပါတယ်။ ဒီမှာ ရေးရမလား။ | Yes, I have. Do you want me to write it here? | Pa-ba-deh. Di-hma yè-yá-mǎlà? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အဲဒီမှာပဲ။ S2 writes. Then — | Yes, just there. | Houq-kéh. Ēh-di-hma-bèh. |
| S2: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ ကြည့်ပါအုံး။ | There, I've done it. Have a look at it. | Kèh. Pì-bi. Cí-ba-oùn. |
| S2: ဖတ်လို့ ရသလား။ | Can you read it? | P'aq-ló yá-dhǎlà? |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ S1 reads aloud — | Yes, I can. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဒေါ်မြဇင်၊ အမှတ်-၄၁၊ — S1 points to the next word — | Daw Mya Zin, n° 41, — | Daw Myá Zin, āhmaq 41, — |
| S1: ဒါက “ရွှေဘုံသာ” နော်။ | That is “Shwebontha” isn't it? | Da-gá “Shwe-boun-dha”-naw? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ “ရွှေဘုံသာ” ပါပဲ။ | Yes, it's “Shwebontha” all right. | Houq-pa-deh. “Shwe-boun-dha”-ba-bèh. |
| S1: အမှတ်-၄၁၊ ရွှေဘုံသာလမ်း၊ ရန်ကုန်။ | N° 41, Shwebontha Street, Rangoon. | Āhmaq 41, Shwe-boun-dha Làn, Yan-goun. |
| S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ | That's it. | Da-ba-bèh. |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ဓါတ်ပုံ ကူးပြီးရင် ပို့ပေးမယ် ဒေါ်ဒေါ်။ စိတ်ချပါ။ | Fine. When I've had the photo printed, I'll send it to you, Auntie. Trust me. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Daq-poun kù-pì-yin, pó-pè-meh, Daw-daw. Seiq c'á-ba. |
| S2: ကျေးဇူးပဲ ရှင်။ | Thanks. | Cè-zù-bèh, Shin. |
| S1: ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။ ကဲ။ သွားပါအုံးမယ်နော်။ | No trouble. Right then. Goodbye. | Keiq-sá mǎshí-ba-bù. Kèh. Thwà-ba-oùn-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ ရှင်။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi, Shin. |

1. Note. You will no doubt have noticed the parallel between this sentence —
နောက်ထပ် တစ်ပုံ ရိုက်အုံးမယ်။ I'm going to take another picture. Nauq-t'aq tāboun yaiq-oùn-meh.
and sentences you met in 3.9 such as
နောက်ထပ် တစ်လ နေအုံးမယ်။ I'm going to stay another month. Nauq-t'aq tǎlá ne-oùn-meh.
[verb]-အုံးမယ် conveys the meaning that you will do more verb-ing: take another picture,
stay another month, study more Burmese, drink more tea, and so on.

For the Practice Dialogues

Imagine you are taking photographs. Follow the Prompt.

| | | | |
|--|---------|-----------------------|---|
| n° | you are | subject could be your | subject is |
| 1. | male | aunt | selling pots at a market stall |
| 2. | male | ygr sister | sewing appliqué ornaments |
| 3. | female | older brother | reading horoscopes |
| The fortune teller's address: | | | |
| ဗေဒင်ဆရာကြီး ဦးစံတင်အောင်၊ အမှတ်-၄၃၈၊ ၈၂-လမ်း၊ မန္တလေးမြို့။ | | | |
| 4. | female | uncle | with you and his family at a restaurant |
| Your companion's address: | | | |
| ဦးစိုးဝင်း၊ အမှတ်-၁၁၊ စေတနာလမ်း၊ ရှောက်ပင်ခြံ၊ လှည်းတန်း၊ ကမာရွတ်။ | | | |

In the classroom. Don't forget the usefulness of sketches for poses, outlined at Level 3, Topic 2.

Exercise for written answer

Fill in the gaps in the following sentences.

S1: ...ဒေါ်။
 S2: ရှင်။ ဘာ...။
 S1: ခါတံ... ရိုက်ချင်ပါတယ်။ ရတယ်နော်။
 S2: ရိုက်ချင်ရင် ...ပါ ရှင်။
 S2: ကိစ္စ မ...ပါဘူး။
 S1: ရှေ့ နဲ့နဲ့ ...ပါ။
 S1: ဒီ... လုပ်ပါ။
 S2: ...လိုလား။
 S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အဲ...လိုပဲ။
 S1: ကဲ။ ပြီး...။
 S1: ဒေါ်ဒေါ်... တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးချင်ပါတယ်။
 S2: အော်။ ကိစ္စ မရှိပါ... ရှင်။
 S1: ဒေါ်ဒေါ် လိပ်... ရေးပေးပါအုံး။
 S2: ...တံ မရှိဘူး ရှင်။
 S1: ကျွန်တော် ခဲတံ ပါ...တယ်။ ဒီမှာ။
 S2: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ ဖတ်လို့ ...သလား။
 S1: ကောင်းကောင်း ဖတ်... ရပါတယ်။
 S1: ဒေါ်စောရှင်၊ အ...-၄၊ ၈-လမ်း၊ ရန်အောင်မြို့။
 S2: ဟုတ်...တယ်။
 S1: ကူးပြီးရင် တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးမယ်။
 S2: ...ဇူး တင်ပါတယ် ရှင်။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

S1: ဒေါ်ဒေါ်။
 S2: ရှင်။ ဘာလဲ။
 S1: ခါတံပုံရိုက်ချင်ပါတယ်။ ရတယ်နော်။
 S2: ရိုက်ချင်ရင် ရိုက်ပါ ရှင်။
 S2: ကိစ္စမရှိပါဘူး။
 S1: ရှေ့ နဲ့နဲ့ တိုးပါ။
 S1: ဒီလို လုပ်ပါ။
 S2: ဒီလိုလား။
 S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အဲဒီလိုပဲ။
 S1: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။
 S1: ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ဆီ တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးချင်ပါတယ်။
 S2: အော်။ ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး ရှင်။
 S1: ဒေါ်ဒေါ် လိပ်စာ ရေးပေးပါအုံး။
 S2: ခဲတံ မရှိဘူး ရှင်။
 S1: ကျွန်တော် ခဲတံ ပါပါတယ်။ ဒီမှာ။
 S2: ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ ဖတ်လို့ ရသလား။
 S1: ကောင်းကောင်း ဖတ်လို့ ရပါတယ်။
 S1: ဒေါ်စောရှင်၊ အမှတ်-၄၊ ၈-လမ်း၊ ရန်အောင်မြို့။
 S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။
 S1: ကူးပြီးရင် တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးမယ်။
 S2: ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ် ရှင်။

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 3

TAKING A TAXI

New words

ရပ်-
 —ဘယ်မှာ ရပ်ရမလဲ။

to stand, stop
 Where should I stop?

yaq-
 Beh-hma yaq-yá-mālèh?

| | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| —ဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါ။ | Stop here. | Di-hma yaq-pa. |
| လို- | to be lacking, be short of | lo- |
| —နှစ်ကျပ် လိုတယ် | It's K2 short. | Hnācaq lo-deh. |
| —နှစ်ကျပ် လိုသေးတယ် | It's still K2 short. | Hnācaq lo-dhè-deh. |
| —ဆယ်မိနစ် လိုပါသေးတယ် | We still have 10 minutes in hand. | S'eh mǎniq lo-ba-dhè-deh. |
| —နဲနဲ လိုပါသေးတယ် | We're still not quite there. | Nèh-nèh lo-ba-dhè-deh. |
| [place]-ရှေ့မှာ | in front of [place] | -shé-hma |
| —ဈေးရှေ့မှာ ရပ်ချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want to stop in front of the market. | Zè-shé-hma yaq-c'in-ba-deh. |
| —သံရုံးရှေ့မှာ | There's a teashop | Than-youñ-shé-hma |
| လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် ရှိတယ်။ | in front of the embassy. | lǎp'eq-ye-zain shí-deh. |
| ရှေ့ | in front, ahead [of us] | shé |
| —ရှေ့နားမှာ | Just over there, ahead of us | shé-nà-hma |
| —ရှေ့လမှာ | In the month ahead, next month | shé-lá-hma |
| —ရှေ့လမ်း | The [cross]-road ahead, the next turning | shé-làn |
| ဆိုက်ကား | sidecar, trishaw | s'aiq-kà |
| [a pedal cycle fitted with a sidecar like a motor bike, with two passenger seats, used for short range journeys round town. Cheaper and quieter than taxis.] | | |
| —ဆိုက်ကားဆရာ | sidecar driver (pedaller) | s'aiq-kà s'āya |
| [verb]-ခွင့် ရှိ- | to be allowed to [verb] | -k'wín shí- |
| | ("[verb]-permission—have") | |
| —ဒီမှာ ခါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်ခွင့် ရှိသလား။ | Is one allowed to take photographs here? | Di-hma daq-poun yaiq-k'wín shí-dhǎlà? |
| —ဟိုတယ်ရှေ့မှာ ရပ်ခွင့် မရှိဘူး။ | We're not allowed to stop in front of the hotel. | Ho-teh-shé-hma yaq-k'wín māshí-bù. |
| [place] ဒီဘက်မှာ | this side of [place], before you get to [place] | di-beq-hma |
| —ဘုရား ဒီဘက်မှာ တွေ့မယ်။ | You'll see it before you get to the pagoda. | P'āyà-di-beq-hma twé-meh. |
| [place] ဟိုဘက်မှာ | the far side of [place], beyond [place] | ho-beq-hma |
| —မီးဖိုခုံ ဟိုဘက်မှာ ရပ်မယ်။ | We'll stop after the traffic lights. | Mì-pwain-ho-beq-hma yaq-meh. |
| ဆင်း- | to descend, get off [taxi, sidecar, train, ...] | s'in- |
| —ဘယ်မှာ ဆင်းချင်သလဲ။ | Where would you like to get out? | Beh-hma s'in-jin-dhǎlèh? |
| —ဒီမှာပဲ ဆင်းမယ်။ | I'll get out right here. | Di-hma-bèh s'in-meh. |

Two new places

| | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| ရုပ်ရှင်ရုံ | cinema ["picture-moving-building"] | youq-shin-youn |
| လမ်းဆုံ | crossroads, junction ["road-meeting"] | làn-zoun |

For more words for places in towns, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 13.

Two words not practised but useful in connection with sidecars

| | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ကွေ့- | to turn, wheel round | kwé- |
| —ဘယ်ဘက် မကွေ့ရဘူး။ | You mustn't turn left. No left turn. | Beh-beq mǎkwé-yá-bù. |
| —ဂ-ငယ်ကွေ့ မကွေ့ရ | No U-turns. | Gá-ngeh-gwé mǎkwé-yá. |
| [road sign: ဂ-ငယ် is the name of the letter ဂ။ Literally "you may not make a ဂ turn"] | | |
| ဝင်- | to enter, go in, come in | win- |
| —ဆိုက်ကား ဝင်ခွင့် မရှိဘူး။ | Sidecars aren't permitted to go in. | S'aiq-kà win-gwín māshí-bù. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a street in Rangoon. S1 is a sidecar rider, and S2 is his passenger.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ ရပ်ချင်သလဲ။ | Where do you want to stop? | Beh-hma yaq-c'in-dhālèh? |
| ဒီမှာ ရပ်ရမလား။ | Should I stop here? | Di-hma yaq-yá-mālà? |
| S2: နဲ့ လိုပါသေးတယ်။ | It's a bit further on. | Nèh-nèh lo-ba-dhè-deh. |
| ဟိုတယ်ရှေ့မှာ | I want to stop in | Ho-teh-shé-hma |
| ရပ်ချင်ပါတယ်။ | front of the hotel. | yaq-c'in-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဟိုတယ်ရှေ့မှာ ရပ်လို့ မရဘူး။ | I can't stop in front of the hotel. | Ho-teh-shé-hma yaq-ló mǎyá-bù. |
| ဆိုက်ကာ: ရပ်ခွင့် မရှိဘူး။ | Sidecars aren't allowed to stop there. | S'aiq-kà win-gwín mǎshí-bù. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို ဟိုတယ်ဟိုဘက်မှာ | In that case stop on the far | Di-lo-s'o ho-teh-ho-beq-hma |
| ရပ်ပါ။ | side of the hotel. | yaq-pa. |
| အဲဒီမှာပဲ ဆင်းမယ်။ | I'll get out there. | Èh-di-hma-bèh s'in-meh. |



A Rangoon sidecar ("trishaw")

For the Exercises

Ex. 1. Use the List below to answer the questions. Make sure the verb in your answer corresponds to the verb in the question: if the question uses ရပ်ချင်သလား: you'll need use ရပ်ချင်ပါတယ် in the answer, and if the question uses ဆင်းမလား: you'll need to answer ဆင်းမယ်, and so on.

Format: Prompt: journey n° 1

S1: ဘယ်မှာ ရပ်ချင်သလဲ။

L/S2: ရပ်ရှင်ရုံရှေ့မှာ ရပ်ချင်ပါတယ်။

List for Ex. 1

| <i>journey</i> <i>n°</i> | <i>you want to</i> <i>stop/get off</i> | <i>you have</i> <i>reached</i> | <i>journey</i> <i>n°</i> | <i>you want to</i> <i>stop/get off</i> | <i>you have</i> <i>reached</i> |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | in front of cinema | A | 11 | beyond park | R |
| 2 | beyond road junction | K | 12 | in front of station | K |
| 3 | this side of the museum | S | 13 | beyond traffic lights | C |
| 4 | in front of restaurant | I | 14 | this side of the café | H |
| 5 | in front of bank | C | 15 | beyond bridge | F |
| 6 | this side of the school | A | 16 | beyond YMCA | G |
| 7 | beyond market | N | 17 | this side of the hostel | A |
| 8 | in front of hostel | A | 18 | in front of Foreign Students' Hostel | Q |
| 9 | this side of the pagoda | O | 19 | this side of the cold drinks shop | I |
| 10 | in front of public toilet | H | | | |

Plan for Ex. 2

| | |
|---|--------------------------|
| T | museum |
| S | park |
| R | Foreign Students' Hostel |
| Q | pagoda |
| P | hotel |
| O | market |
| N | Tourist Burma office |
| M | station |
| L | road junction |
| K | cold drinks shop |
| J | café |
| I | restaurant |
| H | public toilet |
| G | bridge |
| F | YMCA |
| E | bank |
| D | traffic lights |
| C | school |
| B | hostel |
| A | cinema |
| ↑ | |
| X | |

Ex. 2. Use the List and the Plan above. Imagine you are in a sidecar, travelling up the road from point X on the plan. The list shows where you want to stop and get off, and how far you've got. The ဆိုက်ကားဆရာ asks you about where you want to stop or get off, and the exchange may take one of the following routes:

1. He may ask whether you want to stop/get off here: if the list shows that you're at the right place, say "Yes"; if not, say "Not yet," and tell him where you do want to stop/get off.
2. If he just asks *where* you want to stop or get off, tell him.

3. He may tell you that sidecars are not allowed to stop there: if so, tell him to stop “just over there” (in real life you would be able to point), and say you’ll get off there.

For the Practice Dialogues

Engaging a sidecar. You take the part of people in the list. Follow the prompt.

| Name | Destination | Name | Destination |
|-------------|-----------------|------------|--------------------|
| Ms. Fonda | Sakhantha Hotel | Ms. Streep | President cinema |
| Mr. Redford | U.S. Embassy | Mr. Newman | Maha Bandoola Park |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following brief dialogues into Burmese.

Dialogue 1

- S1: Where do you want to stop?
S2: We’ll stop this side of the crossroads.

Dialogue 2

- S1: Will you get down here?
S2: We’re still not quite there.
S2: I’ll get down just over there.

Dialogue 3

- S1: Should I go straight ahead?
S2: No.
S2: We’ll turn left when we get to the crossroads.
S1: You can’t turn left there.
S2: In that case, we’ll stop right here.

Dialogue 4

- S1: Where do you want to get off?
S2: We’re still not quite there.
S2: I’ll get off in front of the cinema.
S1: Sidecars aren’t allowed to stop there.
S2: In that case, please stop after the crossroads.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဘယ်မှာ ရပ်ချင်သလဲ။
လမ်းဆုံ ဒီဘက်မှာ ရပ်မယ်။

ဒီမှာ ဆင်းမလား။
နဲ့ လိုပါသေးတယ်။
ရှေ့နားမှာ ဆင်းမယ်။

ရှေ့တည့်တည့် သွားရမလား။
မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။

လမ်းဆုံ ကျရင် ဘယ်ဘက် ချိုးမယ်။
အဲဒီမှာ ဘယ်ဘက် ချိုးလို့ မရဘူး။
ဒီလိုဆို ဒီမှာပဲ ရပ်မယ်။

ဘယ်မှာ ဆင်းချင်သလဲ။
နဲ့ လိုပါသေးတယ်။
ရပ်ရှင်ရုံရှေ့မှာ ဆင်းမယ်။
အဲဒီမှာ ဆိုက်ကား ရပ်ခွင့် မရှိပါဘူး။
ဒီလိုဆို လမ်းဆုံ ဟိုဘက်မှာ ရပ်ပါ။

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 4

CAFÉS AND RESTAURANTS

New words

အပြင်မှာ

outside, outdoors

ăpyin-hma

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| အထဲမှာ အိုက်- —အထဲမှာ အိုက်တယ်။ —အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်ကြရအောင်။ [verb]-ပါလား: ¹ | inside, indoors to be stuffy, close, feel hot It's stuffy inside. Let's sit outside. How about [verb]-ing? Why don't you [verb]? ¹ | ăt'èh-hma aiq- Ăt'èh-hma aiq-teh. Ăpyin-hma t'ain-já-yá-aun. -ba-là? |
| ရေခဲ /-ဂဲ/ သကြား /-ဂျား/ ² ရေခွေး ³ ငရုတ်သီး: ထည့်- /ထဲ/ —ရေခဲ ထည့်ရမလား။ —သကြား မထည့်နဲ့နော်။ —S1: ရေခွေး ကုန်သွားပြီ။ —S2: ထပ်ထည့်ပါအုံး။ —ငရုတ်သီး လျော့ထည့်ပါ။ ⁴ | ice ["water-solid"] sugar plain tea ["water-warm"] ³ chilli ["chilli-fruit"] to put in Should I put in any ice? Don't put sugar in, will you? The plain tea has run out. — Please put in some more. Please put in less chilli than usual. ["reduce-put in"] | ye-gèh thǎjà ye-nwè ngăyouq-thì t'éh- Ye-gèh t'éh-yá-mǎlà? Thǎjà mǎt'éh-néh-naw? Ye-nwè koun-dhwà-bi. T'aq-t'éh-ba-òun. Ngăyouq-thì sháw-t'éh-ba. |
| နဲနဲ နဲနဲပဲ များများ: —သကြား နဲနဲပဲ ထည့်ပါနော်။ —သကြား များများ ထည့်ပါနော်။ | a little, a bit just a little a lot, much Only put in a little sugar, won't you? You'll put in lots of sugar, won't you? | nèh-nèh nèh-nèh-bè myà-myà Thǎjà nèh-nèh-bèh t'éh-ba-naw? Thǎjà myà-myà t'éh-ba-naw? |
| [n°]-ယောက်စာ —တစ်ယောက်စာ —သုံးယောက်စာ —S1: ထမင်း ထပ်ပေးပါအုံး။ —S2: တစ်ယောက်စာလား။ [A]-လား: [B]-လား။ —တစ်ယောက်စာလား။ နှစ်ယောက်စာလား။ —ဒါက ကြက်သားလား။ ဝက်သားလား။ —အထဲမှာ ထိုင်မလား။ အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်မလား။ ⁵ အကြီး: အသေး: | enough for [n°] people one portion three portions Bring us some more rice. — One portion? A or B? One portion or two? Is that chicken or pork? Are you going to sit inside or outside? a large one a small one [many restaurants offer a choice of large or small portions] Bring us a dish of fried noodles. | -yauq-sa tăyauq-sa thoùn-yauq-sa T'ămìn t'aq-pè-ba-òun. Tăyauq-sa-là? A-là? B-là? Tăyauq-sa-là? Hnăyauq-sa-là? Da-gá ceq-thà-là? Weq-thà-là? Ăt'èh-hma t'ain-mǎlà? Ăpyin-hma t'ain-mǎlà? ăcì ăthè Ăcì-là? Ăthè-là? Ăcì yu-mǎlà? Ăthè yu-mǎlà? |
| —ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် တစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။ —အကြီးလား၊ အသေးလား။ —အကြီး ယူမလား၊ အသေး ယူမလား။ ⁵ | A big one or a small one? Will you have a big one or a small one? | K'auq-s'wèh-jaw tǎpwèh pè-ba. Ăcì-là? Ăthè-là? Ăcì yu-mǎlà? Ăthè yu-mǎlà? |

For reference: some words for tastes (not practised on the tape)

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------|
| ချဉ်- to taste acid (like lemons) | ငန့်- to taste salty | c'in-, ngan- |
| ချို- to taste sweet (like sugar) | ခါး- to taste bitter (like pills) | c'o-, k'à- |
| စပ်- to taste hot (like chillies) | ဖန့်- to taste astringent (like stale black tea) | saq-, p'an- |

Adding the prefix အ- to any of these verbs creates a noun meaning “food that tastes [verb]”; for example:

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| အနောက်နိုင်ငံသားတွေ | Westerners can't eat | Ānauq-nain-ngan-dhà-de |
| အစပ် မစားနိုင်ဘူး။ | hot-tasting food. | āsāq māsà-nain-bù. |
| အချို သိပ် စားတယ်။ | They eat a lot of sweet things | Āc'o theiq sà-deh. |

Notes

1. The sequence [verb]-ပါလား: combines both [verb]-ပါ “Please [verb]” and [verb]-မလား: “Will you [verb]?”
ကား စီးပါလား။ Why not take a taxi? Kà sì-ba-là?
မနက်ဖန်မနက် လာခဲ့ပါလား။ Why not come round tomorrow? Māneq-p'an la-géh-ba-là?
2. From Sanskrit sarkarā, Pali sakkharā: same source as *Zucker*, *sucre*, *zucchero*, *sugar*, and similar words.
3. A weak tea, often greenish in colour, made from tea leaves from the Shan State, and provided free in cafés, often in an aluminium kettle. Also known as လက်ဖက်ရည်ကြမ်း: [“tea-leaf-juice-coarse”], အကြမ်းရည်၊ အကြမ်း၊ and ရေနွေးကြမ်း။
4. It is a feature of the Burmese stereotype of Western visitors that they cannot take chillies. So to protect you, your Burmese friends will often ask cooks and waiters to ငရုတ်သီး လျှော့ထည့်ပါ။ And if you find chillies hard to take, you can do the same. If, on the other hand, you actually like chillies, you can put in a counter-request: ငရုတ်သီး လျှော့ မထည့်ပါနဲ့။
5. Note that in an “A or B?” sentence containing a verb, the verb is normally used in both halves of the question. In English you can say “Are you going to have a large one or a small one?” The equivalent in Burmese is like saying “Are you going to have a large one or are you going to have a small one?”: the verb phrase ယူမလား: is used twice.

Sample Dialogues

Scene: a restaurant in Burma. S1 is a waiter, and S2 is a customer.

Dialogue 1: deciding where to sit

| | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ ထိုင်ချင်သလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Where would you like to sit? | Beh-hma t'ain-jin-dhālèh, K'in-bya? |
| S2: ဒီစားပွဲ အားသလား။ | Is this table free? | Di sǎbwèh à-dhālà? |
| S1: ဒီစားပွဲတော့ မအားပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No, this one isn't free. | Di sǎbwèh-dáw mǎa-ba-bù, K'in-bya. |
| ဟိုဘက် စားပွဲ အားပါတယ်။ | The table over there is. | Ho-beq sǎbwèh à-ba-deh. |
| S2: အထဲမှာ မထိုင်ချင်ပါဘူး။ | I don't want to sit inside. | Āt'èh-hma mǎt'ain-jin-ba-bù. |
| အိုက်တယ်။ | It's [too] stuffy. | Aiq-teh. |
| S1: အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်ချင်ရင် | If you'd like to sit outside, | Āpyin-hma t'ain-jin-yin |
| ဒီစားပွဲမှာ ထိုင်ပါလား။ | how about sitting at this table? | di sǎbwèh-hma t'ain-ba-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes, | Houq-kéh. |
| ဒီစားပွဲပဲ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | this table is fine. | Di sǎbwèh-bèh kaùn-ba-deh. |

Dialogue 2: in a restaurant

| | | |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| S1: ဘာ မှာမလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။ | What would you like to order? Ba hma-mālèh, K'in-bya? | |
| S2: ပဲဟင်း တစ်ပွဲ ပေးပါ။ | Let me have a helping of lentil curry. Pèh-hìn tǎbwèh pè-ba. | |
| S1: အကြီးလား၊ အသေးလား။ | A large one or a small one? Ācì-là? Āthè-là? | |
| S2: အသေးပါ။ ငရုတ်သီး | A small one. Don't put | Āthè-ba. Ngāyouq-thì |
| များများ မထည့်နဲ့နော်။ | a lot of chilli in it, will you? | myà-myà mǎt'éh-néh-naw? |
| S1: ရပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ထမင်း | All right. Would you like | Yá-ba-deh, K'in-bya. T'āmìn |
| မှာချင်သလား။ | to have some rice with it? | hma-jin-dhālà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes, | Houq-kéh. |
| ထမင်းလဲ ပေးပါ။ | let me have some rice as well. | T'āmìn-lèh pè-ba. |
| S1: တစ်ယောက်စာလား။ | One portion? | Tāyauq-sa-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့၊ တစ်ယောက်စာပဲ။ | Yes, just one portion. | Houq-kéh. Tāyauq-sa-bèh. |



Old man: I can tell from the size of your pot of plain tea that you lot are writers and artists. Haw haw.

Dialogue 3: in a café

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| S1: ဘာ ယူမလဲ ရှင်။ | What would you like? | Ba yu-mālèh, Shin? |
| S2: လိမ်မော်ရည် တစ်ခွက် ပေးပါ။ | I'll have a glass of orange juice. Lein-maw-ye tǎk'weq pè-ba. | |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Right. | Houq-kéh. |
| S2: ရေခဲ မထည့်နဲ့နော်။ | Don't put any ice in it, will you? | Ye-gèh mǎt'éh-néh-naw? |
| ရေခဲ မလိုချင်ဘူး။ | I don't want ice. | Ye-gèh mǎlo-jin-bù. |
| S1: ရပါတယ် ရှင်။ ဒါပဲလား။ | All right. Is that all? | Yá-ba-deh, Shin. Da-bèh-là? |
| S2: ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | No, there's more. | Shí-ba-dhè-deh. |
| ကော်ဖီ တစ်ခွက် ပေးပါ။ | Give us a cup of coffee. | Kaw-p'i tǎk'weq pè-ba. |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Right. | Houq-kéh. |
| လိမ်မော်ရည် တစ်ခွက်၊ | A glass of orange juice | Lein-maw-ye tǎk'weq, |

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| ကော်ဖီ တစ်ခွက်။ | and a cup of coffee. | kaw-p'i tāk'weq. |
| S2: ကော်ဖီမှာ သကြားများများ ထည့်ပါနော်။ | Put lots of sugar in the coffee, will you? | Kaw-p'i-hma thājà myà-myà t'éh-ba-naw? |
| S1: ရပါတယ် ရှင်။ ဒါပဲနော်။ | Very well. That's all, is it? | Yá-ba-deh, Shin? Da-bèh-naw? |
| S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ | That's all. | Da-ba-bèh. |
| S1: ရေခဲ: ရှိသေးလား။ | Is there some plain tea still there? | Ye-nwè shí-dhè-dhālà? |
| S2 picks up the kettle, shakes it, and says — | | |
| S2: မရှိတော့ဘူး။ ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | No, there isn't. It's all gone. | Māshí-dáw-bù. Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| ထပ်ထည့်ပါအုံး။ | Fill it up again, please. | T'aq-t'éh-ba-oùn. |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| ထပ်ထည့်ပေးပါမယ်။ | I'll fill it again for you. | T'aq-t'éh-pè-ba-meh. |

List for the Exercises

| | Ni Ni နီနီ | Wa Wa ဝါဝါ | Nyo Nyo ညိုညို | Pyu Pyu ဖြူဖြူ | Kyi Kyi ကြည်ကြည် |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| sat where? | inside | outside | inside | ... | ... |
| was stuffy inside? | yes | no | a little | ... | ... |
| put ice in? | a lot | yes | only a bit | ... | ... |
| put sugar in? | only a bit | a lot | yes | ... | ... |
| put chillies in? | yes | cut down | only a bit | ... | ... |
| size? | large | small | small | ... | ... |
| ordered rice for: | 1 | 2 | 4 | ... | ... |
| plain tea left? | yes — | no — | only a bit — | ... | ... |
| | don't fill up | do fill up | do fill up | ... | ... |

Ex. 1. Use the List to answer the questions on the tape. Make your answer match the question; for example, if you are asked about Ni Ni the question —

ရေခဲ ထည့်ချင်သလား။ you reply ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ များများ ထည့်ချင်ပါတယ်။

But if the question is —

ရေခဲ ထည့်ရမလား။ you reply ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ များများ ထည့်ပါ။

Format for Ex. 1:

S1: နီနီ ဘယ်မှာ ထိုင်မလဲ။ အထဲမှာလား၊ အပြင်မှာလား။

L/S2: အထဲမှာ ထိုင်မယ်။

Ex. 2. Follow the prompt and fill in the blanks on the List

Format: Prompt: Ask if Phyu Phyu sat outside. L/S1: ဖြူဖြူ အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်သလား။

S2: မထိုင်ပါဘူး။ အထဲမှာ ထိုင်ပါတယ်။

L fills in the blank on the List.

For the Practice Dialogues

In restaurants and cafés. Follow the Prompt.

Dialogue 1. Female patron and friend, in a café with a male waiter.

Dialogue 2. Male patron and friend, in a café with a female waiter.

Dialogue 3. Male patron alone, in a restaurant with a female waiter.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese.

1. Let's sit inside.
2. The toilet is outside.
3. This table is not free.
4. Put in just a little ice, will you?
5. Don't put in a lot of sugar.
6. Don't go easy on the chillies, will you?
7. Will you have rice for two?
8. Did you order a large one or a small one?
9. My friend is waiting inside.
10. Has the plain tea run out?
11. Please fill it up again for us.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

အထဲမှာ ထိုင်ကြရအောင်။
 အိမ်သာက အပြင်မှာပါ။
 ဒီစားပွဲ မအားဘူး။
 ရေခဲ နံနဲပဲ ထည့်ပါနော်။
 သကြား များများ မထည့်ပါနဲ့။
 ငရုတ်သီး လျှော့ မထည့်နဲ့နော်။
 ထမင်း နှစ်ယောက်စာ ယူမလား။
 အကြီး မှာသလား၊ အသေး မှာသလား။
 ကျွန်တော့် မိတ်ဆွေ အထဲမှာ စောင့်နေပါတယ်။
 ရေနွေး ကုန်သွားပြီလား။
 ထပ်ထည့်ပေးပါအုံး။

Part of a restaurant menu

Showing large, middling and small portions

| | | |
|--|---------------------------|---|
| 馬來亞炒麵 Malaysia Noodle မလေးခေါက်ဆွဲ | 小 盤 (Small) ပွဲသေး | 猪肉 Pork ဝက်သား 雞肉 Chicken ကြက် 蝦肉 Prawn ပုစွန် 特別 Special အထူး |
| 炒 麵 Fried Noodle ရုပ်ခေါက်ဆွဲ | 中 盤 (Middle) ပွဲလယ် | 猪肉 Pork ဝက်သား 雞肉 Chicken ကြက် 蝦肉 Prawn ပုစွန် 特別 Special အထူး |
| 炒米粉 Fried Vermicelli ကြာဖ်ကြော် | 大 盤 (Big) ပွဲကြီး | 猪肉 Pork ဝက်သား 雞肉 Chicken ကြက် 蝦肉 Prawn ပုစွန် 特別 Special အထူး |
| 炒 飯 Fried Rice ထမင်းကြော် | | |

KEY TO THE EXERCISE ON TAPE

| | ၆၆၆ | ကြည်ကြည် | | ၆၆၆ | ကြည်ကြည် |
|--------------------|------------|------------|-------------------|---------------|------------|
| sat where? | inside | outside | size? | small | large |
| was stuffy inside? | no | yes | ordered rice for: | 2 | 3 |
| put ice in? | only a bit | a lot | plain tea left? | yes — | no— |
| put sugar in? | a lot | only a bit | | don't fill up | do fill up |
| put chillies in? | cut down | a lot | | | |

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 5

SHOPS

New words

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| ကြိုက်— | to like | caiq- |
| —စပါကလင် ကြိုက်သလား။ | Do you like Sparkling? | Săpa-kālin caiq-thālà? |
| အမျိုး | kind, sort | ămyò |
| —ဘယ်နှစ်မျိုး ရှိသလဲ။ | How many kinds are there? | Beh-hnămyò shí-dhālèh? |
| —သုံးလေးမျိုး ရှိပါတယ်။ | There are three or four kinds. | Thoùn-lè-myò shí-ba-deh. |
| —အမျိုးမျိုး ရှိပါတယ်။ | There are many different kinds. | Ămyò-myò shí-ba-deh. |
| —ဘယ်လိုဟာမျိုး ကြိုက်သလဲ။ | Which kind do you like? | Beh-lo-ha-myò caiq-thālèh? |
| | ["which-like-thing-kind"] | |
| —ဒါမျိုး ကြိုက်ပါတယ်။ | I like this kind. | Da-myò caiq-pa-deh. |
| ကြီး— | to be big, to be bigger, too big ^{1,2} | cì- |
| သေး— | to be small, to be smaller, too small ^{1,2} | thè- |
| တော်— | to be the right size, to fit | taw- |
| —ဒါ မတော်ဘူး။ သေးတယ်။ ¹ | That doesn't fit. It's too small. | Da mātaw-bù. Thè-deh. |
| —အကြီး မရှိဘူးလား။ | Don't you have a bigger one? | Ăcì mǎshí-bù-là? |
| ဒီထက် or ဒါထက် | more than this ["this-above"] | di-deq, da-deq |
| [verb]—တာ | something that is [verb], | -da, -ta |
| | one that is [verb] | |
| —ဒီထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိသလား။ ² | Do you have one that is | Da-deq cì-da shí-dhālà? |
| | bigger than this? | |
| ဒီပြင် or ဒီပြင် | apart from this, other than this | di-pyin, dí-pyin |
| | ["this-outside"] | |
| —ဒီပြင် ဘာ ရှိသေးသလဲ။ | What else do you have | Dí-pyin ba shí-dhè-dhālèh? |
| | apart from this? | |
| ဒါပဲ ရှိသလား။ | Is this all you have? | Da-bèh shí-dhālà? |
| | ["this-only—have?"] | |
| အရောင် | colour | ăyaun |
| —ဒီပြင် ဘာအရောင် | What colours do you have | Dí-pyin ba ăyaun |
| ရှိသေးသလဲ။ | apart from this? | shí-dhè-dhālèh? |
| ဟာ | thing, one | -ha |
| —ဘယ်ဟာ ယူမလဲ။ | Which one will you take? | Beh-ha yu-mālèh? |
| —ဒီဟာ ယူမယ်။ | I'll take this one. | Di-ha yu-meh. |

| | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------|
| —ဒီဟာ (or ဒါ) | this one (nearer me than you) | di-ha, da |
| —အဲဒီဟာ (or အဲဒါ) | that one (nearer you than me) | èh-di-ha, èh-da |
| ဆို:- | to be bad | s'ò- |
| —အဲဒီဟာ မဆိုပါဘူး။ | That one isn't bad. [implies: It is quite good] | Èh-di-ha mäs'ò-ba-bù. |
| ရောင်း:- | to sell | yaùn- |
| —ဓါတ်ခဲ ဒီမှာ ရောင်းသလား။ | Do you sell batteries here? | Daq-k'èh di-hma yaùn-dhālà? |
| —ဘယ်လို ရောင်းသလဲ။ | How do you sell them? | Beh-lo yaùn-dhālèh? |
| | [= for how much?] | |
| —ဘယ်လောက်နဲ့ ရောင်းသလဲ။ ³ | How much do you sell them for? | Beh-lauq-néh yaùn-dhālèh? |
| —ဒီလောက်နဲ့ မရောင်းနိုင်ပါဘူး။ ³ | I can't sell it for that much. | Di-lauq-néh māyaùn-nain-ba-bù. |

For reference: some colour words (not practised on the tape)

The colour names in column 1 are “basic”: the words are used sometimes as they stand and sometimes followed by ရောင် “colour” (အပြာရောင် “blue” and so on). The names in column 2 use reference points (colour of aubergine” and so on), and are always used with ရောင်။ Needless to say, names of the column 2 type can be created at need (“colour of Coca-cola” and so on), so the list is potentially endless.

| 1 | | 2 | |
|--------|--------|--|--------------------------------|
| အပြာ | blue | ခရမ်းရောင် | purple [“colour of aubergine”] |
| အဝါ | yellow | ရွှေရောင် | gold [“colour of gold”] |
| အနီ | red | ပန်းရောင် | pink [“colour of flowers”] |
| အညို | brown | လိမ္မော်ရောင် | orange [“colour of orange”] |
| အဖြူ | white | ငွေရောင် | silver [“colour of silver”] |
| အနက် | black | မီးခိုးရောင် | grey [“colour of smoke”] |
| အစိမ်း | green | ဒီအရောင် | this colour |
| | | [to use with a pointing finger when you need a colour you can't name] | |

1. “Adjectival” verbs, like ကြီးတယ်၊ သေးတယ် (cì-dèh, thè-dèh) are often used to mean not only “to be big, to be small,” but also to mean “to be too big, to be too small,” and so on. Burmese does have words that mean “too much” and so on (for example: [verb]-လွန်းတယ်), but normally omits them when the sense is clear from the context.
2. “Adjectival” verbs are also used, without extra signals, to mean “more [verb].” So ကြီးတယ်၊ သေးတယ်၊ ကောင်းတယ် (cì-dèh, thè-dèh, kaùn-dèh), as well as meaning “to be big, to be small, to be good,” can also mean “to be bigger, to be smaller, to be better.” Again, Burmese does have explicit ways of conveying the idea of “more so” (for example: ပို-[verb]-တယ်), but prefers not to have recourse to them unless they are really necessary.
3. The suffix -နဲ့ (-néh), which you have met elsewhere with meanings like “and” and “with,” is also used with prices: ၅-ကျပ်နဲ့ ရောင်းတယ် (Ngà-jaq-néh yaùn-dèh) “They sell them for K5.”

Sample Dialogue

Scene: a shop in Burma. S1 is a customer, and S2 is the shopkeeper.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| S2: ဘာ လိုချင်သလဲ ရှင်။ | What do you want? | Ba lo-jin-dhālèh, Shin? |
| S1: လွယ်အိတ် လိုချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want a Shan bag. | Lweh-eiq lo-jin-ba-deh. |
| S2: လွယ်အိတ်လား။ | A Shan bag? | Lweh-eiq-là? |
| အမျိုးမျိုး ရှိပါတယ် ရှင်။ | We have different kinds. | Āmyò-myò shí-ba-deh, Shin. |
| ဘယ်လိုဟာမျိုး ကြိုက်သလဲ။ | What kind do you like? | Beh-lo-ha-myò caiq-thālèh? |
| S2 hands one over. | | |
| S2: ဒါမျိုးလား။ | That kind? | Da-myò-là? |
| S1: ဒါမျိုး သေးတယ်။ ¹ | That kind is too small. | Da-myò thè-deh. |
| ဒီထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိသလား။ | Do you have any bigger ones? | Di-deq cì-da shí-dhālà? |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ်။ | We do. | Shí-ba-deh. |
| S2 hands over another. | | |
| S2: ဒီဟာ ကြည့်ပါအုံး။ | Have a look at this one. | Di-ha cí-ba-oùn. |
| ဒါမျိုးက ကြီးတယ်။ | That kind is big. | Da-myò-gá cì-deh. |
| S1: အဲဒါမျိုးတော့ သိပ် မကြိုက်ဘူး။ | I don't like that kind very much. | Èh-da-myò-dáw theiq mǎcaiq-p'ù. |
| ဒီပြင် ဘာ ရှိသေးသလဲ။ | What else do you have besides that? | Dí-pyin ba shí-dhè-dhālèh? |
| S2: ရှိပါတယ် ရှင်။ | We have others. | Shí-ba-deh, Shin. |
| S2 hands over a third. | | |
| S2: အဲဒါ ကြည့်ပါအုံး။ | Have a look at that. | Èh-da cí-ba-oùn. |
| မကောင်းဘူးလား။ ² | Isn't that good? | Mǎkaùn-bù-là? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes, | Houq-kéh. |
| ဒါမျိုး ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | that's good. | Da-myò kaùn-ba-deh. |
| ဒီအရောင်တော့ မကြိုက်ဘူး။ | But I don't like this colour. | Di āyaun-dáw mǎcaiq-p'ù. |
| ဒီပြင် ဘာအရောင် ရှိသေးသလဲ။ | What other colours do you have? | Dí-pyin ba-āyaun shí-dhè-dhālèh? |
| S2: လေးငါးမျိုး ရှိပါတယ်။ | We have four or five sorts. | Lè-ngà-myò shí-ba-deh. |
| S2 lays out several in different colours. | | |
| S2: ကြည့်ပါအုံး။ | Look at those. | Cí-ba-oùn. |
| ဘယ်ဟာ ကြိုက်သလဲ။ | Which one do you like? | Beh-ha caiq-thālèh? |
| S1 picks one up. | | |
| S1: ဒီဟာ မဆိုးပါဘူး။ | This one isn't bad. | Di-ha mǎs'ò-ba-bù. |
| S1 picks up another. | | |
| S1: ဒါလဲ ကောင်းတယ်။ ဒါမျိုး ဘယ်လောက်နဲ့ ရောင်းသလဲ။ | This is a good one too. How much do you sell this kind for? | Da-lèh kaùn-deh. Da-myò beh-lauq-néh yaùn-dhālèh? |
| S2: ဒါမျိုး ၁၂၀-နဲ့ ရောင်းပါတယ် ရှင်။ | We sell that kind for K120. | Da-myò tāyá hnās'eh-néh yaùn-ba-deh, Shin. |
| S1: ၁၂၀/- နဲ့နဲ့ များပါတယ်။ လျှော့ပါအုံးလား။ | K120 is a bit too much. How about reducing it? | Tāyá hnās'eh nèh-nèh myà-ba-deh. Sháw-ba-oùn-là? |
| S2: ဘယ်လောက် ပေးချင်သလဲ။ | How much do you want to pay? | Beh-lauq pè-jin-dhālèh? |
| S1: ၁၀၀/- ပေးမယ်။ | I'll give you K100. | Tāyá pè-meh. |
| ရမလား။ | Would you accept that? | Yá-mǎlà? |
| S2: ၁၀၀/-တော့ နဲ့တယ်။ ¹ | K100 is too little. | Tāyá-dáw nèh-deh. |
| ဒီလောက်နဲ့ မရောင်းနိုင်ပါဘူး။ | I can't sell it for that much. | Di-lauq-néh mǎyaùn-nain-ba-bù. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S1: နှစ်လုံး ယူရင်ကော၊ နှစ်လုံး ၂၀၀/-နဲ့ ရောင်းပါလား။ | How about if I take two? How about selling two for K200? | Hnăloùn yu-yin-gàw? Hnăloùn hnăya-néh yaùn-ba-là? |
| S2: နဲ့သေးတယ် ရှင်။ ¹ နှစ်လုံး ယူရင် ၂၃၀/-နဲ့ ရောင်းမယ်။ ဒီထက်တော့ မလျှော့နိုင်ပါဘူး။ ယူမလား။ | It's still too little. If you take two I'll sell them for K230. I can't drop the price any more than that. Will you take them? | Nèh-dhè-deh, Shin. Hnăloùn yu-yin Hnăyá thòun-zeh-néh yaùn-meh. Dí-deq-táw măsháw-nain-ba-bù. Yu-mālā? |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ယူမယ်။ <i>S1 hands over the money.</i> | All right. I will. | Kaùn-ba-bi. Yu-meh. |

1. See note 1 above on comparison.

2. မကောင်းဘူးလား။ = Isn't that good? In other words: Wouldn't that be good for you?

For the Exercises

Ex. 1. Bigger and smaller. You ask for what you want, and then ask for bigger or smaller as required. If the shop has the size you want, ask to have a look at one. If not, say you'll look elsewhere.

| | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | combs | fans | bowls | envelopes |
| The shop has: | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| You want: | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Format for Ex. 1. Prompt: Ask about the combs

S1: ဘာ လိုချင်ပါသလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။

S1: ဘီးလား။ ရှိပါတယ်။ ဒါမျိုး ကြိုက်သလား။

S1: ရှိပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။ ဒီမှာ။

L/S2: ဘီး လိုချင်ပါတယ်။

L/S2: ဒါမျိုးက ကြီးတယ်။

ဒီထက် သေးတာ ရှိသလား။

L/S2: ကြည့်ရအောင်။

Ex. 2. Wrong size. You ask for what you want, then imagine you try it on and find it's the wrong size. You say what's wrong with it and ask for a larger or smaller one as indicated. If the shop has the size you want, ask to have a look at one; if not, say you'll look elsewhere.

| | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | T-shirt | hat | sandals |
| The shop offers you: | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| You want: | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Format for Ex. 2. Prompt: Ask about the T-shirts

S1: ဘာ လိုချင်ပါသလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။

S1: တီရှပ်လား။ အများကြီး ရှိပါတယ်။

အဲဒါ တော်သလား။

S1: မရှိပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ ဒီဆိုက်ပဲ ရှိပါတယ်။

S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ။

L/S2: တီရှပ် လိုချင်ပါတယ်။

L/S2: မတော်ဘူး။

ကြီးတယ်။ ဒီထက် သေးတာ ရှိသလား။

L/S2: ဒီလိုဆို ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။

Ex. 3. Which kind? In the list below, A, B and C represent different types of article (larger, smaller, ornate, simple, and so on), and the figures 1, 2 and 3 represent different varieties within the same type (differing in colour, pattern, and so on). You have to identify, first the *type* you like, then the item you are going to choose. Imagine that the shopkeeper is at point X, and you are at point Y: remember to refer to items nearer you as ဒါ or ဒီဟာ and items nearer the shopkeeper as အဲဒါ or အဲဒီဟာ။ Follow the prompt.

The shopkeeper:

X

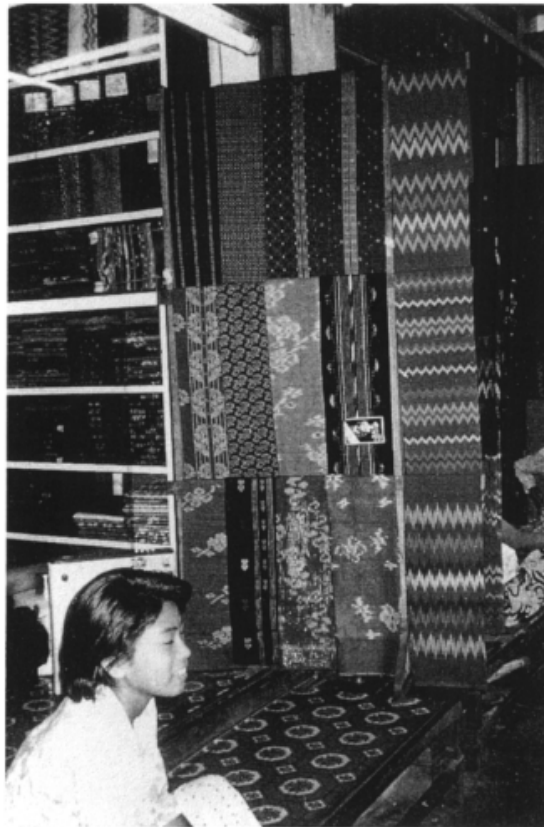
| | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|---------------|
| | Shan bags | calendars | ballpoints | postcards | writing paper |
| She/he has: | A1 A2 A3 | A1 A2 A3 | A1 A2 A3 | A1 A2 A3 | A1 A2 A3 |
| | B1 B2 B3 | B1 B2 B3 | B1 B2 B3 | B1 B2 B3 | B1 B2 B3 |
| | C1 C2 C3 | C1 C2 C3 | C1 C2 C3 | C1 C2 C3 | C1 C2 C3 |

Yourself:

Y

| | | | | | |
|-----------|----|---|---|----|----|
| You like: | C3 | D | D | A1 | C2 |
|-----------|----|---|---|----|----|

"D" stands for a type that is not on display in the shop.



In the market at Nyaung-U

For the Practice Dialogues

Shopping. Follow the Prompt.

Dialogue 1. The comb.

Dialogue 2. The key chains, and an unexpected encounter.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following exchanges into Burmese.

1. S1: Do you like that kind?
S2: Not much. It's too big.
Do you have a smaller one?
2. S1: Why don't you buy that kind?
S2: That kind is too small.
Do you have any bigger ones?
3. S1: How about selling it for K100?
S2: K100 is too little.
4. S1: How about buying it for K85?
S2: K85 is too much.
5. S1: How about sitting at this table?
S2: It's too stuffy at this table.
6. S1: Does that one fit?
S2: No. It's too small.
S1: I have some bigger ones.
7. S1: Which one will you take?
Do you like this one?
S2: It's not bad.
This one is good too.
Apart from these what else do you have?

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဒါမျိုး ကြိုက်သလား။
သိပ် မကြိုက်ဘူး။ ကြီးတယ်။
ဒီထက် သေးတာ ရှိသလား။

ဒါမျိုး ဝယ်ပါလား။
ဒါမျိုးက သေးတယ်။
ဒီထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိသလား။

၁၀၀/-နဲ့ ရောင်းပါလား။
၁၀၀/-က နံပါတယ်။

၈၅-ကျပ်နဲ့ ဝယ်ပါလား။
၈၅-ကျပ်က များပါတယ်။

ဒီစားပွဲမှာ ထိုင်ပါလား။
ဒီစားပွဲမှာ အိုက်တယ်။

အဲဒီဟာ တော်သလား။
မတော်ဘူး။ သေးပါတယ်။
ဒီထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိပါတယ်။

ဘယ်ဟာ ယူမလဲ။
ဒီဟာ ကြိုက်သလား။
မဆိုးပါဘူး။
ဒီဟာလဲ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
ဒီပြင် ဘာ ရှိသေးသလဲ။



LEVEL 5, TOPIC 6 YOUR COMMAND OF BURMESE

New words

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| ဘာဖြစ်လို့ | Why? ["what-take place-because"] | ba-p'yiq-ló |
| ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ (stsဘာလုပ် or ဘာလို့) | What for? To do what? | ba-louq-p'ó, ba-louq, ba-ló |
| | ["what-do-to"] | |
| ဘာကြောင့် /-ရောင့်/ | For what cause? Why? ["what-because of"] | ba-jaún |
| ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ /ယိယွယ်ဂျက်/ | With what aim? With what objective? | ba-yi-yweh-jeq-néh |
| —ဗမာစကား: ဘာဖြစ်လို့ | Why are you | Băma sǎgà ba-p'yiq-ló |
| သင်နေတာလဲ။ | learning Burmese? | thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| —ဗမာစကား: ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ | What are you learning | Băma sǎgà ba-louq-p'ó |
| သင်နေတာလဲ။ | Burmese for? | thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| —ဗမာစကား: ဘာကြောင့် | For what reason are you | Băma sǎgà ba-jaún |
| သင်နေတာလဲ။ | learning Burmese? | thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| —ဗမာစကား: ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ | With what aim are you | Băma sǎgà ba-yi-yweh-jeq-néh |
| သင်နေတာလဲ။ | learning Burmese? | thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| [verb]-လို့ | because [verb] | -ló |
| —အထဲမှာ အိုက်လို့ | Because it's stuffy inside | Āt'èh-hma aiq-ló |
| အပြင်မှာ ထိုင်မယ်။ | we're going to sit outside. | āpyin-hma t'ain-meh. |
| —နဲ့နဲ့ ဝေးလို့ | Because it's rather a long way | Nèh-nèh wè-ló |
| ဆိုက်ကား စီးလာတယ်။ | we came by sidecar. | s'aiq-kà sì-la-deh. |
| —ဗမာပြည် သွားချင်လို့ — | She is learning Burmese — | Băma-pye thwà-jin-ló |
| ဗမာစကား: သင်နေတယ်။ ¹ | because she wants to go to Burma. ¹ | Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh. |
| —S1: ဗမာစကား: ဘာဖြစ်လို့ | Why are you | Băma sǎgà ba-p'yiq-ló |
| သင်နေတာလဲ။ | learning Burmese? | thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| —S2: ဗမာပြည် သွားချင်လို့ပါ။ | Because I want to go to Burma. | Băma-pye thwà-jin-ló-ba. |
| အသုံး ကျ- | to come in useful, be useful | āthouñ cá- |
| သုံး- "to use," အသုံး "using, | use," ကျ- "to fall in with, to match" (thouñ-, āthouñ, cá-) | |
| —အလုပ်မှာ အသုံး ကျပါတယ်။ | It is useful for my work. | Ālouq-hma āthouñ cá-ba-deh. |
| —S1: ဗမာစကား: ဘာလို့ | Why are you | Băma sǎgà ba-ló |
| သင်နေတာလဲ။ | learning Burmese? | thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| —S2: အလုပ်မှာ အသုံး ကျလို့ပါ။ | Because it is useful for my work. | Ālouq-hma āthouñ cá-ló-ba. |
| လေ့လာ- ² | to study ² | lé-la- |
| —ဗမာနာမည်တွေ | She is studying | Băma nan-meh-de |
| လေ့လာနေတယ်။ | Burmese names. | lé-la-ne-deh. |
| —ဗမာစကား: လေ့လာဖို့ | I intend to make a | Băma sǎgà lé-la-bó |
| အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။ | study of Burmese. | āsī-āsīn shí-ba-deh. |
| ခက်- | to be difficult | k'eq- |
| လွယ်- | to be easy | lweh- |
| [verb]-ရတာ ³ | [verb]-ing, to [verb] ³ | -yá-da |

Subjects for study

| | | |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| မြန်မာသမိုင်း | Burmese history | Myan-ma thămain |
| မြန်မာဗုဒ္ဓဘာသာ / -ဗုတ်ဒါ- / | Burmese Buddhism | Myan-ma Bouq-dá ba-dha |
| မြန်မာနိုင်ငံရေး | Burmese politics ["state-affairs"] | Myan-ma nain-ngan-yè |
| မြန်မာစာပေ | Burmese literature ["writing-palm leaf"] | Myan-ma sa-pe |
| မြန်မာအနုပညာ / -ပျင်ညာ/ | Burmese art ["fine-skill"] | Myan-ma ānú-pyin-nya |

Since academic subjects like these are associated with reading and writing, people tend to use the more formal မြန်မာ (Myan-ma) rather more often than the more casual ဗမာ (Băma). But you do also hear people using ဗမာ။ For a fuller list of academic subjects, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, section 19.

1. Note that although English can place the "because [verb]" portion of the sentence either at the end or at the beginning ["We're going to sit outside because it's stuffy inside," or "Because it's stuffy inside we're going to sit outside."], in Burmese the [verb]-လို့ portion always comes at the beginning.

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ဒီနေ့ မအားလို့ | Because he's not free today, | Di-né mǎà-ló |
| မနက်ဖြန် တွေ့ရမယ်။ | I am to see him tomorrow. | māneq-p'yan twé-yá-meh. |

Note too that although you say မအားဘူး (mǎà-bù) "he is not free," when you say "because he is not free" you say မအားလို့ (mǎà-ló) — there is no -ဘူး။ The suffix -ဘူး is only used to conclude a sentence, and therefore not used with phrases ending in -လို့, which are always in the middle of a sentence.

2. Note that လေ့လာ- (lé-la-) is used for academic study (such as for a thesis on the voicing phenomenon). When you are talking about studying in the sense of learning to speak or read, you use သင်- (thin-).

3. One of the functions of this suffix is to make a noun phrase from a verb, and it is a common way of linking two verbs in sentences with meanings like "to be happy to [verb]," "to be hard to [verb]," "to be easy to [verb]," "to be lazy at [verbing]," "to enjoy [verbing]," and so on. In Burmese it is as if you were saying "the [verb]-ing is difficult" and so on.

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| တွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ | I am happy to meet you. | Twé-yá-da wùn-tha-ba-deh. |
| သင်ရတာ ခက်သလား။ | Is it hard to learn? | Thin-yá-da k'eq-thǎlà? |
| ဖုန်းဆက်ရတာ လွယ်သလား။ | Is it easy to make a phone call? | P'òun s'eq-yá-da lweh-dhǎlà? |
| စောင့်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Have you been waiting long? | Saún-ne-da ca-bi-là? |
| ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ | You are good | Băma sǎgà pyàw-da |
| ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | at speaking Burmese. | kaùn-ba-deh. |

For reference: some other words you may find useful (not practised on the tape)

| | | |
|-------------------------|--|---------------|
| စာလုံး | letter ["writing-round thing"] | sa-loùn |
| စာလုံးပေါင်း / -ဘောင်း/ | spelling | sa-loùn-baùn |
| စကားလုံး / ဇဝလုန့်/ | word ["word-round thing"] | sǎgǎloùn |
| အသံထွက် / -ဒွက်/ | pronunciation | āthan-dweq |
| စာစကား / -ဇဝါ/ | literary usage ["writing-words"] | sa-sǎgà |
| အရေးစကား | literary language ["writing-words"] | āyè-sǎgà |
| အပြောစကား | colloquial language ["talking-words"] | āpyàw-sǎgà |
| စာရေးဟန် | literary style ["text-write-manner"] | sa-yè-han |
| စကားပြောဟန် | colloquial style ["word-speak-manner"] | sǎgà-pyàw-han |
| လေ့လာရေး | study, investigation | lé-la-yè |

| | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| — S1: ဗမာပြည် ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ သွားမှာလဲ။ | What are you going to Burma to do? | Băma-pye ba-louq-p'ó thwà-hma-lèh? |
| — S2: လေ့လာရေး လုပ်ဖို့ပါ။ | To conduct a study. | Lé-la-yè louq-p'ó-ba. |
| — or: လေ့လာရေးခရီးပါပဲ။ | It's a study tour. [ခရီး = "journey"] | Lé-la-yè k'äyì-ba-bèh. |

Exercises

Ex. 1. Read the List below as you listen to the answer, and repeat the answer.

Prompt: Ask about Mr. Hough

L/S1: Mr. Hough ဗမာ စကား ဘာဖြစ်လို့ သင်နေသလဲ။ S2/L: ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိလို့ပါ။

Ex. 2. Use the List to provide the answers to the questions.

S1: Mrs. Allott ဗမာ စကား ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ သင်နေသလဲ။ L/S2: မြန်မာစာပေ လေ့လာချင်လို့ပါ။

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner who is learning the language.

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| S1: ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် ဆို။ | I hear you're learning Burmese? | Băma sǎgà thin-ne-deh, s'o? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| S1: သင်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Have you been learning for long? | Thin-ne-da ca-bi-là? |
| S2: သိပ် မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ | Not long yet. | Theiq māca-dhè-ba-bù. |
| လေးလလောက် ရှိပြီ။ | It's been about four months so far. | Lè-lálauq shí-bi. |
| S1: အသံထွက် သိပ် ပီတာပဲ။ | Your pronunciation is very good. | Āthan-dweq theiq pi-da-bèh. |
| S2: ကျေးဇူးပဲ။ | Thanks. | Cè-zù-bèh. |
| သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | It's not up to much yet. | Theiq māhouq-thè-ba-bù. |

A likely question

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| S1: ဘာဖြစ်လို့ သင်နေတာလဲ။ | Why are you learning? | Ba-p'yi-q-ló thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| S1: ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ သင်နေတာလဲ။ | What are you learning it for? | Ba-louq-p'ó thin-ne-da-lèh? |
| S1: ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ သင်နေတာလဲ။ | With what objective are you learning it? | Ba-yi-yweh-jeq-néh thin-ne-da-lèh? |

Some likely answers

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S2: ဗမာပြည် သွားချင်လို့ပါ။ | Because I want to go to Burma. | Băma-pye thwà-jin-ló-ba. |
| S2: ဗမာပြည် ခဏခဏ သွားရလို့ပါ။ | Because I often have to go to Burma. | Băma-pye k'ānā-k'ānā thwà-yá-ló-ba. |
| S2: ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိလို့ပါ။ | Because I intend to go to Burma. | Băma-pye thwà-bó āsi-āsin shí-ló-ba. |
| S2: ဗမာပြည်မှာ အလုပ်လုပ်ဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိလို့ပါ။ | Because I intend to work in Burma. | Băma-pye-hma ālouq louq-p'ó āsi-āsin shí-ló-ba. |
| S2: ဗမာပြည်မှာ တရား အားထုတ်ချင်လို့ပါ။ | Because I want to meditate in Burma. | Băma-pye-hma tǎyà à-t'ouq-c'in-ló-ba. |
| S2: အလုပ်မှာ အသုံး ကျလို့ပါ။ | Because it comes in useful in my work. | Ālouq-hma āthouñ cá-ló-ba. |
| S2: ဗမာသမိုင်း လေ့လာချင်လို့ပါ။ | Because I want to study Burmese history. | Băma thāmain lé-la-jin-ló-ba. |

Another question

S1: ဗမာစကား သင်ရတာ
ခက်သလား။

Is it difficult to
learn Burmese?

Băma sǎgà thin-yá-da
k'eq-thǎlà?

A range of answers

S2: သိပ် ခက်ပါတယ်။

It is very difficult.

Theiq k'eq-pa-deh.

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ခက်ပါတယ်။

Yes, it is.

Houq-kéh. K'eq-pa-deh.

S2: နဲ့နဲ့ ခက်ပါတယ်။

It's a bit difficult.

Nèh-nèh k'eq-pa-deh.

S2: သိပ် မခက်ပါဘူး။

It's not very difficult.

Theiq mǎk'eq-pa-bù.

S2: မခက်ပါဘူး။

No, it's not.

Mǎk'eq-pa-bù.

S2: မခက်ပါဘူး။ လွယ်ပါတယ်။

No, it's not. It's easy.

Mǎk'eq-pa-bù. Lweh-ba-deh.

For the Practice Dialogues

In the Practice Dialogues you take the part of the characters listed (you have to imagine that the exchanges take place early in their careers), and take your answer from the list. For questions not on the list, use "standard replies" as follows:

If the speaker says —

you reply —

ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် ဆို။ or similar

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ သင်နေပါတယ်။

ဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်သလား။

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။

ဗမာစာ ဖတ်တတ်သလား။

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ နဲ့နဲ့ ဖတ်တတ်ပါတယ်။

ဗမာစာ ရေးတတ်သလား။

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ နဲ့နဲ့ ရေးတတ်ပါတယ်။

တော်တော် ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။

သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။

စကားပြောတာ သိပ်ကောင်းတယ်။ or similar

အော်၊ ကျေးဇူးပဲ။ သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။

| <i>name</i> | <i>is learning because</i> | <i>how long learn</i> | <i>finds it difficult</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Mr. Hough | has plans to go to Burma | *6 months | not very |
| Mrs. Phayre | often has to go to Burma | *about 4 months | no |
| Mrs. Judson | it is useful in her work | *3 months | no |
| Mr. Orwell | wants to go to Burma | a year | a bit |
| Mrs. Furnivall | wants to do research in Burma | two years | not very |
| Mr. Lustig | wants to meditate in Burma | a year and a half | very |
| Mr. Luce | wants to study Burmese history | *about 5 months | yes |
| Mrs. Spiro | wants to study Burmese Buddhism | about 8 months | very |
| Mr. Taylor | wants to study Burmese politics | about a year | a bit |
| Mrs. Allott | wants to study Burmese literature | about 7 months | not very |
| Ms. Herbert | wants to study Burmese art | *3 and a half months | no |

* For the purpose of answering questions about "how long," treat these periods (6 months and under) as "not long so far," and any longer (unasterisked) period as "a long time."

Address: Line 1: ဒေါ်ခင်ရီ၊ ၃၉ သုခလမ်း၊ စမ်းချောင်း၊
Line 2: အောင်ချမ်းသာရပ်ကွက်၊ ရန်ကုန်။
Line 3: ဖုန်းနံပါတ် ၃၃၈၀၄။

Exercise for written answer

Match each answer in Column B to the appropriate question in Column A.

Column A

- ၁။ ဆိုက်ကား ဘာဖြစ်လို့ စီးရမှာလဲ။
- ၂။ ဗမာပြည် ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ သွားမှာလဲ။
- ၃။ ဟိုတယ်မှာ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ တဲရတာလဲ။
- ၄။ ဗမာစကား ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ သင်နေတာလဲ။
- ၅။ ပဲပြား ဘာဖြစ်လို့ မှာသလဲ။
- ၆။ အပြင်မှာ ဘာလုပ် ထိုင်နေသလဲ။
- ၇။ အကြီး ဘာဖြစ်လို့ ဝယ်တာလဲ။
- ၈။ ဒီမှာ ဘာလုပ် ရပ်တာလဲ။
- ၉။ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ စောင့်နေတာလဲ။
- ၁၀။ ခဲတံ ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ လိုချင်သလဲ။
- ၁၁။ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောရတာလဲ။
- ၁၂။ ပက်စီ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ သောက်ရတာလဲ။

Column B jumbled

- ၁။ ကိုကာကိုလာ ကုန်သွားလို့ပါ။
- ၂။ နံနံ ဝေးလို့ပါ။
- ၃။ မိတ်ဆွေ မလာသေးလို့ပါ။
- ၄။ အသား မစားချင်လို့ပါ။
- ၅။ ရှေ့နားမှာ ရပ်ခွင့် မရှိလို့ပါ။
- ၆။ မိတ်ဆွေ အိမ်မှာ တဲခွင့် မရှိလို့ပါ။
- ၇။ တရား အားထုတ်ချင်လို့ပါ။
- ၈။ လိပ်စာ ရေးပေးချင်လို့ပါ။
- ၉။ လိုင်း မကောင်းလို့ပါ။
- ၁၀။ အထဲမှာ အိုက်လို့ပါ။
- ၁၁။ အသေး မတော်လို့ပါ။
- ၁၂။ ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိလို့ပါ။

Column A

- ၁။ ဆိုက်ကား ဘာဖြစ်လို့ စီးရမှာလဲ။
- ၂။ ဗမာပြည် ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ သွားမှာလဲ။
- ၃။ ဟိုတယ်မှာ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ တဲရတာလဲ။
- ၄။ ဗမာစကား ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ သင်နေတာလဲ။
- ၅။ ပဲပြား ဘာဖြစ်လို့ မှာသလဲ။
- ၆။ အပြင်မှာ ဘာလုပ် ထိုင်နေသလဲ။
- ၇။ အကြီး ဘာဖြစ်လို့ ဝယ်တာလဲ။
- ၈။ ဒီမှာ ဘာလုပ် ရပ်တာလဲ။
- ၉။ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ စောင့်နေတာလဲ။
- ၁၀။ ခဲတံ ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ လိုချင်သလဲ။
- ၁၁။ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောရတာလဲ။
- ၁၂။ ပက်စီ ဘာဖြစ်လို့ သောက်ရတာလဲ။

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

Column B key

- ၂။ နံနံ ဝေးလို့ပါ။
- ၇။ တရား အားထုတ်ချင်လို့ပါ။
- ၆။ မိတ်ဆွေ အိမ်မှာ တဲခွင့် မရှိလို့ပါ။
- ၁၂။ ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိလို့ပါ။
- ၄။ အသား မစားချင်လို့ပါ။
- ၁၀။ အထဲမှာ အိုက်လို့ပါ။
- ၁၁။ အသေး မတော်လို့ပါ။
- ၅။ ရှေ့နားမှာ ရပ်ခွင့် မရှိလို့ပါ။
- ၃။ မိတ်ဆွေ မလာသေးလို့ပါ။
- ၈။ လိပ်စာ ရေးပေးချင်လို့ပါ။
- ၉။ လိုင်း မကောင်းလို့ပါ။
- ၁။ ကိုကာကိုလာ ကုန်သွားလို့ပါ။

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 7

TRAVELS: PAST TRIPS

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| နေ- | to be, to be like [see examples below] | ne- |
| —ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ | How was it? | Beh-lo ne-dhālèh? |
| | How did you find it? What was it like? | |
| —ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေရတာ ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ | How did you find living in Burma? | Bāma-pye-hma ne-yá-da beh-lo ne-dhālèh? |
| ပျော်- | to enjoy oneself, have a good time | pyaw- |
| —သိပ် ပျော်တယ်။ | I had a great time. | Theiq pyaw-ba-dèh. |
| —ဗမာပြည်မှာ ပျော်ခဲ့လား။ | Did you have a good time in Burma? | Bāma-pye-hma pyaw-yéh-là? |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| —ဗမာပြည်မှာ ပျော်ခဲ့ရဲ့လား။ | [the same, recognizing that the listener has been away and is now back at base] | Băma-pye-hma pyaw-géh-yéh-là? |
| ရာသီဥတု (/အုဒ/) | climate, weather | ya-dhi-ú-dú |
| ပူ- 1 | to be hot 1 | pu- |
| —ဗမာပြည်မှာ (ရာသီဥတု) ပူတယ်နော်။ | The climate is hot in Burma, isn't it? | Băma-pye-hma (ya-dhi-ú-dú) pu-dēh-naw? |
| —ဗမာပြည်မှာ မပူဘူးလား။ | Wasn't it hot (for you) in Burma? | Băma-pye-hma māpu-bù-là? |
| အနေတော် | just right ["state-be right"] | āne-daw |
| —S1: ရာသီဥတု ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ | What's the climate like? | Ya-dhi-ú-dú beh-lo ne-dhālèh? |
| —S2: အနေတော်ပါပဲ။ | It's just right. | Āne-daw-ba-bèh. |

1. ပူတယ် (pu-dēh) means to be hot to touch or experience, like sunshine, hot tea and so on. အိုက်တယ် (aiq-tēh) is to be hot in the sense of "I feel hot"; so usually အိုက်တယ် refers to people, and ပူတယ် refers to things.

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

How was it?

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| S1: ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေရတာ ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ | How did you find living in Burma? | Băma-pye-hma ne-yá-da beh-lo ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: သိပ် ပျော်တယ်။ | I had a great time. | Theiq pyaw-deh. |
| S1: ကြားရတာ ဝမ်းသာတယ်။ 2 | I'm pleased to hear it. | Cà-yá-da wùn-tha-deh. |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S1: ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေရတာ ပျော်ရဲ့လား။ 3 | Did you have a good time in Burma? | Băma-pye-hma ne-yá-da pyaw-yéh-là? |
| S2: အရမ်း ပျော်တယ်။ | I loved it. | Āyàn pyaw-deh. |
| S1: ကြားရတာ ဝမ်းသာတယ်။ | I'm pleased to hear it. | Cà-yá-da wùn-tha-deh. |

The climate

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| S1: ဗမာပြည်မှာ (ရာသီဥတု) ပူတယ်နော်။ | The climate is hot in Burma, isn't it? | Băma-pye-hma (ya-dhi-ú-dú) pu-dēh-naw? |
| S2: သိပ် မပူပါဘူး။ | No, it wasn't very hot. | Theiq māpu-ba-bù. |
| အနေတော်ပါပဲ။ | It was just right. | Āne-daw-ba-bèh. |

Notes

2. Note the parallel in structure between this sentence ကြားရတာ ဝမ်းသာတယ် and the sentence တွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာတယ် "I am pleased to have met you" (Cà-yá-da wùn-tha-deh, Twé-yá-da wùn-tha-deh).

3. [Verb]-ရဲ့လား is like [verb]-သလား but conveys a slightly different mood (-yéh-là? -dhālà?). [Verb]-သလား is used for asking normal Yes/No questions:

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ဗမာပြည်မှာ ပျော်သလား။ | Did they have a good time in Burma? | Băma-pye-hma pyaw-dhālà? |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|

| | | |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------|
| နားလည်သလား။ | Do you understand? | Nà-leh-dhālà? |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------|

[Verb]-ရဲ့လား has the same meaning, but adds to it a touch of excitement, or a note of disbelief:

| | | |
|--|--|---------------------------|
| ဗမာပြည်မှာ ပျော်ရဲ့လား။ | Did you really have a | Băma-pye-hma pyaw-yéh-là? |
| | good time in Burma? (I'm all agog to hear the answer.) | |
| နားလည်ရဲ့လား။ | Do you really understand? | Nà-leh-yéh-là? |
| | (I suspect you don't.) | |
| [Verb]-ရဲ့လား: is also found in some greetings formulae, most commonly: | | |
| နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ | Are you well? | Ne-kaùn-yéh-là? |
| Here it does not carry the tinge of excitement or disbelief that it has elsewhere. | | |

For the Practice Dialogues

The List below gives you some information about visits to Burma by a number of people. Use the information to answer the questions on the tape.

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>name</i> | Ms. Tailor | Mr. Draper | Mrs. Weaver |
| <i>n° of times</i> | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| <i>when</i> | last October | last December | last year |
| <i>how long</i> | 7 days | not long: 2 weeks | 3 months |
| <i>what for</i> | for a visit | as a tourist | to acc husband |
| <i>good time</i> | yes | very | marvellous |
| <i>climate</i> | rather hot | not hot: just right | very hot |

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>name</i> | Mr. Dyer | Ms. Tanner | Mr. Fuller |
| <i>n° of times</i> | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| <i>when</i> | 1989 | 1991 | 1990, 1993 |
| <i>how long</i> | 3 weeks | 1 year | 3 mths, 5 mths |
| <i>what for</i> | to visit relatives | to learn Burmese | to work |
| <i>good time</i> | marvellous | yes | very |
| <i>climate</i> | not very hot: just right | very hot | hot |

| | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|------------|
| <i>name</i> | Mr. Skinner | Mr. Glover | Mrs. Hatter | Mr. Cutter |
| <i>n° of times</i> | 2 | many | many | 0 |
| <i>when</i> | 1986, 1992 | last time: February | last time: 1987 | - |
| <i>how long</i> | 1 year, 6 mths | 2 months | 1 ½ months | - |
| <i>what for</i> | to do research | to study Burmese politics | to meditate | - |
| <i>good time</i> | very | marvellous | yes | - |
| <i>climate</i> | very hot | not hot: just right | not very hot | |

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following sentences into Burmese. They all contain the sequence [verb]-တာ။

1. It's easy to learn Japanese.
2. I am very happy to have met you.
3. Is it difficult to learn Burmese?
4. You speak Burmese very well.
5. Is it easy to do this ("like this")?

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဂျပန်စကား သင်ရတာ လွယ်ပါတယ်။
 တွေ့ရတာ သိပ် ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။
 ဗမာစကား သင်ရတာ ခက်သလား။
 ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် ကောင်းပါတယ်။
 ဒီလို လုပ်တာ လွယ်သလား။

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 6. Do you enjoy living in Burma? | ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေရတာ ပျော်ရဲ့လား။ |
| 7. It's not very difficult to read Burmese. | ဗမာစာ ဖတ်ရတာ သိပ် မခက်ပါဘူး။ |
| 8. How do you find living in the students' hostel? | ကျောင်းဆောင်မှာ နေရတာ ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ |
| 9. It's not very easy to make a phone call. | ဖုန်း ဆက်ရတာ သိပ် မလွယ်ပါဘူး။ |
| 10. You write Burmese very well. | ဗမာစာ ရေးတာ သိပ် ကောင်းပါတယ်။ |
| 11. I am happy to hear it. | ကြားရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ |
| 12. Have you been learning French for long? | ပြင်သစ်စကား သင်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ |
| 13. He's been waiting a long time. | စောင့်နေတာ ကြာပြီ။ |
| 14. I haven't been here long yet. | ရောက်နေတာ သိပ် မကြာသေးပါဘူး။ |

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 8

TRAVELS IN PROSPECT

New words

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|-------------|
| တစ်ယောက်တည်း: (/ -ထဲ/) ¹ | alone, on one's own ["only one person"] | tāyauq-t'èh |
| မိသားစု (/ -သားစု/) | family ["mother-child-group"] | mí-dhà-zú |
| အုပ်စု | group ["crowd, herd-group"] | ouq-sú |
| ကမ္ဘာလှည့် (/ကဘာလဲ့/) | touring, tourist ["world-tour"] | kāba-hléh |

1. This is a specialized use of the suffix -တည်း, which is normally attached to phrases containing a number and a count word; for example:

| | | |
|----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| သုံးပတ်တည်း: | only three weeks, a mere 3 weeks | thoùn-baq-t'èh |
| နှစ်ခွက်တည်း: | only two cups | hnāk'weq-t'èh |
| တစ်ပုလင်းတည်း: | only one bottle, a single bottle | tāpāl'in-dèh |

Hence

| | | |
|--|-----------------|-------------|
| တစ်ယောက်တည်း: | only one person | tāyauq-t'èh |
| which has come to mean "on one's own." | | |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere outside Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

The question

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S1: ဘယ်သူနဲ့ သွားမလဲ။ | Who are you going to go with? | Beh-dhu-néh thwà-mālèh? |
| S1: ဘယ်သူနဲ့ သွားမှာလဲ။ | Who are you going to go with? | Beh-dhu-néh thwà-hma-lèh? |
| S1: ဘယ်သူနဲ့ သွားမလို့လဲ။ | Who are you planning to go with? | Beh-dhu-néh thwà-māló-lèh? |

Some answers

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S2: တစ်ယောက်တည်း သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to go on my own. | Tāyauq-t'èh thwà-meh. |
| S2: ကျနော် အမျိုးသမီးနဲ့ သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to go with my wife. | Cānāw āmyò-dhāmì-néh thwà-meh. |
| S2: ကျမ အမျိုးသားနဲ့ သွားမယ်။ | I'm going to go with my husband. | Cāmá āmyò-dhà-néh thwà-meh. |

Another question

| | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| S1: တစ်ယောက်တည်း သွားမလား။ | Are you going to go on your own? | Tāyauq-t'èh thwà-mālà? |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|

Some answers

S2: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ မိတ်ဆွေ
တစ်ယောက်နဲ့ သွားမယ်။

S2: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။
ကျမ မိသားစုနဲ့ သွားမယ်။

S2: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ ကမ္ဘာလှည့်
အုပ်စုနဲ့ သွားမယ်။

No. I'm going to go
with a friend.

No. I'm going to go
with my family.

No. I'm going to go
with a tourist group.

Măhouq-pa-bù. Meiq-s'we
tăyauq-néh thwà-meh.

Măhouq-pa-bù.

Cămá mí-dhà-zú-néh thwà-meh.

Măhouq-pa-bù. Kăba-hiéh-
ouq-sú-néh thwà-meh.



Café outside the airport terminal at Nyaung-U

For the Practice Dialogues

Use the information in the List to answer the questions on the tape. When there's a choice between (for example) ရှေ့လမှာ သွားမယ် and ရှေ့လ ကျရင် သွားမယ် use the latter form.

| <i>name</i> | Sarah | Chris | Elizabeth |
|---------------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>plans to go</i> | yes | yes | yes |
| <i>when</i> | next month | in October | next year |
| <i>for how long</i> | not long: 14 days | about 3 years | 6 months |
| <i>what for</i> | for a visit | to work | to do research |
| <i>who with</i> | a tourist group | his wife | her husband |

| <i>name</i> | Dindy | Raymond | Arnd |
|---------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------|
| <i>plans to go</i> | yes | yes | no |
| <i>when</i> | in 1999 | if he gets a visa | - |
| <i>for how long</i> | about 3 months | not fixed yet | - |
| <i>what for</i> | to study B'se Buddhism | to study B'se history | - |
| <i>who with</i> | her children | alone | - |

| | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>name</i> | Lars | Max | Zunetta |
| <i>plans to go</i> | yes | yes | yes |
| <i>when</i> | if he gets the money | in three months' time | in three weeks' time |
| <i>for how long</i> | 1 year | about 4 months | 2 weeks |
| <i>what for</i> | to learn Burmese | to study B'se literature | to visit |
| <i>who with</i> | alone | with his family | a tourist group |

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>name</i> | Roger | Miranda |
| <i>plans to go</i> | yes | yes |
| <i>when</i> | in a year's time | not definite yet |
| <i>for how long</i> | not fixed yet | 1 ½ months |
| <i>what for</i> | to meditate | to study Burmese art |
| <i>who with</i> | with 2 friends | with her family |

Exercise for written answer

Opposites. After each word in the list below write down the Burmese word with the opposite meaning.

| List | Opposite |
|------------------|----------|
| ၁။ အသေး | ... |
| ၂။ အထဲမှာ | ... |
| ၃။ နံတယ် | ... |
| ၄။ ခက်တယ် | ... |
| ၅။ ကောင်းတယ် | ... |
| ၆။ ဝယ်တယ် | ... |
| ၇။ ဝေးတယ် | ... |
| ၈။ အငယ် | ... |
| ၉။ နောက် ဆုတ်တယ် | ... |
| ၁၀။ ထိုင်တယ် | ... |
| ၁၁။ တက်တယ် | ... |
| ၁၂။ ပေးတယ် | ... |
| ၁၃။ ဖွင့်တယ် | ... |

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

အကြီး
 အပြင်မှာ
 များတယ်
 လွယ်တယ်
 ဆိုးတယ်
 ရောင်းတယ်
 နီးတယ်
 အကြီး
 ရှေ့ တိုးတယ်
 ရပ်တယ်
 ဆင်းတယ်
 ယူတယ်
 ပိတ်တယ်

Relationships. In the blank write down the corresponding term for the opposite gender.

| | | |
|---------------|-----|------------|
| ၁၄။ အမျိုးသား | ... | အမျိုးသမီး |
| ၁၅။ အဖေ | ... | အမေ |
| ၁၆။ မောင် | ... | ညီမ |
| ၁၇။ အမ | ... | အကို |
| ၁၈။ အဒေါ် | ... | ဦးလေး |
| ၁၉။ သမီး | ... | သား |
| ၂၀။ ညီ | ... | ညီမ |
| ၂၁။ ဆရာ | ... | ဆရာမ |

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 9

TRAVELS: CURRENT TRIP

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| [verb]-သွား- | to go [verb], to become [verb] | -thwà-, -dhwà- |
| —ပြီးသွားပြီ။ | It's all over. [ပြီး- = to finish] | Pì-dhwà-bi. |
| —ဆုံးသွားပြီ။ | She's dead and gone. [ဆုံး- = to end] | S'òun-dhwà-bi. |
| —ကုန်သွားပြီ။ | It is all used up. [ကုန်- = to run out] | Koun-dhwà-bi. |
| —သေးသွားပြီ။ | It has shrunk. [သေး- = to be small] | Thè-dhwà-bi. |
| —လိုင်း ကောင်းသွားပြီ။ | The line has got better. [ကောင်း- = to be good] | Laìn kaùn-dhwà-bi. |
| —ဘယ်လောက်ကြာသွားပြီလဲ။ | How long has it gone on for? | Beh-lauq |
| —သုံးလ ရှိသွားပြီ။ | [ကြာ- = to elapse] | ca-dhwà-bi-lèh? |
| တရားရိပ်သာ or just ရိပ်သာ | It has been three months. | Thoùn-lá shí-dhwà-bi. |
| အဆင် ပြေ- | meditation centre ["doctrine-refuge"] | Täyà yeiq-tha |
| —S1: သံရုံးမှာ လုပ်ရတာ | to work out all right, to be OK, satisfactory | ās'in pye- |
| အဆင် ပြေရဲ့လား။ | Does working at the embassy | Than-yòun-hma louq-yá-da |
| —S2: ကောင်းကောင်း | suit you all right? | ās'in pye-yéh-là? |
| အဆင် ပြေပါတယ်။ | Yes, it works out fine. | Kaùn-gaùn |
| —S1: အဲဒီမှာ ထိုင်ရတာ | | ās'in pye-ba-deh. |
| အဆင် ပြေရဲ့လား။ | Are you all right | Èh-di-hma t'ain-yá-da |
| —S2: သိပ် အဆင် မပြေပါဘူး။ | sitting there? | ās'in pye-yéh-là? |
| စိတ် မကောင်းပါဘူး။ | It's not ideal. | Theiq ās'in māpye-ba-bù. |
| ဆိုး- | I'm sorry, sad ["mind—not-be good"] | Seiq mākaùn-ba-bù. |
| —မဆိုးပါဘူး။ | to be bad, badly behaved | s'ò- |
| | It's not bad [usually = It's quite good; | Mās'ò-ba-bù. |
| | applied to a wide range of topics: a play, a drink, a book, a restaurant, ...] | |
| ဆောင်း: or ဆောင်းတွင်း | winter, cool season [around Dec., Jan., Feb.] | s'aùn(-dwìn) |
| အေး- | to be cold (as winter, ice, cold drinks) | è- |
| [phrase] ဆိုရင် 1 | in the case of [phrase], if we look at [phrase] | s'o-yin |

1. Literally "[phrase]-say-if": "if we say [phrase]." In most sentences, attempting to translate [phrase] ဆိုရင် gives it too much weight and prominence. It carries a very light load. See the examples below and at 3.11.

| | | |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| လေးနာရီ ဆိုရင် အားမလား။ | Would you be free at 4? | Lè-na-yi s'o-yin à-mälà? |
| | [understand: If we were to say 4.00, in place of the other times you can't manage] | |
| ဂျန်ဝါရီလ ဆိုရင် | It'll be cool in January, I suppose. | Jan-nāwa-ri-lá s'o-yin |
| အေးမယ်နော်။ | ["if we were to consider January"] | è-meh-naw? |
| ကျောင်းသား ဆိုရင် | In the case of students | Caùn-dhà s'o-yin |
| ဝင်ခွင့် မရှိပါဘူး။ | entry is not allowed. | win-gwín mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| ဗမာပြည်မှာ ဆိုရင် | If it were in Burma it would be easy. | Bāma-pye-hma s'o-yin |
| လွယ်မှာပါ။ | [to get this machine mended, for example] | lweh-hma-ba. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: somewhere in Burma. S1 is Burmese and S2 is a foreigner.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| S1: ဗမာပြည် ရောက်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Have you been in Burma long? | Băma-pye yauq-ne-da ca-bi-là? |
| S2: လေးလလောက် ရှိသွားပြီ။ | It's been about four months. | Lè-lá-lauq shí-dhwà-bi. |
| S1: ဒီမှာ နေရတာ ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ | How do you find living here? | Di-hma ne-yá-da beh-lo ne-dhălèh? |
| S2: သိပ် ပျော်ပါတယ်။ | I love it. | Theiq pyaw-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဘယ်မှာ တဲနေသလဲ။ | Where are you staying? | Beh-hma tèh-ne-dhălèh? |
| S2: တရားရိပ်သာမှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။ | I'm staying at a meditation centre. | Tăyà Yeiq-tha-hma tèh-ne-ba-deh. |
| S1: အော်။ ဒီမှာ တရား အားထုတ်ဖို့ လာတာလား။ | Oh, so you came here to meditate? | Aw. Di-hma tăyà à t'ouq-p'ó la-da-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| S1: ရိပ်သာမှာ တဲရတာ အဆင် ပြေရဲ့လား။ | Does staying at the centre work out all right? | Yeiq-tha-hma tèh-yá-da ăs'in pye-yéh-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းကောင်း အဆင် ပြေပါတယ်။ | Yes, it works out very well. | Houq-kéh. Kaùn-kaùn ăs'in pye-ba-deh. |
| or: မဆိုးပါဘူး။ | It's not too bad. | Măs'ò-ba-bù. |
| or: သိပ် အဆင် မပြေဘူး။ | It's not working out very well. | Theiq ăs'in măpye-ba-bù. |
| S1: ကြားရတာ စိတ် မကောင်းပါဘူး။ ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေရတာ မပူဘူးလား။ | I'm sorry to hear it. Isn't it hot [for you] in Burma? | Cà-yá-da seiq mākāùn-ba-bù. Băma-pye-hma ne-yá-da măpu-bù-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ နဲ့နဲ့ ပူပါတယ်။ | Yes, it is rather hot. | Houq-kéh. Nèh-nèh pu-ba-deh. |
| S1: ဟိုမှာ ဆိုရင် အေးမယ်နော်။ ² | Over there it'll be cold, I suppose? | Ho-hma s'o-yin è-meh-naw? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ ဆောင်းတွင်း ဆိုရင် အရမ်း အေးတယ်။ | Yes. In the winter it's terribly cold. | Houq-pa-deh. S'aùn-dwìn s'o-yin ăyàn è-deh. |

2. ဟို [noun] = "that [noun], a long way from either of us." Hence ဟိုမှာ "over there," meaning "where you come from."

For the Practice Dialogues

Dialogues Set 1. You ask the questions, following the Prompt, and jot down the answers in the blanks. At the end of the set of Dialogues, compare your answers with the Key. You have to imagine that the dialogues take place at a reception somewhere in England, between yourself and some Burmese-speaking visitors. The tape doesn't cover all the people named in the chart. (The names you don't ask about on the tape can be used for classroom practice.)

Dialogues Set 1: blanks

| | U Sein Lwin ဦးစိန်လွင် | Daw Mya Mya Thein ဒေါ်မြသိန်း | U Chit Swe ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | Daw Si Si Win ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>name</i> | | | | |
| <i>has been in England</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>further stay</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>what for</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>who with</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>where stay</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>works out</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>climate</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |

| | U Tun Aung Chain ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | Daw Khin Mar Lay ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | U Tin Ohn ဦးတင်အုံး | Daw Tin Tin Myint ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>name</i> | | | | |
| <i>has been in England</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>further stay</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>what for</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>who with</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>where stay</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>works out</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| <i>climate</i> | ... | ... | ... | ... |

| | Daw Nwe Nwe ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | Ko Tin Lwin ကိုတင်လွင် |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>name</i> | | |
| <i>has been in England</i> | ... | ... |
| <i>further stay</i> | ... | ... |
| <i>what for</i> | ... | ... |
| <i>who with</i> | ... | ... |
| <i>where stay</i> | ... | ... |
| <i>works out</i> | ... | ... |
| <i>climate</i> | ... | ... |

Dialogues Set 2. You use the information in the list to answer the questions on the tape. Imagine that the dialogues take place in Burma. If you're asked if you've been here long, treat one month and over as "a long time," and anything less as "not long yet." On the same point, we'll adopt the convention that you use ရှိသွားပြီ rather than ရှိပြီ — unless the context calls for ရှိပါသေးတယ် (shí-dhwà-bi, shí-bi, shí-ba-dhè-deh). If you're asked if you are having a good time in Burma, you always say you're having a very good time.



Dialogues Set 2: data

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>name</i> | Mr. Bull | Ms. Doe | Mr. Keating | Mrs. Mount |
| <i>country</i> | England | America | Australia | Canada |
| <i>has been in Burma</i> | 2 months | 3 weeks | 2 years | 3 months |
| <i>further stay</i> | 1 month | 1 ½ months | 1 ½ years | about 6 months |
| <i>what for</i> | to meditate | to do research | to work | to accomp. husband |
| <i>who with</i> | alone | husband | family | husband |
| <i>where stay</i> | medit centre | foreignn st hostel | Pagoda Road | with friends |
| <i>works out</i> | OK | very well | not very well | not bad |
| <i>climate</i> | hot | very hot | not hot: just right | not very hot: just right |

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|
| <i>name</i> | Mr. Wellington | Mrs. Finch | Mr. Hawk | Ms. Coot |
| <i>country</i> | New Zealand | England | America | Australia |
| <i>has been in Burma</i> | 3 days | 1 week | about a year | 6 months |
| <i>further stay</i> | 2 weeks | 5 days | not fixed | not fixed |
| <i>what for</i> | as a tourist | as a tourist | to do research | to accomp. parents |
| <i>who with</i> | group | son | alone | husband |
| <i>where stay</i> | hotel | hostel | medit centre | foreignn st hostel |
| <i>works out</i> | OK | not bad | very well | OK |
| <i>climate</i> | rather hot | hot | very hot | not hot |

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| <i>name</i> | Mr. Nightingale | Mrs. Sparrow |
| <i>country</i> | Canada | New Zealand |
| <i>has been in Burma</i> | 4 days | 2 weeks |
| <i>further stay</i> | 2 weeks | about 1 month |
| <i>what for</i> | to meditate | to work |
| <i>who with</i> | alone | alone |
| <i>where stay</i> | with friends | Strand Hotel |
| <i>works out</i> | not very well | very well |
| <i>climate</i> | not v hot: just right | rather hot |

Exercise for written answer

The words and syllables in the following sentences have been jumbled. Rearrange them to form good sentences, and insert spacing and punctuation.

၁။ -မဆိုး-ရတာ-ရိပ်သာ-နေ-ပါဘူး-မှာ

၂။ -မကောင်း-ပါ-ရတာ-ကြား-ဘူး-စိတ်

၃။ -သာ-ရ-တွေ့-တယ်-ဝမ်း-တာ-ပါ

The following sentences contain the element ဆိုရင်။

၄။ -လ-အေးမယ်-ဆိုရင်-နော်-ဒီဇင်ဘာ

၅။ -များ-တယ်-၁၅-ကျပ်-ဆိုရင်-ပါ

၆။ -သိပ်-ပါ-မှာ-ပြေမှာ-ကျောင်းဆောင်-အဆင်-ဆိုရင်

၇။ -ဂျနပါရီ-ဥတု-က-အနေတော်-ဆိုရင်-ရာသီ-လ-ပါပဲ-မှာ

၈။ -လျှောပေး-တယ်-ဆိုရင်-လို့-ရ-၆-လုံး-ဈေး-ပါ

၉။ -၁၅-မိနစ်-မယ်-လောက်-ဆိုရင်-ကားနဲ့-ကြာ

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ -ရိပ်သာ-မှာ -နေ-ရတာ -မဆိုး-ပါဘူး။
 ၂။ -ကြား-ရတာ -စိတ် -မကောင်း-ပါ-ဘူး။
 ၃။ -တွေ့-ရ-တာ -ဝမ်း -သာ-ပါ-တယ်။
 ၄။ -ဒီဇင်ဘာ-လ -ဆိုရင် -အေးမယ်-နော်။
 ၅။ -၁၅-ကျပ် -ဆိုရင် -များ-ပါ-တယ်။
 ၆။ -ကျောင်းဆောင်-မှာ -ဆိုရင် -သိပ် -အဆင် -ပြေမှာ-ပါ။
 ၇။ -ဂျန္တဝါရီ-လ-မှာ -ဆိုရင် -ရာသီ-ဥတု-က -အနေတော်-ပါပဲ။
 ၈။ -၆-လုံး -ဆိုရင် -ဈေး -လျှော့ပေး-လို့ -ရ-ပါ-တယ်။
 ၉။ -ကားနဲ့ -ဆိုရင် -၁၅-မိနစ်-လောက် -ကြာ-မယ်။

KEY TO THE PRACTICE DIALOGUES

Dialogues Set 1

| | U Sein Lwin | Daw Mya Mya Thein | U Chit Swe | Daw Si Si Win |
|----------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>name</i> | ဦးစိန်လွင် | ဒေါ်မြသိန်း | ဦးချစ်ဆွေ | ဒေါ်စိစိဝင်း |
| <i>has been in England</i> | 1 week | 4 months | 1 month | 4 days |
| <i>further stay</i> | 3 months | 6 months | 1 month | 2 weeks |
| <i>what for</i> | for a visit | for training | to accomp. parents | to accomp. husband |
| <i>who with</i> | alone | alone | with parents | with family |
| <i>where stay</i> | with relatives | hostel | with friends | hotel |
| <i>works out</i> | OK | not very well | very well | not bad |
| <i>climate</i> | cold | very cold | not cold: just right | not v cold |

| | U Tun Aung Chain | Daw Khin Mar Lay | U Tin Ohn | Daw Tin Tin Myint |
|----------------------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>name</i> | ဦးထွန်းအောင်ချိန် | ဒေါ်ခင်မာလေး | ဦးတင်အုံး | ဒေါ်တင်တင်မြင့် |
| <i>has been in England</i> | 2 years | 6 months | 2 days | 3 weeks |
| <i>further stay</i> | not fixed yet | 2 years | not fixed yet | 10 days |
| <i>what for</i> | to work | to work | to accomp. parents | for a visit |
| <i>who with</i> | with wife | with wife | with parents | with ygr sister |
| <i>where stay</i> | house | with relatives | hotel | with friends |
| <i>works out</i> | OK | not very well | very well | OK |
| <i>climate</i> | very cold | rather cold | not cold | very cold |

| | Daw Nwe Nwe | Ko Tin Lwin |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| <i>name</i> | ဒေါ်နွဲ့နွဲ့ | ကိုတင်လွင် |
| <i>has been in England</i> | 6 months | 3 weeks |
| <i>further stay</i> | 1 ½ years | 3 weeks |
| <i>what for</i> | for training | to accomp. wife |
| <i>who with</i> | alone | with wife |
| <i>where stay</i> | hostel | with relatives |
| <i>works out</i> | not very well | very well |
| <i>climate</i> | rather cold | not very cold: just right |

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 10A

YOU AND YOURS

New words

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| ရှိ- | to exist, to have, to be alive | shí- |
| — S1: အဖေအမေ ရှိသေးသလား။ | Are your parents still alive? | Āme-āp'e shí-dhè-dhālà? |
| — S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes, they are. | Houq-kéh. Shí-ba-deh. |
| — or: အမေ ရှိတယ်။ | My mother is, | Āme shí-ba-deh. |
| အဖေတော့ မရှိတော့ပါဘူး။ | but my father isn't. | Āp'e-dāw māshí-dāw-ba-bù. |
| ဆုံးသွားပါပြီ။ | He has died. | S'òun-dhwà-ba-bì. |
| ညီအကိုမောင်နှမ | brothers and sisters, siblings | nyi-āko-maun-hnāmá |
| — S1: ညီအကိုမောင်နှမ | How many brothers and sisters | Nyi-āko-maun-hnāmá |
| ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက် ရှိသလဲ။ | do you have? | bèh-hnāyauq shí-dhālèh? |
| — S2: နှစ်ယောက် ရှိပါတယ်။ | I have two: | Hnāyauq shí-ba-deh. |
| အကို တစ်ယောက်နဲ့ | one older brother | Āko tāyauq-néh |
| ညီမ တစ်ယောက်။ | and one younger sister. | nyi-má tāyauq. |
| တော်- | to be clever, able, talented | taw- |
| — ကလေးတွေ သိပ်တော်ပါတယ်။ | Their children are very clever. | K'ālè-de theiq taw-ba-deh. |
| ချစ်စရာ ကောင်း- | to be adorable, delightful, | c'iq-sāya kaùn- |
| | charming, sweet ["lovability is good"] | |
| — သမီးလေးက ချစ်စရာ | Your little daughter is | Thāmì-lè-gá c'iq-sāya |
| သိပ် ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | adorable. | theiq kaùn-ba-deh. |
| [verb]-လိုက်တာ။ | How [verb]! | [Verb]-laiq-ta. |
| | [a suffix attached to verbs and used in exclamations] | |
| — ချစ်စရာ ကောင်းလိုက်တာ။ | How adorable! | C'iq-sāya kaùn-laiq-ta. |
| သိပ် [verb]-တာပဲ | [Someone] really does [verb]! | theiq [verb]-da-bèh |
| | [another form of words used for exclamatory effect] | |
| — အဲဒီအရောင် သိပ် ကြိုက်တာပဲ။ | I really love that colour! | Èh-di āyaun theiq caiq-ta-bèh. |
| — ဧပြီလ ကျရင် သိပ် ပူတာပဲ။ | In April it's really hot! | E-pyi-lá cá-yin theiq pu-da-bèh. |
| — ကလေးတွေ သိပ် တော်တာပဲ။ | Your children are really talented! | K'ālè-de theiq taw-da-bèh. |
| — သားလေးက သိပ် ချစ်စရာ | Your young son is | Thà-lè-gá theiq c'iq-sāya |
| ကောင်းတာပဲ။ | really delightful! | kaùn-da-bèh. |
| စာမေးပွဲ | examination ["text-ask-gathering"] | sa-mè-bwèh |
| — ဆယ်တန်း စာမေးပွဲ ¹ | 10th Standard examination | s'eh-dàn sa-mè-bwèh |
| | [at school] ¹ | |
| — နောက်ဆုံးနှစ် စာမေးပွဲ | Final Year examination | nauq-s'òun-hniq sa-mè-bwèh |
| | [at university] | |
| စာမေးပွဲ ဖြေ- | to take an exam ["exam—answer"] | sa-mè-bwèh p'ye- |
| စာမေးပွဲ အောင်- | to pass an exam ["exam—win, succeed"] | sa-mè-bwèh aun- |
| — ဒီနှစ် ဆယ်တန်း (စာမေးပွဲ) | She is going to take her | Di-hniq s'eh-dàn (sa-mè-bwèh) |
| ဖြေမယ်။ | 10th Standard this year. | p'ye-meh. |
| — မနှစ်က ဆယ်တန်း (စာမေးပွဲ) | She passed her | Māhniq-ká s'eh-dàn (sa-mè-bwèh) |
| အောင်တယ်။ | 10th Standard last year. | aun-deh. |

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| တက္ကသိုလ် | university | teq-kǎtho |
| —တက္ကသိုလ် ရောက်- | to get into university | teq-kǎtho yauq- |
| —တက္ကသိုလ် တက်- | to attend, study at, the university | teq-kǎtho teq- |
| ဘွဲ့. | university degree [also = title] | bwéh |
| —မနှစ်က ဘီအေဘွဲ့ ရတယ်။ | He got his B.A. degree last year. | Mǎhniq-ká Bi-E bwéh yá-deh. |

1. ဆယ်တန်း: is the highest Standard in High Schools, and students who gain good marks are eligible to go on to university. Those with the highest marks are entitled to choose the most prestigious subjects (medicine and engineering). Your performance in this examination is therefore an important step in your career. The final year examination in the university is the one that determines whether you are awarded a degree, so this too is a crucial hurdle.

For a list of types of school, institutions of further education, qualifications and so on, see the additional vocabulary in Appendix 6, Section 18.



The entrance to Rangoon University campus

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 asks S2 about his/her children.

1 School children

| | | |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| S1: ကလေး ဓါတ်ပုံ ပါလား။ | Have you got a photograph of your children with you? | K'ǎlè daq-poun pa-là? |
| S2: ပါပါတယ် ရှင်။ | Yes I have. | Pa-ba-deh, Shin. |
| ဒီမှာ။ ကြည့်ပါအုံး။ | Here it is. Have a look. | Di-hma. Cí-ba-oùn. |
| S1: အော်။ | Wow! | Aw. |

| | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| သိပ် ချစ်စရာ ကောင်းတာပဲ။ | They are really adorable. | Theiq c'iq-sāya kaùn-da-bèh. |
| ဘယ်အရွယ်တွေ ရှိပြီလဲ။ | What ages are they? | Beh-āyweh-de shí-bi-lèh? |
| S2: သမီးအကြီးက ၆-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ | My older daughter is 6. | Thāmì-ācì-gá c'auq-hniq shí-bi. |
| S1: ဘယ်အတန်း ရောက်ပြီလဲ။ | What Standard is she in? | Beh-ātàn yauq-pi-lèh? |
| S2: နှစ်တန်း။ | 2nd Standard. | Hnātàn. |
| S1: တော်တယ်နော်။ | She's clever, isn't she? | Taw-deh-naw? |
| သမီးအငယ်ကကော၊ | How about your younger daughter: | Thāmì-āngeh-gá-gàw: |
| ကျောင်း တက်နေပြီလား။ | does she go to school yet? | caùn teq-ne-bi-là? |
| S2: မတက်သေးပါဘူး။ | Not yet. | Māteq-thè-ba-bù. |
| ငယ်ပါသေးတယ်။ | She is still young. | Ngeh-ba-dhè-deh. |
| ၄-နှစ်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | She's only 4. | Lè-hniq-p'èh shí-ba-dhè-deh. |

2 School leavers and university students

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| S1: ကလေးတွေ | What are your | K'ālè-de |
| ဘာလုပ်နေကြသလဲ။ | children doing? | ba louq-ne-já-dhālèh? |
| ကျောင်း တက်နေသလား။ | Are they at school? | Caùn teq-ne-dhālèh? |
| S2: သားအကြီးက မနှစ်က | My oldest son | Thà-ācì-gá mähniq-ká |
| ဘီအေဘွဲ့ ရပါတယ်။ | got his B.A. degree last year. | Bi-E bwéh yá-ba-deh. |
| သားအလတ်က | My middle son | Thà-ālaq-ká |
| တက္ကသိုလ် တက်နေပါတယ်။ | is attending the university. | teq-kātho teq-ne-ba-deh. |
| နောက်ဆုံးစာမေးပွဲ | He is going to take his | Nauq-s'òun sa-mè-bwèh |
| ဒီနှစ် ပြေမယ်။ | final year exams this year. | di-hniq p'ye-meh. |
| သမီးက တက္ကသိုလ် | My daughter has got into | Thāmì-gá teq-kātho |
| ရောက်နေပြီ။ | the university. | yauq-ne-bi. |
| သားအငယ်ကတော့ မနှစ်က | And my youngest son — he passed | Thà-āngeh-gá-dáw mähniq-ká |
| ဆယ်တန်း အောင်တယ်။ | the 10th Standard exam last year. | s'èh-dàn aun-deh. |
| S1: အာ၊ | Well! They are | A. |
| သိပ် တော်တာပဲ။ | really gifted children! | Theiq taw-da-bèh. |

For the Exercises

Blanks for Exercise 1. You ask the questions, following the Prompt, and use the answers to fill in the blanks. The first column is filled in for you to show the conventions used in the Key.

| <i>name</i> | Ko Lat ကိုလတ် | Ma Htwe မထွေး | Ko Cho ကိုချို | Ma Pwint မပွင့် | Ko Thaung ကိုသောင်း | Ma Swe မဆွေ |
|--------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| mother | Y | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| father | Y | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| siblings | 3 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| older bros | 2 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| older sis | 1 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| younger bros | - | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| younger sis | - | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Ex. 2. Turn to the Key to Ex. 1 and use the information there to answer the questions.

Ex. 3. Imagine you are talking to a lady called Daw Mya May. Ask the questions, following the prompt, and fill in the blanks on the chart with the information you hear. Not all the blanks will be needed.

Blanks for Ex. 3

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Ex. 4. Turn to the Key for Ex. 3, and use the information given there to answer the questions you hear on the tape.

For the Practice Dialogues

There are three pairs of Practice Dialogues, and each pair follows the same pattern. In Practice Dialogue 1a you ask questions, following the Prompt, and use the answers given on the tape to fill in the blanks in the chart. The charts have more blanks than you need. At the end of the Dialogue you compare your answers with the Key at the end of the Lesson. Then for Dialogue 1b, you use the Key to supply you with answers to the questions you are asked by the tape. The same goes for 2a and 2b, and for 3a and 3b.

Blanks for Dialogue 1a: U Win Maung's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Blanks for Dialogue 2a: Daw Mala Maung's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Blanks for Dialogue 3a: U Par's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 3 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 4 | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 5 | ... | ... | ... | ... |

Exercise for written answer

Ex. 1. Choose an appropriate verb from the list below for each of the gaps in the sentences.

| | | | | | |
|-------|---------|-------|----------|-------|-----------------|
| Verbs | ကြိုက်- | ပူ- | ဝမ်း သာ- | အေး- | အဆင် ပြေ- |
| | ဝေး- | များ- | ကြီး- | တော်- | ချစ်စရာ ကောင်း- |

Sentences

- ၁။ သမီး နှစ်ယောက် တက္ကသိုလ် ရောက်နေကြပြီ။ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။
- ၂။ အပြင်မှာ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။ အထဲမှာ ထိုင်ကြရအောင်။
- ၃။ စပါကလင် အရမ်း အေးတယ်။ ရေခဲ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။
- ၄။ ဒီတီရှပ်တွေ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။ ဒီထက် သေးတာ မရှိဘူးလား။
- ၅။ သားလေး ဓါတ်ပုံ ကြည့်ပါအုံး။ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။
- ၆။ ကျောင်းဆောင်မှာ နေရတာ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။
- ၇။ အဲဒီအရောင် သိပ် ... တာပဲ။ ဒီဟာပဲ ယူမယ်။
- ၈။ ဆရာအိမ် သိပ် ... တာပဲ။ ကားနဲ့ သွားတာပဲ ကောင်းပါတယ်။
- ၉။ ဆယ်တန်း အောင်တယ် ကြွားရတာ ကျမ သိပ် ... တာပဲ။
- ၁၀။ မေလ ဆိုရင် ဗမာပြည် သိပ် ... တာပဲ။
ဆောင်းတွင်း သွားတာ ကောင်းပါတယ်။

KEY

- တော်-
- အေး-
- များ-
- ကြီး-
- ချစ်စရာ ကောင်း-
- အဆင် ပြေ-
- ကြိုက်-
- ဝေး-
- ဝမ်း သာ-
- ပူ-

Ex. 2. Fill in the gaps in the following dialogue.

- S1: အလုပ် ...နေသလား။
S2: မလုပ်သေးပါ...။
မနှစ်က ဘီအေဘွဲ့ ...ပါတယ်။
ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ နိုင်ငံခြားမှာ ပညာ သင်... အစီအစဉ် ရှိတယ်။
- S1: အဖေအမေ ရှိ...သလား။
S2: အဖေ ...တယ်။
အမေတော့ မရှိ...ပါဘူး။ ဆုံးသွားပါပြီ။
- S1: ညီ...မောင်နှစ်ယောက် ဘယ်နှစ်ယောက် ရှိသလဲ။
S2: သုံး... ရှိပါတယ်။
ညီ တစ်ယောက်... ညီမ နှစ်ယောက်။
- S1: ... လုပ်နေကြသလဲ။
S2: ကျောင်း ...နေပါသေးတယ်။
ညီက မနှစ်က ဆယ်... အောင်တယ်။
ဒီ... တက္ကသိုလ် တက်မယ်။
- S1: ညီမတွေက...။
S2: ညီမအကြီးက ဒီနှစ် ဆယ်တန်း ...မယ်။
အငယ်ကတော့ အသက် ...ပါသေးတယ်။
ခြောက်...မှာပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။
- S1: မိသားစု ဓါတ်ပုံ ...သလား။
S2: ပါပါ...။ ဒီမှာ။
- S1: အာ၊ ညီမလေးတွေက ... ကောင်းလိုက်တာ။

KEY

- လုပ်
- ဘူး
- ရ
- ဖို့
- သေး
- ရှိ
- တော့
- အကို
- ယောက်
- နဲ့
- ဘာ
- တက်
- တန်း
- နှစ်
- ကော
- ဖြေ
- ငယ်
- တန်း
- ပါ
- တယ်
- ချစ်စရာ

KEY TO THE EXERCISES AND DIALOGUES ON TAPE

Key for Ex. 1

| <i>name</i> | Ko Lat ကိုလတ် | Ma Htwe မထွေး | Ko Cho ကိုချို | Ma Pwint မပွင့် | Ko Thaung ကိုသောင်း | Ma Swe မဆွေ |
|--------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| mother | Y | Y | N | N | Y | Y |
| father | Y | N | Y | N | Y | N |
| siblings | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 4 | 5 |
| older bros | 2 | - | 1 | 1 | 3 | 1 |
| older sis | 1 | 1 | - | 2 | - | 1 |
| younger bros | - | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 |
| younger sis | - | 1 | 3 | 1 | - | 1 |

Key for Ex. 3: Daw Mya May's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 | older son | မြိုး | 7 | Standard 3 |
| 2 | dtr | ဝါဝါ | 5 | Standard 1 |
| 3 | ygr son | တိုးတိုး | 3 | not at school |

Key for Practice Dialogue 1a: U Win Maung's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--|
| 1 | son | လှရွှေ | 22 | attending university: to take final exam this year |
| 2 | son | ဖေဝင်း | 18 | has got into university |
| 3 | son | စမ်းမောင် | 17 | to take 10th Standard this year |

Key for Practice Dialogue 2a: Daw Mala Maung's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 | dtr | ခင်သီ | 24 | got B.A. degree last year |
| 2 | son | ကြီးရွှေ | 23 | to take final exam this year |
| 3 | dtr | သန်းသန်း | 17 | passed 10th Standard last year |
| 4 | dtr | မြမင်း | 16 | to take 10th Standard this year |

Key for Practice Dialogue 3a: U Par's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>stage</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | dtr | သန်းရင် | 20 | got B.A. degree last year |
| 2 | dtr | လှလှ | 16 | has got into university |
| 3 | son | တင်မြင့် | 15 | passed 10th Standard last year |

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 10B YOU AND YOURS continued

New words

အခု or ခု / အခု or အခု၊ ခု or ခု / now, at present

(ă)k'ú, (ă)gú

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| အလုပ် ဝင်- ကိုယ်ပိုင် / ကိုပိုင်/ — ကိုယ်ပိုင် လုပ်ငန်း သင်္ဘောသား / သင်းဘောသား/ [occupation] လုပ်- — သင်္ဘောသား လုပ်တယ်။ — အစိုးရ အမှုထမ်း လုပ်နေတယ်။ — ဆရာဝန် လုပ်နေတယ်။ | to start work, take up a job private ["self-own"] business ["private-work"] sailor ["ship-member"] to work as a [...] He works as a sailor. She is working as a civil servant. [see 3.10A] He is working as a doctor. [see 2.10A] | ălouq win- ["work—enter"] ko-bain ko-bain louq-ngàn thìn-bàw-dhà louq- Thìn-bàw-dhà louq-teh. Āsò-yá āhmú-dàn louq-ne-deh. S'āya-wun louq-ne-deh. |
| သင်တန်း တက်- ပါရဂူဘွဲ့. / ပါရဂူ-/ စာတန်း / -ဒန်း/ [noun]-အတွက် for [noun], for the sake of, for the benefit of — ပါရဂူဘွဲ့အတွက် စာတန်း ရေးနေတယ်။ ဝင်ငွေ လခ / လခဂါ/ — လခ နိတယ်။ — ဝင်ငွေ မဆိုးပါဘူး။ — တစ်လ ၁၂၀၀/- ရတယ်။ | to attend class, attend a course ["learn-class—attend"] Ph.D. degree, doctorate thesis, dissertation, paper for [noun], for the sake of, for the benefit of He is writing a thesis for his Ph.D. income ["come in-money"] salary ["month-fee"] The salary is low. The job is poorly paid. The income is not bad. We get K1200 a month. | thin-dàn teq- Pa-rāgu-bwéh ["expert-degree"] sa-dàn -ātweq Pa-rāgu-bwéh-ātweq sa-dàn yè-ne-deh. win-ngwe lá-gá Lá-gá nèh-deh. Win-ngwe mās'ò-ba-bù. Tālā t'aún hnāya yá-deh. |

The salaries of government posts are usually referred to by "scale," as —

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| ၈၀၀/- စကေး | the K800 scale |
| or ၈၀၀-၂၅-၁၀၀၀ စကေး | the scale that starts at K800, and grows by annual increments of K25 to a maximum of K1000. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: in Burma. S1 is a foreign visitor, and S2 is Burmese.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| S1: ဦးမျိုး ကလေးတွေ အခု ဘာလုပ်နေကြသလဲ။ အလုပ် ဝင်နေကြပြီလား။ | What are your children doing now? Have they started work? | Ù Myò k'ālè-de āk'ú ba louq-ne-já-dhālèh? Ālouq win-ne-já-bi-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ နှစ်ယောက် အလုပ် လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ သမီးအကြီးက ဆရာဝန်ပါပဲ။ ¹ သားအကြီးကတော့ ကိုယ်ပိုင် လုပ်ငန်း လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ အငယ်နှစ်ယောက် ကျတော့ နိုင်ငံခြား ရောက်နေကြတယ်။ သမီးအငယ်က ပညာ သင်ဖို့ Australia သွားတယ်။ | Yes. Two of them are working. My older daughter is a doctor. My older son is in business. The younger two are both abroad. My younger daughter went to Australia for training. | Houq-kéh. Hnāyauq ălouq louq-ne-ba-deh. Thāmì-ācì-gá s'āya-wun-ba-bèh. Thà-ācì-gá-dāw ko-bain- louq-ngàn louq-ne-ba-deh. Āngeh hnāyauq cá-dāw nain-ngan-jā yauq-ne-já-deh. Thāmì-āngeh-gá pyin-nya thin-bó Australia thwà-deh. |
| S1: အဲဒီမှာ ဘာ သင်တန်း တက်နေသလဲ။ | What course is she taking there? | Èh-di-hma ba thin-dàn teq-ne-dhālèh? |

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S2: သမိုင်း လေ့လာဖို့ သွားတာပါ။ | She went to study history. | Thămain lé-la-bó thwà-da-ba. |
| အခု ပါရဂူဘွဲ့အတွက် | At present she's writing | Āk'ú Pa-rāgu-bwéh-ätweq |
| စာတန်း ရေးနေတယ်။ | a thesis for her Ph.D. | sa-dàn yè-ne-deh. |
| သားအငယ်က | And my younger son | Thà-āngēh-gá |
| သင်္ဘောသား လုပ်နေတယ်။ | is working as a sailor. | thìn-bàw-dhà louq-ne-deh. |
| S1: သားအကြီးက ဆရာဝန် | Does your older son find | Thà-ācì-gá s'āya-wun |
| လုပ်ရတာ အဆင် ပြေရဲ့လား။ | working as a doctor is all right? | louq-yá-da ās'in pye-yéh-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ မဆိုးပါဘူး။ | Yes. It's not bad. | Houq-kéh. Mās'ò-ba-bù. |
| လခ တစ်လ ၁၂၀၀/- | He gets a salary of K1200 | Lá-gá tǎlá t'aún hnāya |
| ရတယ်။ ² | a month. | yá-deh. |
| S1: သမီးကော။ | How about your daughter? | Thāmi-gàw? |
| S2: သူကလဲ ဝင်ငွေ ကောင်းတယ်။ | She has a good income too. | Thu-gá-lèh win-ngwe kaùn-deh. |
| အခု တစ်လ ၂၀၀၀/-လောက် | She gets about K2000 | Āk'ú tǎlá hnāt'aun-lauq |
| ရပါတယ်။ | a month now. | yá-ba-deh. |

1. You are familiar with the “only” meaning of the suffix -ဝဲ, as in

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| သုံးကျပ်ပဲ ပေးရပါတယ်။ | We only had to pay three kyats. |
| အသက် ကိုးနှစ်ပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ | She is only 9 years old so far. |

The suffix -ဝဲ also has a different meaning, often found at the end of a sentence: it can be mildly emphatic, something like “indeed,” or “really,” or “in fact,” or “actually.” This is the meaning you have met in —

| | |
|------------|---------------------|
| ဆောရီးပဲ။ | I'm (really) sorry. |
| ကျေးဇူးပဲ။ | Thanks (a lot). |

You now meet it again in the sentence in the dialogue above:

| | |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| ဆရာဝန်ပါပဲ။ | She's a doctor (actually). |
|-------------|----------------------------|

2. In Burma, as in many countries, the rate of inflation is high; so, although the income levels mentioned here are not unreasonable at the time of writing (1993), by the time you read this, K1200 and K2000 may sound very meagre indeed.

For the Exercise

Ex. 1. You ask questions following the prompt, then repeat the answer and use it to fill in the blanks. Check your answers against the Key at the end of the Lesson. Model:

Prompt: Ask what Ma Aye Kyi is doing now.

L/S1: မအေးကြည် အခု ဘာလုပ်နေသလဲ။ S2: ကိုယ်ပိုင်လုပ်ငန်း လုပ်နေတယ်။

L/S1 (repeats: ကိုယ်ပိုင်လုပ်ငန်း လုပ်နေတယ်။ — and fills in the blank.

Prompt: Ask if she has a good income.

L/S1: ဝင်ငွေ ကောင်းသလား။ S2: ကောင်းပါတယ်။ တစ်လ နှစ်ထောင် ရတယ်။

L/S1 (repeats): တစ်လ နှစ်ထောင် ရတယ်။ — and fills in the blank.

Daw Yin Mya's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>salary/income</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | dtr | အေးကြည် | 29 | ... | ... |
| 2 | son | ခင်မောင် | 27 | ... | ... |
| 3 | dtr | ခင်ကြည် | 26 | ... | ... |
| 4 | dtr | ခင်စန်းရီ | 24 | ... | ... |

Dr Tin Maung's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>salary/income</i> |
|-----------|------------|----------------|------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | son | စောလွင် | 30 | ... | ... |
| 2 | dtr | မြင့်မြင့်ကြည် | 28 | ... | ... |
| 3 | son | ခင်မောင်ဝင်း | 26 | ... | ... |
| 4 | dtr | မေမေရီ | 25 | ... | ... |
| 5 | son | ဖေသိန်း | 23 | ... | ... |

Daw Khin May's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>salary/income</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | dtr | မိမိခင် | 28 | ... | ... |
| 2 | son | သိန်းတိုး | 26 | ... | ... |
| 3 | dtr | သန်းသန်း | 25 | ... | ... |

For the Practice Dialogues

Use the Key below to answer the questions.

Dialogue 1. Daw Yin Mya. Dialogue 2. Dr Tin Maung. Dialogue 3. Daw Khin May

In the classroom. Use blank forms as outlined at Level 2, Topic 10B.

Exercise for written answer

Translate the following into Burmese. Imagine that an elderly Englishman is writing a letter to a friend in Burma with whom he has been out of touch for many years. If the text of the letter sounds stilted, remember that you have been practising with dialogues, which involve two speakers, and you have not needed to learn the sentence-connecting devices that are appropriate for the one-speaker mode of letter-writing. For "you" use ဆရာ။

1. Saya U Htin Gyi.

2. Are you all well?

3. What ages are your sons and daughters now?

4. And how about you? Have you retired yet?

5. Is your wife still working
in the oil company?

6. As for me, I am now 67 years old.

7. I have retired.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဆရာဦးထင်ကြီး။

နေကောင်းကြရဲ့လား။

သားတွေ သမီးတွေ အခု ဘယ်အရွယ် ရှိကြပြီလဲ။

ဆရာကော ပင်စင် ယူလိုက်ပြီလား။

ဆရာအမျိုးသမီးက ရေနံကုမ္ပဏီမှာ
အလုပ် လုပ်နေသေးသလား။

ကျွန်တော်ကတော့ အခု အသက် ၆၇-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။

ပင်စင် ယူလိုက်ပါပြီ။

8. At home there is only myself and my younger son.
 9. My wife died in 1988.
 10. I do the housework.
 11. My son is still going to school.
 12. He is bright.
 13. He is going to take his 10th Standard exam this year.
 14. If he passes, he will probably attend university next year.

အိမ်မှာ ကျွန်တော်နဲ့ သားအငယ်ပဲ ရှိပါတယ်။
 အမျိုးသမီးက ၁၉၈၈-ခုနှစ်က ဆုံးသွားပါတယ်။
 ကျွန်တော်က အိမ်မှုကိစ္စ လုပ်ပါတယ်။
 သားက ကျောင်း တက်နေပါသေးတယ်။
 တော်ပါတယ်။
 ဒီနှစ် ဆယ်တန်း စာမေးပွဲ ဖြေမယ်။
 အောင်ရင် ရှေ့နှစ်မှာ တက္ကသိုလ် တက်ပါလိမ့်မယ်။

15. My older son is in business.
 16. He sells TVs.
 17. His income is not bad.
 18. Things are working out all right.
 19. He's got two children.
 20. They are totally adorable.

သားအကြီးက ကိုယ်ပိုင်လုပ်ငန်း လုပ်နေပါတယ်။
 တီဗွီ ရောင်းတယ်။
 ဝင်ငွေ မဆိုးပါဘူး။
 အဆင် ပြေပါတယ်။
 ကလေး ၂-ယောက် ရပြီ။
 သိပ် ချစ်စရာ ကောင်းတာပဲ။

21. My older daughter is working in the civil service.
 22. Her pay is low.
 23. She only gets £800 a month.
 24. She is living in Manchester.

သမီးအကြီးက အစိုးရအမှုထမ်း လုပ်နေတယ်။
 လခ နဲ့ပါတယ်။
 တစ်လ ပေါင် ၈၀၀-ပဲ ရပါတယ်။
 မန်ချက်စတာမှာ နေနေတယ်။

25. My younger daughter is at university.
 26. She took her final exam last year.
 27. She got a B.A.
 28. Now she is writing a thesis for her Ph.D.
 29. She wants to do research in Burma for her thesis.
 30. If she gets a visa she plans to come in November.
 31. She's going to stay for about 6 months.
 32. If she comes to Burma, she would like to meet you.

သမီးအငယ်ကတော့ တက္ကသိုလ်မှာ။
 မနှစ်က နောက်ဆုံး စာမေးပွဲ ဖြေတယ်။
 ဘီအေဘွဲ့ ရတယ်။
 အခု ပါရဂူဘွဲ့အတွက် စာတန်း ရေးနေတယ်။
 စာတန်းအတွက် ဗမာပြည်မှာ သုတေသန လုပ်ချင်တယ်။
 ဗီဇာ ရရင် နိုဝင်ဘာလမှာ လာဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။
 ၆-လလောက် နေမယ်။
 ဗမာပြည် လာရင် ဆရာနဲ့ တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။

KEY TO THE EXERCISES ON TAPE

Daw Yin Mya's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>salary/income</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | dtr | အေးကြည် | 29 | is working: in business | good: K2000 |
| 2 | son | ခင်မောင် | 27 | is abroad: working as a sailor | not bad: K1800 |
| 3 | dtr | ခင်ကြည် | 26 | is working: as civil servant | low: K900 |
| 4 | dtr | ခင်စန်းရီ | 24 | is abroad: attending a course | - |

Dr Tin Maung's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>salary/income</i> |
|-----------|------------|----------------|------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | son | စောလွင် | 30 | is abroad: attending a course | - |
| 2 | dtr | မြင့်မြင့်ကြည် | 28 | is working: as doctor | not bad: K2400 |
| 3 | son | ခင်မောင်ဝင်း | 26 | is abroad: is writing Ph.D. thesis | - |
| 4 | dtr | မေမေရီ | 25 | is working: in business | good: K2500 |
| 5 | son | ဖေသန်း | 23 | is working: as engineer | not bad: K1750 |

Daw Khin May's children

| <i>n°</i> | <i>sex</i> | <i>name</i> | <i>age</i> | <i>occupation</i> | <i>salary/income</i> |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 | dtr | မိမိခင် | 28 | is working: as school teacher | low: K800 |
| 2 | son | သိန်းတိုး | 26 | is abroad: working as a sailor | good: K2200 |
| 3 | dtr | သန်းသန်း | 25 | is abroad: writing Ph.D. thesis | - |

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 11

TO MEET AGAIN

New words

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| အိမ် ပြန်- | to go home | ein pyan- |
| ကျွန်တော်တို့ / ကျနော်တို့ / 1 | we, our (man speaking) | cānaw-dó |
| ကျွန်မတို့ / ကျမှတို့ / 1 | we, our (woman speaking) | cāmá-dó |
| အလည် လာ- (/အလယ်/) | to come for a visit | āleh la- |
| — variant: လာလည်- (/လယ်/) | to come visiting | la-leh- |
| [verb]-စေချင်ပါတယ်။ | A wants B to [verb] | -ze-jin-ba-deh |
| — အဖေအမေနဲ့ တွေ့စေချင်တယ်။ | He wants you to meet his parents. | Āp'e-āme-néh twé-ze-jin-deh. |
| — အလည် လာစေချင်ပါတယ်။ | I'd like you to come for a visit. | Āleh la-ze-jin-ba-deh. |
| — ဘယ်နေ့ လာစေချင်သလဲ။ | What day would you like me to come? | Beh-né la-ze-jin-dhālèh? |
| ထမင်း ကျွေး- ["rice-feed"] | to give a meal, dine | t'āmìn cwè- |
| ဒုက္ခ (/ဒုတ်ခါ/) | trouble, misery, suffering | douq-k'á |
| — ဒုက္ခ ပေး- ["trouble-give"] | to inconvenience | douq-k'á pè- |
| — ဒုက္ခ ရှာ- ["trouble-look for"] | to put oneself out | douq-k'á sha- |
| — ဒုက္ခ ဖြစ်- ["trouble-arise"] | to be inconvenienced | douq-k'á p'yi- |
| အား နာ- 2 ["strength-be sore"] | to feel held back, inhibited | à na- |
| — အား မနာပါနဲ့။ | Don't feel à-na-deh. | À māna-ba-néh. |

1. The suffix -တို့ is attached to ကျွန်တော် and ကျွန်မ to mean "I and my companion, I and my family, I and my colleagues, I and my fellow countrymen" and so on — in other words, all the meanings of the English word *we*. (cānaw-dó, cāmá-dó). It is used in the same way to mean "you and your companion, you and your family" and so on (the meanings of the English word *you* plural). For this purpose it is attached to a word for "you," which, as you know, is most often a kin term or a name or a title. So "you plural" will be

ဒေါ်ဒေါ်တို့၊ အကိုတို့၊ ကိုဝင်းတင်တို့၊ ဒေါ်သန်းသန်းတို့၊ မိတ်ဆွေတို့၊ ဆရာတို့ and so on, depending on your relationship to the person you are addressing. (Daw-daw-dó, Āko-dó, Ko Wìn Tin-dó, Daw Thàn Thàn-dó, Meiq-s'we-dó, S'āya-dó)

2. To feel အား နာတယ် towards someone is to feel reluctant to do something for fear that what you are doing, or about to do, may cause trouble or offence to that person. For example, on one occasion two Burmese acquaintances came to my house in England. I was keen that they should have some fruit cake, which they had never tasted before. They resisted my offers for some time, because they felt အား နာတယ် at the prospect of depriving me of the fruit cake, and putting me to the trouble of serving it. I persisted, and eventually they gave way. They tasted a piece, and continued to eat, but very slowly, in small fragments. It became clear that they didn't like the cake at all, but were impelled to go on eating it by feelings of အား နာတယ်။ They were afraid that if they left it uneaten I would be disappointed. When challenged they admitted that this was true. So အား နာတယ် had worked twice: once to inhibit them from accepting the cake in the first place, and then to prevent them abandoning it once they had started.

Feelings of အား နာတယ် are by no means unknown in the West, but they seem to play a more prominent part in social relationships among Burmese. They are certainly more often explicitly formulated, and some Burmese even appear to take a rueful pride in what they see as a national characteristic. For a thorough examination of အား နာတယ် and its side-effects, see Sarah Bekker's article in *Contributions to Asian Studies (Essays on Burma)*, Leiden, Brill, 1973, pp. 19-37.

Example sentences

Inviting someone to visit

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| ကျွန်တော်တို့ အိမ် ¹ အလည် လာပါ။ | Come for a visit to our house. | Cānaw-dó-ein āleh la-ba. |
| ကျွန်တော်တို့ အိမ် ¹ လာလည်ပါ။ | Come and visit our house. | Cānaw-dó-ein la-leh-ba. |
| ကျွန်တော်တို့ အိမ် ¹ လာလည်စေချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want you to come and visit our house. | Cānaw-dó-ein la-leh-ze-jin-ba-deh. |
| ကျွန်တော့် အဖေအမေနဲ့ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးချင်တယ်။ | I want to introduce you to my parents. | Cānaw āp'e-āme-néh meiq-s'eq-pè-jin-deh. |
| ကျွန်တော့် အဖေအမေနဲ့ တွေ့စေချင်တယ်။ | I want you to meet my parents. | Cānaw āp'e-āme-néh twé-ze-jin-deh. |
| အိမ်မှာ ထမင်း ကျွေးချင်ပါတယ်။ | I want to give you a meal at home. | Ein-hma t'āmìn cwè-jin-ba-deh. |
| တစ်နေ့မှာ ထမင်း ကျွေးချင်ပါတယ်။ | I'd like to give you a meal one day. | Tāné-hma t'āmìn cwè-jin-ba-deh. |

1. Sometimes ကျွန်တော်တို့ဆီ (cānaw-dó-s'i), or ကျွန်မတို့ဆီ၊ ကျွန်တော့်ဆီ၊ ကျွန်မဆီ as appropriate.

Demurral and counter-demurral

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| S1: ဒုက္ခ မပေးချင်ပါဘူး။ | I don't want to give you any trouble. | Douq-k'á mǎpè-jin-ba-bù. |
| or: ဒုက္ခ မရှာပါနဲ့။ | Please don't put yourselves out. | Douq-k'á māsha-ba-néh. |
| S2: ဒုက္ခ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ | It's no trouble. | Douq-k'á mǎhouq-pa-bù. |
| or: ဒုက္ခ မဖြစ်ပါဘူး။ | There is no trouble involved. | Douq-k'á mǎp'yi-q-pa-bù. |
| S1: အား နာပါတယ်။ | I feel à-na-deh. | À na-ba-deh. |

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|------------------------|
| or: အားနာစရာ ကောင်းတယ်။ | It makes me feel à-na-deh. | À na-zăya kaùn-deh. |
| S2: အား မနာပါနဲ့။ | Please don't feel à-na-deh. | À māna-ba-néh. |
| or: အားနာစရာ မရှိပါဘူး။ | There is no cause for feeling à-na-deh. | À na-zăya māshí-ba-bù. |

အားနာစရာ means “that which generates feelings of အား နာတယ်” — just as ချစ်စရာ means “that which generates feelings of affection” (à nazăya, chiq-săya). So အားနာစရာ ကောင်းတယ် means something like “the situation is full of elements that make me feel အား နာတယ်” Likewise, အားနာစရာ မရှိပါဘူး means “there are no elements that should generate a feeling of အား နာတယ်”

Accepting the invitation

| | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| လာချင်ပါတယ်။ | I would like to come. | La-jin-ba-deh. |
| လာမယ်။ | I will come. | La-meh. |
| လာပါ့မယ်။ | I will certainly come. | La-bá-meh. |
| လာတာပေါ့။ | I'll come by all means. | La-da-báw. |

As a response to a request or invitation [verb]-ပါ့မယ် (-bá-meh, with an induced creaky tone on the -ပါ-) means not just “I will [verb],” but “I will certainly [verb]” — with a hint of “Rely on me,” “Have no fear.” In the same context, namely responding to an invitation, [verb]-တာပေါ့ (-da-báw) means something like “Of course I'll [verb],” “I'd love to [verb].”

Choosing a date and a time

| | | |
|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| ဘယ်အချိန် (or ဘယ်နေ့) လာရမလဲ။ | What time (or what day) should I come? | Beh-ăc'ei (beh-né) la-yá-mălèh? |
| ဘယ်အချိန် (or ဘယ်နေ့) လာစေချင်သလဲ။ | What time (or what day) would you like me to come? | Beh-ăc'ei (beh-né) la-ze-jin-dhălèh? |
| A ၁၂-နာရီ (or စနေနေ့) လာပါ (or လာခဲ့ပါ)။ | Come at 12 (or on Saturday). | 12-na-yi (Săne-né) la-ba, la-géh-ba. |
| B ၁၂-နာရီ (or စနေနေ့) လာနိုင်သလား။ | Can you come at 12 (or on Saturday)? | 12-na-yi (Săne-né) la-nain-dhălà? |
| C ၁၂-နာရီ (or စနေနေ့) လာလို့ ရသလား။ | Can you come at 12 (or on Saturday)? | 12-na-yi (Săne-né) la-ló yá-dhălà? |

If you are free (the answers A, B, C correspond to the questions A, B and C above)

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| B လာနိုင်ပါတယ်။ | I can come. | La-nain-ba-deh. |
| C ရပါတယ်။ | Yes, I can. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| အဲဒီအချိန် (or အဲဒီနေ့) ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | That time (or that day) is fine. | Èh-di ăc'ei (èh-di né) kaùn-ba-deh. |

If you are busy

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| အဲဒီနေ့ (အဲဒီအချိန်) မလာနိုင်ပါဘူး။ | I can't come at that time (or on that day). | Èh-di né (èh-di ăc'ei) māla-nain-ba-bù. |
| အဲဒီနေ့ (အဲဒီအချိန်) မရဘူး။ | I can't come at that time (or on that day). | Èh-di né (èh-di ăc'ei) māyá-bù. |
| အဲဒီနေ့ (အဲဒီအချိန်) မအားဘူး။ | I'm not free at that time (or on that day). | Èh-di né (èh-di ăc'ei) mǎa-bù. |

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| ချိန်းထားတာ ရှိတယ်။ | I have a previous appointment. C'eìn-t'à-da shí-deh. |
| | [ချိန်း- or ချိန်းထား- = "to make an appointment"] |
| သွားစရာ ရှိတယ်။ | I have to go somewhere. Thwà-zāya shí-deh. |
| လုပ်စရာ ရှိတယ်။ | I have to do something. Louq-sāya shí-deh. |

You read above that [verb]-စရာ means "that which generates feelings of [verb]" (-zāya, -sāya). This is true of verbs expressing emotion or states of mind. The same suffix -စရာ, when attached to verbs expressing actions, means "that which has to be [verbed]" (less frequently "that which can be [verbed]"). Hence လုပ်စရာ "that which has to be done," and သွားစရာ "that which has to be gone."

Concluding the arrangement

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| ဒီလိုဆို စနေနေ့ ၅-နာရီ လာခဲ့ပါ။ | In that case, come over at five on Saturday. | Di-lo-s'o Sāne-né ngà-na-yi la-géh-ba. |
| ဒီလိုဆို ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ ၁၀-နာရီ လာခဲ့မယ်။ | In that case, I'll come over at 10 on Wednesday. | Di-lo-s'o Bouq-dāhù-né s'eh-na-yi la-géh-meh. |

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S1 and S2 have just met each other and have had a short conversation.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S1: ကဲ။ စကားပြောလို့ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | Well then. It's been good talking to you. | Kèh. Sàgà pyàw-ló kaùn-ba-deh. |
| အခုတော့ လေးနာရီ ရှိပြီ။ အိမ် ပြန်ပါအုံးမယ်။ | Now it's four o'clock. I'm going to go home. | Āk'ú-dáw lè-na-yi shí-bi. Ein pyan-ba-oùn-meh. |
| S2: အို။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ကျွန်တော်တို့ နှစ်ယောက် နောက်ထပ် ဘယ်တော့ တွေ့နိုင်ကြမလဲ။ | Oh. All right. When can we two meet again? | O. Kaùn-ba-bi. Cānaw-dó hnāyauq nauq-t'aq beh-dáw twé-nain-já-mālèh? |
| S1: ကျွန်တော့် မိသားစုနဲ့ တွေ့စေချင်ပါတယ်။ ကျွန်တော်တို့ အိမ် လာလည်ပါအုံးလား။ | I'd like you to meet my family. Why don't you come and visit our house? | Cānaw mí-dhà-zú-néh twé-ze-jin-ba-deh. Cānaw-dó ein la-leh-ba-oùn-là? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါတယ်။ လာလည်ချင်ပါတယ်။ | That's good. I'd like to. | Kaùn-ba-deh. La-leh-jin-ba-deh. |
| S1: အိမ်မှာ ကျွန်တော်တို့ ထမင်း ကျွေးမယ်။ | We'll give you a meal at home. | Ein-hma cānaw-dó t'āmìn cwè-meh. |
| S2: အော်။ ဒုက္ခ မရှာပါနဲ့။ | Oh. Please don't put yourself out. | Aw. Douq-k'á māsha-ba-néh. |
| S1: ဒုက္ခ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ လာပါ။ | It's no trouble. Do come. | Douq-k'á māhouq-pa-bù. La-ba. |
| S2: အားနာစရာ ကောင်းတယ်။ | It makes me feel à-na-deh. | À na-zāya kaùn-deh. |
| S1: အားနာစရာ မရှိပါဘူး။ အား မနာပါနဲ့။ | There's no cause for feeling à-na-deh. | À na-zāya māshí-ba-bù. |
| တကယ် လာစေချင်လို့ပါ။ ¹ | Please don't feel à-na-deh. [I ask you] because I really want you to come. | À māna-ba-néh. Tāgeh la-ze-jin-ló-ba. |
| S2: ဒီလိုဆို ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ လာပါမယ်။ | Well in that case, thank you. I'll certainly come. | Di-lo-s'o cè-zù tin-ba-deh. La-bá-meh. |

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S1: မနက်ဖန်ည လာလို့ ရသလား။ | Could you come tomorrow evening? | Māneq-p'an nyá la-ló yá-dhālà? |
| S2: မနက်ဖန်ည မရဘူး။ | I can't manage tomorrow evening. | Māneq-p'an nyá mǎyá-bù. |
| ချိန်ထားတာ ရှိတယ်။ | I have something booked. | C'eìn-t'à-da shí-deh. |
| S1: ဒီလိုဆို သန့်ဘက်ခါ လာနိုင်မလား။ | In that case could you come the day after tomorrow? | Di-lo-s'o thābeq-k'a la-nain-mālà? |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ အားပါတယ်။ | Yes, I could. I am free. | Yá-ba-deh. À-ba-deh. |
| ဘယ်အချိန် လာစေချင်သလဲ။ | What time would you like me to come? | Beh-āc'ein la-ze-jin-dhālèh? |
| S1: အို။ ၅-နာရီ ၆-နာရီလောက် လာခဲ့ပါလား။ | Oh, why not come around 5 or 6? | O. Ngà-na-yi c'auq-na-yi-lauq la-géh-ba-là? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| အိမ်က ဘယ်နားမှာလဲ။ | Whereabouts is your house? | Ein-gá beh-nà-hma-lèh? |
| S1: ဗိုလ်ချုပ်လမ်းမှာပါ။ | In Bogyoke Street. | Bo-jouq Làn-hma-ba. |
| နံပါတ်-၇၈။ | N° 78. | Nan-baq-78. |
| လာလို့ ရတယ် မဟုတ်လား။ | You will be able to get there, won't you? | La-ló yá-deh, mǎhouq-là? |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ | Yes, I will. | Yá-ba-deh. |
| လာတတ်ပါတယ်။ | I know how to get there. | La-da-q-pa-deh. |
| မဝေးပါဘူး။ | It's not far. | Mǎwè-ba-bù. |
| S1: ဒီလိုဆို သန့်ဘက်ခါ အိမ်မှာပဲ စောင့်နေမယ်။ | In that case we'll wait for you at the house the day after tomorrow. | Di-lo-s'o thābeq-k'a ein-hma-bèh saún-ne-meh. |
| S2: လာပါ့မယ်။ စိတ်ချပါ။ | I'll be there. Have no fear. | La-bá-meh. Seiq c'á-ba. |
| S1: သွားမယ်နော်။ | Goodbye. | Thwà-meh-naw? |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | Goodbye. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |

1. တကယ် လာစေချင်လို့ပါ။ “[I ask you] because I really want you to come.” In Burmese you often leave out the part of the sentence that corresponds to “I do this” or “it is” in *because* sentences. Here are some more examples:

- Shopkeeper: ဘာ လိုချင်ပါသလဲ ခင်ဗျာ။ What would you like?
Customer: ကော်ဖီမှုန့် ဝယ်ချင်လို့ပါ။ [I'm here] because I want to buy some instant coffee.
- Burman: ဗမာစကား ဘာဖြစ်လို့ သင်နေတာလဲ။ Why are you learning Burmese?
Student: ဗမာပြည် သွားချင်လို့ပါ။ [I'm learning] because I want to go to Burma.
- Visitor: ခွင့်ပြုပါအုံး။ သွားစရာ ရှိလို့ပါ။ Please excuse me. [I'm leaving] because I have to go somewhere.
- Foreigner: ဦးလေး။ Excuse me.
Burman: ဗျာ။ Yes?
Foreigner: ကျနော် တစ်ခု မေးချင်လို့ပါ။ [I accost you] because I'd like to ask you something.
- Host: စားပါအုံး။ Have some more.
Guest: တော်ပါပြီ။ များများ မစားနိုင်လို့ပါ။ No thank you. [I decline] because I can't eat a lot.
- Householder: ဘာကိစ္စပါလဲ။ What have you come for?
Caller: ဦးစိန်နဲ့ တွေ့ချင်လို့ပါ။ [I came] because I wanted to see U Sein.

For the Practice Dialogues

Imagine that each Practice Dialogue is taking place as a result of a chance encounter in a market or a café in Rangoon, and that the speakers are a Burmese resident of Rangoon and a foreign visitor.

Dialogue 1. Ko Win Pe and Ko Peter

Dialogue 2. Ma Nweh Nweh and Ko Bob

Dialogue 3. Ko Aung and Ma Mary

In the classroom. Use engagement diaries, as outlined for Dialogues 2.11.



Exercise for written answer

Fill in the gaps in the following dialogue.

1. S1: တစ်နေ့မှာ ကျွန်တော်တို့ဆီ လာလည်...ချင်ပါတယ်။
2. S2: ကျေးဇူးပဲ။ ...ချင်ပါတယ်။
3. S1: ကောင်းတယ်။ ကျွန်တော်တို့ ထမင်း ...မယ်။
4. S2: အော်။ ဒုက္ခ မ...ပါနဲ့။
5. S1: ဒုက္ခ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ ... မနာပါနဲ့။
6. S1: ...နေ့ လာနိုင်မလဲ။
7. S2: ဘယ်နေ့ လာစေ...သလဲ။
8. S1: ...ဘက်ခါ အားလား။
9. S2: ည...။
10. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ည ၆-...လောက်။
11. S2: အားပါ...။
12. S1: ဒီလိုဆို အဲဒီအချိန်မှာပဲ လာ...ပါ။
13. S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ လာ...မယ်။
14. S2: ... ပေးပါအုံး။
15. S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကျွန်တော်တို့ ...က အမှတ်-၆၀၊ ရွှေဘုံသာလမ်းပါ။
16. S1: ရွှေဘုံသာလမ်း သိတယ် မ...လား။

KEY

စေ
လာ
ကျေး
ရှာ
အား
ဘယ်
ချင်
သန်
လား
နာရီ
တယ်
ခဲ
ပါ
လိပ်စာ
အိမ်
ဟုတ်

17. S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်း... သိတယ်။
 18. S2: ခဏခဏ ရောက်...ပါတယ်။
 19. S1: ဒီလိုဆို သန်ဘက်ခါ ...ကြအုံးမယ်နော်။
 20. S2: လာပါ့မယ်။ စိတ်...ပါ။

ကောင်း
 ဖူး
 တွေ့
 ချ

LEVEL 5, TOPIC 12

MAKING A PHONE CALL

New words

| | | |
|--|---|--------------------------------|
| [name]-ပါလား။ | Is that [name]? | -ba-là? |
| [place]-ကပါလား။ | Are you from [place]? Is that [place]? | -gá-ba-là? |
| Both the above are forms of words often used when you are making a phone call. Someone at the other end picks up the phone and says ဟလို or ဟုတ်ကဲ့, so you say (according to context) — | | |
| —ဦးစိန်ပါလား။ | Is that U Sein? | Ù Sein-ba-là? |
| —သံတမန်ကုန်တိုက်ကပါလား။ | Is that the Diplomatic Store? | Than-dāman Koun-daiq-ká-ba-là? |
| | [“Are you from the Diplomatic Store?”] | |
| —ဦးစိန်တို့အိမ်ကပါလား။ | Is that the U Sein family’s house? | Ù Sein-dó ein-gá-ba-là? |
| | [“Are you from the U Sein family’s house?”] | |
| မှား- | to be wrong | hmà- |
| —နံပါတ် မှားနေတယ်။ | The number is wrong. | Nan-baq hmà-ne-deh. |
| | You’ve got the wrong number. | |
| ထင်- | to appear, to think, to suspect | t’in- |
| —နံပါတ် မှားနေတယ် ထင်တယ်။ | I think you’ve got the | Nan-baq hmà-ne-deh t’in-deh. |
| | wrong number. | |
| လှည့်- / လဲ- | to turn, to dial (on the phone) | hléh- |
| —နံပါတ် လှည့်တယ်။ | I dialled the number. | Nan-baq hléh-deh. |
| —နံပါတ် အလှည့် မှားတယ်။ | I dialled the wrong number. | Nan-baq ähléh hmà-deh. |
| | [“number-dialling was wrong”] | |
| ပြန်ရောက်- | to get back, to arrive back | pyan-yauq- |
| —အိမ် ပြန်မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ | He hasn’t yet got back home. | Ein pyan-māyauq-thè-ba-bù. |
| [time]-မှ | only [at time] | -hmá |
| —၆-နာရီမှ ပြန်ရောက်မယ်။ | He will only get back at 6. | C’auq-na-yi-hmá pyan-yauq-meh. |
| | [= He won’t get back till 6] | |
| —နောက်မှ ပြောမယ်။ | I will tell you only later. | Nauq-hmá pyàw-meh. |
| | [= I won’t tell you till later] | |
| မှတ်မိ- | to remember, recall | hmaq-mí- |
| —နာမည် မမှတ်မိပါဘူး။ | I don’t remember his name. | Nan-meh mähmaq-mí-ba-bù. |
| [noun]-ကို ¹ | [shows that [noun] is the object of the verb] | -go, -ko |
| —ဦးဝင်းကို မှတ်မိသလား။ | Do you remember U Win? | Ù Wìn-go hmaq-mí-dhālà? |
| —ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ကို ကြည့်နေတယ်။ | I was watching Auntie. | Daw Dáw-go cí-ne-deh. |
| ဧည့်ခံပွဲ / အခန်းခွဲ- | reception [“visitor-receive-party”] | éh-k’an-bwèh |
| [verb]-တဲ့အခါ ² | when [verb] [“[verb]-relative-time”] | -déh-āk’a |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| —မဝိုင်း အိမ်ပြန်ရောက်တဲ့အခါ ပြောမယ်။ | When Ma Waing gets back home I'll tell her. | Má Wain ein pyan-yauq-téh-āk'a pyàw-meh. |
| —ဆရာတို့ဆီ လာလည်တဲ့အခါ တွေ့တယ်။ | I met her when I came to visit you. | S'äya-dó-s'i la-leh-déh-āk'a twé-deh. |
| ဝင်း: | ("you" meaning Teacher and family). | |
| —တက္ကသိုလ်ဝင်း: | enclosure, grounds, precincts | wìn |
| [place]-ထဲမှာ | the university campus | teq-kātho-wìn |
| —အိမ်ထဲမှာ | inside [place] | -t'èh-hma, -dèh-hma |
| —တက္ကသိုလ်ဝင်းထဲမှာ | inside the house, indoors | ein-dèh-hma |
| ကူညီ- | in the university campus | teq-kātho-wìn-dèh-hma |
| —အကူအညီ | to help | ku-nyi- |
| —အကူအညီ ပေး- | help, assistance | āku-ānyi |
| —ဘယ်လို အကူအညီ ပေးနိုင်မလဲ။ | to give help, be of help | āku-ānyi pè- |
| လို- | How can I be of assistance? | Beh-lo āku-ānyi pè-yá-mālèh? |
| —အကူအညီ လိုသလား။ | to need, be necessary; to be lacking | lo- |
| —ထမင်း ကျွေးဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။ | Do they need any help? | Āku-ānyi lo-dhālà? |
| —ပိုက်ဆံ ပေးဖို့ လိုသလား။ | You don't need to give me a meal. | T'āmìn cwè-bó mǎlo-ba-bù. |
| လာ-[verb] | Is it necessary to pay? | Paiq-s'an pè-bó lo-dhālà? |
| ခေါ်- | to come and [verb] | la- |
| —ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်မယ်။ | to fetch, bring (also to call) | k'aw- |
| —ကားနဲ့ ခေါ်ဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။ | I'll come and fetch you by car. | Kà-néh la-k'aw-meh. |
| [phrase]-တောင် | You don't need to fetch me by car. | Kà-néh la-k'aw-bó mǎlo-ba-bù. |
| —မိနစ်-၃၀-တောင် | even, as much as | -daun, -taun |
| စောင့်နေရတယ်။ | [more than you thought or might have expected] | |
| —တစ်လ ငါးရာတောင် မရဘူး။ | We had to wait as much as | Mí-niq-30-daun |
| | 30 minutes. | saún-ne-yá-deh. |
| | They don't even get as much | Tǎlá ngà-ya-daun mǎyá-bù. |
| | as K500 a month. | |

1. -ကို is a suffix with several functions. One of them is to mark a noun as the direct object of the verb, as in the example above. You have come all this way without having had to use [noun]-ကို, which shows how little you need it. As a rule, you use it when there might be some ambiguity: without -ကို the example sentence could mean either "Do you remember U Win?" or "Does U Win remember?" Take care to avoid forcing in a -ကို when it isn't needed. Notice that when you suffix -ကို to a word ending in a low tone, the low tone is changed to a creak (like the change for possessive — 's: see the note in 1.10A):

ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ကို ကြည့်နေတယ်။ I was looking at Auntie. Daw-dáw-go cí-ne-deh.

2. [verb]-တဲ့အခါ is in many cases interchangeable with [verb]-ရင် (-yin). The main differences are —

- (a) that [verb]-တဲ့အခါ is unambiguously concerned with time only ("when [verb]"), whereas [verb]-ရင် is used for both time and condition ("when [verb]" and "if [verb]"); and
- (b) [verb]-တဲ့အခါ is used about both future and past events (as in the two examples above), whereas [verb]-ရင် (when it means "when [verb]") is more restricted to future events.

For reference: some other phrases you may need when phoning (not practised on the tape)

ဖုန်း ချ- to put down the receiver, to hang up p'òun c'á-
 —ဖုန်း ချလိုက်တော့မယ်နော်။ I'll hang up then: OK? P'òun c'á-laiq-táw-meh-naw?
 —ဖုန်း မချနဲ့နော်။ Don't ring off, will you? Stay connected. P'òun mǎc'á-néh-naw?

Sample Dialogue

Scene: S2 telephones S1.

Phone call 1

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S1 (man's voice): ဟလို။ | Hallo. | Hǎlo. |
| S2: ဦးစိန်ပါလား။ | Is that U Sein? | Ù Sein-ba-là? |
| S1: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No. | Mǎhouq-pa-bù, K'in-bya. |
| ဒီအိမ်မှာ ဦးစိန် မရှိပါဘူး။ | There's no U Sein in this house. | Dí ein-hma Ù Sein mǎshí-ba-bù. |
| နံပါတ် မှားနေတယ် | I think you have the | Nan-baq hmà-ne-deh, |
| ထင်တယ်။ | wrong number. | t'in-deh. |
| S2: ဒါက ၆၀၈၅၆ မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။ | Isn't that 60856? | Da-gá 60856 mǎhouq-p'ù-là? |
| S1: မဟုတ်ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | No. | Mǎhouq-pa-bù, K'in-bya. |
| ၆၉၈၅၆-ပါ။ | It's 69856. | 69856-pa. |
| S2: အို။ ဆောရီပဲ။ | Oh. I'm sorry. | O. S'àw-rì-bèh. |
| နံပါတ်အလှည့် မှားလို့ပါ။ | I misdialled. | Nan-baq āhléh hmà-ló-ba. |
| S1: ရပါတယ်။ | That's all right. | Yá-ba-deh. |

Phone call 2

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| S1 (woman's voice): ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes? | Houq-kéh? |
| S2: ဒါက ဦးစိန်တို့အိမ်ကပါလား။ | Is that U Sein's house? | Da-gá Ù Sein-dó ein-gá-ba-là? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်ရှင်။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh, Shin. |
| S2: ဦးစိန်နဲ့ စကားပြောချင်လို့ပါ။ | I'd like to speak to U Sein, | Ù Sein-néh sāgà pyàw-jin-ló-ba. |
| အိမ်မှာ ရှိလား။ | please. | |
| S1: ခုတော့ မရှိပါဘူး ရှင်။ | Is he at home? | Ein-hma shí-là? |
| အိမ် ပြန်မရောက်သေးပါဘူး။ | He's not here at the moment. | K'ú-dáw mǎshí-ba-bù, Shin. |
| S2: ဘယ်အချိန် ပြန်ရောက်မလဲ | He hasn't got back home yet. | Ein pyan-mǎyauq-thè-ba-bù. |
| မသိဘူး။ | Could you tell me ¹ when he | Beh āc'ein pyan-yauq-mǎlèh |
| S1: ငါးနာရီခွဲလောက်မှ | might get back? | mǎthí-bù? |
| ပြန်ရောက်ပါလိမ့်မယ်။ | He probably won't be back | Ngà-na-yi-gwèh-lauq-hmá |
| S2: အော်။ ဒီလိုဆို နောက်မှ | till ² about 5.30. | pyan-yauq-pa-lein-meh. |
| ထပ်ဆက်မယ်။ | Oh. In that case I'll phone | Aw. Di-lo-s'ò nauq-hmá |
| S1: ကောင်းပါပြီ ရှင်။ | again later. | t'aq-s'eq-meh. |
| ဒါပဲလား။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi, Shin. |
| S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ | Is that all? | Da-bèh-là? |
| | Yes. | Da-ba-bèh. |

Phone call 3

| | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| S1 (female voice): ဟလို။ | Hallo? | Hǎlo? |
| S2: ဒါ ဦးစိန်တို့အိမ်ကပါလား။ | Is that U Sein's house? | Da Ù Sein-dó ein-gá-ba-là? |
| S1: ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ရှင်။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh, Shin. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S2: ဦးစိန် အိမ်ပြန်ရောက်ပြီလားမသိဘူး။ | Could you tell me ¹ if U Sein has got back yet? | Ù Sein ein pyan-yauq-pi-là mǎthí-bù? |
| S1: ရောက်ပါပြီ။ သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။ ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။ | Yes, he has. I'll go and fetch him for you. Who should I say is calling? | Yauq-pa-bi. Thwà-k'aw-pè-meh. Beh-dhu s'eq-teh-ló pyàw-yá-mǎlèh? |
| S2: ကျနော်နာမည်က ရောဂျာပါ။ | My name is Roger. | Cǎnaw nan-meh-gá Roger-ba. |
| S1: ရောဂျာ။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ခဏ ကိုင်ထားပါနော်။ | Roger. Right. Please hold on a moment. | Roger. Kaùn-ba-bi. K'ǎnǎ kain-t'à-ba-naw? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| <i>Sounds of footsteps, distant shouts and the like.</i> | | |
| S3 (male voice): ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ခင်ဗျာ။ | Yes? | Houq-kéh, K'in-bya? |
| S2: ဒါ ဦးစိန်ပါလား။ | Is that U Sein? | Da Ù Sein-ba-là? |
| S3: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကျနော် ဦးစိန် စကားပြောနေပါတယ်။ | Yes. This is me U Sein speaking. | Houq-kéh. |
| S2: အော်။ ဦးစိန်။ ကျနော်က ရောဂျာပါ။ ကျနော့်ကို မှတ်မိမလားမသိဘူး။ | Oh, U Sein. This is Roger. I don't know if you'll remember me. | Cǎnaw Ù Sein sǎgà pyàw-ne-ba-deh. Aw. Ù Sein. Cǎnaw-gá Roger-ba. Cǎnaw-go hmaq-mí-mǎlà mǎthí-bù? |
| S3: နာမည် ကောင်းကောင်း မမှတ်မိပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ ဘယ်က လာတာလဲ။ | I don't remember the name exactly. Where are you from? | Nan-meh kaùn-gaùn mǎhmaq-mí-ba-bù, K'in-bya. Beh-gá la-da-lèh? |
| S2: ဦးစိန်နဲ့ ကျနော် လန်ဒန်မှာ တွေ့ခဲ့ပါတယ်။ မြန်မာသံရုံး ဧည့်ခံပွဲမှာ။ ဦးစိန်က ကျနော် ဗမာပြည် ရောက်တဲ့အခါ ဖုန်း ဆက်ဖို့ ပြောလို့ အခု ဖုန်းဆက်တာပါ။ | I met you back in London. At a Burmese Embassy reception. I'm phoning now because you told me to phone you when I got to Burma. | Ù Sein-néh cǎnaw Lan-dan-hma twé-géh-ba-deh. Myan-ma Than-yoùn éh-k'an-bwèh-hma. Ù Sein-gá cǎnaw Bǎma-pye yauq-téh-ǎk'a p'òun s'eq-p'ó pyàw-ló ǎk'ú p'òun s'eq-ta-ba. |
| S3: အော်။ မှတ်မိပါတယ်။ ဗမာဗုဒ္ဓဘာသာ လေ့လာဖို့ လာတာ မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။ | Oh, I remember. You're here to study Burmese Buddhism, aren't you? | Aw. Hmaq-mí-ba-deh. Bǎma Bouq-dá-ba-dha lé-la-bó la-da mǎhouq-p'ù-là? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ပါတယ်။ | Yes. | Houq-pa-deh. |
| S3: ဆောရီးပဲဗျာ။ နာမည် မမှတ်မိလို့ပါ။ ဗမာပြည် ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်သလဲ။ | I'm sorry. I didn't remember your name. When did you get to Burma? | S'àw-rì-bèh, Bya. Nan-meh mǎhmaq-mí-ló-ba. Bǎma-pye beh-dòun-gá yauq-thǎlèh? |
| S2: ရောက်တာ ၂-ရက် ရှိပြီ။ | I've been here two days. | Yauq-ta hnǎyeq shí-bi. |
| S3: အော်။ ဘယ်မှာ တဲနေလဲ။ | Oh. Where are you staying? | Aw. Beh-hma tèh-ne-lèh? |
| S2: နိုင်ငံခြားသားများ ကျောင်းဆောင်မှာပါ။ | At the Foreign Students' Hostel. | Nain-ngan-jà-dhà-myà Caùn-zaun-hma-ba. |
| S3: အဲဒါ ဘယ်နားမှာလဲ။ | Whereabouts is that? | Èh-da beh-nà-hma-lèh? |
| S2: သထုံလမ်းမှာ။ တက္ကသိုလ်ဝင်းထဲမှာ။ | In Thaton Road. In the university campus. | Thǎt'oun Làn-hma. Teq-kǎtho-wìn-dèh-hma. |
| S3: အော်။ အဲဒီမှာ နေရတာ အဆင် ပြေရဲ့လား။ | Oh. Is it all right staying there? | Aw. Èh-di-hma ne-yá-da ǎs'in pye-yéh-là? |

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S2: ပြေပါတယ်။ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ | Yes. It's good. | Pye-ba-deh. Kaùn-ba-deh. |
| S3: ကောင်းတယ်။ | Good. | Kaùn-deh. |
| ဒီတော့ ကျနော် ဘယ်လို အကူအညီ ပေးရမလဲ။ | So how can I help you? | Di-dáw cǎnaw beh-lo ǎku-ǎnyi pè-yá-mǎlèh? |
| S2: ကျေးဇူးပဲ ဦးစိန်။ | Thank you, U Sein. | Cè-zù-bèh, ù Sein. |
| လောလောဆယ်တော့ အကူအညီ မလိုသေးပါဘူး။ | But for the time being I don't need any help yet. | Làw-làw-zeh-dáw ǎku-ǎnyi mǎlo-dhè-ba-bù. |
| S3: လိုရင် ပြောနော်။ | If you do, tell me, won't you? | Lo-yin pyàw-naw? |
| အဲဒီအဆောင်မှာ ရော်ဂျာဆီ ဖုန်း ဆက်လို့ ရသလား။ | Can you be phoned at that hostel? | Èh-di ǎs'aun-hma Roger-s'i p'òun s'eq-ló yá-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ရပါတယ်။ ဖုန်း ရှိပါတယ်။ | Yes. There is a phone. | Yá-ba-deh. P'òun shí-ba-deh. |
| S3: နံပါတ် ပေးပါအုံး။ | Give me the number. | Nan-baq pè-ba-oùn. |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ | Yes. | Houq-kéh. |
| နံပါတ်က ၃၀၆၁၅-ပါ။ | The number is 30615. | Nan-baq-ká 30615-ba. |
| S3: ၃၀၆၁၅။ ကဲ၊ | 30615. Well then. | 30615. Kèh. |
| ဘယ်တော့ တွေ့နိုင်မလဲ။ | When can we meet? | Beh-dáw twé-nain-mǎlèh? |
| အိမ် လာလည်ပါအုံးလား။ | Why don't you come and visit the house? | Ein la-leh-ba-oùn-là? |
| S2: လာတာပေါ့။ | By all means. | La-da-báw. |
| S3: ဘယ်တော့ အချိန် ပေးနိုင်မလဲ။ | When could you spare the time? | Beh-dáw ǎc'ain pè-nain-mǎlèh? |
| ဂနွေည လာလို့ ရသလား။ | Could you come tonight? | Gǎné-nyá la-ló yá-dhǎlà? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ရပါတယ်။ | Yes, I could. | Houq-kéh. Yá-ba-deh. |
| အားပါတယ်။ | I am free. | À-ba-deh. |
| S3: ဒီလိုဆို ၅-နာရီလောက်မှာ အဆောင်မှာပဲ စောင့်နေပါ။ | In that case, wait for me at the hostel at about 5. | Di-lo-s'o ngà-na-yi-lauq-hma ǎs'aun-hma-bèh saún-ne-ba. |
| ကျနော် ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်မယ်။ | I'll come and fetch you by car. | Cǎnaw kà-néh la-k'aw-meh. |
| S2: အော်။ ဒုက္ခ မပေးချင်ပါဘူး ဦးစိန်။ | Oh, I don't want to put you to any trouble, U Sein. | Aw. Douq-k'á mǎpè-jin-ba-bù, ù Sein |
| ကျနော် ဦးစိန်ဆီ တက်စိန် လာလို့ ရပါတယ်။ | I can come to your house by taxi. | Cǎnaw ù Sein-s'i teq-si-néh la-ló yá-ba-deh. |
| S3: ဒုက္ခ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်ရတာ ဆယ်မိနစ်တောင် မကြာပါဘူး။ | It's no trouble. It won't take us as much as 10 minutes to come and fetch you in the car. | Douq-k'á mǎhouq-pa-bù. Kà-néh la-k'aw-yáda s'eh-mǎniq-taun mǎca-ba-bù. |
| အား မနာပါနဲ့။ | Don't feel à-na-deh. | À mǎna-ba-néh. |
| S2: ကောင်းပါပြီ။ | All right. | Kaùn-ba-bi. |
| ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ | Thank you. | Cè-zù tin-ba-deh. |
| S3: ဒီတော့ ဂနွေည တွေ့မယ်။ | In that case we'll meet this evening. | Di-dáw gǎné-nyá twé-meh. |
| ဒါပဲနော်။ | That's all, isn't it? | Da-bèh-naw? |
| S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဒါပါပဲ။ | Yes, that's all. | Houq-kéh. Da-ba-bèh. |

1. Literally "I don't know when ... ?"

2. Literally "He will be back only at about ..."

For the Practice Dialogues

Follow the Prompt.

Dialogue 1. Imagine that you are in Burma, and want to phone a lady called Daw Mya on 63215.

Dialogue 2. In Burma again. You are calling U Tin on 21864.

Dialogue 3. In Burma. You are Vanessa, calling Daw Khin Nu.

Dialogue 4. You are an American visiting Burma, and you want to get in touch with a Daw Khin Yi who you met when she was in Boston. Your name is Bob.

Dialogue 5. You are from England, visiting Burma. Back in England you met Dr. Tin Tun who told you to contact his older brother U Zaw Win when you got to Burma. His phone number is 81437. Your name is Michael.

Dialogue 6. Imagine you are living in DeKalb, Illinois, doing some teaching, and enjoying the facilities of the Center for Burma Studies, as well as the company of its members, when one day the phone rings. Your name is Jim.

Exercise for written answer

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Burmese. You will need to use [verb]-တဲ့အခါ၊ [verb]-ရင်၊ [verb]-လို့၊ and [verb]-ဖို့။ Each suffix appears in two of the sentences.

1. I have met him, when Ko Khin came and fetched us by car.
2. If Ko Khin comes and fetches us by car we'll get there at about 6.
3. We didn't have to walk, because Ko Khin came and fetched us by car.
4. It's not necessary for Ko Khin to come and fetch us by car.
5. When you went to Burma did you get to Sagaing?
6. If you go to Burma, go and visit my uncle and his family.
7. Because I went to Burma I was able to study Burmese Buddhism.
8. I have arranged to go to Burma.

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

- ၁။ ကိုခင် ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်တဲ့အခါ တွေ့ဖူးပါတယ်။
- ၂။ ကိုခင် ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်ရင် ၆-နာရီလောက် ရောက်မယ်။
- ၃။ ကိုခင် ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်လို့ လမ်း မလျှောက်ရပါဘူး။
- ၄။ ကိုခင် ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်ဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။
- ၅။ ဗမာပြည် သွားတဲ့အခါ စစ်ကိုင်း ရောက်ခဲ့သလား။
- ၆။ ဗမာပြည် သွားရင် ကျမဦးလေးတို့ဆီ သွားလည်ပါ။
- ၇။ ဗမာပြည် သွားလို့ မြန်မာဗုဒ္ဓဘာသာ လေ့လာလို့ ရပါတယ်။
- ၈။ ဗမာပြည် သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိပါတယ်။

Ex. 2. Translate the following dialogues into Burmese. Imagine that they take place over the phone.

Dialogue 1 (S2 is female)

S1: Hallo.

S2: Is that the Daw Aye Kyi family's house?

S1: Yes (+ tag).

KEY TO THE WRITTEN EXERCISE

ဟလို
ဒေါ်အေးကြည်တို့အိမ်ကပါလား။
ဟုတ်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။

S2: [I'm phoning] because I'd like to speak to Daw Aye Kyi.

S1: She's not at home at the moment (+ tag).

S1: She went out for short time.

S2: Do you know about when she will get back?

S1: I think she'll get back at about 12.

S1: Why don't you phone again after 12?

S2: All right. Thanks.

ဒေါ်အေးကြည်နဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်လို့ပါ။

ခု အိမ်မှာ မရှိပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။

ခဏ အပြင် ထွက်သွားပါတယ်။

ဘယ်တော့လောက် ပြန်ရောက်မလဲ သိလား။

၁၂-လောက် ပြန်ရောက်မယ် ထင်တယ်။

၁၂-နာရီနောက်ပိုင်း ထပ်ဆက်ပါလား။

ကောင်းပါပြီ။ ကျေးဇူးပဲ။

Dialogue 2 (S2 is male)

S3: Hallo.

S2: Is that Daw Aye Kyi?

S3: No (+ tag).

S3: There is no Daw Aye Kyi in this house.

S3: What number did you dial?

S2: 30432.

S3: This house is 30342.

S2: Oh, sorry.

S2: [It was] because I misdialled the number.

S3: Never mind.

ဟလို။

ဒေါ်အေးကြည်ကပါလား။

မဟုတ်ပါဘူး ရှင်။

ဒီအိမ်မှာ ဒေါ်အေးကြည် မရှိပါဘူး။

ဘယ်နံပါတ် လှည့်တာလဲ။

၃၀၄၃၂-ပါ။

ဒီအိမ်က ၃၀၃၄၂-ပါ။

အော်။ ဆောရီပဲ။

နံပါတ် အလှည့် မှားသွားလို့ပါ။

ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။

Dialogue 3

S4: Yes. Please speak (+ tag).

S2: Is that Daw Aye Kyi's house?

S4: Yes (+ tag).

S4: Do you want to speak to Daw Aye Kyi?

S2: Yes.

S4: Please hold on a moment.

S4: I'll go and fetch her.

S4: Who should I say is calling?

S2: It's Holmes.

S4: I can't hear you very well (+ tag).

S4: Please speak up.

S2: My name is Holmes.

S4: Home. Fine.

S4: I'll go and fetch her.

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အမိန့် ရှိပါ ခင်ဗျာ။

ဒေါ်အေးကြည်တို့အိမ်ကပါလား။

ဟုတ်ပါတယ် ခင်ဗျာ။

ဒေါ်အေးကြည်နဲ့ စကား ပြောချင်လား။

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။

ခဏ ကိုင်ထားပါ။

ကျနော် သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။

ဘယ်သူ ဆက်တယ်လို့ ပြောရမလဲ။

Holmes-ပါ။

ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားရပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။

ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောပါ။

ကျနော် နာမည်က Holmes-ပါ။

ဟဲ့။ ကောင်းပါပြီ။

သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။

Dialogue 4

S5: Yes? This is Daw Aye Kyi speaking.

S2: Is that you, Daw Aye Kyi?

S2: My name is Holmes.

S2: In 1986 you came to visit me.

S2: You came and met me at home because you needed some help.

S2: Do you remember?

S5: Yes. I remember it well.

S2: I have now come to Burma.

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အေးကြည် စကားပြောနေပါတယ်။

ဒေါ်အေးကြည်လား။

ကျနော် နာမည်က Holmes-ပါ။

၁၉၈၆-ခုနှစ်မှာ ကျနော်ဆီ လာလည်တယ်။

အကူအညီ လိုလို့ အိမ်မှာ လာတွေ့တယ်။ မှတ်မိသလား။

ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ကောင်းကောင်း မှတ်မိပါတယ်။

ကျနော် အခု ဗမာပြည် ရောက်နေပါတယ်။

S2: I would like to meet you because I have some business with you.

S2: Where could I meet you?

S5: You can come and meet me at my home, Mr. Holmes.

S5: I'll come and fetch you by car.

S5: Where are you staying at the moment?

S2: It is not necessary to come and fetch me by car.

S2: I know how to come.

S2: Can I come now?

S5: Yes, you can.

S2: In that case I'll get to your place in about 15 minutes' time.

S5: Hold on. I'll give you the address.

S2: That is not necessary. I know your address.

S2: I'll come round now. All right?

S5: All right.

S5: Is that all?

S2: That is all.

ကိစ္စ ရှိလို့ ဒေါ်အေးကြည်နဲ့ တွေ့ချင်ပါတယ်။
ဘယ်မှာ တွေ့နိုင်မလဲ။

ကျမ အိမ်မှာ လာတွေ့နိုင်ပါတယ် Mr. Holmes။
ကျမ ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်မယ်။
အခု ဘယ်မှာ တဲနေသလဲ။

ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်ဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။
ကျနော် လာတတ်ပါတယ်။
အခု လာလို့ ရသလား။
ရပါတယ်။

ဒီလိုဆို ၁၅-မိနစ် ကြာရင်
ဒေါ်အေးကြည်တို့ဆီ ရောက်မယ်။
နေပါအုံး။ လိပ်စာ ပေးမယ်။
မလိုပါဘူး။ လိပ်စာ သိပါတယ်။
အခု လာခဲ့မယ်နော်။
ကောင်းပါပြီ ရှင်။
ဒါပဲလား။
ဒါပါပဲ။

★ အသက်သွေးချွေး စဉ်မနှေး ပေးဆပ်သည်မှာ တပ်မတော်ပါ။

NEVER HESITATING, ALWAYS READY TO SACRIFICE BLOOD AND SWEAT IS THE TATMADAW.

★ သူ့ကျွန်မခံ တို့တွန်းလွန် လက်ပါးစေ့မှန်သမျှ ချေဖျက်ကြ။

NEVER SUBMITTING BUT RESISTING COLONIALISM WE SHALL CRUSH ALL ITS MINIONS.

★ တပ်နှင့်ပြည်သူ လက်တွဲလူ၊ ပြည်ထောင်စု ဖြိုခွဲသူမှန်သမျှ ချေဖျက်ကြ။

TATMADAW AND THE PEOPLE, COOPERATE AND CRUSH ALL THOSE HARMING THE UNION.

From a children's comic, 1989

APPENDIX 1

SOCIAL CUSTOMS

A guide for Western visitors

How scrupulously should you observe Burmese customs?

Almost all Burmese are astonishingly well disposed towards foreigners, and so are quite tolerant of unwitting violations of Burmese social conventions. However, you can imagine the jarring effect in English society of a foreigner innocently saying "Yes" instead of "Yes please" when asked if he'd like a drink, or making a V-sign unaware of its local significance. However tolerant the recipients of such gaffes may be, they have to make a conscious effort to suppress their habitual reactions. Burmese society is the same: social ineptitude is not disastrous, but people are more at ease if it is avoided.

A further factor to bear in mind is that different individuals in Burma have varying levels of familiarity with Western customs. Some of the people you will meet have lived or travelled in the West, some will have been in contact with Westerners in Burma, and many will have seen Western films and read Western books. Their sensitivity and expectations will vary accordingly. Predictably, country people are more traditional than town dwellers, the unschooled more than the educated, and the old more than the young.

Social status

As in the West, high social standing is accorded to the famous, the wealthy, the powerful and people in authority. In Burma great respect and deference is also shown — and willingly shown — to one's parents, teachers, and those older than oneself. People in these categories are used to being served first at meals, to having things fetched and carried for them, to being listened to when they speak, and shown respect on the "high and low" scale mentioned below.

Women enjoy considerable social and economic equality with men, but social conventions give them second place (unless age or rank reverse the balance). For example, Burmese ladies do not expect to go through a doorway before a man.

High and low

Some of the most conspicuous expressions of courtesy or deference involve relative height. Juniors try to find somewhere to sit that is not as high as their seniors' seats. It looks rude if you stand up straight and tower over a senior or an equal. When a junior walks in front of a seated senior he will duck briefly to keep his head below the senior's as he passes. Monks come at the top of the scale, so when people meet a monk, the equivalent of a Western handshake is prostration.

Heads and feet

The head, being the highest part of the body, is regarded as the most noble, and the feet, being the lowest, as the most base. Various customs follow from this premise.

You don't point your feet towards anyone unless she/he is a lot junior or vastly inferior (such as a humble servant). You apologize if you have to step near someone's pillow, or the head of his/her sleeping mat. You never step over someone lying down. You use one towel for your head and face and another for the rest of your body. Feet are usually left to dry themselves. And you don't wash feet (or pants, skirts and the like) in a basin used for face

and hands. It embarrasses people if you pick up their sandals — unless they are greatly superior to you, when humbling yourself by carrying their sandals is almost a kind of honour for you. You always lie down to sleep or rest with your head, not your feet, towards the household Buddha image. And you make sure your sleeping mat and blankets are spread out with the head and foot ends in the right places. Some people believe in a “spirit of the foot end” and a “spirit of the head end.” You avoid touching people’s heads.

When sitting on the floor, men sit cross-legged, or with one knee raised, sole on the floor. Women sit with both feet to the side, soles facing to the rear; and men sit this way in front of monks.

Clothing

Everyday clothing consists of an *eingyi* (အင်္ကျီ *ēn-jī*), which is a shirt or blouse, and a *longyi* (လုံချည် *loun-jī*), which is like a sarong: a wide tube of cloth, its upper rim gathered and tied round the waist and the lower rim reaching down to the ankle. Men’s *longyis* (also called *paso* = ပုဆိုး = *pās’ò*) are made of cloth with different designs from women’s (*htamein* = ထဘီ = *t’ämein*), and are tied in a different way. Don’t be taken aback when a Burmese loosens, shakes out and reties his/her *longyi*. It is necessary from time to time. Most Burmese are pleased if foreigners wear Burmese-style clothes, and you will find them well suited to the Burmese climate.

Beckoning

People beckon with their fingers pointing downwards. Finger-upwards beckoning looks improper.

Modesty

It is immodest to reveal or uncover buttocks or genitals, even in same-sex company. Women also keep their legs covered from waist to ankle (though younger women’s fashions sometimes take the hem a few inches higher), and keep their breasts out of sight except when suckling, which is carried out without embarrassment.

Women’s *longyis*, underskirts and pants (pantees) are thought of as vaguely polluting. They are hung to dry after washing in a low and inconspicuous place, where there is no danger that a man might walk underneath, and women changing *longyis* always take them off and put them on via the feet, not via the head. Many households wash women’s clothes separately from men’s.

Bodily contact

Both men and women walk around freely hand-in-hand or arm-round-shoulder with same-sex friends, but traditionally opposite sexes don’t touch each other in public. Some women are embarrassed when a foreign man wants to shake hands.

Hygiene

Drinking from a cup used by another — even smoking someone else’s half-finished cheroot — is not generally regarded as unhygienic; though the remains of someone else’s drink are thrown away scrupulously before refilling the cup. Schools and offices have clay pots of drinking water on stands in the corridors, with a single cup for all to drink from. On the other hand, to put a serving spoon, that others will use, into one’s mouth at a meal is regarded as disgusting.

Some Burmese habits originated in the rural environment of dust floors and dirt tracks, where the fluids deposited by spitting, blowing one's nose, or pouring dregs out of cups onto the ground disappear in the dry dust almost immediately. Some people transfer these habits to tarred roads, flagged pavements and cement floors; but wooden or carpeted floors are treated with care.

Contacts

It always helps if you can approach an individual with a recommendation from someone he knows ("Oh! So you know Mr. X: do come in!") — or better still a letter of introduction.

Approaches to government officials should always be cleared by written permission from higher authority, with advance notice to the official's own ministry. Some bold individuals are prepared to hobnob with foreigners — even with foreign diplomats — without official clearance, but many are afraid of jeopardizing their jobs or promotion by putting a foot wrong.

Company

Most Burmese feel that there's something undesirable about going out and about on your own, so you'll find that sometimes a visitor coming to see you will bring a friend with him for company; or someone will offer to keep you company on a journey. This custom affects women more strongly than men: they prefer to have a lady companion for long journeys, and even for trips around town. It is also unusual for a lady to be on her own in a group of men: she will normally go with a female companion.

Visiting

When visiting a house you leave your sandals (or shoes and socks) outside the door. To keep them on looks to the Burmese eye rather like marching round the living room in your gum boots would look to a Westerner. If there is a dust floor the host or hostess will urge you to keep your sandals on. In offices you keep your feet shod. Heads remain hatted without indicating discourtesy.

The traditional greeting from a visitor on arrival is a smile and a bow of the head, but many Burmese with some experience of Westerners are used to handshakes and will be pleased to be treated to one. The host rapidly invites the visitor to sit down, and will offer at least Burmese "plain tea" (like the green tea in Chinese restaurants), and often coffee or sweet tea and a snack — followed by plain tea to clean out your mouth.

Giving and receiving

When handing something to a senior people use both hands. For very small objects, you use the right hand only, with the fingers of the left placed on the right wrist. It looks arrogant to hand over something with one hand only. You would also keep your head lower than the recipient's, or a little bowed, if she/he is your senior.

Many people are reluctant to be paid for assistance rendered. They prefer to look on their services as a gift freely given. The traditional way to reward a teacher (for example) is by giving him/her presents of food or clothing.

On receiving a gift, Westernized Burmese will say "Thank you. How nice." More traditional people will put on a show of irritation ("Quite unnecessary. I can't think why you bothered.") and put the gift aside without looking to see what it is. When offered

food, drink and so on it is good manners to refuse a couple of times and then yield gracefully when the offer becomes unbearably pressing.

Table manners

Timing. In daily domestic life mealtimes are not as sacred as in the West: it is convenient if members of the household can eat together when the meal is hot and freshly cooked, but it is not unusual or unfriendly if people turn up later. When each individual has had enough to eat, she/he usually gets up without waiting for the others, and goes to wash plate, bowl and cutlery.

Guest and host. When visitors are being fed, they eat first, sometimes with a few of the senior members of the household, sometimes on their own. The rest of the household stand by to fetch and carry, serve, fan away flies, and enjoy the sight of the visitors relishing their meal.

Talking. People don't talk much at mealtimes. You get the serious business of eating done with full concentration, and settle down for a good talk afterwards.

Food. The typical Burmese meal consists of rice, which is piled on your plate to start with, and a variety of curries and salads that are regarded as accompaniments to the rice. They are set out on the table in bowls from which you are served, or help yourself, in small quantities as the meal progresses. It is disappointing for your host/hostess if you leave food on your plate at the end of the meal, so if you are offered a plate with more rice than you think you can manage, return some to the pot before you start eating. When the supply of rice on your plate gets low, you (or your host/hostess) top it up. The meal is accompanied by a bowl of soup, which is drunk as you work your way through the rice, not before. You may finish off the meal with fresh fruit.

Drink. When you have finished eating you fetch (or will be offered) a glass of water to drink. If liquor (usually beer or whisky) is drunk in the house, it will be drunk before the meal.

Utensils. Traditionally Burmese eat with the fingers of the right hand: the left is kept clean for handling your soup spoon and the serving spoons in the curry bowls. Before eating you rinse your right hand in water to prevent the rice grains from sticking to it. When you have been served, you add a little of the curry on your plate to some rice, roll it into a neat ball and pop it into your mouth, using your hand to conceal the interior of your open mouth. It is inelegant to lick your fingers, or to get food on them above the second knuckle. After the meal you wash your hands thoroughly in soap and water to remove the smell of the curries. You rinse them under the tap or in water poured from a jug — not in the basin. Some Burmese have adopted the habit of eating with a spoon and fork, or with chopsticks, and foreign visitors are not expected to be able to eat with their fingers — though it causes some pleasure and merriment if they elect to do so.

Visiting pagodas

Your Burmese friends will probably invite you sooner or later to join them on a visit to a pagoda. This may be no more than a twenty-foot-tall whitewashed edifice surrounded by a low wall, or a huge and ornate complex of many levels, passages, shrines and other buildings; or it may be something in between.

Sandals are removed at the entrance to the grounds as a sign of respect, and carried around with you. Buddhists buy flowers, candles and other items near the entrance and take them to offer before the Buddha image. You must not smell the flowers or hold them pointing downwards. Buddhists prostrate themselves before the image, say some prayers, and make their offerings; then they feel free to wander around and inspect the sights, or just rest. Men can clamber up the lower slopes of a pagoda if they wish; women stay on the pagoda platform and in the subsidiary buildings on it.

Visiting monasteries

You will probably also be taken round to your friends' favourite Buddhist monastery. Here again you take off your sandals at the entrance to the grounds, and leave them outside when you go indoors. Some monasteries encourage visitors to keep their sandals on in the grounds, so you just leave them at the door of any building you enter as you would when visiting someone's home.

Buddhists prostrate themselves before the monk(s) on arrival and again on leaving. Foreigners are not expected to prostrate themselves, though it is well received if they do. A slight bow, or just a smile, is quite adequate.

All that was said above under "High and low" and "Heads and feet" applies in a high degree to encounters with monks. Remember that in front of monks men sit in "women's posture."

APPENDIX 2

TALKING ABOUT LANGUAGE

A list of words and phrases to use when asking for help or information

Admitting defeat

| | |
|---|---|
| နားမလည်ပါဘူး။ | I don't understand. |
| or ကောင်းကောင်း နားမလည်ပါဘူး။ | I don't understand very well. |
| or အဲဒါ ကျနော် နားမလည်ပါဘူး ခင်ဗျာ။ | (man speaking: see next) |
| or အဲဒါ ကျမ နားမလည်ပါဘူး ရှင်။ | (woman speaking: see next) |
| Both the preceding convey non-comprehension, but are less peremptory; like "I'm afraid I don't understand you." | |
| ဗမာစကား မပြောတတ်ပါဘူး။ | I can't speak Burmese. |
| or ... မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | I can't speak Burmese yet. |
| or ... သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | I can't speak much Burmese yet. |
| or ... ကောင်းကောင်း မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | I can't speak Burmese well yet. |
| ဗမာစကား နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါတယ်။ | I can only speak a little Burmese. |
| or ... နဲ့နဲ့ ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။ | I can only speak a little Burmese so far. |
| အဲဒါတော့ ဗမာလို မပြောတတ်သေးပါဘူး။ | I'm afraid I don't know how to say that in Burmese yet. |

Let's try again

| | |
|-------------|--|
| ဗျာ/ရှင်? | I beg your pardon? [= Please say that again] |
| ဘာ ပြောတယ်? | What did you say? |

ထပ်ပြောပါအုံး

ပြန်ပြောပါအုံး

(ပြောတာ) ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားလိုက်ရပါဘူး။

or ... ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားလိုက်ရလို့ပါ။

မြန်မြန် ပြောရင် သိပ် နားမလည်ပါဘူး။

ဖြေးဖြေးပြောပါလား။

Filling gaps

S1: ကကြီး ခဘာ?

S2: ကကြီး ခခွေးပါ။

S1: ဦးထွန်း ဘယ်သူ?

S2: ဦးထွန်းစိန်ပါ

S1: အမှတ် ၃၇ ဘယ်လောက်?

S2: ၃၇၆-ပါ။

Please say that again.

Please say that again.

I didn't quite hear (what you said).

Because I didn't quite hear (what you said).

[explaining why you asked for a repeat]

If you speak fast I don't understand much.

Could you please speak more slowly?

S1: Ká-jì what? (for words)

S2: Ká-jì k'á-gwè.

S1: Û T'ùn who? (for names)

S2: Û T'ùn Sein.

S1: N° 3-7-how much? (for numbers)

S2: 3-7-6.

Asking for confirmation

In the following, [...] stands for any word or phrase

[...]-လား။

Was that [...] ? Did you say [...] ?

[...] ပြောတာလား။

Did you say [...] ? Do you mean [...] ?

Asking for explanation

[...] ဘာလဲ။

What is [...] ?

[...] ဆိုတာ ဘာလဲ။

What is the word/phrase [...] ?

[...] ဆိုတာ ဘာ ပြောတာလဲ။

What does the word/phrase [...] mean/refer to?

[...] ဆိုတာ နားမလည်ပါဘူး။ ဘာပြောတာလဲ။

I don't understand the word/phrase [...].

What does it mean/refer to?

[...] ဘာ ဆိုလိုတာလဲ

What does [...] mean?

What is the significance of [...] ?

[...] ဆိုတာ ဘာအဓိပ္ပါယ် ရသလဲ။

What is the meaning of the word/phrase [...] ?

[...] ဆိုတာ ဘယ်လို အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတာလဲ။

How ("with what meaning") do you use the word/phrase [...] ?

[...] ဆိုတာ အင်္ဂလိပ်လို ဘယ်လို ပြောတာလဲ။

How do you say [...] in English?

Asking for words

S1: အဲဒါ ဗမာလို ဘယ်လို ခေါ်သလဲ။

What is that called in Burmese? (*pointing*)

or: "Envelope" ဆိုတာ ဗမာလို ဘယ်လို ခေါ်သလဲ။

What are envelopes called in Burmese?

S2: "စာအိတ်" လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

They are called "sa-eiq."

S1: ဒီလို လုပ်တာ ဗမာလို ဘယ်လို ပြောသလဲ။

How do you say doing this in Burmese?

(*accompanied by mime or gesture*)

or: "To dance" ဆိုတာ ဗမာလို ဘယ်လို ပြောသလဲ။

How do you say "to dance" in Burmese?

S2: "ကတယ်" လို့ ပြောပါတယ်။

You say "ká-deh."

Note that — on the whole — a question about a noun uses ခေါ်- "to be called," and a question about a verb uses ပြော- "to say."

Checking comprehension

S1: နားလည်သလား။

Do you understand?

S2: နားလည်ပါတယ်။

Yes, I do.

or: နားမလည်ပါဘူး။

No, I don't.

Asking for spelling

S1: ဈာန် ဆိုတာ ဘယ်လို စာလုံး ပေါင်းသလဲ။

How do you spell the word "zan"?

S2: ဈ-မျဉ်းဆွဲ၊ ရေးချ၊ န-သတ်။

[names of the Burmese letters]

Asking for acceptability

S1: ဒီနေရာမှာ [...] သုံးလို့ ရသလား။

Can you use [...] in this context/position?

[...](-လို့) ပြောနိုင်သလား။

Can you say [...]?

[...](-လို့) ပြောလို့ ရသလား။

(same as preceding)

[...] ပြောရင် မှန်သလား။

If you say [...], is that right?

S1: [...] ဆိုတာက [...] -နဲ့ အတူတူပဲလား။

Is the word/phrase [...] the same as

the word/phrase [...]

S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ အတူတူပဲ။

Yes, it's the same.

or: မတူပါဘူး။ တခြားစီပဲ။

No, they are different.

Terms

စာ

text, writing; a letter (for posting)

စာလုံး

letter (of the alphabet)

စကား

words, speech; spoken language

စကားလုံး / ဇာလုန်း /

a word

အသုံးအနှုန်း

usage

ဝေါဟာရ

word, expression, phrase

အသံ

sound, voice

အသံထွက်

pronunciation

စာလုံးပေါင်း

spelling



APPENDIX 3

TALKING TO MONKS

When talking to monks, it is courteous to use the specialized words appropriate to the status they hold in Burmese society. Speakers of English use terms like “my Lord,” “Your Honour,” “Your Majesty” and so on, when appropriate, in place of “Sir,” “Madam,” “mate” and so on. Words used for talking with or about monks are comparable, though there are more of them. Here are some of the main specialized words listed alongside the lay persons’ equivalents. Pronunciation is shown in / .../ where the spelling is misleading or ambiguous.

When visiting a monk in his monastery, or when he visits them, Burmese normally kneel and bow as a sign of respect (ရှိခိုး). If you don’t join in, no one will take offence; but you may feel awkward. A parallel in Western society would be standing back and not shaking hands when everyone else in the group is doing so. If you decide to join in, ask someone to show you how to ရှိခိုး. There are proper and slipshod ways of doing it.

| <i>monk talk</i> | <i>lay talk</i> | <i>English</i> |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Lay person speaking to monk | | |
| တင်ပါ /-ဗာ/ | ဟုတ်ကဲ့ | Yes, I follow you. |
| မှန်ပါ /-ဗာ/ | ဟုတ်ကဲ့ | Yes, that’s true. |
| -ဘုရား /ဖယား/ | -ခင်ဗျား/ရှင် | Sir (at end of sentence) |
| တပည့်တော် | ကျနော် or some variant | I (man or woman speaking) |
| — pronounced /ဒဗျီဒေါ်/ or /ဒဗဲဒေါ်/ | | |
| တပည့်တော်မ | ကျမ or some variant | I (woman speaking) |
| အရှင်ဘုရား | - | you (general use) |
| ဆရာတော် | - | you (to senior monk) |
| — pronounced/ဆယာဒေါ်/ or/ဒေါ်/ | | |
| ဦးပဉ္စင်း /အူးဗဇင်း/ or /အူးဇင်း/ | - | you (familiar, to younger monk) |
| ဘုန်းကြီးဘုရား /ဖုန်းကြီးဖယား/ | - | you (familiar, to younger monk) |
| ကိုယ်တော် /ကိုဒေါ်/ | - | you (familiar, to younger monk) |
| ကိုရင် | - | you (to novice monk) |
| ဆရာလေး | - | you (to nun) |
| Monk speaking to lay person | | |
| ဒကာ /ဒဂါ/ or ဒကာကြီး | - | you (to male) |
| ဒကာမ /ဒဂမာ/ or ဒကာမကြီး | - | you (to female) |
| ဦးပဉ္စင်း /အူးဗဇင်း/ or /အူးဇင်း/ | - | I (general) |
| ဘုန်းကြီး /ဖုန်းကြီး/ | - | I (senior monk) |
| ကျုပ် | - | I (more familiar) |
| Talking about monks | | |
| -ပါး | -ယောက်/-ဦး | [count word for monks] |
| — as in: ဘုန်းကြီး သုံးပါး | [လူ သုံးယောက်] | three monks |
| ကြွ- | သွား-/လာ- | go, come |

| | | |
|--|-------------|------------------------------|
| သတင်း သုံး- | နေ- | live |
| ဘုန်း ပေး- | စား- | eat |
| — as in: အသီး ဘုန်း ပေး- | အသီး စား- | eat fruit |
| ကျိန်း- | အိပ်- | sleep |
| ပျံလွန်- | ဆုံး- | die |
| ပင့်- | ဖိတ်-/ခေါ်- | invite, fetch, take (a monk) |
| လျှောက်- | ပြော- | speak (to monk) |
| လှူ- | ပေး- | give (to monk) |
| A verb with a monk as its subject sometimes take the form [verb]-တော် မူ- ; for example: | | |
| ပေးတော် မူ- | ပေး- | (a monk) gives |
| ကြည့်တော် မမူ- | မကြည့်- | (a monk) does not look |

Terms relating to monks (and nuns)

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| သံဃာတော် /-ဂါ-/ | Sangha, the order of monks, the monkhood |
| ဆရာတော် | abbot, head monk of monastery |
| ဘုန်း(တော်)ကြီး | monk |
| ကိုရင် | novice monk |
| ဖိုးသူတော် | layman attached to a monastery and leading a semi-religious life, usually wearing white clothes |
| ကပ္ပိယ /ကပ်ပိယာ/ | lay assistant to monk |
| သီလရှင် /-လှ-/ | nun |
| မယ်သီလရှင် /-လှ-/ | nun |
| ကျောင်း | monastery, nunnery |
| သင်္ကန်း /သင်ဂန်း/ | set of monk's robes |
| ကုဋ်အိမ် /ကုတိ-/ | toilet (in monastery) |
| ရေအိမ် | toilet (in monastery) |
| တရား ဟော- | preach |
| တရား နာ- | listen to a sermon |
| တရား ပြ- | conduct meditation classes |
| တရား ထိုင်- | meditate |
| တရား မှတ်- | meditate |
| ပရိတ် ရွတ်- | recite the paritta (Pali verses with spiritual or magical power) |
| ဆွမ်း ခံ- | collect almsfood offerings |
| ဆွမ်း လောင်း- | contribute almsfood to a monk on his almsround |
| ဆွမ်း ကပ်- | present food to monk (physically) |
| ဆွမ်းကျွေး | meal for monks (often in one's home) |
| ကန်တော့- /ကဒေါ့/ | bow in obeisance to monk |
| ရှိခိုး- /ရစ်-/ | bow in obeisance to monk |
| ဦးတင်ပါသေးတယ် | [form of words used in place of physical obeisance, accompanied by hand gesture with palms together] |

APPENDIX 4

AN OUTLINE GRAMMAR

Introduction

This section not only draws together the grammar points that are included in the Dialogues in Part 2 but also covers grammatical forms and structures you will encounter as you go on to learn more Burmese. It also includes a section (Section 13) on the literary-style equivalents of the colloquial forms.

For the sake of brevity most of the forms listed are given only one or two explanations and examples, a treatment that ruthlessly under-represents the range of their meanings and applications. For a less cursory treatment see *A Reference Grammar of Colloquial Burmese* (by John Okell, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1969). Volume 2 of this book is a dictionary of forms, which gives more extensive explanations and many more examples. A reference grammar that includes both colloquial and literary forms is being prepared by Anna Allott and John Okell.

Some of the terms used in this Outline for categories of word ("phrase suffix" is one), and the actual membership of some categories, are different from those found in the *Reference Grammar*: these terminological changes are made with the aim of bypassing the finer distinctions and giving a sharper focus to the essentials.

English terms used in this Outline grammar are listed in the Index at the end of this volume, and Burmese forms are included in the Vocabulary in Appendix 5.

Contents

The elements of the sentence: an overview

1. Noun phrases and verb phrases
 - 1.1 Standard sentence structure
 - 1.2 Variations on the standard
 - Sentences with parts omitted
 - Sentences with no verb ("is/are" sentences)
 - 1.3 Inside the phrase
 - Suffixes
 - Compounds
 - 1.4 Outside the phrase
 - Phrase suffixes and sentence suffixes
 - More complex elements of the sentence



1.5 The most frequently used suffixes

In and after the verb phrase

In the verb slot

In and after the noun phrase

In the noun slot

Subordinate clauses

Inside the phrase

2. Noun phrases:

2.1 a noun and (sometimes) a suffix

2.2 compound nouns

3. Verb phrases:

3.1 a verb and (usually) a suffix

3.2 compound verbs

Compound verbs with pre-verbs

Compound verbs with auxiliary verbs

Outside the phrase

4. Phrase suffixes: phrase-တော့၊ phrase-ကော့၊ and others

5. Sentence suffixes: sentence-ပေါ့၊ sentence-ပဲ၊ and others

More complex elements in the sentence

6. Subordinate clauses: [verb]-ရင်၊ [verb]-ရို့ and others

7. Relative clauses:

7.1. [verb]-တဲ့ [noun] and [verb]-မဲ့ [noun]

7.2. Relative clauses without -တဲ့ and -မဲ့

7.3. Relative clauses ending in [verb]-တာ and [verb]-မှာ

Odds and ends

8. Sentences with no verb

9. Which? what? this, that

10. Not any

11. The uses of ဆို-

12. Examples of sentences analysed

Literary style

13. Literary-style equivalents for the colloquial forms

Common functions

14. List of common functions (statement, request, exclamation, and others)



THE ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE: AN OVERVIEW

Section 1 presents an overview of the structure and elements of typical Burmese sentences. Subsequent sections contain more details, and you will find references in the Overview to the appropriate later sections.

1 Noun phrases and verb phrases

1.1 The standard structure.

The typical Burmese sentence consists of one or more “noun phrases” followed by a “verb phrase.” In this context “noun phrase” is used as a cover term to include “adverbs.”

Examples:

| | <i>noun phrase 1</i> | <i>noun phrase 2</i> | <i>noun phrase 3</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> |
|----|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. | ဦးစောထွန်း | - | - | ထိုင်တယ်။ |
| 2. | မလူစီ | ဗမာစကား | - | သင်နေတယ်။ |
| 3. | ကိုမိုက်ကယ် | ဗမာပြည် | သုံးခေါက် | ရောက်ဖူးတယ်။ |
| 1. | U Saw Tun | - | - | sit-pres/past |
| 2. | Ma Lucy | Burmese-language | - | learn-be-pres/past |
| 3. | Ko Michael | Burma country | three-trip | reach-ever-pres/past |

1. U Saw Tun sat down.
2. Ma Lucy is learning Burmese.
3. Ko Michael has been to Burma three times.

1.2 Variations on the standard structure

Sentences with parts omitted

Frequently, when one of the elements in a sentence can be supplied from what has already been said, it is not repeated. Nor is it replaced by pronouns as in English. Example (an exchange between Daw Pyu and U Mèh: phrases omitted are shown in brackets):

| | <i>noun phrase 1</i> | <i>noun phrase 2</i> | <i>noun phrase 3</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> |
|-----|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Pyu | ဦးမဲ | - | ဓါတ်ပုံ | ရိုက်သလား။ |
| Mèh | [ကျွန်တော်] | - | [ဓါတ်ပုံ] | ရိုက်ပါတယ်။ |
| Pyu | [ဦးမဲ] | ဘယ်မှာ | [ဓါတ်ပုံ] | ရိုက်သလဲ။ |
| Mèh | [ကျွန်တော်] | ဆူးလေဘုရားနားမှာ | [ဓါတ်ပုံ] | [ရိုက်ပါတယ်။] |
| Pyu | U Mèh | - | photo | take-pres/past-question |
| Mèh | [I] | - | [photo] | take-polite-pres/past |
| Pyu | [U Mèh] | where-at | [photo] | take-pres/past-question |
| Mèh | [I] | Sule-pagoda-near-at | [photo] | [take-polite-pres/past] |

- Pyu Did you take any photographs?
 Mèh [I] did take [some].
 Pyu Where did [you] take [them]?
 Mèh [I] [took] [them] near the Sule Pagoda.

Sentences with no verb ("is/are sentences")

Sentences that may be translated into English using a verb like "is, are, was, were" and so on normally have no verb phrase in the Burmese equivalent. In these notes we call them "is/are sentences." They contain just two noun phrases:

| <i>noun phrase 1</i> | <i>noun phrase 2</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. ဒါ That | စာအုပ်ဆိုင်။ bookshop. | That is a bookshop. |
| 2. ဘူတာကြီး Station | ဒီမှာ။ here-at. | The station is here. |

For more on is/are sentences see Section 8.

1.3 Inside the phrase

The examples above show how a sentence can be analysed as made up of phrases. Phrases in their turn can be analysed into smaller elements.

Suffixes

Much of the grammatical information in a Burmese sentence is carried by syllables attached to the ends of nouns and verbs. They have meanings like "for," "when," "from," and so on. Some of these syllables are attached to nouns, so we call them "noun suffixes." Others are attached to verbs, so — with remorseless logic — we call them "verb suffixes."

A noun phrase may contain just a noun on its own, or a noun with a suffix. In the same way, a verb phrase may contain just a verb on its own, or (much more often) a verb with a suffix. Here are some examples of sentences analysed into phrases, with the phrases analysed into noun and noun suffix, or verb and verb suffix:

| <i>noun phrase 1</i> | | <i>noun phrase 2</i> | | <i>verb phrase</i> | |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>noun</i> | <i>noun suffix</i> | <i>noun</i> | <i>noun suffix</i> | <i>verb</i> | <i>verb suffix</i> |
| 1. ကျနော်မိတ်ဆွေ | - | ဂျပန်ပြည် | -က | လာ | -တယ်။ |
| 2. ဒီနား | -မှာ | ထမင်းဆိုင် | - | မရှိပါ | -ဘူး |
| 3. ဘူတာကြီး | -ကို | ခြောက်နာရီ | -မှာ | သွား | -မယ်။ |
| 1. My friend | - | Japan | -from | come | - <i>pres/past</i> |
| 2. This vicinity | -in | restaurant | - | not be | - <i>negative</i> |
| 3. Main station | -to | six o'clock | -at | go | - <i>future</i> |

1. My friend comes from Japan.
2. There isn't a restaurant near here.
3. I'll go to the station at six o'clock.

Some of the rôles a noun phrase can play in a sentence, and some of the suffixes that indicate those rôles, are described in Section 2.1 below. Verb suffixes are listed in Section 3.1.

The slot model

For some purposes it is helpful to think of a sentence as a sequence of structured slots: a slot for a noun, a slot for a noun suffix, a slot for a verb, and so on:

| | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>noun</i> | <i>noun suffix</i> | <i>noun</i> | <i>noun suffix</i> | <i>verb</i> | <i>verb suffix</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|

In principle, any noun can be dropped into a noun slot, any noun suffix into a noun suffix slot, and so on.

Compounds

The nouns and verbs that can be dropped into the noun and verb slots may be “simple” or “compound.” The noun ထမင်းဆိုင် “restaurant,” for example, is called compound, because it is made up of two shorter nouns: ထမင်း “rice” and ဆိုင် “shop.” There are more complicated compound nouns than this:

ကျွန်တော့်မိတ်ဆွေ “my friend”: made up of ကျွန်တော့် “my” and မိတ်ဆွေ “friend”

ကိုတင်နဲ့ ကိုလှ “Ko Tin and Ko Hla”: made up of ကိုတင်နဲ့ “Ko Tin and” and ကိုလှ “Ko Hla”

However complicated or long it may be, a compound noun can be dropped into a noun slot in a phrase and used as part of a sentence in the same way as a simple noun. Some of the less obvious ways of compounding nouns in Burmese are described in Section 2.2.

Burmese also has a rich variety of compound verbs. For example, in the verb phrase သွားကြည့်ပါအုံးမယ် “I’ll go and have another look” the verb slot is filled by the verb သွားကြည့်ပါအုံး- and သွားကြည့်ပါအုံး- is a compound verb made up of သွား “go” and ကြည့် “look” and ပါ “polite” and အုံး “further.” For all its multi-part structure, the verb သွားကြည့်ပါအုံး- is dropped into the verb slot in just the same way as a shorter verb like သွား-။ Some frequently used elements of compound verbs are described in Section 3.2 below.

1.4 Outside the phrase

Phrase suffixes and sentence suffixes

As well as the suffixes attached to the nouns and verbs inside the phrases in a sentence, there are other suffixes that are attached to whole phrases, or even to whole sentences. Here are some examples:

| noun phrase 1 | phrase suffix | noun phr 2 | phrase suffix | verb phrase | sentence suffix |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| noun ± suffix | suffix | noun ± sfx | suffix | verb ± suffix | suffix |
| 1. ကျနော့်မိတ်ဆွေ | -လဲ | ဂျပန်ပြည်က | - | လာတယ် | -လေ။ |
| 2. ဒီနားမှာ | -ကော | ထမင်းဆိုင် | - | မရှိဘူး | -လား။ |
| 3. ဘူတာကြီးကို | - | ခြောက်နာရီမှာ | -မှ | သွားမယ် | -။ |
| 1. My friend | -too | Japan-from | - | come-pres/past | -you know. |
| 2. This vicinity-in | -how about | restaurant | - | not be-negative | -question |
| 3. Main station-to | - | six o'clock-at | -only | go-future | - |

1. My friend is from Japan as well, you know.
2. How about near here — isn’t there a restaurant here?
3. We’ll go to the station, but only at 6.

As the chart shows, we use the inspired label “phrase suffix” for suffixes that are attached to phrases, and “sentence suffix” for suffixes that are attached to sentences. You will find more about phrase suffixes in Section 4, and more about sentence suffixes in Section 5.

You can also see from the chart that the slot model can be expanded to include slots for phrase suffixes and sentence suffixes, and that not all phrases have all slots filled. There are some more examples of sentences analysed into phrases in Section 12.

More complex elements of the sentence

Sections 6 and beyond describe some more complex structures that can fill the slots in a sentence, and some other aspects of Burmese grammar. However complex the slot-fillings may be, an understanding of the basic structure of a sentence as shown in the examples above will help you thread your way through many a tangle in Burmese.

1.5 The most frequently used suffixes

Since suffixes convey so much of the grammatical information in a Burmese sentence, an important element in learning Burmese is learning suffixes. This section gives a selection of some 30 suffixes and elements of compounds that occur with very high frequency: you can say a great deal with no more grammar words than just these few. From Section 2 onwards you will find more comprehensive and detailed lists of each category of suffix.

In the examples below, [verb] represents any verb (simple or complex), and [noun] represents any noun (simple or complex).

In and after the verb phrase (verb suffixes and sentence suffixes):

For a fuller treatment see Sections 3.1 and 5 below.

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| [verb]–တယ်။ | [someone] does/did [verb] |
| [verb]–သလား။ | does/did [someone] [verb]? |
| မ–[verb]–ဘူး။ | [someone] does/did not [verb] |
| [verb]–သလဲ။ | [who/what/which] does/did [verb]? |
| | |
| [verb]–မယ်။ | [someone] will [verb] |
| [verb]–မလား။ | will [someone] [verb]? |
| [verb]–မလဲ။ | [who/what/which] will [verb]? |

| | | |
|-----------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Examples: | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားတယ်။ | U Tin went/goes to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားသလား။ | Does/did U Tin go to the market? |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး မသွားဘူး။ | U Tin does/did not go to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဘယ် သွားသလဲ။ | Where does/did U Tin go? |
| | | |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားမယ်။ | U Tin will go to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားမလား။ | Will U Tin go to the market? |
| | ဦးတင် ဘယ် သွားမလဲ။ | Where will U Tin go? |

In the verb slot:

For a fuller treatment see Section 3.2 below.

Any of the following combinations can be dropped into the verb slot, or (in other words) substituted for [verb] in the verb phrase formulae above.

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| [verb]-ပါ- | [shows the speaker is being polite] |
| [verb]-ချင်- | want to [verb] |
| [verb]-နိုင်- | be able to [verb] |
| [verb]-ရ- | can, may, must [verb] |
| [verb]-နေ- | be [verb]-ing |

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|--|
| Examples: | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားပါတယ်။ | U Tin went/goes to the market [polite]. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားချင်တယ်။ | U Tin wants/wanted to go to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားနိုင်တယ်။ | U Tin can/could go to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားရတယ်။ | U Tin has to/had to/was allowed to go to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားနေတယ်။ | U Tin is/was going to the market. |

In and after the noun phrase (noun suffixes and phrase suffixes):

For a fuller treatment see Sections 2.1 and 4 below.

| | |
|--------------|--|
| [noun]-မှာ | in/at/on [noun] |
| [noun]-က(နေ) | from [noun] |
| [noun](-ကို) | to [noun] |
| [noun]-နဲ့ | with/by means of [noun] |
| [noun]-က | [this noun is the subject of the verb] |
| [noun]-ကို | [this noun is the object of the verb] |
| [noun]-လဲ | [noun] too, [noun] also |
| [noun]-တော့ | as for [noun], [noun] however |

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Examples: | ဦးတင် ရန်ကုန်မှာ နေတယ်။ | U Tin lives/lived in Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင် ရန်ကုန်က(နေ) လာတယ်။ | U Tin comes/came from Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင် ရန်ကုန် သွားတယ်။ | U Tin goes/went to Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင် ကားနဲ့ သွားတယ်။ | U Tin goes/went by car. |
| | ဦးတင်က ရန်ကုန် သွားတယ်။ | U Tin goes/went to Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင်ကို မလှ သိတယ်။ | Ma Hla knows/knew U Tin. |
| | ဦးတင်လဲ ရန်ကုန် သွားတယ်။ | U Tin too goes/went to Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင်တော့ ရန်ကုန် သွားတယ်။ | U Tin, however, goes/went to Rangoon. |

In the noun slot:

For a fuller treatment see Section 2.2 below.

Any of the following combinations can be dropped into the noun slot, or (in other words) substituted for the [noun] in the noun phrase formulae above.

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| [noun]-တို့ | [noun] and associated [noun]s |
| [noun]-တွေ | [noun]s |
| [noun1]-နဲ့ [noun2] | [noun1] and [noun2] |
| [noun1]-ရဲ့ [noun2] | [noun1]'s [noun2] |
| [noun1]-creak [noun2] | [noun1]'s [noun2] |

| | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|---------|----------|--|
| Examples: | ဦးတင်တို့ | ရန်ကုန် | သွားတယ်။ | U Tin and his (family) go/went to Rangoon. |
| | ကျောင်းသားတွေ | ရန်ကုန် | သွားတယ်။ | The students go/went to Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင်ရဲ့အကို | ရန်ကုန် | သွားတယ်။ | U Tin's brother goes/went to Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင် အကို | ရန်ကုန် | သွားတယ်။ | U Tin's brother goes/went to Rangoon. |
| | ဦးတင်နဲ့မလှ | ရန်ကုန် | သွားတယ်။ | U Tin and Ma Hla go/went to Rangoon. |

Subordinate clauses:

For a fuller treatment see Section 6 below.

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| [verb]-ဖို့ | in order to [verb], to [verb] |
| [verb]-လို့ | because [verb] |
| [verb]-ရင် | if/when [verb] |
| [verb]-တဲ့အခါ | when [verb] |

| | |
|-----------|---|
| Examples: | ဦးတင် စာအိတ် ဝယ်ဖို့ ဈေး သွားတယ်။ |
| | U Tin—envelope—buy—to—market—go-pres/past |
| | U Tin went to the market to buy some envelopes. |
| | ဦးတင် စာအိတ် ဝယ်ချင်လို့ ဈေး သွားတယ်။ |
| | U Tin—envelope—buy-want-because—market—go-pres/past |
| | U Tin went to the market because he wanted to buy some envelopes. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားရင် စာအိတ် ဝယ်မယ်။ |
| | U Tin—market—go-if—envelope—buy-future |
| | U Tin will buy some envelopes if he goes to the market. |
| | ဦးတင် ဈေး သွားတဲ့အခါ စာအိတ် ဝယ်တယ်။ |
| | U Tin—market—go-when—envelope—buy—pres/past |
| | U Tin bought envelopes when he went to the market. |

2 Noun phrases

This and subsequent sections present a more comprehensive and detailed survey of common forms and structures.

2.1 A noun and a suffix

Simple noun phrases consist of a noun, or a noun with a noun suffix that overtly shows the relationship of the noun phrase to the verb. Examples:

| relationship | noun phr | noun sfx | verb phr | translation |
|------------------------|------------|----------|----------|---------------------|
| subject (normal) | မောင်မောင် | — | သိတယ်။ | MM knows. |
| subject (highlighted) | မောင်မောင် | —က | သိတယ်။ | MM knows. |
| subject (highlighted) | မောင်မောင် | —ဟာ | သိတယ်။ | MM knows. |
| object (unmarked) | မောင်မောင် | — | သိတယ်။ | I know MM. |
| object (marked) | မောင်မောင် | —ကို | သိတယ်။ | I know MM. |
| indirect object | မောင်မောင် | —ကို | ပေးတယ်။ | I gave it to MM. |
| destination (unmarked) | ဗမာပြည် | — | သွားတယ်။ | He went to Burma. |
| destination (marked) | ဗမာပြည် | —ကို | သွားတယ်။ | He went to Burma. |
| destination (person) | မောင်မောင် | —ဆီ | ပို့တယ်။ | I sent it to Ko MM. |

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|-----------|----------------|--|
| point up to which | ရုံး | -အထိ | လိုက်တယ်။ | He came as far as the office. |
| location | ရန်ကုန် | -မှာ | နေတယ်။ | He lives in Rangoon. |
| location (person) | မောင်မောင် | -ဆီမှာ | ထားခဲ့တယ်။ | I left it with MM. |
| point in past time | ၁၉၈၆-ခုနှစ် | -က | ရောက်ခဲ့တယ်။ | I was there in 1986. |
| length of time | ၃-လ | - | နေခဲ့တယ်။ | I stayed for 3 months. |
| source (place) | ဗမာပြည် | -က(အနေ) | လာတယ်။ | He comes from Burma. |
| source (person) | မောင်မောင် | -ဆီက | ရတယ်။ | I got it from MM. |
| degree | နဲနဲ | - | ဖတ်တတ်တယ်။ | I can read a little. |
| degree | ခပ်မြန်မြန် | - | ပြောတယ်။ | He talks quite fast. |
| degree | အစောကြီး | - | ထတယ်။ | He got up very early. |
| quotation (name) | ဘီး | -လို့ | ခေါ်တယ်။ | It's called "bi." |
| quotation (speech) | ရတယ် | -လို့ | ပြောတယ်။ | He said it's OK. |
| instrument | လက် | -နဲ့ | စားတယ်။ | We eat with our fingers. |
| accompaniment | မိတ်ဆွေ | -နဲ့ | လာတယ်။ | I came with a friend. |
| cause | သူ့ | -ကြောင့် | ပျက်စီးတယ်။ | It was spoiled because of him. |
| comparison (like/unlike) | အဖေ | -နဲ့ | တူတယ်။ | She looks like her father. |
| comparison (more than) | အဖေ | -ထက် | အရပ် မြင့်တယ်။ | She is taller than her father. |
| manner | ကျောက်ရုပ် | -လို | ထိုင်တယ်။ | He sat like a statue. |
| concerning | စက်ရုံ | -အကြောင်း | ပြောပြတယ်။ | They told us about the factory. |
| matching | စာအုပ် | -အတိုင်း | လုပ်တယ်။ | He did it in accordance — with the rule book. |
| beneficiary | သား | -အတွက် | ရေးတယ်။ | She wrote it for her son. |

The classification of these rôles is an inexact science and the list could be extended almost indefinitely.

Destination, Location and Source phrases (to a place, at a place, from a place) often contain nouns expressing spatial relations, like "under" and "inside." Examples:

"under":

| | | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Destination | to under | ကျောက်ခဲအောက် | ဝင်သွားတယ် | It went under a stone. |
| Location | at under | ကျောက်ခဲအောက်မှာ | ဝပ်နေတယ်။ | It was crouching under a stone. |
| Source | from under | ကျောက်ခဲအောက်က | ထွက်လာတယ်။ | It came out from under a stone. |

"inside":

| | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Destination | to inside | အခန်းထဲ | ဝင်သွားတယ် | They went into the room. |
| Location | at inside | အခန်းထဲမှာ | အိပ်နေတယ်။ | They were sleeping in the room. |
| Source | from inside | အခန်းထဲက | ထွက်လာတယ်။ | They came out of the room. |

Here are some common members of the class.

Nouns expressing spatial relations: example sentences

| | <i>noun</i> | <i>spatial rel'n</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------|---|
| on | စားပွဲ | -ပေါ် | တင်ထားတယ်။ | He put it on the table. |
| over | ကုလားထိုင် | -အပေါ်မှာ | ချိတ်မယ်။ | I'll hang it over his chair. |
| under | ကျောက်ခဲ | -အောက် | ဝင်သွားတယ်။ | It went under a stone. |
| beside | သူ့ | ဘေးမှာ | ထိုင်။ | Sit beside her. |
| inside | အိမ် | -ထဲက | ထွက်လာတယ်။ | They came out of the house. |
| outside | ရန်ကုန် | -အပြင် | မရောက်လို့ရဘူး | We didn't get outside Rangoon. |
| between | သွား | -ကြားမှာ | ညပ်တယ်။ | It was stuck between his teeth. |
| near | ကျောင်း | -နားမှာ | နေတယ်။ | We live near the school. |
| middle | မြို့ | -လယ်မှာ | မနေချင်ဘူး။ | They don't want to live — in the middle of the town. |
| behind | စာအုပ်စင် | -နောက်မှာ | တွေ့တယ်။ | I found it behind the bookshelf. |
| front | အိမ် | -ရှေ့မှာ | ထိုင်နေတယ်။ | We were sitting — in front of the house. |
| direction | တောင် | -ဘက်က | လေ တိုက်တယ်။ | The wind blew from the south. |
| right side | လမ်း | -ညာဘက်မှာ | ရှိတယ်။ | It's on the right-hand side — of the road. |
| left side | လမ်း | -ဘယ်ဘက်မှာ | ရှိတယ်။ | It's on the left-hand side — of the road. |

2.2 Compound nouns formed with suffixes

The noun in a noun phrase may be a simple, single noun, like လမ်း: "road," or it may be a compound noun of some kind. Ordinary compound nouns in Burmese are rather like English compound nouns:

ကျောင်း + ခန်း = ကျောင်းခန်း
school + room = school room

These don't call for special mention; but there are other types of compound noun that do: they are compound nouns formed with suffixes. Here are some common suffixes:

| <i>suffix</i> | <i>translation</i> | <i>example</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|--|
| [noun]-တို့ | "[noun] and co." | ကိုတင်တို့ | Ko Tin and his family/friends/colleagues/... |
| [noun-noun]-တို့ | "all named [noun]s" | ကိုတင်ကိုလှတို့ | Ko Tin and Ko Hla |
| [noun]-တွေ | [noun]s | ဆိုင်တွေ | shops |
| [noun]-တိုင်း | every [noun] | ဆိုင်တိုင်း | every shop |
| [noun]-ကြီး | big [noun] | ဆေးရုံကြီး | the General Hospital |
| [noun]-(က)လေး | little [noun] | သား(က)လေး | her young son |

One set of suffixes in this category are only used with number phrases:

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| n°-[noun]-လောက် | approx. n° [noun]s | ၁၄-ရက်လောက် | about 14 days |
| n°-[noun]-တည်း | merely n° [noun]s | သုံးယောက်တည်း | only three people |
| n°-[noun]-လုံး | all n° [noun]s | လေးဘူးလုံး | all four jars |

And another other set of suffixes come between two nouns: for example:

| <i>suffix</i> | <i>translation</i> | <i>example</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| [noun1]-နဲ့ [noun2] | [noun1] and [noun2] | ကိုတင်နဲ့ ကိုလှ | Ko Tin and Ko Hla |
| [noun1]-ရဲ့ [noun2] | [noun1]'s [noun2] | ကိုတင်ရဲ့ အိမ် | Ko Tin's house |
| [noun1]-crk)* [noun2] | [noun1]'s [noun2] | ကိုတင် အိမ် | Ko Tin's house |

* [crk] here stands for “induced creaky tone”: names ending in a low tone can be changed to creaky tone to indicate possessive, as in the example. What about names ending in the remaining three tones? Induced creaky tone cannot be used with names ending in a creaky high tone or a stop high tone. The final syllable in these cases remains unchanged:

| <i>name</i> | <i>possessive compound</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| ကိုမြင့် ⇒ | ကိုမြင့် အိမ် | Ko Myint's house |
| ကိုချစ် ⇒ | ကိုချစ် အိမ် | Ko Chit's house |

In the case of names ending in a high plain tone induced creaky tone is sometimes used and sometimes not. You find both options:

| <i>name</i> | <i>possessive compound</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| ကိုဝင်း ⇒ | ကိုဝင်း အိမ် | Ko Win's house |
| or: | ကိုဝင်း အိမ် | Ko Win's house |

3 The verb phrase

3.1 Some common verb suffixes

The minimal verb phrase consists of a verb and a “verb suffix” marking the end of the sentence and usually conveying some meaning like tense. In any one verb phrase there is only one verb suffix, so you will not find any suffix on this list used alongside another. Here are some common verb suffixes:

| <i>verb sfx</i> | <i>meaning</i> | <i>example</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| [verb]-တယ် | a. <i>present/past</i> | ဝိစကီ သောက်တယ်။ | He drinks/drank whisky. |
| [verb]-သ | b. ditto (with လား/လဲ) | ဝိစကီ သောက်သလား။ | Does/did he drink whisky? |
| [verb]-တာ | c. ditto (with လား/လဲ/ပဲ/ပေါ့) | ဝိစကီ သောက်တာလား။ | Does/did he drink whisky? |
| [verb]-မယ် | a. <i>future or assumption</i> | ဦးထုတ် ဝယ်မယ်။ | He's going to buy a hat. |
| [verb]-မ | b. ditto (with လား/လဲ) | ဦးထုတ် ဝယ်မလား။ | Is he going to buy a hat? |
| [verb]-မှာ | c. ditto (with လား/လဲ/ပဲ/ပေါ့) | ဦးထုတ် ဝယ်မှာလား။ | Is he going to buy a hat? |
| [verb]-ပြီ | [verb]-ed yet? Yes | သံရုံး ရောက်ပြီလား။ | Have we got to the embassy yet? |
| | | သံရုံး ရောက်ပြီ။ | We've got to the embassy. |
| မ-[verb]-ဘူး | not [verb] | နား မလည်ဘူး။ | I don't/ didn't understand. |
| မ-[verb]-နဲ့ | don't [verb] | တံခါး မဖွင့်နဲ့။ | Don't open the door. |
| [verb] | do [verb] | ဒီဘက် သွား။ | Go this way. |
| [verb]-ရဲ့(လား)* | really? | ကောင်းရဲ့လား။ | Is it really good? |
| [verb]-စို့ | let's [verb] | သွားစို့ | Let's go. |
| [verb]-ရအောင် | shall we [verb]? | ကြည့်ရအောင် | Shall we have a look? |

Note that verbs may be either “positive” (the normal form) or “negative” (carrying the negative prefix မ-). Most verb suffixes are used only with positive verbs (for example,

[verb]-တယ်၊ [verb]-မယ်၊ [verb]-ပြီ), and two are used only with negative verbs: မ-[verb]-ဘူး၊ မ-[verb]-နဲ့။ This differentiation does not apply to subordinate verb suffixes: see Section 6 below.

* [verb]-ရဲ့ occurs most commonly in the greeting formula နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ “Are you well?”, in which it has lost the implication of “I find it hard to believe.” Another expression quite often heard is ထင်ပါရဲ့ “I believe so, anyway.” The ကဲ့ in ဟုတ်ကဲ့ “Yes” is a variant form of -ရဲ့။

3.2 Compound verbs

The verb in a verb phrase may be a simple, single verb, like သွား- “go,” or it may be a compound verb of some kind. There are two main kinds of compound verb: a main verb with another verb in front of it, or a main verb with another verb following it. We call the verbs that precede the main verb “pre-verbs” and the verbs that follow it “auxiliary verbs.”

Pre-verbs

A pre-verb may be used without a suffix, or with the suffixes -ပြီး or -ပြီးတော့။ for example:

သွား ထိုင်မယ် = သွားပြီး ထိုင်မယ် = သွားပြီးတော့ ထိုင်မယ်
 “go (+ suffix) + sit + suffix” = I’ll go and sit down.

In the examples below pre-verbs are shown without a suffix.

| <i>pre-verb</i> | <i>meaning</i> | <i>example</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| သွား-[verb]- | go and [verb] | မိန်းကလေးနားမှာ သွားထိုင်တယ်။ | He went and sat near the girl. |
| လာ-[verb]- | come and [verb] | မိန်းကလေးနားမှာ လာထိုင်တယ်။ | He came and sat near the girl. |
| ဝင်-[verb]- | enter and [verb] | စာအိတ် ဝင်ဝယ်တယ်။ | I went in and bought an envelope. |
| ထွက်-[verb]- | exit and [verb] | အပြင် ထွက်ဆော့တယ်။ | They went and played outside. |
| လျှောက်-[verb]- | wander round | ဒို့အရေး လျှောက်အော်တယ်။ | They roamed round |
| | [verb]-ing | | yelling “Our cause!” |
| ပြန်-[verb]- | [verb] again | ပြန်ရေးတယ်။ | I wrote it again. |
| စ-[verb]- | begin to [verb] | စကား စပြောတယ်။ | He started speaking. |
| ဆက်-[verb]- | continue [verb]-ing | ပညာ ဆက်သင်တယ်။ | She continued her education. |
| ပို-[verb]- | [verb] more | အဲဒီဟာ ပိုကောင်းတယ်။ | That one is better. |
| သိပ်-[verb]- | [verb] much | ဒီပုံ သိပ်လှတယ်။ | This picture is very pretty. |
| တယ်-[verb]- | [verb] much | တယ် ဝပါလား။ | How fat he is. |
| ကြို(တင်)-[verb]- | [verb] in advance | ကြို(တင်)အကြောင်းကြားမယ်။ | I’ll let you know in advance. |

Auxiliary verbs

There are many auxiliary verbs. In the following list they are arranged roughly according to type of meaning.

| <i>auxiliary verb</i> | <i>meaning</i> | <i>example</i> | <i>translation</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 [verb]-ချင်- | want to [verb] | ကိုကာကိုလာ သောက်ချင်တယ်။ | She wanted to drink some Coca-cola. |
| 2 [verb]-တတ်-(a) | know how to [verb] | တရုတ်စာ ဖတ်တတ်ပါတယ်။ | He can read Chinese. |
| 3 [verb]-တတ်-(b) | be likely to [verb] | မနက် အေးတတ်ပါတယ်။ | It's often cold in the morning. |
| 4 [verb]-တတ်-(c) | be in the habit of [verb]-ing | ဆေးလိပ် မသောက်တတ်ပါဘူး။ | He doesn't smoke. |
| 5 [verb]-ရ- | have (a chance) to [verb] | မြန်မာစာ လေ့လာရတယ်။ | He had (a chance) to study Burmese. |
| 6 [verb]-လို့ ရ- | can [verb] | နိုင်ငံခြား ဖုန်း ဆက်လို့ ရပါတယ်။ | You can phone abroad. |
| 7 [verb]-နိုင်- | can [verb] | တစ်ယောက်တည်း မသယ်နိုင်ဘူး။ | I can't carry it on my own. |
| 8 [verb]-ဖြစ်- | manage to [verb] | တင်းနစ် ကစားဖြစ်သလား။ | Did you manage to have a game of tennis? |
| 9 [verb]-ပြီး-* (a) | finish [verb]-ing | စာတန်း ရေးပြီးပြီလား။ | Have you finished writing your thesis? |
| neg.: [verb]-လို့ မပြီးသေး- | haven't yet finished [verb]-ing | ရေးလို့ မပြီးသေးဘူး။ | — I haven't finished writing it yet. |
| 10 [verb]-ပြီး-(b) | have [verb]-ed | ထမင်း စားပြီးပြီလား။ | Have you had a meal? |
| neg.: မ-[verb]-ရသေး- | haven't yet [verb]-ed | မစားရသေးဘူး။ | — I haven't eaten yet. |
| 11 [verb]-နေ-* | is/was [verb]-ing | အခုအချိန် အလုပ် လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ | They are working at the present time (but they may stop soon). |
| 12 [verb]-ထား-* | [verb] and have it there | မနက်က ထမင်း ချက်ထားတယ်။ | I cooked some rice this morning (and it's there for when we need it). |
| 13 [verb]-ပေး-* | [verb] for someone | လိပ်စာ ရေးပေးမယ်။ | I'll write out my address for (you). |
| 14 [verb]-ကြည့်-* | try out [verb]-ing | ဝတ်ကြည့်ပါ။ | Put it on and see (if it fits). |
| 15 [verb]-သွား-* | [verb] and go | လွယ်အိတ် ဝယ်သွားတယ်။ | He bought a shoulder bag [and went away]. |
| 16 [verb]-သွား-* | become [verb] | မျက်နှာ နီသွားတယ်။ | His face went red. |
| 17 [verb]-လာ-* (a) | [verb] and come | လက်ဆောင် ဝယ်လာတယ်။ | He brought some presents (bought-came). |
| 18 [verb]-လာ-* (b) | become [verb] | အနာ ကြီးလာတယ်။ | The sore got larger. |
| 19 [verb]-ဖူး | have ever [verb]-ed | ဗမာပြည် ရောက်ဖူးသလား။ | Have you ever been to Burma? |
| 20 [verb]-ခဲ့ | [verb] there (and come here) | လေးလ နေခဲ့တယ်။ | I stayed there for four months. |
| 21 [verb]-မိ- | [verb] accidentally | ဘူးပေါ် နင်းမိတယ်။ | She trod on the box. |
| 22 [verb]-လိုက်- | [minimizing] | ဒီဘူးထဲ ထည့်လိုက်ပါ။ | Just put it in this container. |
| 23 [verb]-လိမ့်- | probably [verb] (with -မယ် only) | သဘောကျပါလိမ့်မယ်။ | I expect they'll like it. |
| 24 [verb]-သေး- | [verb] in addition, further, still | ကျောင်း တက်နေသေးတယ်။ | She's still attending school. |
| 25 မ-[verb]-သေး- | not [verb] yet | ကျောင်း မတက်သေးပါဘူး။ | She's not going to school yet. |

| | | | | |
|----|-------------------|--|---|---|
| 26 | [verb]-တော့-(a) | [verb] at last, after being held up (past) | အိမ် ပြန်ရောက်ပါတော့တယ်။ | We got home at last. |
| 27 | [verb]-တော့-(b) | [verb] at last, after being held up (fut) | သွားတော့မယ်။ | I'm going now (at last). |
| 28 | မ-[verb]-တော့-(a) | doesn't [verb] any more | ကျောင်း မတက်တော့ဘူး။ | She doesn't go to school any more. |
| 29 | မ-[verb]-တော့-(b) | won't [verb] after all | ဒီလိုဆို မဝယ်တော့ဘူး။ | In that case I won't buy it after all. |
| 30 | [verb]-အုံး-(a) | [verb] more, longer (with -မယ် only) | ကြည့်အုံးမယ်။ | I'll carry on looking. |
| 31 | [verb]-အုံး(b) | [verb] more, again (with imp) | ထပ် ပြောပါအုံး။ | Please say that again. |
| 32 | [verb]-အုံး(c) | [verb] [with imp: friendly, encouraging] | ထိုင်ပါအုံး။ | Why don't you sit down? |
| 33 | မ-[verb]-အုံး- | not [verb] yet (with imp only) | မပြန်ပါနဲ့အုံး။ | Don't go home yet. |
| 34 | [verb]-ကြ- | [verb] [plural] | ကလေးတွေ ရန် ဖြစ်ကြတယ်။ | The children had a quarrel. |
| 35 | [verb]-ပါ- | [verb] [polite] | မေးပါ။ အားမနာပါနဲ့။ အချိန် ရှိပါတယ်။ | Go ahead and ask me. Don't worry. I have the time. |
| 36 | [verb]-ခိုင်း- | tell sn to [verb] | တံခါး ပိတ်ခိုင်းတယ်။ | I asked him to close the door. |
| 37 | [verb]-စေ- | let sn [verb] | အောင်ပါစေလို့ ဆုတောင်းတယ်။ | I pray that she'll succeed. |
| 38 | [verb]-စေချင်- | want someone to [verb] | မနက်ဖန် လာစေချင်တယ်။ | He wants you to come tomorrow. |
| 39 | [verb]-ကုန်-(a) | all [verb] | ပြန်ကုန်ပြီ။ | They've all gone home. |
| 40 | [verb]-ကုန်-(b) | [verb] all over | ပေကုန်ပြီ။ | It's got all dirty. |
| 41 | [verb]-လှ- | [verb] a lot | ဒီမှာ နေနေတာ ကြာလှပြီ။ | We've been living here a very long time. |
| 42 | [verb]-လွန်း- | [verb] too much, [verb] to excess | အမျိုးသမီးကို အရေးပေးလွန်းတယ်။ | He made too much fuss of the lady. |
| 43 | [verb]-ခဲ- | seldom [verb] | ဒီအချိန်မှာ မိုးရွာခဲတယ်။ | It hardly ever rains at this time. |
| 44 | [verb]-လောက်- | be enough to [verb] | မပြောလောက်ပါဘူး။ | It's hardly worth talking about. |
| 45 | [verb]-အား- | be free to [verb] | မဖတ်အားသေးဘူး။ | I haven't had time to read it yet. |
| 46 | [verb]-လွယ်- | easy to [verb] | ဒီလိုဟာမျိုး ဖွင့်လွယ်တယ်။ | This kind is easy to open. |
| 47 | [verb]-ဝံ့- | dare to [verb] | ခုချုပ်လား။ | Would you dare jump off? |
| 48 | [verb]-ရဲ- | dare to [verb] | ခုချုပ်လား။ | Ditto. |
| 49 | [verb]-သင့်- | be right, proper to [verb] | မမေးသင့်ဘူး။ | He shouldn't have asked you that. |

* In these cases the negative prefix generally comes before the auxiliary verb instead of before the main verb; for example:

ဖွင့်မပေးဘူး။

He wouldn't open it for us.

ဝယ်မသွားဘူးလား။

Didn't you buy one (before you left)?

4 Phrase suffixes

The difference between phrase suffixes and the verb and noun suffixes described above is that while the verb and noun suffixes are attached only to verbs or only to nouns, phrase suffixes are attached to whole phrases in the sentence. They serve to pick out one of the elements and focus attention on it in a specific way. Examples:

| <i>noun phr</i> | <i>phrase sfx</i> | <i>noun phr</i> | <i>verb phr</i> |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| ရေခဲမုန့် | -လဲ | - | ရတယ်။ |
| ice cream | -also | - | get |
| | You can get ice cream too. | | |
| ချောကလက် | -တော့ | အဲဒီမှာ | မရှိဘူး။ |
| chocolate | -however | there | there is not |
| | But there isn't any chocolate there. | | |

Some common phrase suffixes:

| | <i>suffix</i> | <i>meaning</i> | <i>example</i> |
|----|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | [phrase]-လဲ | also | ကျမလဲ ဝမ်းသာတယ်။ |
| 2 | [phrase]-ပါ | as well | ကိုတင့်ကိုပါ ပြောလိုက်နော်။ |
| 3 | [phrase]-တော့ | as for, however | စံစံတော့ မလာသေးဘူး။ |
| 4 | [phrase]-ကော or ရော | how about? | မိုင်းမိုင်းကော သောက်အုံးမလား။ |
| 5 | [phrase]-တောင် | even [more than you'd think] | သုံးကျပ်တောင် ပေးရတယ်။ |
| 6 | [phrase]-ပဲ | a. just, only [less than you'd think] | သုံးကျပ်ပဲ ပေးရတယ်။ |
| 7 | [phrase]-ပဲ | b. [emphatic] | ဒီမှာပဲ ဆုံမယ်နော်။ |
| 8 | [phrase]-မျှ | [vague, unspecific] | ကိုသူရကမျှား ယူသွားသလား မသိဘူး။ |
| 9 | [phrase]-ဖြစ် | as for, in the case of | ကျွန်တော်ဖြစ် ဘာပဲဖြစ်ဖြစ် ရတယ်။ |
| 10 | [phrase]-ကို | [emphatic] | စနေနေ့မှာကို ပိတ်တယ်။ |
| 11 | [phrase]-မှ | only, not otherwise | အခုမှ တွေ့တယ်။ |
| 12 | [phrase]-တစ်[noun]-မှ | [not] even one [noun] | တစ်လုံးမှ မရောင်းရဘူး။ |
| 13 | [phrase]-(ဘာ)မှ မ-[verb]- | don't [verb] any [thing] | ဘယ်ဟာမှ မကြိုက်ဘူး။ |

- I'm pleased too.
- Tell Ko Tin as well, will you?
- San San hasn't come yet.
- How about Maing Maing: would she like some more to drink?
- I had to pay as much as 3 kyats.
- I only had to pay 3 kyats.
- We'll meet here, OK?
- I wonder if it could be Ko Thura who took it?
- As far as I'm concerned, whatever it may be, it'll be fine.
- It's on Saturday they close.
- I've only just noticed it.
- We didn't sell a single one.
- I don't like any of them.

5 Sentence suffixes

Sentence suffixes generally affect the meaning of the whole sentence, and are attached to the end of the sentence.

| <i>suffix</i> | <i>meaning</i> | <i>example</i> |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| 1 [sentence]-ပါ | <i>polite</i> | ဒါက သမီးပါ။ |
| 2 [sentence]-ဝဲ | <i>emphatic</i> | ဒီမှာလဲ ဝယ်လို့ ရတာပဲ။ |
| 3 [sentence]-လား | <i>question: yes or no</i> | စာအိတ် ဝယ်သလား။ |
| 4 [sentence]-လဲ | <i>question: information</i> | ဘာ ဝယ်သလဲ။ |
| 5 [statement]-နော် | <i>It is so, isn't it?</i> | မနေ့က စတယ်နော်။ |
| 6 [I'm going to ...]-နော် | <i>You don't mind do you?</i> | ပြတင်းပေါက် ဖွင့်မယ်နော်။ |
| 7 [request]-နော် | <i>Please do it, if you don't mind.</i> | ပြတင်းပေါက် ဖွင့်ထားနော်။ |
| 8 [sentence]-ဆို | <i>Someone said so: is it true?</i> | ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ် ဆို။ |
| 9 [sentence]-ပေါ့ | <i>of course</i> | လက်မှတ် ဝယ်ရတာပေါ့။ |
| 10 [sentence]-လေ | <i>you see, I mean</i> | မနေ့က ပြီးတယ်လေ။ |
| 11 [sentence]-ကိုး | <i>after all</i> | သူက ပါမောက္ခသမီးကိုး။ |

- 1 That's my daughter.
- 2 You can certainly buy them here too.
- 3 Did you buy any envelopes?
- 4 What did you buy?
- 5 It began yesterday, didn't it?
- 6 You don't mind if I open the window do you?
- 7 Would you kindly open the window?
- 8 I hear you're learning Burmese?
- 9 Of course you have to buy a ticket.
- 10 It finished yesterday, you know.
- 11 She's a professor's daughter after all (so you can see why she got in for free).

6 Subordinate clauses

Another element that is found before the main verb in a sentence, like a noun phrase, is the "subordinate clause." In its internal structure, a typical subordinate clause closely parallels a sentence. It will have one or more noun phrases followed by a verb phrase. The difference is that whereas the verb phrase at the end of a sentence has a suffix that marks the end of the sentence, the verb phrase in a subordinate clause carries a suffix that marks a subordinate clause. When we need to refer to these elements we will call them "subordinate verb phrases" and "subordinate verb suffixes." Subordinate clauses are normally followed by a main clause, so they never come at the end of a full standard sentence. Here are some examples:

| subordinate clause | | | main clause | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------|
| noun phr | subordinate verb phrase | | noun phrase 1 | noun phrase 2 | main verb phrase | |
| | verb | sub verb sfx | | | verb | verb sfx |
| 1. သုတေသန research | လုပ် do | -ဖို့ -to | ဗမာပြည် Burma | - - | သွား go | -တယ်။ -pres/past. |
| 2. ရုံး office | ပြန်ရောက် get back | -ရင် -when | သူ့ဆီ to him | ဖုန်း phone | ဆက် connect | -မယ်။ -future |

1. He went to Burma to do research.

2. I'll phone him when I get back to the office.

Note that in English you often have a choice of clause order. In the following you can choose between (a) and (b):

(a) When I get back to the office I'll phone him.

(b) I'll phone him when I get back to the office.

In Burmese the standard order is always (a): the subordinate clause precedes the main clause.

The minimal subordinate verb phrase closely parallels the final verb phrase (the verb phrase at the end of a sentence). Like the final verb phrase it consists of a verb and a verb suffix; for example:

| verb | sub verb sfx | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| သောက် drink | -လို့ -lo | Because he drank it, ... |
| ဝယ် buy | -ရင် -ren | If I buy one, ... |
| ရောက် arrive | -တော့ -to | When we arrived, ... |

Again like the final verb phrase, the verb in the subordinate verb phrase may be simple or compound, positive or negative; for example:

| | sub verb sfx | |
|--|--------------|--|
| cpd. verb (aux.): သောက်ချင် want to drink | -လို့ -lo | Because he wanted to drink it, ... |
| cpd. verb (pre-verb): သွားဝယ် go and buy | -ရင် -ren | If I go and buy one, ... |
| neg. verb: မရောက် not arrive | -တော့ -to | As they hadn't arrived, ... |
| neg. cpd. verb: မတွေ့နိုင် not find | -မှ -my | Only if he was unable to find one, ... |

Here are some common subordinate verb suffixes:

| subordinate suffix | meaning | example |
|--|--------------------------------|---|
| Some subordinate verb suffixes are related to time only: | | |
| 1 [verb1]-ပြီး [verb2] | [verb1] and [verb2] | ထိုင်ပြီး စကားပြောနေတယ်။ sat and talking |
| 2 [verb]-ပြီး(တော့) | after [verb]-ing | ရေချိုးပြီး(တော့) အဝတ် လဲတယ်။ after washing clothes, changed clothes |
| 3 [verb]-ကတည်းက | ever since [verb]-ing | ရောက်ကတည်းက မိုးရွာနေတာပဲ။ since arrived, it has been raining |
| 4 [verb]-တိုင်း | every time [verb] | စကား စပ်မိတိုင်း ဒါပဲ ပြောတာပဲ။ every time I remember the story, I tell the same story |
| 5 [verb]-ရင်း | simultaneously with [verb]-ing | ကော်ဖီ သောက်ရင်း စာဖတ်တယ်။ while drinking coffee, read a book |
| 6 [verb]-တုန်း(က) | while, during [verb]-ing | လေ ထိုးနေတုန်း ဘီး ပေါက်သွားတယ်။ while the wind was blowing, the tyre burst |

| | | | | |
|----|-------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 7 | မ-[verb]-ခင် | before [verb]-ing | ထမင်း မစားခင် | အရက် သောက်ကြတယ်။ |
| 8 | မ-[verb]-မချင်း | up to the time at which [verb] | မပြန်မချင်း | ဒီမှာပဲ တဲပေါ့။ |
| 9 | [verb-verb]-ချင်း | as soon as [verb] | ပြီးပြီးချင်း | အကြောင်းကြားမယ်။ |
| 10 | [verb]-တဲ့အခါ | when [verb] | ကျောင်း ပိတ်တဲ့အခါ | ရေးမလို့။ |

- 1 They were sitting and talking.
- 2 She had a shower and (then) got dressed.
- 3 It's been raining ever since we arrived.
- 4 Every time the subject comes up he says the same old thing.
- 5 I read while I drink the coffee.
- 6 The tire burst while I was pumping it up.
- 7 They have a drink before they eat.
- 8 Feel free to stay here right up until you leave the country.
- 9 I'll let you know as soon as it's finished.
- 10 I'm hoping to write it when the school is closed.

Some subordinate verb suffixes are related to time or condition:

| | | | | |
|----|-------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| 11 | [verb]-ရင် | if/when [verb] | visa ရရင် | သွားမယ်။ |
| 12 | [verb]-လို့ရှိရင် | if/when [verb] | visa ရလို့ ရှိရင် | သွားမယ်။ |
| 13 | [verb]-မှ | only if, only when [verb] | သူပြောမှ | အော်နော်။ |

- 11 I'll go if/when I get a visa.
- 12 Ditto.
- 13 Only shout when/if I tell you, OK?

Some subordinate verb suffixes are related to cause only:

| | | | | |
|----|-----------------|------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 14 | [verb]-လို့ | because [verb] | ဗမာပြည်မှာ ပျော်နေလို့ | အမေရိကမှာ မနေချင်တော့ဘူး။ |
| 15 | [verb]-လို့ | [verb]-ing | ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေလို့ | ရသလား။ |
| 16 | [verb]-တဲ့အတွက် | as, since [verb] | ကား မရှိတဲ့အတွက် | သူတို့နဲ့ လိုက်သွားရတယ်။ |

- 14 He doesn't want to live in the U.S. any more because he is having a good time in Burma.
- 15 Did you manage to live in Burma?
- 16 As we had no car, we had to go with them.

Some subordinate verb suffixes are related to time or cause:

| | | | | |
|-----|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 17a | [verb]-တော့ | when, [verb] | အိမ်ပြန်ရောက်တော့ | ပြောပြတယ်။ |
| 17b | [verb]-တော့ | as, since [verb] | ဝက်သား မစားတော့ | ကြက်သား စားတယ်။ |
| 18a | [verb]-တာနဲ့ | as, since [verb] | ဖုန်း ပျက်နေတာနဲ့ | ကိုယ်တိုင် သွားတွေ့တယ်။ |
| 18b | [verb]-တာနဲ့ | at the same time as [verb] | အခန်းထဲရောက်တာနဲ့ | မီးဖွင့်ထားတယ်။ |

- 17a He told us when we got home.
- 17b As he didn't eat pork he had some chicken.
- 18a As the phone was out of order, I went to see him myself.
- 18b As soon as we got into the room, they switched the lights on.

The remainder fall into no obvious grouping:

| | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 19 [verb]-ဖို့ | in order to [verb] | သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ | ဗမာပြည် သွားတယ်။ |
| 20 [verb]-အောင် | with the result that, until [verb] | မိုက် ပြည့်အောင် | စားမယ်။ |
| 21 [verb]-ပေမဲ့ | although, in spite of [verb]-ing | ထိုင်ရုံ ရပေမဲ့ | မိန်းကလေးကို မပေးဘူး။ |
| 22 [verb]-မဲ့အစား | instead of [verb]-ing | ထိုင်ငိုနေမဲ့အစား | ထထိုးလိုက်ပါလား။ |
| 23 မ-[verb]-ပဲ | without [verb]-ing | ထီး မပါပဲ | မသွားနဲ့နော်။ |
| 24 [verb1-verb1] [verb2-verb2] whether [verb1] or [verb2] | | နေ ပူပူ မိုး ရွာရွာ | မနက်တိုင်း လမ်း လျှောက်တယ်။ |
| 25 ဘာ(ပဲ) [verb-verb] | whatever sn [verb]s | ဘာပဲ ပေးပေး | ဝမ်းသာမှာပဲ။ |
| 26 [verb]-သလို | as if [verb], like [verb] | ဘာမှ မဖြစ်သလို | နေရတယ်။ |
| 27 [verb]-သလိုလို | rather as if [verb], like [verb] | သဘာဝ မကျသလိုလို | ပြောနေတယ်။ |
| 28 [verb]-သလောက် | as much as sn [verb]s | သူတို့ ထမ်းသလောက် | လူတိုင်း မထမ်းနိုင်ဘူး။ |
| 29 [verb]-သလောက် | all that sn [verb]s | သူတို့ တောင်းသလောက် | ပေးရတာပဲ။ |
| 30 [verb]-တဲ့အတိုင်း | in accordance with [verb] | ဆရာ ညွှန်ပေးတဲ့အတိုင်း | လုပ်တာပါ။ |
| 31 [verb]-(တဲ့အ)ကြောင်း | concerning [verb]-ing, that [verb] | အရေးကြီး(တဲ့အ)ကြောင်း | ပြောပါတယ်။ |

- 19 He went to Burma to conduct research.
 20 I'm going to eat till my belly is full.
 21 Although he got a seat, he didn't offer it to the girl.
 22 Why don't you get up and hit him, instead of sitting crying?
 23 Don't go without taking an umbrella, will you?
 24 They go walking every morning, whether it's raining or sunny.
 25 They'll be pleased whatever you give them.
 26 You have to carry on as if nothing had happened.
 27 He was talking rather as if he didn't care for it.
 28 Not everyone can carry as much as they carry.
 29 I had to give them everything they asked for.
 30 I did it just as you directed.
 31 He told us it was important.

There are two suffixes that make subordinate clauses from is/are sentences with no verb:

| | | |
|---------------|---------------------|---|
| noun phrase 1 | noun phrase 2-ဖို့ | because noun phrase 1 is noun phrase 2 |
| noun phrase 1 | noun phrase 2-ပေမဲ့ | although noun phrase 1 is noun phrase 2 |

Here are two is/are sentences:

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ကျနော် ကွန်ပျူတာက မက်ကင်တော့။ | My computer is a Macintosh. |
| သူ့ ကွန်ပျူတာက အိုင်ဘီအမ်။ | His computer is an IBM. |

And here they are as subordinate clauses in larger sentences:

- 32 ကျနော် ကွန်ပျူတာက မက်ကင်တော့မို့ မြန်မာစာလုံးတွေ ရေးလို့ ရတယ်။
 I can write in Burmese script because my computer is a Macintosh.
 33 သူ့ ကွန်ပျူတာက အိုင်ဘီအမ်ပေမဲ့ မြန်မာစာလုံးတွေ ရေးလို့ ရတယ်။
 He can write in Burmese script although his computer is an IBM.

7 Relative clauses

7.1 [verb]-တဲ့ [noun] and [verb]-မဲ့ [noun]

Like main clauses and subordinate clauses, relative clauses consist typically of a set of noun phrases and a verb phrase, and the verb in the verb phrase can be simple or compound, positive or negative, in the same way as in main and subordinate clauses. The difference is that the suffix in the verb phrase is a “relative verb suffix.” There are only two of these relative verb suffixes: တဲ့ and မဲ့။ Relative clauses are always followed by the noun they modify. Examples:

| | relative clause | | | modified noun |
|---|--------------------------------|----------------------|--|---------------------|
| | noun phrase 1 | noun phrase 2 | rel. verb phrase [verb + rel. verb sfx] | |
| 1 | ကျွန်တော် I | ခုနက just now | ပြောတဲ့ mention-rel. | အမျိုးသမီး girl |
| 2 | သူတို့ They | ခါတိုင်း normally | ရောင်းတဲ့ sell-rel. | ဈေး price |
| 3 | ဦးကျော်လှိုင် U Kyaw Hlaing | မနက်ဖန် tomorrow | ဖတ်မဲ့ read-rel. | စာတမ်း statement |

- 1 the girl I mentioned just now
- 2 the price they normally sell at
- 3 the statement U Kyaw Hlaing is to read tomorrow

The whole combination (relative clause + modified noun) is used to fill the noun slot in a noun phrase in just the same way as other nouns. The only difference is that they are often much longer. Examples:

| | noun phrase 1 | | noun phrase 2 | verb phrase |
|---|--|--|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| | rel. clause + | modified noun | | |
| 1 | ကျွန်တော် ခုနက ပြောတဲ့ the girl I mentioned just now-near-at | အမျိုးသမီးနားမှာ the girl I mentioned just now-near-at | သူတို့ they | သွားထိုင်လိုက်တယ်။ went and sat |
| 2 | သူတို့ ခါတိုင်း ရောင်းတဲ့ the price they usually sell at-above | ဈေးထက် much | အများကြီး much | များတယ်။ be great |
| 3 | ဦးနေဝင်း မနက်ဖန် ဖတ်မဲ့ The statement that U Ne Win is to read tomorrow-obj—three times—had to revise | စာတမ်းကို the statement that U Ne Win is to read tomorrow-obj—three times—had to revise | သုံးကြိမ် three times | ပြင်ပေးရတယ်။ had to revise |

- 1 They went and sat near the girl I mentioned just now.
- 2 It was a lot more than the price they usually sell at.
- 3 They had to revise three times the statement that U Ne Win is to read tomorrow.

7.2 Relative clauses without -တဲ့ and -မဲ့

The examples in the preceding section show how a noun can be modified by a clause ending in [verb]-တဲ့ or [verb]-မဲ့။ There is small set of nouns that have the curious property that they can be modified by a clause direct, without a -တဲ့ or -မဲ့။ Many of these nouns bear a different meaning when they are modified in this way from the meaning they bear when they appear in other contexts. The word နည်း: “method, way” in this example differs just a little:

| | | |
|---------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| with -တဲ့။ | တရုတ်မ ပိုးတဲ့ နည်း: | the method of courting a Chinese girl |
| without -တဲ့။ | တရုတ်မ ပိုးနည်း: | how to court a Chinese girl |

As with normal relative clauses, the whole combination (“direct” relative clause + modified noun) makes a long noun that can fill the noun slot in a noun phrase like any other noun; for example:

| <i>noun phrase</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> |
|---|--------------------|
| ဆရာညို တရုတ်မ ပိုးနည်း: | ဟောနေတယ်။ |
| Saya Nyo — Chinese girl — chase-method | was pontificating |
| Saya Nyo was pontificating about how to chase a Chinese girl. | |

Direct relative clauses most often contain just one noun phrase and the verb. Here is a list of nouns that can take “direct” relative clauses.

| <i>noun</i> | <i>normal meaning</i> | <i>modified meaning</i> |
|-------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 အကြောင်း: | fact, concerning | that [verb] |
| 2 ဟန် | style, manner | appearance of [verb]-ing |
| 3 အချိန် | time | when [verb] |
| 4 အမှု | act, deed | [abstract noun] |
| 5 အခြင်း: | fact, matter | [abstract noun] |
| 6 အရေး: | campaign, ... | [abstract noun] |
| 7 အခါစ | — | start of time of [verb]-ing |
| 8 အခွင့် | — | permission to [verb] |
| 9 နည်း: | method | way of [verb]-ing |
| 10 ပုံ | picture | manner of [verb]-ing |
| 11 သူ | she, he | person who [verb]s |
| 12 အသံ | sound | sound of [verb]-ing |
| 13 ရံ | — | mere fact of [verb]-ing |

Examples

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 သိပ်မသွားချင်ကြောင်း ဖွင့်ပြောတယ်။ | He admitted that he didn't much want to go. |
| 2 သတိ မထားမိဟန် ပြုနေတယ်။ | He was making out that he hadn't noticed. |
| 3 နေဝင်ချိန်မှာ တွေ့တာ များတယ်။ | You see them most often at sunset. |
| 4 ပြည်သူအုံကြွမှုကြီးမှာ စည်းကမ်း ရှိတယ် ထင်သလား။ | Do you think the people's mass movement is disciplined? |
| 5 အမေရိကန်က ဗုံးကျဲခြင်းဟာ မှားတယ်လို့ ထင်သလား။ | Do you think the Americans' bombing was a mistake? |

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>6 ဖွံ့ဖြိုးမှု ရှိလာစေရေးအတွက် ငွေ ရင်းနှီးမြှုပ် လိုတာပေါ့။</p> <p>7 ဗမာစကား သင်ခါစမှာ သတိ ထားမိတယ်။</p> <p>8 အထဲဝင်ခွင့် မရှိတော့ အပြင်ကနေပဲ ကြည့်ခဲ့ရတယ်။</p> <p>9 ဥပဒေ ရေးဆွဲနည်းကိုက မှားနေလို့ပါ။</p> <p>10 ဇွန်းခက်ရင်း ကိုင်ကြပုံ မတူဘူး။</p> <p>11 မြန်မာနိုင်ငံအပေါ် တကယ် စေတနာ ရှိသူ ဆိုရင် ပြဿနာ မရှိပါဘူး။</p> <p>12 တရားရုံးတရားရုံး စကား ပြောသံ ကြားရတယ်။</p> <p>13 အဓိပ္ပာယ် ပြောပြတာ တစ်ကြိမ်တည်း ကြားလိုက်ရုံနဲ့ ဘယ်မှတ်မိလိမ့်မလဲ။</p> | <p>To bring about development a country needs investment.</p> <p>I noticed when I first started learning Burmese. As we weren't authorized to go inside we had to watch from outside.</p> <p>It was because the very way they drew up the laws was wrong.</p> <p>They differ in the way they hold a knife and fork. If it's someone who really has Burma's best interests at heart, then there's no problem.</p> <p>They heard the sound of voices raised in altercation.</p> <p>How can they be expected to remember it as a result of simply having had the meaning explained once?</p> |
|--|---|

7.3 Relative clauses ending in [verb]-တာ and [verb]-မှာ

Among the nouns that can take “direct” relative clauses there are two that deserve a section to themselves: [verb]-တာ and [verb]-မှာ။ These two are not so much nouns that take direct relative clauses as nouns that incorporate contracted relative clauses:

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| is contracted to: | [verb]-တဲ့ ဟာ | the thing which [verb]-s or [verb]-ed |
| | [verb]-တာ | ditto |
| and: is contracted to: | [verb]-မဲ့ ဟာ | the thing which will [verb] |
| | [verb]-မှာ | ditto |

Meaning 1

The first meaning of [verb]-တာ and [verb]-မှာ is the straightforward predictable one suggested by the translations above. Here are some examples:

| | | |
|--|----------------|----------------------|
| ခွင့်ပြုတာကိုမှ | ပြောခွင့် | ရပါတယ်။ |
| approval-give-thing-object-only | say-permission | get-polite-pres/past |
| They are only allowed to say what has been approved. | | |

| | | | |
|--|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| သူတို့ | ပြောမှာတွေကို | ကြိုတင်ပြီး | တင်ပြရတယ်။ |
| They | say-thing-plural-object | anticipate-and | submit-must-pres/past |
| They have to submit beforehand what they are going to say. | | | |

Meaning 2

[verb]-တာ and [verb]-မှာ also have a second meaning. They indicate an activity or an abstract noun. Compare —

meaning 1: the thing which [verb]:

သူ အစည်းအဝေးမှာ ဝေပေးတာ မဖတ်လိုက်မိဘူးလား။

Didn't you read the thing he gave out at the meeting?

meaning 2: the fact/act of [verb]-ing:

သူ အစည်းအဝေးမှာ ဝေပေးတာ သတိ မထားလိုက်မိဘူးလား။

Didn't you see him giving things out at the meeting?

Sometimes an extra noun in the clause makes meaning 2 more distinct:

meaning 2: the fact/act of [verb]-ing:

သူ အစည်းအဝေးမှာ စာရွက် ဝေပေးတာ သတိ မထားလိုက်မိဘူးလား။

Didn't you see him giving out the sheets at the meeting?

Here are some more examples of meaning 2:

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| တွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ | I am pleased to have met you. |
| ဗမာစကား သင်နေတာ ကြာပြီလား။ | Have you been learning Burmese for long? |
| သူတို့ စကား များနေကြတာ ကြားရတယ်။ | I heard them quarrelling. |
| ထင်းထင်းကြီး ဆွဲထားတာ တွေ့ရတယ်။ | We saw it drawn very clearly. |
| လုပ်ကြမှာ သေချာပါတယ်။ | It is certain that they will do it. |
| ပင်ပန်းမှာ စိုးရိမ်တယ်။ | She was worried that they might get tired. |

8 Sentences with no verb

"Is/are sentences" in Burmese normally have no verb. They contain just two noun phrases: a subject and a "predicate." They may also contain phrase suffixes and sentence suffixes.

| | <i>subject</i> | <i>phr sfx</i> | <i>predicate</i> | <i>stce sfx</i> |
|----|----------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. | ဒါ | - | ဘာ | -လဲ။ |
| | That | - | what | ? |
| 2. | ဒါ | -တော့ | ရုံး | -ပဲ။ |
| | That | however | office | <i>emphatic</i> |
| 3. | ဘူတာကြီး | -ကော | ဘယ်မှာ | -လဲ။ |
| | Station | how about | where | ? |
| 4. | ဘူတာကြီး | - | ဒီမှာ။ | - |
| | Station | - | here | - |

1. What is that?
2. As for that one, it's an office [not a house like the previous one].
3. How about the station: where's that?
4. The station is here.

Negating is/are sentences:

"Is/are" sentences are negated ("That one's not an office.") by introducing a verb phrase, with the verb ဟုတ်- "to be so, to be the case":

| <i>noun phrase 1</i> | <i>noun phrase 2</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| ဒါတော့ | ရုံး | မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ |
| That one-as for | office | not-be so-polite-neg |
| As for that one, it's not an office. | | |

Is/are sentences with a verb:

Often in literary Burmese, and sometimes in formal colloquial Burmese, people turn is/are sentences into verb sentences by using ဖြစ်- to mean "is/are"; for example:

| <i>noun phrase 1</i> | <i>noun phrase 2</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| ဒါလဲ | ရုံး | ဖြစ်(ပါ)တယ်။ |
| That one-too | office | be-polite-pres/past |
| That's an office too. | | |

9 Which? what? this, that

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| ဘယ် [noun] | which [noun]? | ဟို [noun] | that [noun] (a long way off) |
| -- ဘယ် ဘက် | which way? | ဟို ဘက် | way off in that direction |
| -- ဘယ် လမ်း | which road? | ဟိုလမ်း | that road (way over there) |
| ဘယ် မှာ | in which place? (at) where? | ဟိုမှာ | in that place way over there |
| ဘယ် | to which place? (to) where? | ဟို | to that place way over there |
| ဘာ | what thing? | ဟိုဟာ | that thing over there |
| ဘာ [noun] | what [noun]? | ဟို [noun] | that [noun] way over there |
| --ဒါ ဘာဈေးလဲ။ | What market is that? | | |

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| ဒီ [noun] | this/that [noun] (nr speaker) | အဲဒီ [noun] | that [noun] (near listener) |
| -- ဒီ ဘက် | this/that way | -- အဲဒီ ဘက် | that way |
| -- ဒီ ဓါတ်ပုံ | this/that photograph | -- အဲဒီ အိမ် | that house |
| ဒီမှာ | in this place, (at) here | အဲဒီမှာ | in that place, right there |
| ဒီ | to this place, (to) here | အဲဒီ | to that place, (to) there |
| ဒါ | this/that thing | အဲဒါ | that thing |

Other interrogatives

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|------------|----------------------|
| ဘယ်လောက် | how much | ဘယ်အချိန် | at what time |
| ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ | for how long | ဘယ်သူ | who |
| ဘယ်နှစ်- | how many ... | ဘာဖြစ်လို့ | why |
| ဘယ်နှစ်နာရီ | at what time | ဘာကြောင့် | for what reason, why |
| ဘယ်တုန်းက | when (in the past) | ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ | to do what, what for |
| ဘယ်တော့ | when (in the future) | ဘာလုပ် | ditto |
| ဘယ်လို | how, in what way | | |

10 Not any

ဘယ်/ဘာ-[noun]-မှ ...မ-[verb]—

1. the formula alone

ဘယ်မှ မသွားဘူး။

ဘာမှ မဝယ်ခဲ့ဘူး။

He didn't go anywhere.

We didn't buy anything.

2. the formula with suffix

လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် ဘယ်တော့မှ မသွားဘူး။

အခုခေတ်မှာ ဒါမျိုး ဘယ်မှာမှ မဝယ်နိုင်ဘူး။

He never goes (doesn't ever go) to the café.

You can't buy that kind anywhere these days.

3. the formula with noun

ဘယ်သူမှ မဖြေရှင်းနိုင်ဘူး။

ဘယ်သတင်းစာမှ မဖတ်ဘူး။

ဘာအလုပ်မှ မရှိဘူး။

No one (not anyone) could solve it.

They don't read any newspaper.

She doesn't have any work at all.

4. the formula with noun and suffix

ဘယ်ဆိုင်မှာမှ ဝယ်လို့ မရဘူး။

ဘယ်အရသာနဲ့မှ မတူဘူး။

You can't buy these in any shop.

It's not like any (other) taste.

5. တစ်-[count word]-မှ မ-[verb]—

တစ်ပြားမှ မကုန်ဘူး။

တစ်စက္ကန့်မှ မကြာဘူး။

တစ်သား တစ်ယောက်မှ မတွေ့ဘူး။

It didn't cost a penny.

It won't take a second.

We didn't see a single soldier.

11 The uses of ဆို-

ဆို- 1. The first meaning of ဆို- is "to say."

တက္ကသိုလ်တုန်းက စခဲ့တယ်လို့ ဆိုရပါမယ်။

ပြန် မအမ်းပါနဲ့ ဆိုပြီး ထွက်သွားကြတယ်။

ဗန်ကောက်က လွင့်တယ် ဆိုတဲ့ အသံ

မကြားလိုက်ရပါဘူး။

ကိုကို မကြာခင် ရောက်လာမယ် ဆိုတာမျိုး ကျမ

လက်မခံနိုင်ဘူး။

ဆရာ ဂနဲ့ ဒီအချိန် ပြန်ရောက်မယ် ဆိုလို့ အခု

လာတွေ့တာပါ။

I have to say it began at university.

They said "Don't give me the change" and went out.

I didn't happen to hear the broadcast he was said to have made from Bangkok.

I cannot accept the claims that my brother is coming back soon.

I heard that you were coming back today at about this time, so that's why I came to see you.

ဆိုတဲ့ 2a. [name]ဆိုတဲ့ [noun] means "the [noun] called [name]"

မစန္ဒာ ဆိုတဲ့ စာရေးဆရာမ။

ကော်နဲ ဆိုတဲ့ တက္ကသိုလ်။

An author named Ma Sanda.

A university called Cornell.

2b. [sentence]ဆိုတဲ့ [noun] means "the [noun] which says or means or relates to [sentence]"

သဘော မကောင်းဘူး ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ် ထွက်တယ်။ It has the meaning "he's not kind."

နိုင်ငံရေး အခြေအနေ ဘယ်လို ရှိခဲ့သလဲ ဆိုတဲ့

အကြောင်း လေ့လာထားတယ်။

I studied the question of what the political situation was at the time.

ဆိုတာ 3a. [noun] ဆိုတာ

means "the thing called [noun], such a thing as [noun], the expression '[noun]'"
 ပဟေဠိ ဆိုတာ ဘာပြောတာလဲ။ What is the meaning of the word "paheli"?
 နိုင်ငံတော် ဆိုတာ ဘာလဲ။ What is "the state"?

3b. [statement] ဆိုတာ means "the fact that [statement], such a thing as [statement]"
 ဒီကို ရောက်လာလိမ့်မယ် ဆိုတာ မနေ့ကတည်းက He has known since yesterday that they'd
 သိနေပါတယ်။ probably be arriving today.
 အလုပ်က ထုတ်ပစ်တယ် ဆိုတာ မဖြစ်သင့်ဘူး။ Being thrown out of your job is something that
 shouldn't happen.

3c. [question] ဆိုတာ means "(relative) who, how, which, what, why," and so on.
 မဲ ဘယ်လို ရေတွက်မယ် ဆိုတာ မကြေငြာသေးဘူး။ They haven't yet announced how they're going to
 count the votes.
 အစည်းအဝေးမှာ ဘာပြောရင် ကောင်းမလဲ ဆိုတာ Have a think about what we ought to say at
 စဉ်းစားထားအုံး။ the meeting.

ဆိုရင် 4a. [noun] ဆိုရင် means "if you take the case of [noun], in the case of [noun]"

တချို့ မိန်းခလေးတွေ ဆိုရင် ထဘီ တိုတို [In the case of] some girls [they] wear their
 ဝတ်ကြတယ်။ longyi short.
 သူတို့ ရှုထောင့်အရ ဆိုရင် ဒီကိစ္စ တော်တော် From their point of view this matter is
 အရေးကြီးတာပေါ့။ very important.

4b. [statement] ဆိုရင် means "if [statement] is the case"
 ကျမ အသုံး ကျမယ် ဆိုရင် ဗမာပြည်မှာ နေမယ်။ If I can be useful, I'll stay in Burma.
 ဒီလို ဆိုရင် ... If that's the way it is, ...

4c. [question] ဆိုရင် means "if we consider the [question], in answer to [question]"
 သူတို့ အနေနဲ့ ဘာခက်သလဲ ဆိုရင် For them, what's difficult is the pronunciation.
 အသံထွက်ပါပဲ။
 သူတို့ အဆို ကျနော် ဘာကြောင့် မထောက်ခံသလဲ My reason for not supporting their proposal is that
 ဆိုရင် အခြေ အနေ ပိုဆိုးသွားမှာ စိုးလို့ပါ။ I'm afraid it'll make the situation worse.

ဆိုတော့ 5a. [statement] ဆိုတော့ means "as [statement] is the case, since [statement] is true"

စံစက ဧည့်သည် ခေါ်လာမယ် ဆိုတော့ ထမင်း As San San is bringing a visitor we'll need to cook
 ထပ်ချက်ထားဖို့ လိုလိမ့်မယ်။ some extra rice.
 သူက ဗိုလ်ချုပ် သမီး ဆိုတော့ လွယ်လွယ်နဲ့ As she's the General's daughter, of course she'd get
 ရမှာပေါ့။ one easily.

5b. [question] ဆိုတော့ means "if we consider the [question], in answer to [question]"
 like [question] ဆိုရင်
 သူက ဘယ်လို ပြန်ပြောလဲ ဆိုတော့ "မလိုဘူး"တဲ့။ What he replied was: "It's not necessary."

- ဆို 6. [statement] ဆို means “didn’t you say that [statement] is the case? I thought I heard that [statement] is true? Someone said [statement]: is that right?”
- ဒီနေ့ သင်းသင်းပါ လာမယ်ဆို I thought someone said that Thin Thin would be here today?
- ဗမာစကား သင်နေတယ်ဆို I gather you’re learning Burmese: is that so?

12 Examples of sentences analysed to show their structure

In the examples below square brackets mark off words that are often omitted when they can be supplied from what has been said previously. See Grammar Section 1.2.1.

| | <i>noun phrase 1</i> | <i>phrase</i> | <i>noun phr 2</i> | <i>phrase</i> | <i>verb phrase</i> | <i>sentence</i> |
|----|---------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| | <i>noun ± suffix</i> | <i>suffix</i> | <i>noun ± suffix</i> | <i>suffix</i> | <i>verb ± suffix</i> | <i>suffix</i> |
| 1. | ဒေါ်မေ Daw Me | - | ဘယ်လမ်း + မှာ which road + in | - | နေ + သ live + <i>pres/past</i> | -လဲ။ question? |
| 2. | - | - | ကမ်းနားလမ်း + မှာ Strand Road + in | - | နေပါ + တယ် live + <i>pres/past</i> | -။ - |
| 3. | ဦးဖေ + က U Pe + subject | -တော့ as for | ကမ်းနားလမ်း + မှာ Strand Road + in | - | မနေ + ဘူး not-live + <i>neg</i> | -နော်။ -right? |
| 4. | ဒီကား + က This car + subject | -ကော how about | တရပ်ပြည် + က China + from | - | လာ + သ come + <i>pres/past</i> | -လား။ -question? |

- Which road does Daw Me live in?
- She lives in Strand Road.
- But U Pe doesn’t live in Strand Road, does he?
- How about *this* car? — does it come from China?

| | | | | | | |
|----|-------------|---|-----------------------------|---|---|-------------------|
| 5. | ကျနော် I | - | ဆေးရုံ hospital | - | သွားချင် + တယ် go-want + <i>pres/past</i> | -။ - |
| 6. | - | - | ဘယ် + လို Which + manner | - | သွားရ + မ go-should + <i>future</i> | -လဲ။ question? |
| 7. | - | - | ဒီဘက် This way | - | သွား go | -။ - |
| 8. | - | - | ကျေးဇူး Gratitude | - | တင်ပါ + တယ် bear-polite + <i>pres/past</i> | -။ - |
| 9. | - | - | - | - | ရပါ + တယ် Get-polite + <i>pres/past</i> | -။ - |

- I want to go to the hospital.
- How should I get there?
- Go this way.
- Thank you.
- That’s OK.

| | | | | | | |
|-----|---|-------------|---------------------------|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| 10. | နာမည် Name | - | ဘယ် + လို which+manner | - | ခေါ် + သ call + pres/past | -လဲ။ -question? |
| 11. | - | - | ပီတာ Peter | -လို -quoted | ခေါ်ပါ + တယ် call-polite + pres/past | -။ - |
| 12. | ကိုပီတာနဲ့ တွေ့ရတာ* KP-with meet-can-thing | - | ဝမ်း stomach | - | သာပါ + တယ် be good-pol.+ pres/past | -။ - |
| 13. | ကျမ I | -လဲ -too | ဝမ်း stomach | - | သာ + တာ be good-pol.+ pres/past | -ပဲ။ -indeed. |

10. What is your name?
 11. It is Peter.
 12. I am pleased to have met you, Ko Peter.
 13. And I am pleased to have met you too.

| | noun phrase 1 | phrase suffix | verb phrase | stce |
|-----|---|------------------|--|------------------------|
| | noun ± suffix | | verb ± suffix | sfx |
| 14. | ဗမာစကား Burmese speech | - | ပြောတတ် + တယ် speak-can + pres/past | -နော်။ -right? |
| 15. | နဲနဲ little | -ပဲ only | ပြောတတ်ပါသေး + တယ် speak-can-polite-as yet+ pres/past | - - |
| 16. | - | - | သိပ် မပြောတတ်သေးပါ + ဘူး much-not-speak-can-yet-pol + pres/past | - - |
| 17. | ကိုပီတာ ဗမာစကားပြောတာ* KP-Burmese speech-speak-ing | - | သိပ် ကောင်း + တာ much-good + pres/past | -ပဲ။ -indeed |
| 18. | တကယ် Really | - | / [ပြော + တာ] [say + pres/past] | -ပဲလား။ -indeed-qn? |

14. You can speak Burmese, can't you?
 15. I can just speak a bit so far.
 16. I can't speak much as yet.
 17. You speak Burmese very well!
 18. [Do you] really [mean it]?



| | noun phrase 1 | phr | noun phrase 2 | phr | verb phrase | sentence |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----|--------------------|-----|------------------|------------|
| | noun ± suffix | sfx | noun ± suffix | sfx | verb ± suffix | suffix |
| 19. | လန်ဒန် ပြန်ရောက်နေတာ* | - | - | - | ကြာ + ပြီ | -လား။ |
| | London-return-arrive-stay-ing | - | - | - | be long + yet | -question? |
| 20. | လေးရက် | - | - | - | ရှိ + ပြီ | -။ |
| | Four-day | - | - | - | be + yet | - |
| 21. | ဗမာပြည် | - | ဘာ ကိစ္စ + နဲ့ | - | သွား + သ | -လဲ။ |
| | To Burma | - | what matter + with | - | go + pres/past | -question? |
| 22. | ဗမာစကား သင်ဖို့† | - | - | - | သွားပါ + တယ် | -။ |
| | Burma-speech-learn-to | - | - | - | go-pol+pres/past | - |

19. Have you been back in London for long?
 20. I've been back four days now.
 21. What took you to Burma?
 22. I went to learn Burmese.

* The noun phrases marked with a * are examples of relative clauses ending in -တာ။ They are described in Section 7.3. Clauses of this type can be used in a noun slot in a sentence like any other noun, but internally they can be analysed in a way parallel to that of a standard sentence:

| | noun phrase 1 | noun phrase 2 | verb phrase |
|-----|---------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| 23. | ကိုပီတာ | ဗမာစကား | ပြော [တာ] |
| 24. | ကိုပီတာ-နဲ့ | - | တွေ့ရ [တာ] |
| 25. | လန်ဒန် | - | ပြန်ရောက်နေ [တာ] |
| 23. | Ko Peter | Burmese speech | speak -ing |
| 24. | Ko Peter-with | - | meet-can -ing |
| 25. | London | - | return-arrive-be -ing |

If these were full sentences, with the verb suffix -တယ် in place of -တာ, they would be translatable as:

23. Ko Peter speaks Burmese
 24. I meet Ko Peter
 25. You get back to London

† The phrase marked with a † is not a noun phrase but a subordinate clause: see Section 6. Subordinate clauses too can be analysed in the same way as a standard sentence (but note that the verb suffix is a *subordinate* verb suffix):

| noun phrase | verb phrase | |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|
| | verb | sub verb sfx |
| ဗမာစကား | သင် | [-ဝံ] |
| Burmese-speech | study | [-to] |
| to study Burmese | | |

Is/are sentences, since they have no verb phrase (except when they are negated), have a different structure from that of the standard sentence:

| | noun phrase 1 | phrase | noun phrase 2 | sentence |
|-----|------------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| | noun ± suffix | suffix | noun ± suffix | suffix |
| 26. | ဒါ | - | ဘာ | -လဲ။ |
| | That | - | what | -question? |
| 27. | ဒါ | - | စာတိုက် | -ပါ။ |
| | That | - | post office | -polite |
| 28. | ဒါ + က | -ကော | [ဘာ | -လဲ။] |
| | That + subject | -how about | [what | -question?] |
| 29. | ဒါ + က | -လဲ | စာတိုက် | -ပါပဲ။ |
| | That + subject | -also | post office | -pol.-indeed |
| 30. | မိဖြူ + က | - | အလုပ် + နဲ့ | -လား။ |
| | Mi Pyu + subject | - | work + with | -question? |
| 31. | အိမ်သာ | - | ဘယ် + မှာ | -လဲ။ |
| | Toilet | - | which + at | -question? |
| 32. | - | - | ဒီဘက် + မှာ | -ပါ။ |
| | - | - | this-way + at | -polite |

26. What's that?
 27. That's a post office.
 28. How about that [— what's that]?
 29. That's a post office too!
 30. Does Mi Pyu have a job?
 31. Which way is the toilet?
 32. This way.

| | | | | |
|-----|----------------------|---------|----------------------|----------------|
| 33. | ကိုဒေးဗစ် + က | - | ဘယ်နိုင်ငံ + က | -လဲ။ |
| | Ko David + subject | - | which-country + from | -question? |
| 34. | [ကိုဒေးဗစ် + က] | - | အင်္ဂလန် + က | -ပါ။ |
| | [Ko David + subject] | - | England + from | -polite |
| 35. | သူ့ဇနီး + က | -တော့ | ဟော်လန် + က | -ပဲနော်။ |
| | His wife + subject | -as for | Holland + from | -indeed-right? |
| 36. | [သူ့ဇနီး + က] | - | ဟော်လန် + က | -ပါ။ |
| | [His wife + subject] | - | Holland + from | -polite |

33. Which country is Ko David from?
34. [Ko David is] from England.
35. But his wife's from Holland, isn't she?
36. [His wife is] from Holland.

13 Literary-style equivalents

The following is taken from the introduction to *Burmese: An Introduction to the Literary Style* (parallel with the Spoken Language volumes).

Speakers of Burmese use two different “styles” of Burmese for expressing themselves. One is the style you use for talking to people in a friendly, informal way, and the other is used in formal contexts: for newspaper reports and editorials, for memoirs, notices, textbooks, and so on. People use different names for the two styles: here we call the first style “colloquial” and the second “literary.”

The difference between the two styles lies mostly in vocabulary: you use one form of a word in colloquial and an alternative form in literary. The great majority of words in the language remain unchanged whichever style you are using. However, the words that do alternate are the most frequently used words, so you only have to look at the first couple of lines in a passage of writing to be able to tell whether it is written in literary or colloquial.

The words most affected when you switch from one style to the other are the suffixes, the words attached to the ends of the nouns and verbs and conveying meanings like “of,” “to,” “from,” “subject of sentence,” “about,” “past time,” and so on. Some suffixes are used unchanged in both styles, but most of the common ones have alternative forms.

This Section is not a comprehensive comparison of colloquial and literary styles in Burmese. Its aim is to enable students to find a literary equivalent for a colloquial suffix, or vice versa. To this end, the lists of colloquial forms presented above are repeated below, and against each form is set one or more of its commoner literary equivalents.

The literary forms that appear here are entered in the Vocabulary, so if you find a literary suffix and want to know its colloquial equivalent, the Vocabulary will tell you where to find it in this Section. The Section numbering echoes that of the colloquial portion of the Outline grammar: noun suffixes are listed in Section 2.1 above: here they are in Section 13.2.1

13.2.1 Noun suffixes

| <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| [noun]- | same | subject (normal) |
| no equivalent | -သည် | subject (normal) |
| [noun]-က | same | subject (highlighted) |
| [noun]-ဟာ | -မှာ | subject (highlighted) |
| [noun]- | same | object (unmarked) |

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| [noun]-ကို | same | object (marked) |
| [noun]-ကို | -အား | indirect object |
| [noun]- | same | destination (unmarked) |
| [noun]-ကို | -သို့ | destination (marked) |
| [noun]-ဆီ | -ထံ | destination (person) |
| [noun]-အထိ | same | point up to which |
| [noun]-မှာ | -မှာ or -တွင် or -၌ | location |
| [noun]-ဆီမှာ | -ထံမှာ or variants | location (person) |
| [noun]-က | same | point in past time |
| [noun]- | same or -မျှ | length of time |
| [noun]-က(နေ့) | -မှ(သည်) | source (place) |
| [noun]-ဆီက | -ထံမှ | source (person) |
| [repeated verb] | -စွာ | degree |
| ခပ်+repeated verb | same | degree |
| အ-[verb]-ကြီး | same | degree |
| [noun]-လို့ | -ဟု or -ဟူ၍ | quotation (name) |
| [noun]-လို့ | -ဟု or -ဟူ၍ | quotation (speech) |
| [noun]-နဲ့ | -နှင့် or -ဖြင့် | instrument |
| [noun]-နဲ့ | -နှင့် | accompaniment |
| [noun]-ကြောင့် | same | cause |
| [noun]-နဲ့ | -နှင့် | comparison (like/unlike) |
| [noun]-ထက် | same | comparison (more than) |
| [noun]-လို | -ကဲ့သို့ or -သို့ | manner |
| [noun]-အကြောင်း | same | concerning |
| [noun]-အတိုင်း | same or -အလျောက် | matching |
| [noun]-အတွက် | same | beneficiary |

Nouns expressing spatial relations

Literary style uses the same words as colloquial

13.2.2 Compound nouns formed with suffixes

| <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| [noun]-တို့ | same | "[noun] and co." |
| [noun-noun]-တို့ | same | "all named [noun]s" |
| [noun]-တွေ | -များ or -တို့ | [noun]s |
| [noun]-တိုင်း | same | every [noun] |
| [noun]-ကြီး | same | big [noun] |
| [noun]-(က)လေး | same or -ငယ် | little [noun] |

Suffixes used with number phrases

| | | |
|-----------------|-------|--------------------|
| n°-[noun]-လောက် | -ခန့် | approx. n° [noun]s |
| n°-[noun]-တည်း | same | merely n° [noun]s |
| n°-[noun]-လုံး | same | all n° [noun]s |

Suffixes used between two nouns

| | | |
|---------------------|--------|---------------------|
| [noun1]-နဲ့ [noun2] | -နှင့် | [noun1] and [noun2] |
|---------------------|--------|---------------------|

| | | |
|---------------------|------|-------------------|
| [noun1]-ရဲ့ [noun2] | -၏ | [noun1]'s [noun2] |
| [noun1]-crk [noun2] | same | [noun1]'s [noun2] |

13.3.1 Verb suffixes

| <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| [verb]-တယ် | -သည် or -၏ | a. <i>present/past</i> |
| [verb]-သ | same | b. ditto (with လာ:/လဲ) |
| [verb]-တာ | -သည် | c. ditto (with လာ:/လဲ/ပဲ/ပေါ့) |
| [verb]-မယ် | -မည် less commonly-အံ့ | a. <i>future or assumption</i> |
| [verb]-မ | same | b. ditto (with လာ:/လဲ) |
| [verb]-မှာ | -မည် | c. ditto (with လာ:/လဲ/ပဲ/ပေါ့) |
| [verb]-ဖြစ် | same | [verb]-ed yet? Yes |
| မ-[verb]-ဘူး | မ-[verb] | not [verb] |
| မ-[verb]-နဲ့ | မ-[verb]-နှင့် | don't [verb] |
| [verb] | same | do [verb] |
| [verb]-ရဲ့(လား) | -သည် or -၏ | really [verb]? |
| [verb]-စို့ | same | let's [verb] |
| [verb]-ရအောင် | same | shall we [verb]? |

13.3.2 Compound verbs

Pre-verbs

In literary style pre-verbs are sometimes used without change. Often, however, they are given a second syllable (see the examples below), and they are often followed by the verb suffix -၍။

| <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| သွား-[verb]- | သွားရောက်-[verb]- | go and [verb] |
| လာ-[verb]- | လာရောက်-[verb]- | come and [verb] |
| ဝင်-[verb]- | ဝင်ရောက်-[verb]- | enter and [verb] |
| ထွက်-[verb]- | same | exit and [verb] |
| လျှောက်-[verb]- | same | wander round [verb]-ing |
| ပြန်-[verb]- | ပြန်လည်-[verb]- | [verb] again |
| စ-[verb]- | စတင်-[verb]- | begin to [verb] |
| ဆက်-[verb]- | ဆက်လက်-[verb]- | continue [verb]-ing |
| ပို-[verb]- | ပိုမို-[verb]- | [verb] more |
| သိပ်-[verb]- | အလွန် [verb]- | [verb] much |
| တယ်-[verb]- | not used in lit. | [verb] much |
| ကြို(တင်)-[verb]- | ကြိုတင်-[verb]- | [verb] in advance |

Auxiliary verbs

Most auxiliary verbs are used without change or replacement in both literary and colloquial. One well known exception to this rule is —

| | | |
|-------------|------|----------------|
| [verb]-ချင် | -လို | want to [verb] |
|-------------|------|----------------|

13.4 Phrase suffixes

| | <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|----|--------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 | [phrase]-လဲ | -လည်း | also |
| 2 | [phrase]-ပါ | -လည်းကောင်း | as well |
| 3 | [phrase]-တော့ | -မူ/-ကား/-သော်ကား | as for, however |
| 4 | [phrase]-ကော | not used in lit. | how about? |
| 5 | [phrase]-တောင် | same | even [more than you'd think] |
| 6 | [phrase]-ပဲ | a. -သာ | just, only [less than you'd think] |
| 7 | [phrase]-ပဲ | b. -ပင် | [emphatic] |
| 8 | [phrase]-များ | same | [vague, unspecific] |
| 9 | [phrase]-ဖြစ် | same | as for, in the case of |
| 10 | [phrase]-ကို | same | [emphatic] |
| 11 | [phrase]-မှ | same | only, not otherwise |
| 12 | [phrase]-တစ်[noun]-မှ | same | [not] even one [noun] |
| 13 | [phrase]-(ဘာ)မှ မ-[verb] | same | don't [verb] any[thing] |

13.5 Sentence suffixes

| | <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|----|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | [sentence]-ပါ | same | polite |
| 2 | [sentence]-ပဲ | -ပင် or -တည်း | emphatic |
| 3 | [sentence]-လား | -လား or -လော | question: yes or no |
| 4 | [sentence]-လဲ | -လည်း or -နည်း | question: information |
| 5 | [sentence]-နော် | not used in lit. | It is so, isn't it? |
| 6 | [sentence]-နော် | not used in lit. | You don't mind do you? |
| 7 | [sentence]-နော် | not used in lit. | Please do it, if you don't mind. |
| 8 | [sentence]-ဆို | not used in lit. | Someone said so: is it true? |
| 9 | [sentence]-ပေါ့ | same but rare in lit. | of course |
| 10 | [sentence]-လေ | not used in lit. | you see, I mean |
| 11 | [sentence]-ကိုး | not used in lit. | after all |

13.6 Subordinate clauses

| | <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|--|----------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Subordinate verb suffixes related to time only: | | | |
| 1 | [verb1]-ပြီး [verb2] | -၍ | [verb1] and [verb2] |
| 2 | [verb]-ပြီး(တော့) | -၍ or -ပြီးလျှင် | after [verb]-ing |
| 3 | [verb]-ကတည်းက | same | ever since [verb]-ing |
| 4 | [verb]-တိုင်း | same | every time [verb] |
| 5 | [verb]-ရင်း | same | simultaneously with [verb]-ing |
| 6 | [verb]-တုန်း(က) | same | while, during [verb]-ing |
| 7 | မ-[verb]-ခင် | မ-[verb]-မီ | before [verb]-ing |
| 8 | မ-[verb]-မချင်း | same | up to the time at which [verb] |
| 9 | [verb-verb]-ချင်း | [verb]-လျှင်-[verb]-ချင်း | as soon as [verb] |
| 10 | [verb]-တဲ့အခါ | -သည့်အခါ or -ရာတွင် or -ခိုက် | when [verb] |

Subordinate verb suffixes related to time or condition:

| | | | |
|----|-------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 11 | [verb]-ရင် | [verb]-လျှင် or [verb]-က | if/when [verb] |
| 12 | [verb]-လို့ရှိရင် | not used in lit. | if/when [verb] |
| 13 | [verb]-မှ | same | only if, only when [verb] |

Subordinate verb suffixes related to cause only:

| | | | |
|----|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 14 | [verb]-လို့ | -၍ or -သောကြောင့် | because [verb] |
| 15 | [verb]-လို့ | -၍ | [verb]-ing |
| 16 | [verb]-တဲ့အတွက် | -သည့်အတွက် | as, since |

Subordinate verb suffixes related to time or cause:

| | | | |
|----|--------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 17 | [verb]-တော့ | -သော် or -လျက် or -ရာ or -ကာ | when, since, as [verb] |
| 18 | [verb]-တာနဲ့ | -သဖြင့် | as, since, at the same time as [verb] |

No obvious grouping:

| | | | |
|----|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 19 | [verb]-ဖို့ | -ရန် or -ဖို့ | in order to [verb] |
| 20 | [verb]-အောင် | same | with the result that, until [verb] |
| 21 | [verb]-ပေမဲ့ | -သော်လည်း | although, in spite of [verb]-ing |
| 22 | [verb]-မဲ့အစား | -မည့်အစား | instead of [verb]-ing |
| 23 | မ-[verb]-ပဲ | same | without [verb]-ing |
| 24 | [verb1-verb1] [verb2-verb2] | [verb1]-သည် ဖြစ်စေ [verb2]-သည် ဖြစ်စေ | whether [verb1] or [verb2] |
| 25 | ဘာ(ပဲ) [verb-verb] | same | whatever sn [verb]s |
| 26 | [verb]-သလို | -သကဲ့သို့ | as if [verb], like [verb] |
| 27 | [verb]-သလိုလို | not used in lit. | rather as if [verb], like [verb] |
| 28 | [verb]-သလောက် | -သမျှ | a. as much as sn [verb]s |
| 29 | [verb]-သလောက် | -သမျှ | b. all that sn [verb]s |
| 30 | [verb]-တဲ့အတိုင်း | -သည့်နှင့်အညီ | in accordance with [verb] |
| 31 | [verb]-(တဲ့အ)ကြောင်း | -(သည့်အ)ကြောင်း | concerning, that |

Subordinate suffixes used in is/are sentences

| | | | |
|----|--------------|------------------|----------|
| 32 | [noun]-မို့ | not used in lit. | because |
| 33 | [noun]-ပေမဲ့ | -သော်လည်း | although |

13.7 Relative clauses**13.7.1 Relative clauses with -တဲ့ and -မဲ့**

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| [verb]-တဲ့ [noun] | -သည့် or -သော | [noun] which [verb]s |
| [verb]-မဲ့ [noun] | -မည့် | [noun] which will [verb] |

13.7.2 Relative clauses without -တဲ့ and -မဲ့

Literary style uses much the same nouns with "direct" relative clauses as does colloquial.

13.7.3 Relative clauses ending in [verb]-တာ and [verb]-မှာ

| | | |
|------------|---------|--------------------------|
| [verb]-တာ | -သည်မှာ | activity/state of [verb] |
| [verb]-မှာ | -မည်မှာ | activity/state of [verb] |

13.8 Sentences with no verb

Literary style does use is/are sentences without a verb. Frequently, however, the verb ဖြစ်- “to become, to be” is used to supply a verb for a verbless sentence.

13.9 Which? what? this, that

| <i>colloquial</i> | <i>literary</i> | <i>meaning/function</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| ဘယ် [noun] | မည်သည့် [noun] | which |
| — less commonly | အဘယ် [noun] | which |
| ဘာ | မည်သည့် အရာ | what |
| ဘာ [noun] | မည်သည့် [noun] | what [noun] |
| ဘယ်မှာ | မည်သည့်နေရာ | which place |
| ဘယ်သူ | မည်သူ | who |
| ဒီ [noun] | သည် [noun] or ဤ [noun] | this |
| ဒါ | သည်အရာ or ဤအရာ | this/that thing |
| ဒီမှာ | သည်နေရာမှာ or ဤနေရာမှာ | here |
| ဟို [noun] | ထို [noun] | that |

13.10 Not any

ဘယ်/ဘာ-[noun]-မှ ...မ-[verb]- မည်သည့်-[noun]-မှ မ-[verb]- not [verb] any [noun]

13.11 Equivalents of ဆို-

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 2a. [name] ဆိုတဲ့ [noun] | [name] ဟူသော [noun] | the [noun] called [name] |
| 3a. [noun] ဆိုတာ | [noun] ဟူသည် | the thing called [noun] |

14. List of common functions

Formulae and examples include [ပါ] “indicates politeness” and [ကြ] “emphasises plurality.” Both are optional: hence the brackets. For the key to the abbreviated references, see the Vocabulary, Appendix 5 below.

1. Statements

1.1 Positive statements

— With a verb: commonly expressed in the form

- [verb]-[ပါ]တယ်။ G27, Gram 3.1
- [verb]-[ပါ]မယ်။ G44, Gram 3.1
- [verb]-[ပါ]ပြီ။ D2.2, Gram 3.1.
- [verb]-တာ[ပါ]။ D 4.7
- [verb]-မှာ[ပါ]။ D4.8

For [ပါ] in this position see G27.

— Is/are sentences:

- [noun 1] = [noun 2] [ပါ] G1, Gram 8.

For [ပါ] in this position see G9.

1.2 Negative statements

— With a verb:

- မ-[verb]-[ပါ]ဘူး။ Gram 3.1.
- မ-[verb]-တာ[ပါ]။ D4.7
- [verb]-မှာ မဟုတ်[ပါ]ဘူး။ Not in BSL. ◊ ဆရာ ရှိမှာ မဟုတ်[ပါ]ဘူး။ Teacher won't be there. (A way of expressing future in a negative statement, which would otherwise be tenseless: ဆရာ မရှိ[ပါ]ဘူး။)

— Is/are sentences:

- [noun 1] = [noun 2] မဟုတ်[ပါ]ဘူး။ G3, Gram 8.

1.3 Emphatic statements

- Take any statement (positive or negative, with verb or without) and add $-\text{[ပါ]} \bar{\text{ဝ}}$ or $-\text{ပေါ} \bar{\text{ဝ}}$. D1.6

Note modified forms:

$[\text{verb}]$ -တယ် with $-\text{[ပါ]} \bar{\text{ဝ}}$

usually $\Rightarrow [\text{verb}]$ -တာ $[\text{ပါ}] \bar{\text{ဝ}}$ D5.10A.

$[\text{verb}]$ -မယ် with $-\text{[ပါ]} \bar{\text{ဝ}}$

usually $\Rightarrow [\text{verb}]$ -မှာ $[\text{ပါ}] \bar{\text{ဝ}}$ Not in *BISL*.

and likewise for $-\text{ပေါ} \bar{\text{ဝ}}$ CP6, D1.11, D5.11, Gram 5.

2. Questions

2.1 Yes-or-no questions (answerable by “Yes” or “No”)

- Take a statement in almost any of the above forms (positive or negative, with verb or without, emphatic or regular) and add $-\text{လား}$ D3. G3, Gram 1.5, Gram 5.

Note modified forms:

$[\text{verb}]$ -တယ် with လား $\Rightarrow [\text{verb}]$ -သလား G29

$[\text{verb}]$ -မယ် with လား $\Rightarrow [\text{verb}]$ -မလား G44

2.2 Information questions (containing question words like “what,” “when,” and similar)

- Take any sentence (positive or negative, with verb or without), insert a question word and add $-\text{လဲ}$ G1, Gram 1.5, Gram 5.

Note modified forms:

$[\text{verb}]$ -တယ် with လဲ $\Rightarrow [\text{verb}]$ -သလဲ G27

$[\text{verb}]$ -မယ် with လဲ $\Rightarrow [\text{verb}]$ -မလဲ G44

Note also that in place of $\text{မ} - [\text{verb}] - \text{ဘူး} + \text{လဲ}$ people usually say $\text{မ} - [\text{verb}] - \text{သလဲ}$ Not in *BISL*.

2.3 Tentative questions

- Take any question and add မသိဘူး or သိသလား D3.1. Has an effect like “Do you happen to know if ...?”, “Could you tell me if ...?”, “I wonder if ...?”

2.4 Confirmation questions (“It is ... , isn’t it?” and similar). Take any statement and add —

- $-\text{နော်}$ “isn’t that so?” CP 3, CP7, D1.3, 2.6, 4.4, 5.7, Gram 5.

- $-\text{ပေါ} \bar{\text{ဝ}}$ “No doubt this is so (please confirm)” Gram 5
- ဟုတ်လား or ဟုတ်ကဲ့လား “is that true?” D2.6
- မဟုတ်ဘူးလား or မဟုတ်လား or မှတ်လား “isn’t that so?” D2.6
- ဆို “Someone said so (please confirm)” D2.6
- ကြားရတယ် “I have heard (please confirm)” D2.6

3. Requests, commands, suggestions

3.1. Positive (“Please ... ”)

- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ပါ}]$ G46, Gram 3.1
- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ပါ}]$ အုံး G13, CP19, D1.10B, D2.2, D2.5, Gram 3.2
- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ပါ}]$ လား D5.4
- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ပါ}]$ အုံးလား D2.5
- $\text{မ} - [\text{verb}] - \text{နိုင်ဘူးလား}$ D2.3
- $[\text{verb}]$ -လို့ မရဘူးလား Not in *BISL*.
- $[\text{verb}]$ -လို့ ရမလား Not in *BISL*.
- $[\text{verb}]$ -စေချင် $[\text{ပါ}]$ တယ် D5.11
- $[\text{verb}]$ -ရင် ကောင်းမယ် Not in *BISL*.

3.2. Negative (“Don’t ... ”)

- $\text{မ} - [\text{verb}] - [\text{ပါ}]$ နဲ့ G46, Gram 3.1
- $\text{မ} - [\text{verb}] - \text{စေချင်}[\text{ပါ}]$ ဘူး Not in *BISL*.
- $[\text{verb}]$ -တာ မကောင်း $[\text{ပါ}]$ ဘူး Not in *BISL*.

3.5. Softened requests (“You don’t mind ..., do you?”) CP8, CP13, D3.2, Gram 5

- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ပါ}]$ နော်
- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ပါ}]$ အုံးနော်
- $\text{မ} - [\text{verb}] - [\text{ပါ}]$ နဲ့နော်

3.3. Suggestions for joint action (“Let’s ... ”)

- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ကြ}]$ ရအောင် D1.11, Gram 3.1
- $[\text{verb}]$ - $[\text{ကြ}]$ စို့ D1.11, Gram 3.1

3.4. Requests for permission, assent (“May I ... ?”)

- $[\text{verb}]$ -မယ်နော် CP11, D1.5, D1.10B, D2.2, Gram 5
- $[\text{verb}]$ -ပါရစေ Not in *BISL*.

4. Responding to a suggestion or invitation

4.1 Positive response

- ရ[ပါ]တယ်။ CP7, D1.2, 1.3, 2.4, 2.5, and elsewhere
- [verb]-တာပေါ့။ CP6, D1.11, D5.11
- [verb]-ချင်[ပါ]တယ်။ G42, D5.11, Gram 3.2
- [verb]-ပါ့မယ်။ စိတ်ချ[ပါ]။ D5.11
- ကောင်း[ပါ]တယ်။ [verb]-မယ်။ D5.11

4.2 Negative response

- မရ[ပါ]ဘူး။ CP12, D1.2, 2.5, 3.11
- မ-[verb]-ပါရစေနဲ့။ Not in *BISL*.
- သိပ် မ-[verb]-ချင်[ပါ]ဘူး။ Not in *BISL*.
- နောက်မှပဲ [verb]-ကြရအောင်။ D1.11

5. Exclamations

- [verb]-လိုက်တာ။ D5.10A
- [verb]-ပါလား။ Not in *BISL*.

- သိပ် [verb]-တာပဲ။ CP Teacher comments, D1.6, D5.10a

6. Intentions

- [verb]-မမယ်။ G44
- [verb]-မလို့။ D1.8
- [verb]-ဖို့ အစီအစဉ် ရှိတယ်။ D1.8

7. Explanations

- [verb]-လို့[ပါ]။ D5.6, 5.11, 5.12, Gram 6
- See also subordinate verb suffixes related to time, and to time or condition Gram 6; and ဆိုတော့ Gram 11.5

8. Conditions

See subordinate verb suffixes related to condition Gram 6; and ဆိုရင် Gram 11.4

I just now begin to see my way forward in this language, and hope that two or three years more will make it somewhat familiar; but I have met with difficulties that I had no idea of before I entered on the work. For a European or American to acquire a living oriental language, root and branch, and make it his own, is quite a different thing from his acquiring a cognate language of the west, or any of the dead languages, as they are studied in the schools. ... When we take up a western language, the similarity in characters, in very many terms, in many modes of expression, and in the general structure of the sentences, its being in fair print (a circumstance we hardly think of), and the assistance of grammars, dictionaries, and instructors, render the work comparatively easy. But when we take up a language spoken by a people on the other side of the earth, whose very thoughts run in channels diverse from ours, and whose modes of expression are consequently all new and uncouth; when we find the letters and words all totally destitute of the least resemblance to any language we have ever met with, and these words not fairly divided, and distinguished, as in western writing, by breaks, and points, and capitals, but run together in one continuous line, a sentence or paragraph seeming to the eye but one long word; when, instead of clear characters on paper, we find only obscure scratches on dried palm leaves strung together, and called a book; when we have no dictionary, and no interpreter to explain a single word, and must get something of the language, before we can avail ourselves of the assistance of a native teacher, —

“Hic opus, hic labor est.”

Mr A. Judson, quoted in *An Account of the American Baptist Mission to the Burman Empire*, by Ann H. Judson. London, Butterworth, 1823, p. 54

APPENDIX 5

VOCABULARY

This section lists words introduced in all parts of *BISL*: Part 1 (Groundwork, including Common Phrases) and Part 2 (Dialogues). It also serves as an index to forms listed in the Outline Grammar in Appendix 4.

5.1 Burmese-English vocabulary

Conventions

The elements of each entry below are illustrated in the following sample entry:

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| အိမ်ထောင် ကျ- | the entry word. A hyphen after an entry word shows it is a verb. Suffixes to sentences and phrases are shown preceded by [sentence]- and [phrase]- respectively. |
| /အိမ်ဒေါင်-/ | indication of pronunciation, where not predictable from the spelling |
| > | sign showing end of entry word and start of translation or explanation |
| to get married | translation or explanation |
| ["household—reach, attain"] | note on the meanings of the parts of the entry word |
| D3.10A | reference to the point in <i>BISL</i> where the word is introduced or commented on. G5 = Groundwork, Lesson 5; CP5 = Common Phrases, Section 5; D5.3 = Dialogues, Level 5, Topic 3; Gram 2.2 = Section 2.2 of the Outline Grammar in Appendix 4. Any entry with the reference Gram 13 is a form used in literary style. |
| ◊ | sign showing that an example (or compound) follows |
| အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီလား။ | example or compound |
| Is she/he married yet? | translation of preceding |

-----က-ခ-ဂ-ဃ-င-----
 က in [place]-က > from [place] G31 ◊ မလေးရှားက လာပါတယ်။ He comes from Malaysia.
 က in [time]-က > marks a point of time in the past D2.7 ◊ ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ မေလက last May
 ◊ မနှစ်က last year ◊ ထောင့် ကိုးရာ ကိုးဆယ့် တစ်ခုနှစ်က in 1991
 က in [noun]-က > point in past time, source (place), subject Gram 2
 က in [verb]-က > if/when [verb] Gram 13.6

ကတည်းက in [verb]-ကတည်းက > ever since [verb]-ing Gram 6
 ကလေး in [noun]-ကလေး > little [noun] Gram 2.2
 ကာ in [verb]-ကာ > when, since, as [verb] Gram 13.6
 ကား in P-ကား > as for, however Gram 13.4
 ကား > car, used for private car, taxi or bus D5.1
 ကား စီး- > to go by car/taxi/bus ["car—ride"] D5.1
 ကားသမား or ကားဆရာ or ယဉ်မောင်း /ယင်-/ > driver D2.10A

ကလေး: /ခလေး/ (/ကလေး/ in Upper Burma) > child [literally “little one”] D4.10A
 ကပါလာ: in [place]–ကပါလာ:။ > Are you from [place]? Is that [place]? [on the phone] D5.12
 ဝံသံတမန်ကုန်တိုက်ကပါလာ:။ Is that the Diplomatic Store?
 ကရဝိက် ဟိုတယ် /ကရဝိတ်-/ > Karaweik Hotel D1.3
 ကီးချိန်: > key chain D3.5
 ကူညီ- > to help D5.12
 ဝံဘာ ကူညီရမလဲ > “How can I help you?” [as a response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1
 ဝံအကူအညီ help, assistance D5.12
 ကူး- > to cross over, transfer, copy D5.2
 ဝံခါတံပုံ ကူးမယ် I’ll copy (or print) the photograph.
 ကဲ။ ရပြီ။ > There. Got it. CP14
 ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ > There. That’s done. CP14
 ကဲ့သို့ in [noun]–ကဲ့သို့ > like [noun] Gram 13.2.1
 ကဲ့သို့ in [verb]–သကဲ့သို့ > as if [verb], like [verb] Gram 13.6
 ကော (sometimes ရော) in [noun]–ကော၊
 နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ > repeats previous question, referring to the new subject D1.10B
 ဝံ S1: နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ How are you? — S2: [S1]–ကော၊ နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ How about you (S1): Are you all right? CP4, Gram 4
 ကော်ဖီ > coffee D1.4
 ကော်ဖီမှုန့် > instant coffee [“coffee-powder”] G40
 ကို > name prefix for younger men G24
 ကို in [noun]–ကို > shows that [noun] is the object of the verb D5.12
 ဝံဦးဝင်းကို မှတ်မိသလား။ Do you remember U Win? destination; indirect object; direct object Gram 2
 ကို in P-ကို > [emphatic] Gram 4
 ကိုကာကိုလာ > Coca-cola D1.4
 ကိုရီးယား > Korea G34
 ကိုး in S-ကိုး > after all Gram 5
 ကောင်း- > to be good D1.6
 ကောင်းကောင်း > well D3.12
 ကောင်းပါပြီ။ > (1) Very well. Fine. OK. (response to ရတယ်နော်။) CP12; (2) Goodbye (response to သွားပါအုံးမယ် or သွားမယ်နော်။) CP5, CP11
 ကိုင်- > to grasp, hold D1.12
 ကိုင်ထား- > to hold [and keep hold] D1.12
 ဝံခဏ ကိုင်ထားပါ။ Please hold on a minute [on the phone].

ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။ > No problem. CP8; (response to ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။) CP9; It doesn’t matter. (response to ဆောရီးပဲ။) CP13
 ကိစ္စ ပြီး- > business is finished D2.9
 ကိတ်မုန့် > cake [“cake-confection”] D2.4
 ကန်တော်ကြီးဟိုတယ် /-ဒေါ်ဂျီး-/ > Kandawgyi Hotel D2.3
 ကုန် in [verb]–ကုန်- > all [verb], [verb] all over Gram 3.2.2
 ကုန်- or ကုန်သွား- > to run out, be used up, be all gone D2.4
 ဝံကုန်သွားပြီ။ It’s sold out.
 ကုန်သည် /-သွယ်/ > trader, businessman D2.10A
 ဝံကုန်သည်လမ်း: /-သွယ်-/ > Merchant Street G7
 ကုန်တိုက် /-ဒိုက်/ > department store [“merchandise-building”] G35
 ကမ်းနားလမ်း > Strand Road G7
 ကမ္ဘာလှည့် အုပ်စု (/ကဘာလဲ့-/) > tourist group [“world-tour-group”] D5.8
 ကိုယ်ပိုင် /ကိုမိုင်း/ > private [“self-own”] D5.10B
 ဝံကိုယ်ပိုင် လုပ်ငန်း: business [“private-work”]
 ကျ- > to fall, fall in place, amount to, cost D1.3, D2.3
 ဝံဘယ်လောက် ကျမလဲ။ How much will it come to? What will it cost?
 ကျနော် > I. See ကျွန်တော် D1.10A
 ကျနော် > my. See ကျွန်တော် D1.10A
 ကျမ > I, my. See ကျွန်မ D1.10A
 ကျရင် in [point in time] ကျရင် > when we come to [point in time], when we get to [point in time] D2.8
 ဝံရှေ့လ ကျရင် next month [“ahead-month—get to-when”] ဝံလာမဲ့ စက်တင်ဘာလ ကျရင် next September
 ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ > Thank you. CP9
 ကျော်- > to pass beyond, go past, cross D4.1, D5.1
 ဝံနှစ်လမ်း ကျော်ပြီးရင် တွေ့မယ်။ When you’ve crossed two roads, you’ll see it.
 ကျောင်း > school, university D2.3
 ကျောင်းဆရာ > school teacher (male or generic) D2.10A
 ကျောင်းဆရာမ > school teacher (female) D2.10A
 ကျောင်းဆောင် /-စောင်/ > students’ residence, hostel, dorm [“school-building”] D2.3, D2.10B
 ကျောင်း တက်- > to attend school/university [“school—attend”] D2.10A

ကျောင်းသား > student (male or generic) ["school-member"] D2.10A
 ကျောင်းသူ > student (female) ["school-person"] D2.10A
 ကျပ် > kyat G32
 ကျယ်ကျယ် > loudly D3.12 ဝဲ ကျယ်ကျယ် ပြောပါ။ Please speak up.
 ကြ- in [verb]-ကြ- > "plural": often (but not obligatorily) used when the verb has a plural subject] D1.11 ဝဲ တွေ့ကြရအောင်။ Let's meet. Shall we meet. Gram 3.2.2
 ကြာ- > to take time, to take a long time, last, spend time D3.7, D4.9
 ကြာကြာ / ကျာကျာ / > for a long time D3.7
 ဝဲ ကြာကြာ နေခဲ့သလား။ Did you stay there long?
 ကြာရင် in [period of time] ကြာရင် > when [period of time] has passed/elapsed D2.8 ဝဲ သုံးလ ကြာရင် in three months' time
 ကြာသပတေးနေ့ / -သုဗဒေး- / > Thursday D3.11
 ကြား- > to hear D2.6 ဝဲ ဗာစကား ပြောတတ်တယ် ကြားရတယ်။ I hear, it has come to my ear, that you can speak Burmese. D2.6
 ဝဲ ကောင်းကောင်း မကြားရဘူး။ I can't hear you very well. D3.12
 ကြား in [noun]-ကြား > between Gram 2
 ကြီး- > to be big, to be bigger, too big D5.5 ဝဲ အကြီး > a large one D5.4; the old, older, oldest D4.10B. Gram 2.2
 ကြို(တင်)-[verb]- > [verb] in advance Gram 3.2.1, 13.3.2
 ကြက် > chicken D4.4
 ကြိုက်- > to like D5.5
 ကြောင့် in [noun]-ကြောင့် > because of [noun] Gram 2
 ကြောင်း in [verb]-ကြောင်း > concerning, that Gram 13.6
 ကြောင်း in [verb]-ကြောင်း > that [verb] Gram 7.2
 ကြည့်- / ကျိ / > to look, look around, look at
 ဝဲ ကြည့်အုံးမယ်နော်။ I'll carry on looking, if you don't mind D1.5 ဝဲ ကြည့်ရအောင်။ Can I have a look? D3.5
 ကြည့် in [verb]-ကြည့်- > try out [verb]-ing Gram 3.2.2
 ကြုံ- > to meet, to fall in with each other, to turn up in the same place D1.11 ဝဲ နောက်

ကြုံအုံးမှာပါ။ We'll come across each other later (so we don't need to fix a date now).
 ကွာလာလမ်ပူ > Kuala Lumpur G15
 ကွေ- > to turn, wheel round D5.3 ဝဲ ဂ-ငယ်ကွေ့ မကွေ့ရ No U-turns.
 ကွဲ- > to separate, split up D3.10A
 ဝဲ ကွဲသွားပါပြီ။ She/he is separated, divorced.
 ကျွန်တော် > often spoken and sometimes written ကျနော် I (man speaking) D1.10A
 ဝဲ ကျွန်တော်တို့ / ကျနော်တို့ / > we, our (man speaking) D5.11
 ကျွန်တော့် > often spoken and sometimes written ကျနော် my (man speaking) D1.10A ဝဲ ဒါ ကျွန်တော့် (ကျနော်) ဘောပင်ပါ။ That's my pen
 ကျွန်မ > often spoken and sometimes written ကျမ (1) I; (2) my (woman speaking) D1.10A ဝဲ ဒါ ကျမ ဘောပင်ပါ။ That's my pen ဝဲ ကျွန်မတို့ / ကျမတို့ / > we, our (woman speaking) D5.11
 ခဏခဏ / ခနာ ခနာ / > frequently, often, many times D1.7
 ခဏလေး။ / ခနာ- / > Just a minute. [moment-small] D2.2 ဝဲ ခဏလေးနော်။ > Just a minute — OK? CP8, CP14, D2.2
 ခါစ in [verb]-ခါစ > start of time of [verb]-ing Gram 7.2
 ခု > count word: piece, item, article, unit D2.4
 ဝဲ ပလာတာ နှစ်ခု "parata two piece" = two paratas; Also suffixed to the last digit in a year number. See the note at D2.7
 ခု or အခု / ခု or ဂ၊ အခု or အဂ / > now, at present D5.10B
 ခဲတံ / -ဒန် / > pencil ["lead-rod"] D3.1
 ခဲ in [verb]-ခဲ- > seldom [verb] Gram 3.2.2
 ခဲ- in [verb]-ခဲ- > (1) suffixed to verbs when you are talking about the past, or when the action took place somewhere else. See the note at D2.7. ဝဲ ဘယ်တုန်းက ရောက်ခဲ့သလဲ။ When were you there? (2) to [verb] and come this way] D1.12 ဝဲ သွားခေါ်ခဲ့မယ်။ I'll go and fetch him [and bring him here]. Gram 3.2.2
 ခေါ်- > (1) to call, be called G36; (2) to fetch D1.12
 ခက်- > to be difficult D5.6

ခေါက် or အခေါက် > trip, journey [mainly used in counting] D1.7 ဝဲဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက်လဲ how many trips?
 ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် > fried noodles ["noodle-fried"] D3.4
 ခိုက် in [verb]-ခိုက် > when [verb] Gram 13.6
 ခင် in မ-[verb]-ခင် > before [verb]-ing Gram 6
 ခင်ဗျာ။ > [polite tag, male speaker] CP10, D1.1
 ခင်ပွန်း or ခင်ပွန်းသည် (/ -ပွန်း:/) > husband D1.10A
 ခိုင်း in [verb]-ခိုင်း- > tell sb to [verb] Gram 3.2.2
 ခန့် in n°-[noun]-ခန့် > approx. n° [nouns] Gram 13.2.2
 ချင်- in [verb]-ချင်- > want to [verb] G42. Gram 3.2.2
 ချင် in [verb]-စေချင်- > want someone to [verb] Gram 3.2.2
 ချင်း in မ-[verb]-မချင်း > up to the time at which [verb] Gram 6
 ချင်း in [verb]-လျှင်-[verb]-ချင်း > as soon as [verb] Gram 13.6
 ချင်း in [verb-verb]-ချင်း > as soon as [verb] Gram 6
 ချောင်း in [number]-ချောင်း > count word for rod-shaped objects: sticks, pens, pencils, and similar; and by extension to knives (hence razor blades "beard-shaving-knives"), teeth, legs, arms, fingers, fans and other items. D4.5 ဝဲခဲဘယ်နှစ်ချောင်း လိုချင်လဲ။ How many pencils do you want?
 ချိုး- > to break; break away from the present road, turn off D4.3
 ချစ်စရာ ကောင်း- > to be adorable, delightful, charming, sweet ["lovability is good"] D5.10A
 ချိန် in [verb]-ချိန် > when [verb] Gram 7.2
 ခြင်း in [verb]-ခြင်း > [abstract noun] Gram 7.2
 ခွဲ in [quantity]-ခွဲ > [quantity] and a half G37, G 38 ဝဲတစ်လခွဲ a month and a half
 ခွက် > cup, glass D1.4; as count word D3.5
 ခွင့် > permission ဝဲခွင့် ရ- > to get permission D2.9 ဝဲ [verb]-ခွင့် ရှိ- > to be allowed to [verb] D5.3 ဝဲဒီမှာ ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်ခွင့် ရှိသလား။ Is one allowed to take photographs here? ဝဲခွင့် ပြုပါအုံး။ > May I leave now? CP19. Gram 7.2
 ဂနု, or ဒီနု, or ဒီဂနု > today D2.11

ဂါဒင်ဟိုတယ် > Garden Hotel D2.3
 ဂျပန် or ဂျပန်နိုင်ငံ > Japan G13
 ဂျာမနီ or ဂျာမနီနိုင်ငံ (sometimes written ဂျာမဏီ) > Germany G34, D1.9
 ဂျာမန် > German D1.9
 ဂျူလိုင် or ဇူလိုင် > July D2.7
 ဂျန်နဝါရီ / ဂျန်နဝါရီ/ or ဇန်နဝါရီ / ဇန်နဝါရီ/ > January D2.7
 ဂျွန် or ဇွန် > June D2.7
 ငရုတ်သီး > chilli ["chilli-fruit"] D5.4
 ငါး > fish D4.4
 ငါးမူး > half a kyat G38
 ငယ်- > to be young. See အငယ်
 ငယ် in [noun]-ငယ် > little [noun] Gram 13.2.2
 ----- စ-ဆ-စ-ချ-ည -----
 စ-[verb]- > begin to [verb] Gram 3.2.1
 စကား ပြော- > to talk, speak with ["word—say"] D1.12 ဝဲစကား ပြောလို့ ကောင်းပါတယ်။ I enjoyed talking to you. CP20
 စကားပြောဟန် > colloquial style ["word-speak-manner"] D5.6
 စကားလုံး / စကားလုံး/ > word ["word-round thing"] D5.6
 စခန်းသာဟိုတယ် / -သုာ- / > Sakhantha Hotel D2.3
 စတင်-[verb]- > begin to [verb] Gram 13.3.2
 စတုရန်းဟိုတယ် > Strand Hotel G5
 စနေနေ့ > Saturday D2.11
 စပါကလင် > Sparkling [a bottled drink like Lilt, Seven-up and the like] D1.4
 စမူဆာ > samosa: a patty with a savoury filling. D2.4
 စာကြည့်တိုက် / -ကျိဒိုက်/ > library ["text-look-at-building"] G35
 စာစကား / -စကား/ > literary usage ["writing-words"] D5.6
 စာတန်း / -ဒန်း/ > thesis, dissertation, paper D5.10B
 စာပေ > literature ["writing-palm leaf"] D5.6
 စာမေးပွဲ > examination ["text-ask-gathering"] D5.10A ဝဲဆယ်တန်း စာမေးပွဲ 10th Standard examination [at school] ဝဲနောက်ဆုံးနှစ် စာမေးပွဲ Final Year examination [at university]
 စာရေး / စာရေး/ > clerk D2.10A
 စာရေးဆရာ > writer D2.10A

စာရေးဟန် > literary style ["text-write-manner"]

D5.6

စာရင်းကိုင် /စာရင်းရှိင်/ > accountant D2.10A

စာရွက် > writing paper ["paper-sheet"] G40

စာလုံး > letter ["writing-round thing"] D5.6

စာလုံးပေါင်း /-ဘောင်း/ > spelling D5.6

စာအိတ် > envelope ["letter-bag"] G40

စား- > to eat D1.4 ၊ ဘာ စားမလဲ။ What are you going to eat?

စားပွဲ /စဉ်/ > table, desk G43

စားသောက်ခန်း > eating room, canteen ["eat-drink-room"] G35

စားသောက်ဆိုင် > restaurant (genteel) ["eat-drink-shop"] D2.1, D3.4

စီစဉ်- /စီစဉ်/ > to arrange, fix up D1.11

စီး- > to ride, travel by, take [train, bus, taxi or other] D2.3

စေ in [verb]-စေ- > let sn [verb] Gram 3.2.2

စေ in [verb1]-သည် ဖြစ်စေ [verb2]-သည် ဖြစ်စေ > whether [verb1] or [verb2] Gram 13.6

စေချင်- in [verb]-စေချင်- > A wants B to [verb] D5.11 ၊ အဖေအမေနဲ့ တွေ့စေချင်တယ်။ He wants you to meet his parents. ၊ ဘယ်နေ့ လာစေချင်သလဲ။ What day would you like me to come? Gram 3.2.2

စို့ or စို့လား in [verb]-စို့ or [verb]-စို့လား > Let's [verb], How about [verb]-ing? D1.11

၊ နောက်ထပ် တွေ့ကြုံအုံးစို့လား။ How about us meeting again? Gram 3.1

စက်ရုံ > factory D2.10A

စက်တင်ဘာ > September D2.7

စင်္ကာပူ /စင်ဂါ/ > Singapore G34

စောင့်နေ- > to wait D4.11

စစ်ကိုင်း /စရိုင်း/ > Sagaing G19

စစ်မှိုလ် /-မှို/ > army officer D2.10A

စစ်သား > soldier ["military-member, son"] D2.10A, D3.10A

စိတ် ချ- > to set one's mind at rest D5.2 ၊ စိတ် ချပါ။ Don't worry. Trust me.

စိတ် မကောင်းဘူး။ > I'm sorry, sad ["mind—be good"] D5.9

စွာ in [verb]-စွာ > manner, adverb Gram 13.2.1

ဆရာ။ > Teacher [male and generic] CP2

ဆရာမ။ > Teacher [female] CP2

ဆရာဝန် > doctor D2.10A

ဆီ in [person]-ဆီ > "person's place," where a person is D5.2. The suffix -ဆီ is attached to the noun in

[noun]-မှာ "at, in [noun],"

[noun]-က "from [noun]" and

[noun]-[no suffix] "to (towards) [noun],"

when the [noun] refers to a person; for example: ၊ မိတ်ဆွေဆီမှာ တဲနေပါတယ်။ He is staying with a friend. ၊ ဒေါ်အောင်ဆီက ရပါတယ်။ We got it from Daw Ahwin.

၊ ကျွန်တော့်ဆီ ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်ပါ။ Please phone me back. D4.12 ၊ ကျွန်တော့်ဆီ တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးပါအုံး။ Please send me a copy.

၊ ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ဆီ တစ်ပုံ ပို့ပေးမယ်။ I'll send you (aunt) a copy. ၊ သမီးဆီ အလည် လာပါတယ်။ He came for a visit to his daughter D4.9.

Gram 2

ဆူးလေဘုရား /-ဖယား/ > Sule Pagoda G5

ဆူးလေဘုရားလမ်း /-ဖယား-/ > Sule Pagoda Road G9

ဆောရီး or ဆောရီးပဲ or ဆောရီးနော် > Sorry [from English] CP3, D1.1

ဆို in [statement] ဆို > I have heard/read [statement]: is it true? [the literal meaning of ဆို is "say"] D2.6. Gram 5

ဆို- > [various uses] Gram 11

ဆိုပါ။ or just ဆို > "Please speak" [as a response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1

ဆိုရင် in [phrase] ဆိုရင် > if we were to say [phrase], if we took [phrase] as a basis, in the case of [phrase], if we look at [phrase] ["say-if"] ၊ ၃-နာရီ ဆိုရင် ကောင်းမယ်။ If we were to say 3 o'clock, that would be good; 3 o'clock would be good. D3.11 ၊ ဗမာပြည်မှာ ဆိုရင် လွယ်မှာပါ။ If it were in Burma it would be easy. D5.9

ဆိုး- > to be bad, badly behaved D5.5, D5.9 ၊ မဆိုးပါဘူး။ It's not bad [usually = It's quite good]

ဆက်-[verb]- > continue [verb]-ing Gram 3.2.1

ဆက်လက်-[verb]- > continue [verb]-ing

Gram 13.3.2

ဆိုက်ကား > sidecar, trishaw D5.3

ဆိုက်ကားသမား > sidecar pedaller D2.10A

ဆိုက်ကားဆရာ > sidecar driver (pedaller) D5.3

ဆင့် > cent G26

ဆင်း- > to descend, get off [taxi, sidecar, train or other vehicle] D5.3
 ဆောင်း or ဆောင်းတွင်း > winter, cool season [around Dec., Jan., Feb.] D5.9
 ဆိုင်ရှင် > shopkeeper D2.10A
 ဆန်စက် > rice mill D2.10A
 ဆုံ- > to meet by arrangement D4.11 *ဝဲဘယ်မှာ ဆုံကြမလဲ။* Where shall we meet?
 ဆုံး- > to come to an end, die D3.10A
ဝဲ ဆုံးသွားပါပြီ။ She/he is dead, has died.
 ဆယ်လိုတိပ် > sellotape/Scotch tape [from English] G40
 ဆယ်တန်း > 10th Standard. See note at D5.10A. D5.10A
 ဆွေမျိုး > relative, relation D4.9
 ဇနီး or ဇနီးသည် (/ -သုယ်/) > wife D1.10A
 ဇူလိုင် or ဂျူလိုင် > July D2.7
 ဇွန်ဝါရီ / ဇန်နဝါရီ/ or ဂျန်နဝါရီ / ဂျန်နဝါရီ/ > January D2.7
 ဇွန် or ဂျွန် > June D2.7
 ဈေး / ဇေး/ > market G1
 ဈေး များ- > the price is high, or too high. D2.3
 ဈေးမှန် in ဒါ ဈေးမှန်ပဲ။ > That is the regular price. [“that—price—true”] D2.5
 ဈေးသည် / ဇေးသုယ်/ > market stallholder D2.10A
 ည > evening, night D4.11
 ညနေ > afternoon [“night-sun”] D4.11
 ညာဘက်မှာ > on the right [“right-side-on”] D4.1. Gram 2
 ညီ > younger brother [of male] D2.10B
 ညီမ > younger sister D2.10B
 ညီအကိုမောင်နှံမ > brothers and sisters, siblings D5.10A
 -----တ-ထ-ဒ-ဓ-န-----
 တကယ် > really, in truth, actually, in fact D1.6
ဝဲ တကယ်ပဲ။ Really. I mean it. D1.6
 တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့ / -နင်း- / > Sunday D2.11
 တနင်္လာနေ့ / -နင်း- > Monday D3.11
 တရား အား ထုတ်- > to meditate [“doctrine—effort-put out”] D4.7
 တရားရိပ်သာ or just ရိပ်သာ > meditation centre [“doctrine-refuge”] D5.9
 တရုန်နိုင်ငံ > China G13
 တာ in [verb]-တာ > (1) “[verb]-ing”: suffix -တာ turns a verb (like *speaking*) into a noun (like

speaking, speech) *ဝဲ ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ* your command of spoken Burmese D1.6. Gram 3.1
 (2) > something which is [verb], one that is [verb] D5.5 *ဝဲ ဒီထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိသလား။* Do you have one that is bigger than this?
 Gram 7.3
 တာပါ in [verb]-တာပါ > an alternative to [verb]-ပါတယ်။ See the note at D4.7.
 တာ in [verb]-တာနဲ့ > as, since, [verb] Gram 6
 တာပဲ in သိပ် [verb]-တာပဲ > similar to သိပ် [verb]-ပါတယ် but a little more exclamatory D1.6 *ဝဲ သိပ် ကောင်းတာပဲ* It is really good!
 D1.6 *ဝဲ အဲဒီအရောင် သိပ် ကြိုက်တာပဲ* I really love that colour! D5.10A *ဝဲ ကလေးတွေ သိပ် တော်တာပဲ* Your children are really talented!
 D5.10A
 တာပေါ့ / -ဒါဘော့/ in [verb]-တာပေါ့ > conveys an enthusiastic response to an invitation or suggestion D1.11 *ဝဲ တွေ့တာပေါ့။* By all means let's meet.
 တီရှပ် > T-shirt D3.1
 တူးရစ် (sometimes တိုးရစ်) > tourist D4.9
 တူးရစ်ဘားမားရုံး > Tourist Burma office, Myanmar Travel and Tours D1.1
 တဲ- > to stay [temporarily], put up D2.10B
 တဲ့ in [name]-တဲ့ > it is called [name] G36, D2.10B
 တဲ့ in [verb]-တဲ့အခါ > when [verb] Gram 6
 တဲ့ in [verb]-တဲ့အတိုင်း > in accordance with [verb] Gram 6
 တဲ့ in [verb]-တဲ့အတွက် > as, since Gram 6
 တဲ့ in [verb]-တဲ့ [noun] > relative clause Gram 7.1
 တဲ့အခါ in [verb]-တဲ့အခါ > when [verb] [“[verb]-relative-time”] D5.12 *ဝဲ မပိုင်:* အိမ်ပြန်ရောက်တဲ့အခါ ပြောမယ်။ When Ma Waing gets back home I'll tell her.
 တော့ (1) in [noun]-တော့ > as for [noun] D3.11
ဝဲ S1: မနက်ဖန် အားသလား။ Are you free tomorrow? — S2: မနက်ဖန်တော့ မအားပါဘူး။ [As for] tomorrow, I'm not free. Gram 4 (2)
 in [noun]-တော့ > [noun] however D3.11
ဝဲ ဒီနေ့ မအားဘူး။ မနက်ဖန်တော့ အားပါတယ်။ I'm not free today. But I am free tomorrow [“Tomorrow, however, ...”] Gram 4 (3) in မ- [verb]-တော့ပါဘူး: not to [verb] any more, not

- to [verb] after all ဝဲတက်စီ မစီးတော့ပါဘူး။ I won't go by taxi after all. D2.3 ဝဲအလုပ် မလုပ်တော့ပါဘူး။ He doesn't work any longer. D2.10A. Gram 3.2.2
- တော့ in [verb]-တော့ > when, since, as [verb] Gram 6
- တော့ in [verb]-တော့- > [verb] at last Gram 3.2.2
- တော့ in [verb]-ပြီး(တော့) > after [verb]-ing Gram 6
- တော်- > (1) to be the right size, to fit D5.5; (2) to be clever, able, talented D5.10A
- တော်တော် /တော်ဒေါ်/ > quite a bit, pretty much D3.6 ဝဲဗမာစကား တော်တော် ပြောတတ်ပြီလား။ Can you speak Burmese quite a bit now? တိုကျို > Tokyo G15
- တိုးပေး- in ဂ/- တိုးပေးပါ။ > Increase your price by K5. D2.5
- တို့ in [noun]-တို့ > [noun] and associates D5.11
- ဝဲဆရာတို့ Teacher and his family/colleagues/fellows, or others ဝဲဒေါ်သန်းသန်းတို့ Daw Than Than and her group
- ဝဲကျွန်တော်တို့ we, our (man speaking). Gram 13.2.2, 2.2.
- တို့စရာ /-ဇယာ/ > salad [a small helping of fresh or preserved vegetables] D4.4
- တက်- > to go up, get on board, attend (school, meeting) D1.3
- တက်စီ စီး- > to take a taxi, written ex. D4.3
- တက္ကသိုလ် > university D5.10A
- တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာ /တက်ကသိုလ်-/ > university teacher (male or generic) D2.10A, D3.10A
- တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာမ > university teacher (female) D2.10A, D3.10A
- တက္ကသိုလ် တက်- > to attend the university, study at university D5.10A
- တက္ကသိုလ် ရောက်- > to get into university D5.10A
- တောက်တောက်ကြော် > fried minced/ground meat ["minced meat patty-fried"] D3.4
- တောင် in [phrase]-တောင် > even, as much as [more than you thought or might have expected] D5.12 ဝဲမိနစ်-၃၀-တောင် စောင့်နေရတယ်။ We had to wait as much as 30 minutes. Gram 4
- တောင်ကြီး /-ဂျီး/ > Taunggyi G19
- တောင်ဘက် > to the south D4.3
- တိုင်း in [noun]-တိုင်း > every [noun] Gram 2.2
- တိုင်း in [verb]-တိုင်း > every time [verb] Gram 6
- တစ်-[noun]-မှ > [not] even one [noun] Gram 4
- တစ်ယောက်တည်း (/ -ထဲ/) > alone, on one's own ["only one person"] D5.8
- တည်း in [quantity]-တည်း (/ -ထဲ or -ဒဲ/) > only [quantity] D5.8 ဝဲသုံးပတ်တည်း only three weeks, a mere 3 weeks ဝဲတစ်ယောက်တည်း only one person, hence "on one's own." Gram 2.2
- တည်း in S-တည်း > [emphatic] Gram 13.5
- တတ်- in [verb]-တတ်- > to know how to [verb], be able to [verb] D2.6; have habit of [verb]-ing Gram 3.2.2 ဝဲဗမာလို ပြောတတ်တယ်။ He can speak Burmese.
- တန်း or အတန်း > Standard, Grade, Class, Year D2.10A ဝဲလေးတန်း 4th Standard, ဆယ်တန်း 10th Standard ဝဲဘယ်နှစ်တန်း ရောက်ပြီလဲ။ What Standard have you got to?
- တုန်း in [verb]-တုန်း > while, during Gram 6
- တိပ်ခွေ > tape ["tape-reel"] G40
- တံခါး /ဒဂါး/ > door G43
- တံတား /ဒဒါး/ > bridge D4.1
- တယ် in [verb]-တယ် > present/past Gram 3.1
- တယ်-[verb]- > [verb] much Gram 3.2.1
- တယ်လီဖုန်း > telephone G6
- တွေ in [noun]-တွေ /-ဒေ/ or /ဒေ/ > [noun]s: [the suffix marks plural number] D4.10A
- ဝဲသားတွေလား။ သမီးတွေလား။ Are they sons or daughters? Gram 2.2
- တွေ့- > to meet D1.10B, D1.11; to see, find, notice D4.1 ဝဲတွေ့သေးတာပေါ့။ > See you later/ next time. CP6
- တွင် in [noun]-တွင် > location Gram 13.2.1
- ထမင်း > cooked rice D4.4
- ထမင်း ကျွေး- > to give a meal, dine ["rice—feed"] D5.11
- ထမင်းကြော် > fried rice ["rice-fried"] D3.4
- ထမင်းဆိုင် > restaurant ["rice-shop"] D3.4
- ထား- > to put, keep, set in position D2.5 ဝဲငှာထားပါ။ Make it K40.
- ထား in [verb]-ထား- > [verb] and have it there Gram 3.2.2
- ထဲမှာ in [place]-ထဲမှာ or အထဲမှာ > inside [place] D5.12 ဝဲအိမ်ထဲမှာ inside the house, indoors. Gram 2

ထို [noun] > that [noun] Gram 13.9
 ထက် in [noun]-ထက် > comparison (more than)
 [noun] Gram 2
 ထင်- > to appear, to think, to suspect D5.12
 ဝန်ခံပါတ် မှားနေတယ် ထင်တယ်။ I think
 you've got the wrong number.
 ထိုင်- > to sit G43
 ထိုင်းနိုင်ငံ > Thailand G13
 ထည့်- /ထဲ/ > to put in D5.4 ဝန်ခံ ထည့်ရမလား။
 Should I put in any ice?
 ထပ်ပြောပါအုံး။ /-ဗာ- / > Please say that again.
 G13
 ထံ in [noun]-ထံ > destination (person)
 Gram 13.2.1
 ထွက်- > to emerge D4.12 ဝန်ထွက်လာ- > to come
 out D4.12 ဝန်ထွက်သွား- > to go out D4.12
 ထွက်-[verb]- > exit and [verb] Gram 3.2.1
 ဒဂုံဟိုတယ် > Dagon Hotel D2.3
 ဒါ > this, that G1. Gram 9
 ဒါထက် or ဒီထက် > more than this ["this-above"]
 D5.5 ဝန်ဒါထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိသလား။ Do you
 have one that is bigger than this?
 ဒါပါပဲ။ or ဒါပဲ > That's it. That's all. (response
 to ဒါပဲလား။) CP17
 ဒါပဲလား။ > Is that all? Is that the lot? CP17 ဝန်
 S1: ဒါပဲလား။ — S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ > "Is that all?"
 — "Yes, that's all": the standard way of
 ending a phone call. Sometimes varied to
 S1: ဒါပဲနော်။ — S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ D4.12
 ဒါမျိုး > this kind D5.5
 ဒီ-[noun] > this [noun] G7. Gram 9
 ဒီနေ့ or ဒီနေ့ or ဝန်နေ့ > today ["this-day"] D2.11
 ဒီထက် or ဒါထက် > more than this ["this-above"]
 D5.5 ဝန်ဒီထက် ကြီးတာ ရှိသလား။ Do you
 have one that is bigger than this?
 ဒီဇင်ဘာ > December D2.7
 ဒီနေ့ or ဒီနေ့ or ဝန်နေ့ > today ["this-day"] D2.11
 ဒီပြင် or ဒီပြင် > apart from this, other than this
 ["this-outside"] D5.5 ဝန်ဒီပြင် ဘာ ရှိသေး-
 သလဲ။ What else do you have apart from
 this?
 ဒီဘက် in [place] ဒီဘက်မှာ > this side of [place],
 before you get to [place] D5.3 ဝန်ဘုရား
 ဒီဘက်မှာ တွေ့မယ်။ You'll see it before you
 get to the pagoda.

ဒီမှာ > (1) in this [place], here G20, Gram 9; (2)
 Here, Excuse me please [used to attract
 someone's attention] D1.1
 ဒီလို > this way, like this D3.2 ဝန်ဒီလို လုပ်ပါ။ Do
 like this, Do this D3.2
 ဒီလိုဆို > In that case. If that is so. ["this-way—
 say"] D2.3
 ဒီလိုဆိုရင် > = ဒီလိုဆို in that case, if that is the
 way things are ["this-way—say-if"] D3.11
 ဒီလောက်နဲ့ မရောင်းနိုင်ဘူး။ > I can't sell it for that
 much ["this-amount-with —not-sell-can-
 negative"] D2.5
 ဒေါ် > name prefix for older women G22
 ဒေါ်ဒေါ် or အဒေါ် > aunt D1.10B
 ဒေါ်လာ > dollar G23
 ဒက္ကား > Dacca G15
 ဒုက္ခ (/ဒုတ်ခါ/) > trouble, misery, suffering
 D5.11 ဝန်ဒုက္ခ ပေး- to inconvenience
 ["trouble—give"] ဝန်ဒုက္ခ ရှာ- to put oneself
 out ["trouble—look for"] ဝန်ဒုက္ခ ဖြစ်- to be
 inconvenienced ["trouble—arise"]
 ဓါတ်ခဲ /ဒတ်- / > battery D3.1
 ဓါတ်ပုံ ရိုက်- /ဒတ်ပုံ ယိုက်- / > to take a
 photograph [photograph—to hit, beat,
 stamp, make imprint] D1.2
 ဓါတ်ပုံဆရာ > photographer D2.10A
 နယူးဒေလီ > New Delhi G15
 နာမည် coll. /နန်မယ်/ lit. /နာမျို/ > name G27
 နာရီ > hour G33
 နား in [place]-နားမှာ > in the vicinity,
 neighbourhood of [place] D2.1, D3.1
 ဝန်ဘုရားနားမှာ near the pagoda ဝန်နားမှာ near
 here ဝန်ဘယ်နားမှာလဲ near where? where-
 abouts? Gram 2
 နား လည်- > to understand CP18
 နီး- > to be near D5.1
 နီးနီး or နီးနီးလေး > close, near by D5.1
 နေ- > (1) to live G27; (2) to be, to be like D5.7;
 ဝန်မာပြည်မှာ နေရတာ ဘယ်လို နေသလဲ။ How
 did you find living in Burma? How was it?
 What was it like?
 နေ- in [verb]-နေ- > to be [verb]-ing, [verb] for
 the time being D1.12 Compare: အပြင်မှာ
 ထိုင်ပါတယ်။ They sat outside, with: အပြင်မှာ
 ထိုင်နေပါတယ်။ They were sitting outside.
 Further examples at D2.10A. Gram 3.2.2

နေကောင်းပါတယ်။ > I'm fine. CP3
 နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ > How are you? CP3
 နေပါအုံး။ > Hold it! Wait! ["remain-polite-further"] D2.2
 နေရာ > place G35
 နေရပ် > place of residence ["live-place"] D2.10B
 နေရပ်လိပ်စာ > address ["live-place-address"] D2.10B
 နေ့ > day [as in day of the week, or day as opposed to night] D2.11 ဝဲဘယ်နေ့ အားသလဲ။ Which day are you free? ဝဲဒီနေ့ Today ["this-day"]
 နေ့လယ် > midday ["day-middle"] D4.11
 နဲ- > to be little, few; too little D2.5 ဝဲနဲတယ်။ That's too little, too low [shopkeeper to customer]. The officially approved spelling of this word is နည်း-, but we use နဲ- here as this is the spelling that most people use when writing in colloquial style.
 နဲနဲ > a little, a bit D1.11, D2.6 ဝဲဈေး နဲနဲများတယ်။ The price is a little high. For variant spellings see under နဲ-။
 နဲ့ in [noun]-နဲ့ > with [noun] ဝဲဦးတင်လှိုင်နဲ့ စကားပြောချင်ပါတယ် I'd like to speak to U Tin Hlaing. D1.12 ဝဲထမင်း ဘာဟင်းနဲ့ စားမလဲ။ With what curry will you eat the rice? D4.4 ဝဲမပိုင်းနဲ့ တွေ့တယ် > I met Ma Waing ["with Ma Waing"] D2.10B wrtn D1. ဝဲ၁၅/-နဲ့ ဝယ်ပါ။ > Buy it for K15. ["with 15K"] D2.5 ဝဲ၅-ကျပ်နဲ့ ရောင်းတယ် They sell them for K5. ["with 5K"] D5.5
 နဲ့ in မ-[verb]-နဲ့ > don't [verb] Gram 3.1, G46
 နဲ့ in [noun]-နဲ့ > comparison (like/unlike); instrument Gram 2
 နဲ့ in [noun1]-နဲ့ [noun2] > [noun1] and [noun2] Gram 2.2
 နော် (1) in [statement]-နော်။ > [statement] is true, isn't it? D2.6 ဝဲဗမာစကား ပြောတတ်တယ်နော်။ You can speak Burmese, can't you? (2) in [verb]-မယ်နော်။ > I'm going to [verb]: is that all right? Do you mind if I [verb]? ဝဲမိတ်ဆက်ပေးမယ်နော်။ I'll introduce you — all right? (3) in [request]-နော် > [request], if you don't mind, I hope that's all right? D3.2

ဝဲဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါနော်။ Please stand here, if you don't mind. Gram 5
 နိုဝင်ဘာ > November D2.7
 နို့မှုန့် > milk powder ["milk-powder"] G40
 နက်ဖန် or နက်ဖြန် or နက်ဖြင် > tomorrow D1.11
 နောက် in [noun]-နောက် > behind Gram 2
 နောက် ဆုတ်- > to move back, retreat ["back—retreat"] D4.2
 နောက်ဆုံး > last ["back-end, -est"] D2.7
 ဝဲနောက်ဆုံးအခေါက် the last/latest trip
 နောက်ထပ် in နောက်ထပ် [verb] > [verb] again, further, more D1.8. D1.11
 နောက်ပိုင်း > stretch following ["later-part"] D3.11 ဝဲ၂-နာရီနောက်ပိုင်း after two o'clock
 နောက်မှ > later, not till later D1.11 ဝဲနောက်မှ စီစဉ်ကြရအောင်။ Let's fix up something later = Let's leave it till later to fix something up, Let's not do it now
 နိုင်- in [verb]-နိုင်-> to be able to [verb], can [verb] D2.3, D3.4 written ex. ဝဲမလျှော့နိုင်ဘူး။ I can't reduce [the price]. D2.3. Gram 3.2.2
 နိုင်ငံ > country, state G13, D2.3
 နိုင်ငံခြား /-ဂျား/ > foreign country, abroad ["country-separate"] D1.7
 နိုင်ငံခြားဘာသာသင်သိပ္ပံ /-သိတ်ပန်/ > Institute of Foreign Languages D4.6
 နိုင်ငံခြားသား > foreigner ["country-foreign-resident"] D2.3
 နိုင်ငံခြားသားများ ကျောင်းဆောင် /-စောင်/ > Foreign Students' Hostel D2.3
 နိုင်ငံရေး > politics ["state-affairs"] D5.6
 နိုင်ငံသား > national, citizen ["country-son, member"] D1.9 ဝဲမြန်မာနိုင်ငံသား a Burmese national (a Myanmar)
 နည်း in S-နည်း > [question: information] Gram 13.5.
 နည်း- > (the officially approved spelling of နဲ- "to be litte, few; to be too little")
 နည်း in [verb]-နည်း > way of [verb]-ing Gram 7.2
 နတ်စမ > nurse (fem.) D2.10A
 နံပါတ် /-ဗတ်/ > number G2
 နှစ် or အနှစ် > year D2.7, D2.8 ဝဲသုံးနှစ် three years
 နှစ်မ /နှမာ/ > younger sister [of male: now obsolete] D2.10B
 နှင့် in မ-[verb]-နှင့် > don't [verb] Gram 13.3.1

နှင့် in [noun]-နှင့် > accompaniment, with [noun];
comparison (like/unlike); instrument, with
Gram 13.2.1

နှင့် in [noun1]-နှင့် [noun2] > [noun1] and [noun2]
Gram 13.2.2

-----ပ-ဖ-ဇ-ဘ-မ -----
ပညာ /ပျင်ညာ/ > learning, skill, knowledge,
wisdom D4.8

ပညာ သင်- > to study, to undergo training D4.8

ပလာတာ > parata: like a pancake, made from
coarse batter, and served with a helping of
curry. D2.4

ပါ- > to include, have in it, to have with [one]
D4.4, D5.2 ဖ်သား ပါသလား။ - မပါပါဘူး။
Does it have meat in it? - No, it doesn't.
ဖ်ခဲတံ ပါသလား။ - ပါပါတယ်။ Have you
got a pencil on you? - Yes.

ပါ- in [verb]-ပါ- > the suffix indicates
deference on the part of the speaker G42.
Gram 3.2.2

ပါ- in [sentence]-ပါ- > the suffix indicates
deference on the part of the speaker G1.
Gram 5

ပါ in [noun]-ပါ- > [noun] as well Gram 4

ပါက in [verb]-ပါက > if/when [verb] Gram 13.6

ပါရဂူဘွဲ့. /ပါရဂူ- / > Ph.D. degree, doctorate
["expert-degree"] D5.10B

ပါလား in [name]-ပါလား။ > Is that [name]? [on
the phone] D5.12 ဖ်ဦးစိန်ပါလား။ Is that U
Sein?

ပါလား in [verb]-ပါလား > How about [verb]-ing?
Why don't you [verb]? D5.4 ဖ်ကား
စီးပါလား။ Why not take a taxi?

ပါအုံး in [verb]-ပါအုံး > a slightly more friendly,
more coaxing, alternative to [verb]-ပါ။
D1.10B

ပါမယ် in [verb]-ပါမယ် > I will certainly [verb]
D5.11 ဖ်S1: အိမ် လာလည်ပါအုံးလား။ How
about paying us a visit? - S2: လာပါမယ်။ I
certainly will.

ပိသုကာ > architect D2.10A

ပီကင်း > Peking/ Beijing G15

ပီ- > to be correctly, authentically pronounced
ဖ်ဗမာစကား ပြောတာ ပီပါတယ်။ Your spoken
Burmese is well pronounced, You have a
good pronunciation in Burmese.] D1.6

ပုဂံ /ဗဂန်/ > Pagan (Bagan) G19

ပုစွန် /ဗစွန်/ > prawn, shrimp D4.4

ပုလင်း /ပလင်း/ > bottle D1.4

ပူ- > to be hot [to touch or experience, like
sunshine, hot tea, and so on] D5.7; to feel
hot, be stuffy D5.4

ပုသင်း > pudding: a sweet dish like caramel
custard, made with eggs, milk and butter.
D2.4

ပေမဲ့ in [noun]-ပေမဲ့ > although Gram 6

ပေမဲ့ in [verb]-ပေမဲ့ > although, in spite of [verb]-
ing Gram 6

ပေး- > to give, pay D1.3, D2.5

ပေး- in [verb]-ပေး- > to [verb] for someone D1.12
ဖ်သွားခေါ်ပေးမယ်။ I'll go and fetch him [for
you] Gram 3.2.2

ပေးရ- > to pay, have to pay G39

ပဲ > pulse: bean, pea, lentil, and the like D4.4

ပဲ in [phrase]-ပဲ /ပဲ/ or voiced /ပဲ/ > (1) adds a
little emphasis, focusses attention on the
phrase: ဖ်ဆောရီပဲ။ I really am sorry D1.6
ဖ်သိပ် ကောင်းတာပဲ။ It's really good D1.6
ဖ် Compare: ဒီမှာ ထိုင်ကြရအောင်။ Let's sit
here; ဒီမှာပဲ ထိုင်ကြရအောင်။ Let's sit right
here, in this very spot D1.11; (2) only
[quantity], not as much as I hoped/feared,
not as much as you might expect/hope/fear
D3.7 ဖ်တစ်လပဲ only a month ဖ်ဆယ့်ငါးကျပ်ပဲ
only 15 kyats ဖ်နှစ်ပုလင်းပဲ only 2 bottles; (3)
just [phrase], only [phrase]; D4.4 ဖ်၅-ကျပ်ပဲ
ပေးရတယ်။ I only paid 5K [not as much as
usual] ဖ်ထမင်းပဲ စားမယ်။ I'll have just rice
[nothing fancy or more complicated].
ဖ်သက်သတ်လွတ်ပဲ စားချင်ပါတယ်။ I want to
eat just vegetarian food [nothing more
extravagant or pretentious]. ဖ်၆-နှစ်ပဲ
ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ is only 6 years old so far
[implying: still quite young]. Gram 3.2 and 4

ပဲ in မ-[verb]-ပဲ > without [verb]-ing Gram 6

ပဲခူး /ဗဂို/ > Pegu (Bago) G19

ပဲနီ > penny G26

ပဲပြား /-ဗျား/ > bean curd ["bean-slab, cake"]
D4.4

ပေါ် in [noun]-ပေါ် > on; over Gram 2

ပေါ့ in S-ပေါ့ > of course Gram 5

ပို-[verb]- > [verb] more Gram 3.2.1

ပိုပေး- in ၅-ကျပ် ပိုပေးပါ။ > Pay me K5 more.

D2.5

ပိုမပြောပါဘူး။ > I don't inflate my prices. ["extra-not-say"] D2.5

ပိုမို-[verb]- > [verb] more Gram 13.3.2

ပို့- > to send D5.2

ပို့စကဒ် /-ကတ်/ > postcard [from English] G40

ပက်စီ > Pepsi-cola D1.4

ပိုက်ဆံ > money D1.4

ပင် in ပ-ပင် > [emphatic] Gram 13.5

ပင်စင် ယူ- > to take a pension, retire D2.10A

ပေါင် > pound G23

ပတ် or အပတ် > week D2.8 ၁ သုံးပတ် three weeks

ပိတ်- > to close, turn off G43

ပန်ကာ > fan G43

ပန်းခြံ /-ဂျန်/ > park, garden ["flower-enclosure"] G1

ပန်းဆိုးတန်း /ဆိုး or ခိုး/ > Pansodan Street G9

ပုံ > picture, [also the count word for pictures] D5.2

ပုံ in [verb]-ပုံ > manner of [verb]-ing Gram 7.2

ပျော်- > to enjoy oneself, have a good time D5.7

ပြ > block, in Mandalay only D5.1

ပြတင်းပေါက် /ပဒင်းဇောက်/ > window G43

ပြတိုက် /ပြာဒိုက်/ > museum ["show-building"] G1

ပြာ: > pya (or English penny) G25

ပြီ in [verb]-ပြီ > relates to whether a specified condition has been achieved yet: see the notes at D2.2 and D2.10A. Gram 3.1

ပြီး in [verb]-ပြီး(တော့) > after [verb1] Gram 6

ပြီး in [verb1]-ပြီး: [verb2] > [verb1] and [verb2] Gram 6

ပြီး in [verb]-ပြီး- > finish [verb]-ing; have [verb]-ed Gram 3.2.2

ပြီးလျှင် in [verb]-ပြီးလျှင် > after [verb]-ing Gram 13.6

ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ /-ခဲ့/ > last, which is past ["finish-back there-attribute"] D2.7 ၁ ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ မေလက last May

ပြီးပြီ။ > I have finished. CP15, D2.2 ၁ S1:

ပြီးပြီလား။ /ဝိးမိ-/ Have you finished? — S2:

ပြီးပြီ။ /ဝိးမိ/ Yes, I have, or S2:

မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။ Not yet. CP15

ပြော- > to speak, say, tell, talk D1.6, D2.6,

D2.12 ၁ [verb]-မယ် ပြောတယ် said he would

[verb] written ex. D4.12 ၁ အပြောစကား:

colloquial language ["talking-words"] D5.6

ပြောပါ။ or just ပြော > "Please speak" [as a response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1

ပြက္ခဒိန် /ပျက်ခဒိန်/ > calendar D3.1

ပြင် in [noun]-ပြင် > outside Gram 2

ပြင်သစ်နိုင်ငံ > France G34

ပြည် /ပျေ/ or /ပျို/ > Prome (Pyi/Pyay) G19

ပြည်လမ်း > Prome Road, Pyay Road, written ex. D4.3

ပြန်- > to return, go/come home D2.9

ပြန်-[verb]- > [verb] again Gram 3.2.1

ပြန်လည်-[verb]- > [verb] again Gram 13.3.2

ပြန်ရောက်- > to get back, to arrive back; written ex. D4.12, D5.12

ပြန်ပြောပါအုံး။ /-ဗာ-/ > Please say that again. G13

ပွဲ in [number]-ပွဲ > count word for dish, serving, portion D3.4 ၁ ထမင်းကြော် သုံးပွဲ three dishes of fried rice

ဖလင် > film [from English] G40

ဖိနပ် /ဖနတ်/ > sandals D3.1

ဖိလစ်ပိုင်နိုင်ငံ > Philippines G13

ဖူး in [verb]-ဖူး > have ever ed Gram 3.2.2

ဖေဖော်ဝါရီ /ဖေဖော်ဝါရီ/ > February D2.7

ဖို့ in [verb]-ဖို့ > to [verb] (in certain contexts)

D1.8, for [verb]-ing D4.7 ၁ သွားဖို့ အစီအစဉ်

ရှိတယ် I have a plan to go, intend, to go

၁ သုတေသန လုပ်ဖို့ ဗမာပြည် သွားချင်တယ်

She wants to go to Burma to do research.

Gram 6; 13.6

ဖတ်- > to read D4.6

ဖုန်း ချ- > to put down the receiver, to hang up D5.12

ဖုန်း ဆက်- > to call, make a phone call ["phone—connect"] D2.12

ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်- > to phone back, return a call

D4.12 ၁ ကျနော်ဆီ (ကျမဆီ) ဖုန်း:

ပြန်ဆက်ပါ။ Please call me back [manspeak (womanspeak)].

ဖြေ- in စာမေးပွဲ ဖြေ- > to take an exam ["exam—answer"] D5.10A

ဖြင့် in [noun]-ဖြင့် > instrument Gram 13.2.1

ဖြင့် in ပ-ဖြင့် > as for, in the case of Gram 4

ဖြင့် in [verb]-သဖြင့် > as, since, at the same time as [verb] Gram 13.6

ဖြစ် in [verb]-ဖြစ်- > manage to [verb] Gram 3.2.2
ဖြည်းဖြည်း > slowly D3.12 ဝဲဖြည်းဖြည်း ပြောပါ။

Please speak slowly.

ဖွင့်- > to open, turn on G43

ဗမာစကား > Burmese ["Burmese

words/speaking"] D1.6

ဗမာစာ /-စာ/ > written Burmese, Burmese texts,
material written in Burmese D1.6

ဗမာလို > in Burmese ["Burmese-way, manner"]
G40, D2.6

ဗီဇာ > visa D2.8

ဗီယက်နမ်နိုင်ငံ > Vietnam G13

ဗုဒ္ဓဘာသာ /-ဗုတ်ဒါ-/ > Buddhism D5.6

ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ /ဗုတ်-/ > Wednesday D3.11

ဗိုလ်အောင်ကျော်လမ်း /ဗို အောင်ကျော်-/ > Bo Aung
Kyaw Street G9

ဗိုလ်ချုပ် /ဗိုလျုပ်/ > General [refers to General
Aung San unless otherwise specified] G5
ဝဲဗိုလ်ချုပ်ဈေး /-ဇေး/ > Bogyoke Market G5
ဝဲဗိုလ်ချုပ်လမ်း > Bogyoke Street G7
ဝဲဗိုလ်ချုပ်ပန်းခြံ /-ဂျန်/ > Bogyoke Park G5
ဝဲဗိုလ်ချုပ်ပြတိုက် /-ပျာဒိုက်/ > Bogyoke
Museum G5

ဗျာ > Sir/Madam (man speaking) [shortened
form of ခင်ဗျာ။ More familiar and less
formal.] D2.5 ဝဲမလျော့နိုင်ဘူး ဗျာ။ I can't
reduce it, man.

ဗြိတိန် or ဗြိတိန်နိုင်ငံ > Britain D1.9

ဗြိတိသျှ /-ရှာ/ > British D1.9

ဘာ > what G1 ဝဲဘာလဲ > "What is it?" [as a
response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1 ဝဲဘာ-[noun] > what
[noun] G5. Gram 9

ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ /ကိတ်စာ/ > what for, for what
purpose ["What-business-with"] D4.7

ဘာကြောင့် > for what reason, why? Gram 9

ဘာ(ပဲ) [verb-verb] > whatever sn [verb]-s
Gram 6

ဘာဖြစ်လို့ > Why? ["what-take place-because"]
D5.6. Gram 9

ဘာလို့ see ဘာလုပ်ဖို့. What for? D5.6

ဘာလုပ် see ဘာလုပ်ဖို့. What for? D5.6. Gram 9

ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ (sometimes ဘာလုပ် or ဘာလို့) > What
for? To do what? ["what-do-to"] D5.6.

Gram 9

ဘာသာ > language [also = academic subject,
religion] D4.6

ဘိစကွတ် > biscuit [= cookie; from English] G40

ဘီး > comb D4.5

ဘုရား /ဖယား/ > lord, pagoda, Buddha image
G1

ဘုရားလမ်း /ဖယား-/ > Shwedagon Pagoda Road
G9

ဘူတာကြီး /-ဒါဂျီ-/ > the main station D1.3

ဘူး > count word: jar, pot, tin/can, tube, box,
pack, carton D3.5

ဘူး in မ-[verb]-ဘူး > not [verb] Gram 3.1

ဘေး > beside Gram 2

ဘဲ > duck D4.4

ဘောပင် > ballpoint pen [from English] G40

ဘက် > direction, way D1.1

ဘင်္ဂလားဒေ့ရှ်နိုင်ငံ /ဗင်ဂ- / > Bangladesh G13

ဘဏ်တိုက် /ဗန်ဒိုက်/ > bank D2.10A

ဘန်ကောက် > Bangkok G15

ဘယ်-[noun] > which [noun] G11

ဝဲဘယ်ဘက်မှာလား > on the left? ["left-side-
on-question"] D4.1 ဝဲဘယ်ဘက်မှာလဲ > on

which side, which way? ["which-side-on-
question"] D4.1. Gram 9

ဘယ်/ဘာ[]မှ ... မ-[verb] > not [verb] any
Gram 10

ဘယ်တော့ > when [asking about the future] D2.8,
Gram 9

ဘယ်တုန်းက /-ဒုန်းဂါ/ > when [in the past]?
D2.7, Gram 9

ဘယ်နှစ် /ဘယ်နှ- / > how many D1.4, Gram 9

ဘယ်နှစ်နာရီ > at what time? Gram 9

ဘယ်ဘက် > left side Gram 2

ဘယ်မှာ > in which [place], where G20, Gram 9

ဘယ်လို > how, in what way G36, D1.1, Gram 9

ဘယ်လောက် > how much, what (number, price)
G6. Gram 9

ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ > for how long Gram 9

ဘယ်သူ > who G21, Gram 9

ဘယ်အချိန် > at what time? Gram 9

ဘွဲ့. > university degree [also = title] D5.10A

မ > name prefix for younger women G24

မ- in မ-[verb]- > not to [verb] G29 ဝဲမလာနိုင်ရင်
> if you can't come, written ex. D4.3.

Gram 13.3.1

မ in [verb]-မ- > = [verb]-မယ် (with လား/လဲ)
Gram 3.1

မနေ့က /-ဂါ/ > yesterday D2.9

မနက် > morning D4.11
 မနက်ဖန် or မနက်ဖြန် or မနက်ဖြင့် > tomorrow
 D1.11, D2.11
 မနီလာ > Manila G15
 မနှစ်က > last year D2.7
 မလေးရှားနိုင်ငံ > Malaysia G13
 မလို့ in [verb]-မလို့ > I am (he is, as the case may be) thinking of [verb]-ing, planning to [verb]
 D1.8, D2.8 ◊ S1: ကား ဝယ်မလို့လား။ Are you thinking of buying a car? — S2: ဟုတ်ကဲ့။ ဝယ်မလို့ပါ။ Yes, I am.
 မဟာဗန္ဓုလပန်းခြံ /ဗန်ဒုလ္လာပန်းဂျန်/ > Maha Bandoola Park G5
 မဟာဗန္ဓုလလမ်း /ဗန်ဒုလ္လာ- / > Maha Bandoola Street G7
 မဟုတ်ပါဘူး /-ဗူး/ > It is not so. G3
 မဟုတ်ဘူးလား in [statement] မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။ > [statement]: isn't that so? [Often shortened in fast speech to မဟုတ်လား and even မှတ်လား or မလား။] D2.6
 မိ in [verb]-မိ- > [verb] accidentally Gram 3.2.2
 မိနစ် /မိနစ်-မင်းနစ်-မနစ်/ > minute G37
 မိသားစု (/ -သားစု/) > family ["mother-child-group"] D5.8
 မိ in မ-[verb]-မိ > before [verb]-ing Gram 13.6
 မီး > fire, light G43
 မီးပျံ့ > traffic lights ["light-point"] D4.1
 မူ in [noun]-မူ > as for, however Gram 13.4
 မေ > May D2.7
 မေမြို့ > Maymyo G19
 မေးပါ။ or just မေး > "Please ask" [as a response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1
 မဲ့ in [verb]-မဲ့ [noun] > relative clause Gram 7.1
 မဲ့ in [verb]-မဲ့အစား > instead of [verb]-ing Gram 6
 မော်လမြိုင် > Moulmein (Mawlamyine) G19
 မို့ in [noun]-မို့ > cause, because f [noun] Gram 6
 မင်္ဂလာဒုံ လေဆိပ် /-မိတ်/ > Mingaladon Airport [air-stopping place, jetty, port, station] D1.3
 မင်္ဂလာပါ။ > Good morning/afternoon (classroom greeting) CP1
 မောင် > younger brother [of female] D2. D2.10B
 မည် in [verb]-မည် > future or assumption
 Gram 13.3.1
 မည် in [verb]-မည်မှာ > activity/state of [verb]
 Gram 13.7.3

မည် in [verb]-မည် [noun] > [noun] which will [verb] Gram 13.7.1
 မည် in [verb]-မည်အစား > instead of [verb]-ing
 Gram 13.6
 မည်သူ > who Gram 13.9
 မည်သည့် အရာ > what Gram 13.9
 မည်သည့် [noun] > what, which [noun] Gram 13.9
 မည်သည့် []မှ မ-[verb]- > not [verb] any []
 Gram 13.10
 မည်သည့် နေရာ > which place Gram 13.9
 မတ် > March D2.7
 မတ် > quarter G38
 မိတ်ဆွေ > friend D1.10A; also used = "you, your" when you don't yet know a person's name
 D1.10B ◊ မိတ်ဆွေအိမ် a friend's house D2.10B
 မိတ်ဆက်- or မိတ်ဆက်ပေး- > to introduce ["friend-connect-give"] D1.10B ◊ ကျွန်မ အကိုနဲ့ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးချင်ပါတယ်။ I want to introduce you to my brother
 မုတ်ဆိတ်ရိပ်ဒါး > razor blade ["beard-shave-knife"] D4.5
 မန္တလေး /မန်းဒလေး/ > Mandalay G19
 မိန်းမ > woman, wife D1.10A
 မုန့် > something made with flour: see note at D2.4
 မယ် in [verb]-မယ် > future or assumption
 Gram 3.1
 မယ်နော် in [verb]-မယ်နော် > I'm going to [verb]: is that all right? D2.2 ◊ ရိုက်မယ်နော်။ I'll shoot now — OK? ◊ မိတ်ဆက်ပေးမယ်နော်။ I'll introduce you — OK? ◊ သွားမယ်နော်။ I'll go — OK? [= Goodbye]
 များ- > (1) to be many, much D1.11 ◊ လုပ်စရာများပါတယ်။ I have a lot to do. (2) to be too many, too much D2.3 ◊ များပါတယ်။ That's too much. [short for ဈေး များပါတယ်။]
 များ in [noun]-များ > [plural] Gram 13.2.2
 များ in P-များ > [vague, unspecific] Gram 4
 မျိုး or အမျိုး > kind, sort D5.5 ◊ ဘယ်နှစ်မျိုးရှိသလဲ။ How many kinds are there?
 မြေပုံ /-ဗုံ/ > map ["earth picture"] G40
 မြို့ > town G15
 မြို့နယ် > township G29
 မြောက်ဘက် > to the north D4.3
 မြစ်ကြီးနား > Myitkyina G19
 မြတ် in မမြတ်ပါဘူး။ > I make no profit. D2.5

မြန်မာ (or ဗမာ) > Burmese G13

မြန်မာနိုင်ငံ > Burma/Myanmar G13

မှ in [time]-မှ > only [at time] D5.12 ဝဲ၆-နာရီမှ ပြန်ရောက်မယ်။ He will only get back at 6. [= He won't get back till 6], Gram 6; in P-မှ >

only, not otherwise Gram 4

မှ in [noun]-မှ(သည်) > source (place)

Gram 13.2.1

မှ in P-မှ in (ဘာ)မှ မ-[verb] > don't [verb]

any[thing] Gram 4

မှာ- > to order, instruct D1.4

မှာ in [place]-မှာ > in [place], at [place], on [place] G11, Gram 2; in [point in time]-မှာ = at [point in time] G33, D2.9 ဝဲလေးနာရီမှာ at 4 o'clock ဝဲမေလမှာ in May ဝဲ၂၈-ရက်နေ့မှာ on the 28th

မှာ in [verb]-မှာ or [verb]-မှာပါ > a variant form of [verb]-မယ်, often before လဲ/လာ/ပဲ/ပေါ့. D2.8 ဝဲဘယ်တော့ သွားမှာလဲ။ = ဘယ်တော့ သွားမလဲ။ When are you going to go? See the notes at D4.8, D5.1. Gram 3.1

မှာ in [verb]-မှာ > thing which, fact of Gram 7.3

မှာ in [noun]-မှာ > subject (highlighted)

Gram 13.2.1

မှား- > to be wrong D5.12

မှု in [verb]-မှု > [abstract noun] Gram 7.2

မှတ်မိ- > to remember, recall D5.12

မျှ in n°-[noun]-မျှ > length of time, quantity

Gram 13.2.1

မျှ in [verb]-သမျှ > all that sn [verb]-s Gram 13.6

-----ယ-ရ-လ-ဝ-----

ယူ- > to take D1.4 ဝဲဘာ ယူမလဲ။ What will you have? D1.4 ဝဲဘာ ယူပေးရမလဲ။ What should I bring you? [as in a café] D1.4 ဝဲယူမယ် I'll take it. I'll have it [as in a shop] D1.5

ယောက် in [number]-ယောက် > count word for people D4.10A ဝဲသား လေးယောက် "son-four-person" four sons

ယောက်စာ in [number]-ယောက်စာ > enough for [number] people D5.4 ဝဲသုံးယောက်စာ three portions

ယောက်ျား (/ယောက်ကျား/) > man, husband D1.10A

ယပ်တောင် > fan [hand-held, not electric] D4.5

ရ- > to get, obtain, be able to get, acquire, gain, succeed, manage, be successful, be possible, and many other meanings D2.4 ဝဲစပါကလင် ရမလား။ Could we get any Sparkling?

Would you have any Sparkling? ဝဲ၂၀/-

ပေးမယ်။ ရမလား။ I'll give you K20. Would that be acceptable? D2.5 ဝဲမိဇာ ရရင် if I get a visa D2.8 ဝဲရတယ်နော်။ It's all right, isn't it? CP7, CP12, D1.2 ဝဲရပါတယ်။ That's all right. CP7. (response to ဆောရီးပဲ။) CP13 (response to ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။) CP9; It's fine. No problem. OK. D1.2 ဝဲမရဘူး။ You can't do it. It's not all right. D1.2; ရပြီလား။ S1: Is it all right now? Ready now? — S2: ရပြီ။ It is. or S2: မရသေးပါဘူး။ Not yet. CP16, D2.2

ရ- in [verb]-ရ- > (1) to have to [verb] G45 ဝဲဘယ်လောက် ပေးရသလဲ။ How much did you have to pay? (2) can, may, have opportunity to [verb] D1.10B ဝဲတွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ် I am happy at having the opportunity to meet you. D1.10B. Gram 3.2.2

ရအောင် in [verb]-ရအောင် > shall we [verb]? D1.11 ဝဲတွေ့ရအောင်။ Let's meet. Shall we meet. Gram 3.1

ရတာ in [verb]-ရတာ > [verb]-ing, to [verb] D5.6 ဝဲတွေ့ရတာ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ်။ I am happy to meet you. ဝဲသင်ရတာ ခက်သလား။ Is it hard to learn?

ရာ in [verb]-ရာ(တွင်) > when, since, as [verb] Gram 13.6

ရာသီဥတု (/အုဒ/) > climate, weather D5.7

ရေခဲ /-ရဲ/ > ice ["water-solid"] D5.4

ရေခဲမုန့် /-ရဲ-/ > ice cream ["water-solid-confection"] D2.4

ရေနံကုမ္ပဏီ /-ကုန်ပုနီ/ > oil company D2.10A

ရေနံချောင်း /ယေနံကျောင်း/ > Yenangyaung G19 ရေနွေး or ရေနွေးကြမ်း > plain tea ["water-warm-rough"] For other names see D5.4.

ရေး- > to write D4.6 ဝဲအရေးစကား literary language ["writing-words"] D5.6

ရေး in [verb]-ရေး > [abstract noun] Gram 7.2

ရဲ in [verb]-ရဲ- > dare to [verb] Gram 3.2.2

ရဲသား > policeman D2.10A

ရဲအရာရှိ > police officer D2.10A

ရဲ့ in [noun1]-ရဲ့ [noun2] > [noun1]'s [noun2]

Gram 2.2

ရဲ့လား in verb]-ရဲ့လား > similar to [verb]-သလား
but see note at D5.7. Gram 3.1

ရော or ကော in [phrase]-ရော > how about [noun]?
D1.10B

ရက် > day [for dates and measuring time] D2.9

ဝ လေးရက် four days ဝ လေးရက်နေ့ the 4th

ရောက်- > to get to, reach, arrive at D1.7, D2.9

ဝ ရောက်ဖူး- > to have reached before, to
have been to D1.7 ဝ ရောက်ခဲ့- > to have been
[somewhere else] D2.7 ဝ ရောက်နေ- > to be
(here) ["arrive-stay"] D4.9 ဝ ရောက်နေတာ
ကြာပြီလား။ Have you been here long?

ရင် in [verb]-ရင် > when, if [verb] D2.8 ဝ မိမိ

ရရင် when/if I get a visa. Gram 6

ရင်း in [verb]-ရင်း > simultaneously [verb] Gram 6

ရောင်း- > to sell D5.5 ဝ ဘယ်လို ရောင်းသလဲ။ How
do you sell them? ["for how much?"]

ရည်ရွယ်ချက် / ယိဇ္ဇာယုတ္တိ / > aim, objective

D5.6 ဝ ဘာရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့လဲ With what
aim? With what objective?

ရည်းစား (/ယီးစား/) > fiancé/e, boy/girlfriend
D1.10A

ရုတ်ရှား > Russia G34

ရန် in [verb]-ရန် > in order to [verb] Gram 13.6

ရန်ကုန် / ယန်ဂုန် / > Rangoon/ Yangon G15

ရပ် or ရပ်ကွက် > Quarter (in a town) G29

ရပ်- > to stand D3.2; to stop D5.3 ဝ ဒီမှာ ရပ်ပါ။

Please stand here. Please stop here.

ရိပ်သာ or တရားရိပ်သာ > meditation centre

["doctrine-refuge"] D5.9

ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသမီး > film actress D2.10A

ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသား > film actor D2.10A

ရုပ်ရှင်ရုံ > cinema ["picture-moving-building"]
D5.3

ရုံ in [verb]-ရုံ > mere fact of [verb]-ing Gram 7.2

ရုံး > office D1.1

ရယ်ဒီယို။ > Ready. D2.2

ရယ်ဒီယိုလား။ > Are you ready? D2.2

ရှိ- > (1) there is ဝ ဒီနားမှာ ပန်းခြံ ရှိသလား။ Is
there a park near here? D2.1 ဝ ရှိပါသေး-
တယ်။ There's more. (response to ဒါပဲလား။)
CP17 (2) there is, to have ဝ စပါကလင်
ရှိသလား။ Is there any Sparkling? Do you
have any Sparkling? D2.4 (3) to be [in some

place] ဝ ဦးတင်လှိုင် ရှိလား။ Is U Tin Hlaing
there? D1.12

ရှေ့ > in front, ahead [of us] D5.3 ဝ ရှေ့လမှာ in
the month ahead, next month D2.8

ဝ ရှေ့လမ်း the [cross]-road ahead, the next
turning D5.3 ဝ ရှေ့တိုး- > to come forward
["front—advance"] D4.2 ဝ ရှေ့တည့်တည့်
/ တဲ့ဒဲ့ / > straight ahead ["front-in line"]
D4.3 ဝ ရှေ့နားမှာ or ရှေ့နားတွင် or ရှေ့နားတင် >
just over there, ahead of us D5.1.

ရှေ့ in [place]-ရှေ့မှာ > in front of [place] D5.3
ဝ ဈေးရှေ့မှာ ရပ်ချင်ပါတယ်။ I want to stop in
front of the market. Gram 2

ရှေ့နေ > lawyer D2.10A

ရှင် > [polite tag, female speaker] CP10, D1.1

ရှင်း- > to clear, clarify, settle up; be clear

ဝ ပိုက်ဆံ ရှင်း- to settle the bill D1.4

ရွှေတိဂုံဘုရား / ယွေဒဂုန်ဖယား / > Shwedagon
Pagoda G5

ရွှေဘုံသာလမ်း > Shwebontha Street G9

ရွှေ- > to move, shift D3.2 ဝ ဒီဘက် နဲ့နဲ့ ရွှေပါ။

Please move a little this way

လ > month D2.8, suffixed to month names D2.7

လခ / လာဂါ / > salary ["month-fee"] D5.10B

လာ- > to come G31; in လာ- [verb] > to come and

[verb] D5.12 ဝ ကားနဲ့ လာခေါ်မယ်။ I'll come
and fetch you by car; ဝ လာလည်- (/လယ်/)
to come visiting D5.11

လာ in [verb]-လာ- > [verb] and come, become

[verb] Gram 3.2.2

လာရောက်-[verb]- > come and [verb] Gram 13.3.2

လာ-[verb]- > come and [verb] Gram 3.2.1

လာခဲ့- > to come from there, come round, come
over, come back D3.11 ဝ ၁၀-နာရီမှာ လာခဲ့မယ်
I'll come over at 10 o'clock.

လာမဲ့ in လာမဲ့ [point in time]-မှာ > next [point in
time], "the point in time which is to come"
["come-attribute—[point in time]-in"] ဝ

လာမဲ့ စက်တင်ဘာလမှာ next September D2.8

လား in [sentence]-လား > [sentence]-question ဝ ဒါ
ဘုရားလား။ Is that a pagoda? G3

ဝ ကမ်းနားလမ်းမှာ နေသလား။ Does he live in
Strand Road? G29. Gram 5, 13.5

လား in [noun-1]-လား၊ [noun-2]-လား။ > Is it
[noun-1] or [noun-2]? D4.10A, D5.4 ဝ သားလား၊
သမီးလား။ Is it a son or a daughter?

လူမျိုး > race, nationality [“person-kind, type”]

D1.9 ဝ မြန်မာလူမျိုး a Burmese (a Myanmar)
လေ in S-လေ > you see, I mean Gram 5

လေယာဉ်ရုံ: /-ယင်-/ > airline office D2.10A

လေး in [noun]-လေး > little [noun] Gram 2.2

လေ့လာ- > to study D5.6 ဝ လေ့လာရေး a study, an investigation D5.6

လဲ in [phrase]-လဲ > [phrase] also, [phrase] too
D1.10B, D1.11 ဝ ကျွန်တော်လဲ ဝမ်းသာပါတယ် I

am happy too. Gram 4. The officially
approved spelling of -လဲ is -လည်း, but we
use -လဲ here as this is the spelling most

people use when writing in colloquial style.

လဲ in S-လဲ > [question: information] Gram 5

လော in S-လော > [question: yes or no] Gram 13.5

လောလောဆယ် /-ဇယ်/ > recently, currently, for
the time being D1.11 ဝ လောလောဆယ်
လုပ်စရာ နဲ့ များ(နေ)ပါတယ်။ I have rather a
lot to do at the moment.

လို- > (1) to be lacking, be short of D5.3 ဝ နှစ်ကျပ်
လိုသေးတယ် It's still K2 short. ဝ နဲ့
လိုပါသေးတယ် We're still not quite there.
(2) to need, be necessary D5.12 ဝ အကူအညီ
လိုသလား။ Do they need any help? ဝ ထမင်း
ကျွေးဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။ You don't need to give me a
meal.

လို in ဘယ်လို > how? G36, D1.1, ဒီလို > this way,
like this D3.2; ဗမာလို > in Burmese G40, D2.6

လို in [noun]-လို > manner, like [noun] Gram 2

လို in [verb]-လို > want to [verb] Gram 13.3.2

လိုချင်- /-ရှင်-/ > to want [something] D4.5

ဝဘာ လိုချင်သလဲ။ What do you want?

လို in [name]-လို ခေါ်- > to call, be called [name]
G36. Gram 2

လို in [sentence]-လို ပြော- > to say that

[sentence] D3.4 written ex. Gram 2

လို in [verb]-လို > because [verb] D5.6 ဝ နဲ့ ဝေးလို့
ဆိုက်ကား စီးလာတယ်။ Because it's rather a
long way we came by sidecar. Gram 6

လို in [verb]-လို ရ- > to be able to [verb] D5.1
ဝ လမ်းလျှောက်လို့ မရဘူး။ You couldn't walk
it. [e.g. because it's too far] ဝ ဖုန်း ဆက်လို့
ရသလား။ Were you able to phone? [for
example, after the line had been reconnect-
ed] Gram 3.2.2

လို in [verb]-လို ရှိရင် > if/when [verb] Gram 6

လက်ဖက်ရည် /လဖက်ယေ/ > tea [tea-juice] D1.4

လက်ဖက်ရည်ကြမ်း > plain tea. For other names
see D5.4.

လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် /လဖက်ရေခိုင်း/ > café [“tea-
juice-shop”] D2.1, D3.4

လောက် in [quantity]-လောက် > approximately,
roughly [quantity] D2.8 ဝ ပေါင် တစ်ရာ-
လောက် about a hundred pounds ဝ ဘယ်တုန်း-
ကလောက် roughly when [in the past].

Gram 2.2

လောက် in [verb]-လောက်- > be enough to [verb]
Gram 3.2.2

လိုက်- in [verb]-လိုက်- > to [verb] rapidly and
without effort] D1.12, D4.12 ဝ သွားခေါ်-
လိုက်မယ်။ I'll go and fetch him [and it won't
take long]. Gram 3.2.2

လိုက်သွား- > to accompany D4.8 ဝ အမျိုးသားနဲ့
လိုက်သွားမယ်။ I shall be accompanying my
husband.

လိုက်တာ in [verb]-လိုက်တာ > suffix used in
exclamations D5.10A ဝ ချစ်စရာ
ကောင်းလိုက်တာ။ How adorable!

လိုင်း > line D3.12

လည်- /လယ်/ > to visit ဝ လာလည်- > to come
for a visit D4.9 ဝ အလည် သွား- > to go for a
visit D4.7

လည်း in S-လည်း > [question: information]
Gram 13.5

လည်း in P-လည်း > also Gram 13.4. In colloquial
style this suffix is usually written -လဲ။

လည်းကောင်း in [noun1]-လည်းကောင်း [noun2]-
လည်းကောင်း > both [noun1] and [noun2]
Gram 13.4

လိပ် > count word: roll (of film, toilet paper, ...)
D3.5

လိပ်စာ > address [“address-writing”] G29,
D2.10B, D5.2

လုပ်- > to do, act, make D2.10A, D3.2 ဝ ဒီလို
လုပ်ပါ Do this [“Act like this”] ဝ Ph.D.
လုပ်နေပါတယ်။ > I'm doing a Ph.D. written
ex. D3.10B ဝ သံရုံးမှာ အလုပ် လုပ်ပါတယ်။ I
work at an embassy. D2.10A

လုပ်ငန်း > work, activity, business D5.10B

လုပ်စရာ > things that have to be done D1.11
ဝ လုပ်စရာ များပါတယ်။ I have a lot to do.

လမ်း > road, street G7

လမ်းဆုံ > crossroads, junction [“road-meeting”]

D5.3

လမ်းထောင့် /-ဒေါင့်/ > the corner of the block,
road junction D5.1

လမ်းထိပ် /-ထိတ်/ > the end of the road D5.1

လမ်း လျှောက်- /ယောက်/ > to walk, go on foot
[“road—proceed along”] D5.1

လိမ္မော် > orange [cf. Portuguese *limão*, English
lemon] D1.4

လိမ္မော်ရည် /-ယေ/ > orange juice [orange-juice]
D1.4

လိမ့်မယ် in [verb]-လိမ့်မယ်။ > may have to [verb].
For more see D5.1. ဝဲကား စီးရလိမ့်မယ်။ You’ll
probably have to go by car/taxi/bus.

Gram 3.2.2

လုံး > count word: “item,” for round(-ish) objects.
For bottles D1.4, for more examples D3.5.

Gram 2.2

လယ် in [noun]-လယ် > middle of [noun] Gram 2

လယ်သမား > rice farmer D2.10A

လျက် in [verb]-လျက် > when, since, as [verb]

Gram 13.6

လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ /-ဂဲဒဲ/ > last, which is past [“pass by-
back there—attribute”] D2.7 ဝဲလွန်ခဲ့တဲ့
မေလက last May

လွန်း in [verb]-လွန်း- > [verb] to excess Gram 3.2.2

လွယ်- > to be easy D5.6

လွယ် in [verb]-လွယ်- > easy to [verb] Gram 3.2.2

လွယ်အိတ် > shoulder bag D4.5

လှ in [verb]-လှ- > [verb] a lot Gram 3.2.2

လှည့်- /လဲ/ > to turn (oneself) D4.2; to dial (on
the phone) D5.12 ဝဲနံပါတ် အလှည့် မှားတယ်။
I dialled the wrong number. [“number-
dialling was wrong”]

လျှော့- > to slacken off, reduce [price] D2.3

ဝဲဝဝ/- လျှော့ပါအုံး။ Knock off K10 D2.5

လျှော့ထည့်- > to add less than usual [“reduce-put
in”] D5.4 ဝဲငရုတ်သီး လျှော့ထည့်ပါ။ Please put
in less chilli than usual.

လျှောက်-[verb]- > wander round [verb]-ing

Gram 3.2.1

လျှင် in [verb]-လျှင် > if/when [verb] Gram 13.6

လျှင် in [verb]-လျှင်-[verb]-ချင်း > as soon as [verb]

Gram 13.6

ဝေး- > to be far, be distant D5.1

ဝက် > pig D4.4

ဝင်- > to enter, go in, come in D5.3 ဝဲဆိုက်ကား

ဝင်ခွင့် မရှိဘူး။ Sidecars aren’t permitted to
go in.

ဝင်-[verb]- > enter and [verb] Gram 3.2.1

ဝင်ငွေ > income [“come in-money”] D5.10B

ဝင်ရောက်-[verb]- > enter and [verb] Gram 13.3.2

ဝင်း > enclosure, grounds, precincts D5.12

ဝဲတက္ကသိုလ်ဝင်း the university campus

ဝိုင်အမ်စီအေ > YMCA D2.3

ဝပ်ရှော့ > workshop (for car repairs) D2.10A

ဝဲ in [verb]-ဝဲ- > dare to [verb] Gram 3.2.2

ဝမ်းသာ- > to be happy [“stomach—be
pleasant”] D1.10B

ဝယ်- > to buy G41

-----သ-ဟ-လ -----

သ in [verb]-သ > = [verb]-တယ် (with လား/လဲ)

Gram 3.1

သကြား /-ဂျား/ > sugar [from Sanskrit *sarkarā*,
Pali *sakkharā*; same source as *Zucker*, *sucre*,
zucchero, *sugar*, and similar words] D5.4

သတင်းထောက် /သုဒင်းဒေါက်/ > reporter [“news-
suss out, reconnoitre”] D2.10A D3.10A

သလား in [verb]-သလား > [question: yes or no]

Gram 13.5

သလို in [verb]-သလို > as if [verb], like [verb]

Gram 6

သလိုလို in [verb]-သလိုလို > rather as if [verb],
like [verb] Gram 6

သလောက် in [verb]-သလောက် > all that sn
[verb]-s Gram 6

သမီး > daughter D1.10A

သမိုင်း > history D5.6

သာ in P-သာ > just, only [less than you’d think]

Gram 13.4

သာစည် /သာဇီ/ > Thazi G19

သား > son D1.10A

သား or အသား > meat, flesh D4.4 ဝဲဝက်သား pork
[“pig-flesh”]

သိ- > to know D1.1, D3.1 ဝဲမသိဘူး in [question]

မသိဘူး > I wonder [question] ဝဲဘောပင်

ဘယ်မှာ ရမလဲ မသိဘူး။ I wonder where I
might get a ball pen?

သုတေသန လုပ်- > to do research D4.7

သူ in [verb]-သူ > person who [verb]-s Gram 7.2

သေချာ- > to be fixed, certain, definite D2.8

သေး- > to be small, to be smaller, too small D5.5
 ဝဲအသေး a small one D5.4
 သေး (1) in [verb]-ပါသေးတယ် > still [verb], more [verb] D1.6 ဝဲရှိပါသေးတယ် There is more to come D1.6, Gram 3.2.2 (2) in [noun]-ပဲ [verb]-ပါသေးတယ် > to [verb] only [noun] so far, as yet D2.6 ဝဲဗမာစကား နဲ့နဲ့ပဲ
 ပြောတတ်ပါသေးတယ်။ He can only speak a little Burmese so far. [but we expect his command of the language to improve]
 ဝဲရောက်နေတာ တစ်လပဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။ He's been here only a month so far. D4.9 (3) in မ-[verb]-သေး- > not [verb] yet D1.6 ဝဲသိပ်မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။ It's not really perfect yet. D1.6 ဝဲအလုပ် မလုပ်သေးပါဘူး။ He doesn't have a job yet. D2.10A. Gram 3.2.2
 သော in [verb]-သော [noun] > [noun] which [verb]-s Gram 13.7.1
 သောကြောင့် in [verb]-သောကြောင့် > because [verb] Gram 13.6
 သောကြာနေ့ /သောကကျာ/ > Friday D2.11
 သော် in [verb]-သော် > when, since, as [verb] Gram 13.6
 သော်ကား in [noun]-သော်ကား > as for [noun], however Gram 13.4
 သော်လည်း in [verb]-သော်လည်း > although, in spite of [verb]-ing Gram 13.6
 သို့ in [noun]-သို့ > destination (marked), to [noun]; manner, like [noun] Gram 13.2.1
 သက်သတ်လွတ် (some say သတ်သတ်လွတ်) > vegetarian diet ["life-kill-free"] D4.4
 သောက်- > to drink D1.4
 သင်- > to learn D3.6; to teach D4.6
 သင်တန်း တက်- > to attend class, attend a course ["learn-class—attend"] D5.10B
 သင်္ဘောသား /သင်းဘောသား/ > sailor ["ship-member"] D5.10B
 သင့် in [verb]-သင့်- > be right, proper to [verb] Gram 3.2.2
 သစ်စက် > sawmill D2.10A
 သည် in [noun]-သည် > subject (normal) Gram 13.2.1
 သည် in [verb]-သည် > present/past Gram 13.3.1
 သည် in [verb]-သည်မှာ > activity/state of [verb] Gram 13.7.3

သည် in [verb]-သည်နှင့်အညီ > in accordance with [verb] Gram 13.6
 သည် in [verb1]-သည် ဖြစ်စေ [verb2]-သည် ဖြစ်စေ > whether [verb1] or [verb2] Gram 13.6
 သည် [noun] > this [noun] Gram 13.9
 သည် အရာ > this/that thing Gram 13.9
 သည် နေရာမှာ > here Gram 13.9
 သည် in [verb]-သည့် [noun] > [noun] which [verb]-s Gram 13.7.1
 သည့် in [verb]-သည့်အခါ > when [verb] Gram 13.6
 သည့် in [verb]-သည့်အတွက် > as, since Gram 13.6
 သန့်ဘက်ခါ /သဘက်-/ > the day after tomorrow D3.11
 သိပ် > very D1.6, D2.6 ဝဲသိပ် ကောင်းတယ် It is very good D1.6 ဝဲဈေး သိပ် မများဘူး။ The price is not very high. [it is high, but not very high] D2.6. Gram 3.2.1
 သိပ္ပံ > Institute [also = science] D4.6
 သံ in [verb]-သံ > sound of [verb]-ing Gram 7.2
 သံတမန်ကုန်တိုက် /-ဒမန် -ဒိုက်/ > Diplomatic Store ["diplomatic-merchandise-building"] G35
 သံတွဲ /-ဒွဲ/ > Sandoway (Thandwe) G19
 သမ္မတဟိုတယ် /သမဒဲ/ > President Hotel G5
 သံရုံး > embassy ["sound, voice, envoy-office"] D1.1
 သိမ်ကြီးဈေး /သိန်ဂျီးဇေး/ > Thein-gyi Market [ordination hall-great-market] G5
 သွား- > to go G34
 သွား- in [verb]-သွား- > to go [verb], to become [verb] D5.9 ဝဲပြီးသွားပြီ။ It's all over. ဝဲဆုံးသွားပြီ။ She's dead and gone. Gram 3.2.2
 သွား-[verb]- > go and [verb] Gram 3.2.1
 သွားရောက်-[verb]- > go and [verb] Gram 13.3.2
 သွားပါအုံးမယ်။ or less formal သွားမယ်နော်။ > Goodbye (initiating). I'll be off then. CP5, CP11, D1.2
 သွားစရာ > "going that has to be done" ဝဲသွားစရာများပါတယ်။ > I have rather a lot of "going" to do, I have a lot of places to go to. D1.11
 ဝဲသွားစရာ ရှိပါတယ်။ > I have to go somewhere. D2.11
 ဟနိုင်း > Hanoi G15
 ဟလို or ဟယ်လို။ > Hallo D1.12

ဟာ > thing, one D5.5 ဝဲဘယ်ဟာ ယူမလဲ။ Which one will you take? ဝဲဒီဟာ ယူမယ်။ I'll take this one.

ဟာမျိုး in ဘယ်လိုဟာမျိုး > which kind of thing ["which-like-thing-kind"] D5.5
ဝဲဘယ်လိုဟာမျိုး ကြိုက်သလဲ။ Which kind do you like?

ဟာ in [noun]-ဟာ > subject Gram 2

ဟု in S-ဟု > quotation (name) Gram 13.2.1

ဟူ၍ in S-ဟူ၍ > quotation (speech) Gram 13.2.1

ဟို [noun] > that [noun] (far off) Gram 9

ဟိုမှာ > in that place over there Gram 9

ဟိုတယ် > hotel [from English] G1, D2.10A; also a restaurant and bar without accommodation D1.3

ဟိုဘက် (1) in ဟိုဘက်မှာ > over there ["that-direction-in"] D2.1; (2) in [place] ဟိုဘက်မှာ the far side of [place], beyond [place] D5.3
ဝဲမီးပွိုင့် ဟိုဘက်မှာ ရပ်မယ်။ We'll stop after the traffic lights. Gram 9

ဟင်း > curry D4.4

ဟင်းချို /-ဂျို/ > soup [most commonly a watery soup of leaves flavoured with a little meat] D4.4

ဟုတ်- > (1) to be so, to be the case ဝဲဟုတ်ကဲ့ > It is so. G3 ဝဲဟုတ်ကဲ့။ Yes [as a response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1 ဝဲဟုတ်လား in [statement] ဟုတ်လား။ > [statement]: is that true? D2.6; (2) to be as good as it possibly could be, right on, spot on, on target, on the ball, hot stuff, high class, real cool D1.6 ဝဲဗမာစကား ပြောတာ သိပ် မဟုတ်သေးပါဘူး။ His Burmese isn't perfect yet.

ဟန် in [verb]-ဟန် > appearance of [verb]-ing Gram 7.2

ဟန်ဘာဂါ > hamburger D2.4

ဟယ်လို or ဟလို။ > Hallo D1.12

အကို > older brother D1.10B

အကူအညီ > help, assistance D5.12 ဝဲအကူအညီ ပေး- to give help, be of help

အကြီး > (1) a large one D5.4; (2) the old [also = "older" or "oldest"] D4.10B ဝဲသားအကြီးက ၁၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ The older son is 15.

အကြောင်း in [noun]-အကြောင်း > concerning [noun], that Gram 2,6

အကြံပေး ပုဂ္ဂိုလ် /-ဗေးပုတ်ဂို/ > adviser D2.10A
အကြမ်း or အကြမ်းရည် > plain tea. For other names see D5.4.

အခု or ခု /အခု or အခု၊ ခု or ဂ/ > now, at present D5.10B

အခေါက် > trip, journey [mainly used in counting] D1.7 ဝဲဘယ်နှစ်ခေါက်လဲ how many trips?

D1.7 ဝဲသုံးခေါက် ရောက်ဖူးပါတယ်။ I've been there three times. D1.7

အချဉ် /အချဉ်/ > relish [a sauce with a vinegary taste, served in a small flat bowl] D4.4

အချိန် > time G33

အငယ် or -ငယ် > the young [also = "younger" or "youngest"] D4.10B ဝဲသားအငယ်က ၁၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ The younger son is 15.

အစီအစဉ် /-စင်/ > plan, programme D1.8

ဝဲအစီအစဉ် ရှိ- to have a plan, intend

အစိုးရ > government ["control-get"] D2.10A

အစိုးရဝန်ထမ်း /-ဒန်း/ > civil servant D2.10A

အစိုးရအမှုထမ်း /-ဒန်း/ > civil servant D3.10A

အစည်းအဝေး > meeting D4.12 ဝဲအစည်းအဝေး

တက်- to attend a meeting. D4.12

အစိမ်းကြော် > fried vegetables ["raw-fried"] D3.4

အဆင် ပြေ- > to work out all right, to be OK, satisfactory D5.9 ဝဲအဲဒီမှာ ထိုင်ရတာ အဆင် ပြေရဲ့လား။ Are you all right sitting there?

အဆိုတော် > singer D2.10A

အညီ in [verb]-သည်နှင့်အညီ > in accordance with [verb] Gram 13.6

အတိုင်း in [noun]-အတိုင်း > matching [noun] Gram S2

အတန်း or တန်း > Standard, Grade, Class, Year D2.10A ဝဲလေးတန်း 4th Standard, ဆယ်တန်း 10th Standard ဝဲဘယ်နှစ်တန်း ရောက်ပြီလဲ။ What Standard have you got to?

အတွက် in [noun]-အတွက် > for [noun], for the sake of, for the benefit of D5.10B

ဝဲပါရဂူဘွဲ့အတွက် စာတန်း ရေးနေတယ်။ He is writing a thesis for his Ph.D. Gram 2

အထိ in [noun]-အထိ > up to [noun] Gram 2

အထဲမှာ > inside, indoors D5.4; အိမ်ထဲမှာ inside the house, indoors D5.12

အဒေါ် or ဒေါ်ဒေါ် > aunt D1.10B

အနုပညာ (/—ပျင်ညာ/) > art [“fine-skill”] D5.6
 အနေတော် > just right [“state-be right”] D5.7
 အနိဆုံး in ဒါ အနိဆုံးပဲ။ > That is the least [the lowest/bottom price] D2.5
 အနော်ရထာလမ်း /ယထာ or ရထာ/ > Anawrahta Street G7
 အနောက်ဘက် > to the west D4.3
 အနှစ် or နှစ် > year D2.8 ဝဲသုံးနှစ် three years
 ----- အဝ -----
 အပေါ် in [noun]-အပေါ် > over, above [noun]
 Gram 2
 အပတ် or ပတ် > week D2.8 ဝဲသုံးပတ် three weeks
 အပြောစကား > colloquial language [“talking-words”] D5.6
 အပြင် > outside, out, outdoors G35, D5.4
 အဖေ > father D1.10A
 အဘယ် [noun] > which [noun] Gram 13.9
 အမ > older sister D1.10B
 အမေ > mother D1.10A
 အမေရိက or အမေရိကနိုင်ငံ > America G34, D1.9
 အမည် /အမျိုး/ > name [the form used literary style] D2.10B
 အမိန့် ရှိပါ။ > Please speak [“order, instruction—have”]; like “Who is it?” when answering the phone D1.12
 အများသုံးအိမ်သာ /—သူနံး: —သူ/ > public toilet [“many-use-toilet”] D2.1
 အမျိုး or မျိုး > kind, sort D5.5 ဝဲဘယ်နှစ်မျိုးရှိသလဲ။ How many kinds are there?
 ဝဲအမျိုးမျိုး many different kinds D5.5
 အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ > relationship [“family-relate-connect-manner”] D2.10B
 အမျိုးသား > husband, fiancé, boyfriend (also “gentleman” and “national”) D1.10A
 အမျိုးသားပြတိုက် /—ပျာဒိုက်/ > National Museum [“nation-member-show-building”] G5
 အမျိုးသမီး > wife, fiancée, girlfriend (also “lady”) D1.10A
 အမှုထမ်း > official [“affair-carry”] D3.10A
 အမှတ် > number G29, D2.10B
 ----- အရ -----
 အရေးစကား > literary language [“writing-words”] D5.6
 အရင်တုန်းက > formerly, previously, in the past D2.10A

အရင်း in ဒါ အရင်းအတိုင်းပါပဲ။ > That’s what I pay for them myself. [“that—outlay-matching”] D2.5
 အရောင် > colour D5.5
 အရည် /အယေ/ > juice D1.4
 အရမ်း > terrifically, fantastically, and the like D1.6 ဝဲအရမ်း ကောင်းတယ် It is incredibly good D1.6
 အရွယ် > size; also “age” when talking about children D4.10B ဝဲဘယ်အရွယ် ရှိပြီလဲ။ What age is he?
 အရှေ့ဘက် > to the east D4.3
 အလည် /အလယ်/ > a visit D4.7, D4.9, D5.11
 ဝဲအလည် သွား— > to go for a visit D4.7
 ဝဲအလည် လာ— > to come for a visit D4.9
 အလတ် > the middle D4.10B ဝဲသားအလတ်က ၁၅-နှစ် ရှိပြီ။ The middle son is 15.
 အလုပ် > work, job, occupation D2.10A
 အလုပ် လုပ်— > to do a job, to work D2.10A
 ဝဲသံရုံးမှာ အလုပ် လုပ်ပါတယ်။ I work at an embassy.
 အလုပ် ဝင်— > to start work, take up a job [“work—enter”] D5.10B
 အလုပ်အကိုင် > occupation [“work-handling”] D2.10B
 အလုပ်သမား > labourer [“work-doer”] D2.10A, D3.10A
 အလုပ်ရုံ > workshop (small scale manufacture or processing) D2.10A
 အလျောက် in [noun]-အလျောက် > matching [noun] Gram 13.2.1
 အလွန် [verb]- > [verb] much Gram 13.3.2
 အသား or သား > meat, flesh D4.4; ဝဲဝက်သား pork [“pig-flesh”]
 အသေး > a small one D5.4
 အသက် > age [also = life, breath] D2.10B
 အသံလွှင့်ဌာန /ထာနု/ > broadcasting station D2.10A
 အသံထွက် /—ဒွက်/ > pronunciation D5.6
 အသုံး ကျ— > to come in useful, be useful [သုံး— “to use,” အသုံး: “using, use,” ကျ— “to fall in with, to match”] D5.6
 အအေးဆိုင် /—ခိုင်/ > cold drinks bar [“cold-shop”] D2.1, D3.4
 ----- အာ and other vowels -----
 အာ— > to be free, not engaged D2.11

အာ: in [verb]-အာ: - > be free to [verb] Gram 3.2.2
 အာ: in [noun]-အာ: > indirect object, to [noun]

Gram 13.2.1

အာ: နာ- > to feel held back, inhibited
 ["strength—be sore"] ဝဲ အာ:နာစရာ
 ကောင်းတယ် > I feel very à-na-deh. See note
 at D5.11.

ဤ [noun] > this [noun] Gram 13.9

ဤ အရာ > this/that thing Gram 13.9

ဤ နေရာမှာ > here Gram 13.9

ဥ /အု/ > egg D4.4

ဥ: /အု: / > name prefix for older men G22

ဥ:ထုပ် /အုတ်ထုပ်/ > hat ["head-wrap"] D3.1

ဥ:လေး > uncle D1.10B

ဧပြီ /အေပျီ/ > April D2.7

အေး > "Yes" [as a response to ဒီမှာ] D1.1

အေး- > to be cold (as winter, ice, cold drinks)

D5.9

ဧည့်ခံပွဲ /အဲခန့်ပွဲ/ > reception ["visitor-receive-
 party"] D5.12

အဲဒါ > that (nearer you) G39. Gram 9

အဲဒီ [noun] > that [noun] (near listener) Gram 9

အဲဒီ > to that place, (to) there Gram 9

အဲဒီမှာ > in that place, right there Gram 9

ဩဂုတ် /အောဂုတ်/ > August D2.7

ဩစတြေးလျနိုင်ငံ /အောစတရေးလျာ/ > Australia
 G34

အော် > Oh. G3

အောက် in [noun]-အောက် > under [noun] Gram 2

အောက်တိုဘာ > October D2.7

အိုက်- > to be stuffy, close, feel hot D5.4

အောင်- in စာမေးပွဲ အောင်- > to pass an exam

["exam—win, succeed"] D5.10A

အောင် in [verb]-အောင် > with the result that

[verb] Gram 6

အိုင်ယာလန် > Ireland G34

အင်္ဂလန် or အင်္ဂလန်နိုင်ငံ > England G34, D1.9

အင်္ဂလိပ် /အင်းဂလိပ်/ > English D1.9

အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဆရာ > English teacher (male or
 generic) D2.10A ဝဲ အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဆရာမ >

English teacher (female) D2.10A

အင်္ဂါနေ့ > Tuesday D3.11

အင်ဂျင်နီယာ > engineer D2.10A, D3.10A

အင်းယားလိပ် ဟိုတယ် > Inya Lake Hotel D1.3

အန်ကယ် > uncle D2.1

အန်တီ > auntie D2.1

အိန္ဒိယနိုင်ငံ /အိန်ဒီယာ- / > India G13

အုပ်စု > group ["crowd, herd-group"] D5.8

အံ့ in [verb]-အံ့ > future or assumption

Gram 13.3.1

အိမ် > house G29

အိမ်ထောင် /-ဒေါင်/ > household ["house—set
 up, establish"] D3.10A

အိမ်ထောင် ကျ- > to get married ["household—
 reach, attain"] D3.10A ဝဲ အိမ်ထောင်

ကျပြီလား။ Is she/he married yet? —

အိမ်ထောင် ကျပြီ။ She/he is. — အိမ်ထောင်

မကျသေးပါဘူး။ She/he isn't.

အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ- > to be married ["household—
 have"] D3.10A

အိမ် ပြန်- > to go home D5.11

အိမ်မှုကိစ္စ လုပ်- > to do the housework ["house-
 affair-business"] D2.10A

အိမ်သာ/-သုာ/ > toilet ["house-pleasant"] G35

အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ /-သုာသုန်း စက်ကူ/ > toilet
 paper ["toilet-use-paper"] D3.1

အံ့:မယ် in [verb]-အံ့:မယ် > will [verb] yet more,
 will continue [verb]-ing D3.9 ဝဲ နောက်ထပ်

သုံးလ နေအံ့:မယ်။ I'm going to stay on for
 another three months.

အံ့: in [verb]-(-ပါ)-အံ့: > please [verb] [friendly],
 [verb] more, again Gram 3.2.2

အံ့:(မယ်) in [verb]-အံ့:(မယ်) > [verb] more, longer
 Gram 3.2.2

အယ်ဒီတာ > editor D2.10A

----- abbreviated syllables -----

၏ in [noun1]-၏ [noun2] > [noun1]'s [noun2]

Gram 13.2.2

၏ in [verb]-၏ > present/past Gram 13.3.1

၍ in [verb]-၍ > after [verb]-ing, because [verb]

Gram 13.6

၍ in [verb1]-၍ [verb2] > [verb1] and [verb2]

Gram 13.6

၌ in [noun]-၌ > location, at, in, on [noun]

Gram 13.2.1

----- processes -----

creak in [noun1]-creak [noun2] > [noun1]'s [noun2]

Gram 2.2

repetition in [verb1-verb1] [verb2-verb2] >

whether [verb1] or [verb2] Gram 6

[verb] (= [verb] with no suffix) > do [verb]

Gram 3.1

5.2. English-Burmese vocabulary

able: to be able to [verb] > [verb]-ရ- D1.10B;
[verb]-နိုင်- D2.3, D3.4 written ex.; [verb]-လို့
ရ- D5.1
about [quantity] > [quantity]-လောက် D2.8
acceptable: would that be acceptable? > ရမလား။
D2.5, D1.2
accompany > လိုက်သွား- D4.8
accountant > စာရင်းကိုင် /စယင်းဂိုင်/ D2.10A
address > လိပ်စာ or နေရပ် or နေရပ်လိပ်စာ G29,
D2.10B, D5.2
adorable: to be adorable, charming = ချစ်စရာ
ကောင်း- D5.10A
adviser > အကြံပေး ပုဂ္ဂိုလ် /-ဗေးပုတ်ဂို/ D2.10A
after [time] > [time] နောက်ပိုင်း D3.11
afternoon > ညနေ D4.11
again: [verb] again, further, more > နောက်ထပ်
[verb] D1.8, D1.11
age > အသက် D2.10B; (when talking about
children) = အရွယ် D4.10B
aim, objective > ရည်ရွယ်ချက် /ယိဗ္ဗယ်ဂျက်/
D5.6
airline office > လေယာဉ်ရုံး /-ယင်း-/ D2.10A
all right > (I agree) = ကောင်းပါပြီ။ CP12; I'm
going to [verb]: is that all right? = [verb]-
မယ်နော် D2.2; Is it all right now? Ready
now? = ရပြီလား။ /ယခုစိလား/ CP16, D2.2;
That's all right. = ရပါတယ်။ CP7; response
to ဆောရီးပဲ။ = ရပါတယ်။ CP13; This is all
right, isn't it? = ရတယ်နော်။ CP7, CP12: to
work out all right = အဆင် ပြေ- D5.9
all: "Is that all?" — "Yes, that's all" (in a
shop, or on the phone) > S1: ဒါပဲလား။ — S2:
ဒါပါပဲ။ or S1: ဒါပဲနော်။ — S2: ဒါပါပဲ။ CP17,
D4.12
alone, on one's own > တစ်ယောက်တည်း: (/ထဲ/) D5.8
also: [phrase] also, [phrase] too > [phrase]-လဲ
D1.10B, D1.11
America > အမေရိက or အမေရိကနိုင်ငံ G34, D1.9
Anawrahta Street > အနော်ရထာလမ်း: /ယထာ or
ရထာ/ G7
apart from this > ဒီပြင် or ဒီပြင် D5.5
approximately, roughly [quantity] >
[quantity]-လောက် D2.8

April > ဧပြီ /အေပျီ/ D2.7
architect > ပိသုကာ D2.10A
army officer > စစ်ဗိုလ် /-ဗို/ D2.10A
arrange, fix up > စီစဉ်- /စီစဉ်/ D1.11
art > အနုပညာ (/ပျဉ်ညာ/) D5.6
as for [noun] > [noun]-တော့ D3.11
at, on, in [place/time] > [place/time]-မှာ G11,
G33, D2.9
attend school/university > ကျောင်း တက်-
D2.10A
August > ဩဂုတ် /အောဂုတ်/ D2.7
aunt > ဒေါ်ဒေါ် or အဒေါ် D1.10B; aunty အနီတီ D2.1
Australia > ဩစတြေးလျနိုင်ငံ /အောစတရေးလျာ/
G34
back there: to [verb] in a different place or in
the past > [verb]-ခဲ့- D2.7
back: to move back, retreat > နောက် ဆုတ်- D4.2
bad: to be bad, badly behaved > ဆိုး- D5.5, D5.9
bag: shoulder bag > လွယ်အိတ် D4.5
ballpoint pen > ဘောပင် G40
Bangkok > ဘန်ကောက် G15
Bangladesh > ဘင်္ဂလားဒေ့ရှ်နိုင်ငံ /ဗင်ဂ-/ G13
bank > ဘဏ်တိုက် /ဗန်ဒိုက်/ D2.10A
battery > ဓါတ်ခဲ /ဒတ်-/ D3.1
be (here) > ရောက်နေ- D4.9
be: there is > ရှိ- D2.1, CP17, D2.4, D1.12
bean curd > ပဲပြား: /-ဗျား/ D4.4
bean, pea, lentil, and the like > ပဲ D4.4
because [verb] > [verb]-လို့ D5.6
become: to go [verb], to become [verb] > [verb]-
သွား- D5.9
beyond [place], on the far side of [place] >
[place] ဟိုဘက်မှာ D5.3
big: to be big, bigger, too big > ကြီး- D5.5
biscuit > ဘိစကွတ် G40
bit: a little, a bit > နဲ့နဲ့ D1.11, D2.6
block > ပြင် (in Mandalay only) D5.1
Bo Aung Kyaw Street > ဗိုလ်အောင်ကျော်လမ်း: /ဗို
အောင်ကျော်-/ G9
Bogyoke Park > ဗိုလ်ချုပ်ပန်းခြံ /-ဂျန်/ G5
Bogyoke Street > ဗိုလ်ချုပ်လမ်း G7
bottle > ပုလင်း: /ပလင်း/ D1.4
box (as a measure) > ဘူး D3.5
boyfriend > အမျိုးသား D1.10A

bridge > တံတား: /ဒါး/ D4.1
 Britain > ဗြိတိန် or ဗြိတိန်နိုင်ငံ D1.9
 British > ဗြိတိသျှ /-ရှာ/ D1.9
 broadcasting station > အသံလွှင့်ဌာန /ထားနာ/ D2.10A
 brother > older brother = အကို D1.10B; younger brother [of female] = မောင် D2. D2.10B; younger brother [of male] = ညီ D2.10B
 Buddha image, pagoda, lord > ဘုရား /ဖယား/ G1
 Buddhism > ဗုဒ္ဓဘာသာ (/ -ဗုဒ္ဓဒါး/ -/) D5.6
 Burma/Myanmar > မြန်မာနိုင်ငံ၊ ဗမာပြည် G13
 Burmese > မြန်မာ or ဗမာ G13; in Burmese = ဗမာလို G40, D2.6; spoken Burmese = ဗမာစကား: D1.6; written Burmese, Burmese texts = ဗမာစာ /-စာ/ D1.6
 business, work, activity > လုပ်ငန်း: D5.10B
 business: to finish one's business > ကိစ္စ ပြီး- D2.9
 buy > ဝယ်- G41
 by all means: enthusiastic response to invitation or similar > [verb]-တာပေါ့ D1.11
 café > လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် /လဖက်ရေခိုင်/ D2.1, D3.4
 cake > ကိတ်မုန့် D2.4
 cake, confection > မုန့် D2.4
 calendar > ပြက္ခဒိန် /ပျက်ခဒိန်/ D3.1
 call back: to phone back, return a call > ဖုန်း ပြန်ဆက်- D4.12
 call, be called [name] > [name]-လို့ ခေါ်- G36; [name]-တဲ့ G36, D2.10B
 call, make a phone call > ဖုန်း ဆက်- D2.12
 can (container) > ဘူး D3.5
 can, may [verb] > [verb]-ရ- D1.10B; [verb]-နိုင်- D2.3, D3.4 written ex.; [verb]-လို့ ရ- D5.1
 car > ကား D5.1; to go by car/ taxi/ bus > ကား စီး- D5.1
 case: in that case, if that is so > ဒီလိုဆို D2.3, ဒီလိုဆိုရင် D3.11
 cent > ဆင့် G26
 certain: to be fixed, certain, definite > သေချာ- D2.8
 certainly: I will certainly [verb] > [verb]-ပါ့မယ် D5.11
 chicken > ကြက် D4.4
 child > ကလေး: /ခလေး/ D4.10A
 chilli > ငရုတ်သီး D5.4

China > တရုတ်နိုင်ငံ G13
 cinema > ရုပ်ရှင်ရုံ D5.3
 civil servant > အစိုးရအမှုထမ်း or အစိုးရဝန်ထမ်း: /-ဒန်း/ D2.10A
 class, course > သင်တန်း: attend class, attend a course = သင်တန်း တက်- D5.10B
 clerk > စာရေး: /စယေး/ D2.10A
 clever: to be clever, able, talented > တော်- D5.10A
 climate, weather > ရာသီဥတု (/ -အုဒု/) D5.7
 close, near by > နီးနီး or နီးနီးလေး D5.1
 close, turn off > ပိတ်- G43
 Coca-cola > ကိုကာကိုလာ D1.4
 coffee > ကော်ဖီ D1.4
 coffee, instant > ကော်ဖီမှုန့် G40
 cold drinks bar > အအေးဆိုင် /-ခိုင်/ D2.1, D3.4
 cold: to be cold (as winter, ice, cold drinks) > အေး- D5.9
 colloquial language, style > အပြောစကား: D5.6; စကားပြောဟန် D5.6
 colour > အရောင် D5.5
 comb > ဘီး D4.5
 come > လာ- G31; come from there, come round, come back = လာခဲ့- D3.11; come out = ထွက်လာ- D4.12
 cooked rice > ထမင်း D4.4
 cookie, biscuit > ဘီးစကွတ် G40
 copy: to cross over, transfer, copy > ကူး- D5.2
 corner of the block, of the road > လမ်းထောင့် /-ဒေါင့်/ D5.1
 cost: to amount to, cost > ကျ- D1.3, D2.3
 country, state > နိုင်ငံ G13, D2.3
 cross: to pass beyond, go past > ကျော်- D4.1, D5.1
 crossroads, junction > လမ်းဆုံ D5.3
 cup, glass > ခွက် D1.4; as count word D3.5
 currently, for the time being > လောလောဆယ် /-ဇယ်/ D1.11
 curry > ဟင်း D4.4
 Dacca > ဒက္ကာ: G15
 Dagon Hotel > ဒဂုံဟိုတယ် D2.3
 daughter > သမီး D1.10A
 Daw (name prefix) > ဒေါ် G22
 day > [as in day of the week, or day as opposed to night] နေ့ D2.11; [for measuring time] ရက် D2.9; [for dates] ရက်နေ့ D2.9

day after tomorrow > သန့်ဘက်ခါ /သဘက်-/
D3.11
December > ဒီဇင်ဘာ D2.7
department store > ကုန်တိုက် /-ဒိုက်/ G35
descend, get off [taxi, sidecar, train or other
vehicle] > ဆင်း- D5.3
desk, table > စားပွဲ /စဉ့်/ G43
dial: to dial a number > နံပါတ် လှည့်- /လှဲ့/
D5.12
die: to come to an end, die > ဆုံး- D3.10A
difficult: to be difficult > ခက်- D5.6
Diplomatic Store > သံတမန်ကုန်တိုက်
/-ဒမန်ကုန်ဒိုက်/ G35
direction, way > ဘက် D1.1
dish: count word for serving, portion > [number]-
ပွဲ D3.4
do, act, make > လုပ်- D2.10A, D3.2; things that
have to be done = လုပ်စရာ D1.11
doctor > ဆရာဝန် D2.10A
dollar > ဒေါ်လာ G23
door > တံခါး /ဒဂါး/ G43
drink > သောက်- D1.4
driver > ကားသမား: or ယဉ်မောင်း /ယင်-/ D2.10A
duck > ဘဲ D4.4
east > အရှေ့ဘက် D4.3
easy: to be easy > လွယ်- D5.6
eat > စား- D1.4
eating room, canteen > စားသောက်ခန်း G35
editor > အယ်ဒီတာ D2.10A
egg > ဥ /အု/ D4.4
embassy > သံရုံး D1.1
emerge > ထွက်- D4.12
end: the end of the road > လမ်းထိပ် /-ထိတ်/
D5.1
engineer > အင်ဂျင်နီယာ D2.10A, D3.10A
England > အင်္ဂလန် or အင်္ဂလန်နိုင်ငံ G34, D1.9
English > အင်္ဂလိပ် /အင်းဂလိပ်/ D1.9
English teacher (female) > အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဆရာမ
D2.10A
English teacher (male or generic) >
အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဆရာ D2.10A
enjoy oneself, have a good time > ပျော်- D5.7
enough for [number] people > [number]-ယောက်စာ
D5.4
enter, go in, come in > ဝင်- D5.3
envelope > စာအိတ် G40

even [phrase] > [phrase]-တောင် D5.12
evening, night > ည D4.11
examination > စာမေးပွဲ D5.10A
exclamation: similar to သိပ် [verb]-ပါတယ် but a
little more exclamatory > သိပ် [verb]-တာပဲ
D1.6, D5.10A
exclamation: suffix used in exclamations >
[verb]-လိုက်တာ D5.10A
Excuse me please (to attract attention) > ဒီမှာ
D1.1, kin term D2.1
factory > စက်ရုံ D2.10A
family > မိသားစု (/သားစု/) D5.8
fan [hand-held, not electric] > ယပ်တောင် D4.5
fan [electric] > ပန်ကာ G43
fantastically > အရမ်း D1.6
far: to be far, be distant > ဝေး- D5.1
father > အဖေ D1.10A
February > ဖေဖော်ဝါရီ /ဖေဖော်ဝါရီ/ D2.7
feel held back, inhibited > အား နာ- D5.11
fetch > ခေါ်- D1.12
fiancé > အမျိုးသား D1.10A
fiancé/e, boy/girlfriend > ရည်းစား (/ယီးစား/)
D1.10A
fiancée > အမျိုးသမီး D1.10A
film (for camera) > ဖလင် G40
film actor > ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသား D2.10A
film actress > ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသမီး D2.10A
find, notice, see > တွေ့- D4.1
finish: I have finished. > ပြီးပြီ။ CP15, D2.2
fire, light > မီး G43
fish > ငါး D4.4
fit, to be the right size > တော်- D5.5
for [noun], for the sake of [noun] > [noun]-အတွက်
D5.10B
for: to [verb] for someone > [verb]-ပေး- D1.12
for: to buy/sell for [price] > [price]-နဲ့
ဝယ်/ရောင်းတယ် D2.5, D5.5
Foreign Students' Hostel > နိုင်ငံခြားသားများ
ကျောင်းဆောင် /-စောင်/ D2.3
foreign country, abroad > နိုင်ငံခြား /-ဂျား/ D1.7
foreigner > နိုင်ငံခြားသား D2.3
formerly, previously, in the past > အရင်တုန်းက
D2.10A
forward: come forward, advance > ရှေ့တိုး- D4.2
France > ပြင်သစ်နိုင်ငံ G34

free: to be free (not engaged or occupied) > အား-
D2.11

Friday > သောကြာနေ့ / သောကြာ / D2.11

fried [food] > [food]-ကြော် ; fried noodles =
ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် ; fried rice = ထမင်းကြော် ; fried
vegetables = အစိမ်းကြော် ; fried minced
(ground) meat = တောက်တောက်ကြော် D3.4

friend > မိတ်ဆွေ D1.10A

from [place] > [place]-က G31

front: in front of [place] > [place]-ရှေ့မှာ D5.3

front: in front, ahead [of us] > ရှေ့ D5.3

Garden Hotel > ဂါဒင်ဟိုတယ် D2.3

General > ဗိုလ်ချုပ် / ဗိုလ် / G5

gentleman > အမျိုးသား D1.10A

German > ဂျာမန် D1.9

Germany > ဂျာမနီ or ဂျာမနီနိုင်ငံ (sometimes
written ဂျာမဏီ) G34, D1.9

get to, reach, arrive at > ရောက်- D1.7, D2.9

get: to get, obtain, be able to get, acquire, gain,
succeed, manage, be successful, be possible,
and so on > ရ- D2.4, D2.8

girlfriend > အမျိုးသမီး၊ ရည်းစား (/ယီးစား/)
D1.10A

give, pay > ပေး- D1.3, D2.5

go home > အိမ် ပြန်- D5.11

go out > ထွက်သွား- D4.12

go > သွား- G34; "going that has to be done" =
သွားစရာ D1.11, D2.11

go up, to get on board > တက်- D1.3

Good morning/afternoon (classroom greeting) >
မင်္ဂလာပါ။ CP1

good: to be good > ကောင်း- D1.6

good: to be really good, on the ball, hot stuff >
ဟုတ်- D1.6

Goodbye (initiating) > သွားပါအုံးမယ်။ CP5;
သွားမယ်နော်။ CP11, D1.2

Goodbye (response) > ကောင်းပါပြီ။ CP5, CP11

Got it. > ရပြီ။ CP14

government > အစိုးရ D3.10A

ground meat: fried minced (ground) meat >
တောက်တောက်ကြော် D3.4

grounds, enclosure, precincts > ဝင်း D5.12

group > အုပ်စု D5.8

half (= and a half) > -ခွဲ G37, G 38

half a kyat > ငါးမူး G38

Hallo [on the phone] > ဟလို or ဟယ်လို or ဟုတ်ကဲ့
or အမိန့် ရှိပါ။ D1.12

hamburger > ဟန်ဘာဂါ D2.4

hang up, to put down the receiver > ဖုန်း ချ-
D5.12

Hanoi > ဟနိုင်း G15

happy: to be happy > ဝမ်းသာ- D1.10B

hat > ဦးထုပ် / အုတ်ထုတ်/ D3.1

have to: to have to [verb] > [verb]-ရ- G45

have with [one], have on [one] > ပါ- D4.4, D5.2

have: to own, possess > ရှိ- D1.8, D2.4

he > See G27

hear > ကြား- D2.6, D3.12

hear: I have heard/read [statement]: is it true?
> [statement] ဆို D2.6

help > (noun) အကူအညီ D5.12; (verb) အကူအညီ
ပေး- or ကူညီ- D5.12

here, in this [place] > ဒီမှာ G20

here: to bring here > ခေါ်ခဲ့- D1.12

history > သမိုင်း D5.6

hold: to grasp, hold > ကိုင်- D1.12; hold [and
keep hold] = ကိုင်ထား- D1.12

hot: to be hot [to touch or experience, like
sunshine, hot tea, and the like] > ဖူ- D5.7

hotel > ဟိုတယ် G1, D1.3, D2.10A

hour > နာရီ G33

house > အိမ် G29

household > အိမ်ထောင် /-ဒေါင်/ D3.10A

housework: to do the housework > အိမ်မှုကိစ္စ
လုပ်- D2.10A

How about [verb]-ing? Why don't you [verb]? >
[verb]-ပါလား D5.4

how about [noun]? > [noun]-ကော (sometimes
ရော) CP4, D1.10B

how many > ဘယ်နှစ် /ဘယ်နှ- / D1.4

how much, what (number, price) > ဘယ်လောက်
G6

how, in what way > ဘယ်လို G36, D1.1

however: [noun] however > [noun]-တော့ D3.11

husband, man > အမျိုးသား၊ ယောက်ျား
(/ယောက်ကျား/)၊ ခင်ပွန်း or ခင်ပွန်းသည် (/ -
ဗွန်း/) D1.10A

I > See G39. [man speaking] ကျွန်တော် or ကျနော်
D1.10A: [woman speaking] ကျွန်မ or ကျမ
D1.10A

ice cream > ရေခဲမုန့် /-ဂဲ- / D5.4

ice > ရေခဲ /-ဂဲ/ D5.4
 if we were to say [phrase], in the case of
 [phrase] > [phrase] ဆိုရင် D3.11, D5.9
 if, when [verb] > [verb]-ရင် D2.8
 in, at, on [place/time] > [place/time]-မှာ G11,
 G33, D2.9
 include, have in it, to have with [one] > ပါ-
 D4.4, D5.2
 income > ဝင်ငွေ D5.10B
 inconvenience: to inconvenience someone > ဒုက္ခ
 ပေး- D5.11
 Increase your price by K5. > ၅/- တိုးပေးပါ။ D2.5
 India > အိန္ဒိယနိုင်ငံ /အိန္ဒိယ- / G13
 inflate: I don't inflate my prices.] >
 ပိုမပြောပါဘူး။ D2.5
 ing: [verb]-ing, to [verb] > [verb]-ရတာ D5.6
 ing: [verb]-ing: suffix to turn a verb into a noun >
 [verb]-တာ D1.6
 inside [place] > [place]-ထဲမှာ D5.12
 inside, indoors > အထဲမှာ D5.4
 Institute of Foreign Languages >
 နိုင်ငံခြားဘာသာသင်သိပ္ပံ /-သိတ်ပန်/ D4.6
 Institute > သိပ္ပံ D4.6
 introduce [friends, relatives and so on] >
 မိတ်ဆက်- or မိတ်ဆက်ပေး- D1.10B
 Inya Lake Hotel > အင်းယားလိပ် ဟိုတယ် D1.3
 Ireland > အိုင်ယာလန် G34
 isn't that so?: [statement]: isn't that so? >
 [statement] မဟုတ်ဘူးလား။ D2.6
 January > ဂျန်နဝါရီ /ဂျန်နဝါရီ/ or ဇန်နဝါရီ
 /ဇန်နဝါရီ/ D2.7
 Japan > ဂျပန် or ဂျပန်နိုင်ငံ G13
 jar (as a measure) > ဘူး D3.5
 job > အလုပ် D2.10A
 July > ဂျူလိုင် or ဇူလိုင် D2.7
 June > ဂျွန် or ဇွန် D2.7
 Kandawgyi Hotel > ကန်တော်ကြီးဟိုတယ် /-
 ဒေါ်ကြီး- / D2.3
 Karaweik Hotel > ကရဝိက် ဟိုတယ် /ကရဝိတ်-/
 D1.3
 key chain > ကီးချိန်း D3.5
 kind, sort > အမျိုး or မျိုး D5.5; this kind = ဒါမျိုး
 D5.5; many different kinds = အမျိုးမျိုး D5.5
 know: to know how to [verb], be able to [verb] >
 [verb]-တတ်- D2.6

know: to know someone, to know the way and
 similar > သိ- D1.1, D3.1
 Ko: name prefix > ကို G24
 Korea > ကိုရီးယား G34
 Kuala Lumpur > ကွာလာလမ်ပူ G15
 kyat > ကျပ် G32
 labourer > အလုပ်သမား D2.10A, D3.10A
 lack: to be lacking, be short of > လို- D5.3
 lady > အမျိုးသမီး D1.10A
 language > ဘာသာ D4.6
 last year > မနှစ်က D2.7
 last, which is past > လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ /-ဂဲဒဲ/ or ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့
 /-ဂဲဒဲ/ D2.7
 last: as in "last occasion" > နောက်ဆုံး D2.7
 last: to take time, to take a long time, last,
 spend time > ကြာ- D3.7, D4.9
 later, not till later > နောက်မှ D1.11
 lawyer > ရှေ့နေ D2.10A
 learn > သင်- D3.6
 learning, skill, knowledge, wisdom > ပညာ
 /ပျင်ညာ/ D4.8
 leave: May I leave now? > ခွင့် ပြုပါအုံး။ CP19
 Let's [verb] > [verb]-ရအောင် D1.11
 Let's [verb], How about [verb]-ing? > [verb]-စို့ or
 [verb]-စို့လား D1.11
 letter, character > စာလုံး D5.6
 library > စာကြည့်တိုက် /-ကျိဒိုက်/ G35
 light, fire > မီး G43
 like this > ဒီလို D3.2
 like: in "what is it like?" and similar > နေ-
 D5.7
 like: to like > ကြိုက်- D5.5
 line [telephone line] > လိုင်း D3.12
 literary language, style > အရေးစကား၊ စာရေးဟန်
 D5.6
 literary usage > စာစကား /-ဇဂါး/ D5.6
 literature > စာပေ D5.6
 little: a little, a bit > နဲ့နဲ့ D1.11, D2.6
 little: to be little, few; too little > နဲ- D2.5
 live: to live in [place] > [place]-မှာ နေ- G27
 long time: for a long time > ကြာကြာ /ကျာကျာ/
 D3.7
 look: to look around, look at > ကြည့်- /ကျိ/
 D1.5, D3.5
 loudly > ကျယ်ကျယ် D3.12

lowest: That is the least [the lowest/bottom price] > ဒါ အနည်းပဲ။ D2.5

Ma: name prefix > မ G24

Maha Bandoola Park > မဟာဗန္ဓုလပန်းခြံ
/ဗန်ဒုလပန်းကျန်/ G5

Maha Bandoola Street > မဟာဗန္ဓုလလမ်း
/ဗန်ဒုလ- / G7

Malaysia > မလေးရှားနိုင်ငံ G13

man, husband > အမျိုးသား၊ ယောက်ျား
(/ယောက်ကျား/)၊ ခင်ပွန်း or ခင်ပွန်းသည် (/ -
ဗွန်း/) D1.10A

Mandalay > မန္တလေး / မန်းဒလေး/ G19

Manila > မနီလာ G15

many: to be many, much; too many, too much >
များ- D1.11, D2.3

map > မြေပုံ / -ပုံ/ G40

March > မတ် D2.7

market > ဈေး / ဇေး/ G1

married > to be married = အိမ်ထောင် ရှိ- D3.10A;
to get married = အိမ်ထောင် ကျ- D3.10A

May > မေ D2.7

may have to [verb] > [verb]-ရလိမ့်မယ်။ D5.1

Maymyo > မေမြို့ G19

meal: to give a meal, dine > ထမင်း ကျွေး- D5.11

meat, flesh > အသား D4.4

meditate > တရား အား ထုတ်- D4.7

meditation centre > တရားရိပ်သာ or just ရိပ်သာ
D5.9

meet > တွေ့- D1.10B, D1.11; to meet by
arrangement = ဆုံ- D4.11; to meet up with,
to fall in with = ကြုံ- D1.11

meeting > အစည်းအဝေး။ to attend a meeting =
အစည်းအဝေး တက်- D4.12

midday > နေ့လယ် D4.11

middle: the middle child > အလတ် D4.10B

milk powder > နို့မှုန့် G40

mince: fried minced (ground) meat >
တောက်တောက်ကြော် D3.4

mind > Do you mind if I [verb]? = [verb]-မယ်နော်။
D2.2; Would you mind [verb]-ing? =
[request]-နော်။ D3.2

Mingaladon Airport > မင်္ဂလာဒုံ လေဆိပ် / -ဇိတ်/
D1.3

minute > မိနစ် / မိနစ်-မင်းနစ်-မနစ်/ G37

moment: Just a moment. > ခဏလေး။ / ခန့်- /
D2.2

Monday > တနင်္လာနေ့ / -နင်း- D3.11

money > ပိုက်ဆံ D1.4

month > လ D2.8, suffixed to month names D2.7

more than this > ဒါထက် or ဒီထက် D5.5

more: Pay me K5 more. > ၅-ကျပ် ပိုပေးပါ။ D2.5

more: will [verb] yet more, will continue [verb]-
ing > [verb]-အုံးမယ် D3.9

morning > မနက် D4.11

mother > အမေ D1.10A

Moulmein (Mawlamyine) > မော်လမြိုင် G19

move, shift > ရွှေ့- D3.2

museum > ပြတိုက် / ပြာဒိုက်/ G1

my > See G39. [man speaking] = ကျွန်တော့် or
ကျနော် D1.10A; [woman speaking] = ကျွန်မ or
ကျမ D1.10A

Myanmar/Burma > မြန်မာနိုင်ငံ၊ ဗမာပြည် G13

Myitkya > မြစ်ကြီးနား G19

name > literary အမည် / အမျိုး colloquial နာမည်
/ နန်မယ်/ G27, D2.10B

National Museum > အမျိုးသားပြတိုက် / -ပြာဒိုက်/
G5

national, citizen > နိုင်ငံသား D1.9

near: in the vicinity, neighbourhood of [place] >
[place]-နားမှာ D2.1, D3.1

near: to be near > နီး- D5.1

need, to be necessary > လို- D5.12

New Delhi > နယူးဒေလီ G15

New Delhi > နယူးဒေလီ G15

next [noun], the [noun] ahead > ရှေ့ [noun] D2.8:

next September = လာမဲ့ စက်တင်ဘာလမှာ D2.8

no: It is not so. > မဟုတ်ပါဘူး / -ဗူး/ G3

noodles: fried noodles > ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော် D3.4

north > မြောက်ဘက် D4.3

November > နိုဝင်ဘာ D2.7

now, at present > ခု or အခု / ခု or ဂ၊ အခု or အဂ /
D5.10B

number > နံပါတ် / -ဗတ်/ G2; အမှတ် G29, D2.10B

nurse (fem.) > နတ်စမ D2.10A

object: marker showing that [noun] is the object
of the verb > [noun]-ကို D5.12

occupation > အလုပ် D2.10A; အလုပ်အကိုင် D2.10B

October > အောက်တိုဘာ D2.7

office > ရုံး D1.1

official > အမှုထမ်း D3.10A

often, frequently, many times > ခဏခဏ / ခန့်
ခန့်/ D1.7

Oh. > အော် G3
oil company > ရေနံကုမ္ပဏီ /-ကုန်ပစ္စည်း/ D2.10A
old, the old(er) one > အကြီး D5.4
on, in, at [place/time] > [place/time]-မှာ G11,
G33, D2.9
one that is [verb] > [verb]-တာ D5.5
one: which one, this one > ဟာ D5.5: ဘယ်ဟာ၊
ဒီဟာ
only [at time] > [time]-မှ D5.12
only [quantity] > [quantity]-ပဲ D3.7; [quantity]-
တည်း: (/ -ထဲ or -ဒဲ/) D5.8
open, turn on > ဖွင့်- G43
or: Is it [noun-1] or [noun-2]? > [noun-1]-လား၊
[noun-2]-လား။ D4.10A, D5.4
orange juice > လိမ္မော်ရည် /-ယေ/ D1.4
orange > လိမ္မော် D1.4
order, instruct > မှာ- D1.4
outside, out, outdoors > အပြင် G35, D5.4
pack, packet (as a measure) > ဘူး D3.5
Pagan (Bagan) > ပုဂံ /ဗဂန်/ G19
pagoda, lord, Buddha image > ဘုရား: /ဗယား:/
G1
Pansodan Street > ပန်းဆိုးတန်း: /ဆိုး or ခိုး/ G9
parata > ပလာတာ D2.4
park, garden > ပန်းခြံ /-ဂျန်/ G1
pass an exam > စာမေးပွဲ အောင်- D5.10A
past: marker for a point of time in the past >
[time]-က D2.7
pay, give > ပေး- D1.3, D2.5
pay, have to pay > ပေးရ- G39
pay: That's what I pay for them myself. > ဒါ
အရင်းအတိုင်းပါပဲ။ D2.5
Pegu (Bago) > ပဲခူး: /ဗဂို/ G19
Peking/ Beijing > ပီကင်း: G15
pencil > ခဲတံ /-ဒန်/ D3.1
penny > ပဲခို G26
Pepsi-cola > ပက်စီ D1.4
permission > ခွင့်။ to get permission = ခွင့် ရ-
D2.9; to be permitted to [verb] = [verb]-ခွင့်
ရှိ- D5.3
person: count word for people > -ယောက် D4.10A
Ph.D. degree, doctorate > ပါရဂူဘွဲ့. /ပါရဂူ-/
D5.10B
Philippines > ဖိလစ်ပိုင်နိုင်ငံ G13
photograph > ဓာတ်ပုံ။ /ဒတ်ပုံ/; to take a
photograph = ဓာတ်ပုံ ရိုက်- D1.2

photographer > ဓာတ်ပုံဆရာ D2.10A
picture > ပုံ D5.2
piece: count word for piece, item, article, unit >
ခု D2.4
pig > ဝက် D4.4
place > နေရာ G35
place: "person's place" > [person]-ဆီ D5.2,
D4.12, D4.9
plan > အစီအစဉ် /-စင်/ D1.8
plan to [verb]: I am (he is, and variants)
thinking of [verb]-ing, planning to [verb] >
[verb]-မလို့ D1.8, D2.8
please [verb] > [verb]-ပါ။ G46; [verb]-ပါအုံး:
D1.10B
plural: [noun] and associates > [noun]-တို့ D5.11
plural: [noun]s > [noun]-တွေ /-ဒေ/ or /ဒွေ/
D4.10A
plural: [verb with plural subject] > [verb]-ကြ-
D1.11
police officer > ရဲအရာရှိ D2.10A
policeman > ရဲသား D2.10A
polite suffix > -ပါ- G42
polite tag, female speaker > ရှင် CP10, D1.1
polite tag, male speaker > ခင်ဗျာ။ CP10, D1.1;
(less formal) ဗျာ D2.5
politics > နိုင်ငံရေး D5.6
postcard > ပို့စကဒ် /-ကတ်/ G40
pot (container) > ဘူး D3.5
pound > ပေါင် G23
prawn, shrimp > ပုစွန် /ဗစွန်/ D4.4
President Hotel > သမ္မတဟိုတယ် /သမဒါ/ G5
price is high, or too high. > ဈေး: များ- D2.3
private > ကိုယ်ပိုင် /ကိုမိုင်း/ D5.10B
problem: No problem. It doesn't matter.
(response to ဆောရီးပဲ။ or ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။)
> ကိစ္စ မရှိပါဘူး။ CP8, CP9, CP13
profit: I make no profit. > မမြတ်ပါဘူး။ D2.5
programme > အစီအစဉ် /-စင်/ D1.8
Prome (Pyi /Pyay) > ပြည် /ပျေ/ or /ပျီ/ G19
Prome Road, Pyay Road > ပြည်လမ်း: written ex.
D4.3
pronounced: to be correctly, authentically
pronounced > ပီ- D1.6
pronunciation > အသံထွက် /-ဒွက်/ D5.6
pudding > ပူဒင်း D2.4
pulse: bean, pea, lentil, and the like > ပဲ D4.4

put, to keep, set in position > ထား- D2.5

put: to put in > ထည့်- /ထဲ/ D5.4

pya (or English penny) > ပြာ: G25

Quarter (in a town) > ရပ် or ရပ်ကွက် G29

quarter [of unit of measure] > မတ် G38

question: [sentence]-*question* > [sentence]-လာ:

G3, G29

quite a bit, pretty much > တော်တော် /တော်ဒေါ်/

D3.6

race, nationality > လူမျိုး: D1.9

Rangoon/ Yangon > ရန်ကုန် /ယန်ဂုန်/ G15

razor blade > မှတ်ဆိတ်ရိပ်ဒါ: D4.5

read > ဖတ်- D4.6

ready: Are you ready? > ရယ်ဒီပဲလာ:။ D2.2; I am

ready > ရယ်ဒီပဲ။ D2.2

really, in truth, actually, in fact > တကယ် D1.6

recently, currently, for the time being >

လောလောဆယ် /-ဇယ်/ D1.11

reception > ဧည့်ခံပွဲ /အခွင့်ခံပွဲ/ D5.12

reduce [price] > လျှော့- D2.3

reduce chillies > လျှော့ထည့်- D5.4

regular: That is the regular price. > ဒါ ဈေးမှန်ပဲ။

D2.5

relationship > အမျိုးတော်စပ်ပုံ D2.10B

relative, relation > ဆွေမျိုး: D4.9

relax: to set one's mind at rest > စိတ် ချ- D5.2

remember, recall > မှတ်မိ- D5.12

repeat: Please say that again. > ထပ်ပြောပါအုံး။

or ပြန်ပြောပါအုံး။ /-ဗာ-/ G13

reporter > သတင်းထောက် /သုဒင်းဒေါက်/ D2.10A

D3.10A

research > သုတေသန။ to do research = သုတေသန

လုပ်- D4.7

restaurant > စားသောက်ဆိုင် D2.1, ထမင်းဆိုင် D3.4

retire: to take a pension, retire > ပင်စင် ယူ-

D2.10A

return: to get back, to arrive back > ပြန်ရောက်-

written ex. D4.12, D5.12

return: to go/come home > ပြန်- D2.9

rice farmer > လယ်သမား: D2.10A

rice mill > ဆန်စက် D2.10A

rice: boiled rice > ထမင်း: D3.4

rice: fried rice > ထမင်းကြော် D3.4

ride: to ride, travel by, take [train, bus, taxi or

other vehicle] > စီး- D2.3

right = just right > အနေတော် D5.7

right: on the right > ညာဘက်မှာ D4.1

road, street > လမ်း: G7

rod: count word for rod-shaped objects: sticks, pens, pencils, and similar > [number]-ချောင်း: D4.5

roll: count word for film, toilet paper, and similar) > လိပ် D3.5

round: count word for round(-ish) objects > လုံး.

For bottles D1.4, for more examples D3.5.

run out, to be used up, be all gone > ကုန်- or

ကုန်သွား- D2.4

Russia > ရုတ်ရှား: G34

Sagaing > စစ်ကိုင်း: /စိုင်း/ G19

sailor > သင်္ဘောသား: /သင်းဘောသား/ D5.10B

Sakhantha Hotel > စခန်းသာဟိုတယ် /-သုာ-/

D2.3

salad > တို့စရာ /-ဇယာ/ D4.4

salary > လခ /လှူဂါ/ D5.10B

samosa > စမူဆာ D2.4

sandals > ဖိနပ် /ဖနတ်/ D3.1

Sandoway (Thandwe) > သံတွဲ /-ဒွဲ/ G19

Saturday > စနေနေ့ D2.11

sawmill > သစ်စက် D2.10A

say that [sentence] > [sentence]-လို့ ပြော- D3.4
written ex.

say that you will [verb] > [verb]-မယ် ပြော-

written ex. D4.12

say, tell, talk, speak > ပြော- D1.6, D2.6, D2.12

school teacher (female) > ကျောင်းဆရာမ D2.10A

school teacher (male or generic) > ကျောင်းဆရာ

D2.10A

school, university > ကျောင်း: D2.3

Scotch tape > ဆယ်လိုတိပ် G40

see, find, notice > တွေ့- D4.1

sell > ရောင်း- D5.5

sellotape/Scotch tape > ဆယ်လိုတိပ် G40

send > ပို့- D5.2

separate, split up, divorce > ကွဲ- D3.10A

September > စက်တင်ဘာ D2.7

settle: to clarify, settle up > ရှင်း- D1.4

shall we [verb]? > [verb]-ရအောင် D1.11

she > See G27

shopkeeper > ဆိုင်ရှင် D2.10A

Shwebontha Street > ရွှေဘုံသာလမ်း: G9

Shwedagon Pagoda > ရွှေတိဂုံဘုရား

/ယွေဒဂန်ဖယား/ G5

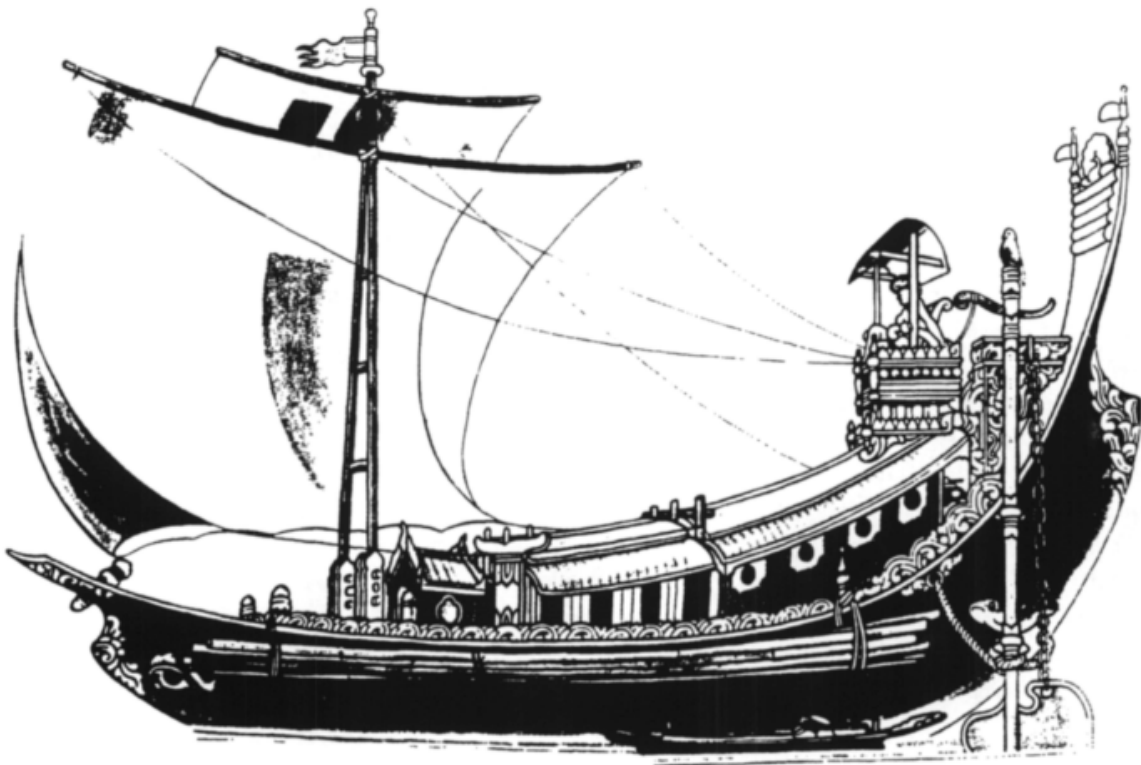
Shwedagon Pagoda Road > ရွှေတိဂုံဘုရားလမ်း
/ဖယား-/ usually shortened to ဘုရားလမ်း G9
siblings: brothers and sisters > ညီအကိုမောင်နှမ
D5.10A
sidecar, trishaw > ဆိုက်ကာ: D5.3; sidecar driver
(pedaller) = ဆိုက်ကာသမား D2.10A;
ဆိုက်ကာဆရာ D5.3
Singapore > စင်္ကာပူ /စင်ဂါ/ G34
singer > အဆိုတော် D2.10A
sister > older sister = အမေ D1.10B; younger sister
[of male] = နှစ်မ [now obsolete] D2.10B;
younger sister [of female or male] = ညီမ
D2.10B
sit > ထိုင်- G43
size, age > အရွယ် D4.10B
size: to be the right size, to fit > တော်- D5.5
slowly > ဖြည်းဖြည်း D3.12
small = a small one > အသေး D5.4
small: to be small, smaller, too small > သေး-
D5.5
so far: only [verb] so far, as yet > [noun]-ပဲ
[verb]-ပါသေးတယ် D2.6
so: to be so, to be the case > ဟုတ်- G3
soldier > စစ်သား D2.10A, D3.10A
son > သား D1.10A
Sorry! > ဆောရီ: or ဆောရီပဲ or ဆောရီနော် CP3,
D1.1
sorry: to be sorry, sad > စိတ် မကောင်းဘူး။ D5.9
soup > ဟင်းချို /-ဂျို/ D4.4
south > တောင်ဘက် D4.3
Sparkling > စပါကလင် D1.4
speak, say, tell, talk > ပြော- D1.6, D2.6, D2.12
spelling > စာလုံးပေါင်း /-ဘောင်း/ D5.6
stallholder in market > ဈေးသည် /ဇေးသွယ်/
D2.10A
stand: to stand, stop > ရပ်- D3.2
Standard, Grade, Class > အတန်း D2.10A
station: the main railway station > ဘူတာကြီး
/-ဒါ-/ D1.3
stay: to stay [temporarily], put up > တဲ- D2.10B
still [verb], more [verb] > [verb]-ပါသေးတယ်
D1.6
stop: to stand, stop > ရပ်- D5.3
straight ahead > ရှေ့တည့်တည့် /တဲဒဲ/ D4.3
Strand Hotel > စထရင်းဟိုတယ် G5
Strand Road > ကမ်းနားလမ်း G7

student (female) > ကျောင်းသူ D2.10A
student (male or generic) > ကျောင်းသား D2.10A
students' residence, hostel, dorm > ကျောင်းဆောင်
/-ဇောင်/ D2.3, D2.10B
study (verb) > လေ့လာ- D5.6
study, investigation (noun) > လေ့လာရေး D5.6
study, to undergo training > ပညာ သင်- D4.8
stuffy: to be stuffy, close, feel hot > အိုက်- D5.4
suffering, trouble > ဒုက္ခ (/ဒုတ်ခါ/) D5.11
sugar > သကြား /-ဂျား/ D5.4
Sule Pagoda Road > ဆူးလေဘုရားလမ်း /-ဖယား-/
G9
Sule Pagoda > ဆူးလေဘုရား /-ဖယား/ G5
Sunday > တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့ /-နင်း-/ D2.11
T-shirt > တီရှပ် D3.1
table, desk > စားပွဲ /စဗွဲ/ G43
take a taxi > တက်စီ စီး- written ex. D4.3
take an exam > စာမေးပွဲ ဖြေ- D5.10A
take > ယူ- D1.4, D1.5
talk, speak with > စကား ပြော- D1.12
talk, speak, say, tell > ပြော- D1.6, D2.6, D2.12
tape > တိပ်ခွေ G40
Taunggyi > တောင်ကြီး /-ဂျီး/ G19
tea (sweet) > လက်ဖက်ရည် /လဖက်ယေ/ D1.4
tea: plain tea > လက်ဖက်ရည်ကြမ်း or ရေနေ့: or
ရေနေ့ကြမ်း or အကြမ်း or အကြမ်းရည် D5.4
teach > သင်- D4.6
Teacher [female] > ဆရာမ။ CP2
Teacher [male or generic] > ဆရာ။ CP2
telephone > တယ်လီဖုန်း G6
tell, talk, speak, say > ပြော- D1.6, D2.6, D2.12
10th Standard > ဆယ်တန်း D5.10A, D5.10A
terrifically, fantastically > အရမ်း D1.6
Thailand > ထိုင်းနိုင်ငံ G13
than: more than this > ဒီထက် or ဒါထက် D5.5
Thank you. > ကျေးဇူး တင်ပါတယ်။ CP9
Thanks > ကျေးဇူးပဲ CP9
that (nearer you) > အဲဒါ G39
Thazi > သာစည် /သာဇီ/ G19
Thein-gyi Market > သိမ်ကြီးဈေး /သိန်ဂျီးဇေး/ G5
There. That's done. > ကဲ။ ပြီးပြီ။ CP14
There. Well. Right. > ကဲ။ CP14
there: just over there, ahead of us > ရှေ့နားမှာ or
ရှေ့နားတွင် or ရှေ့နားတင် D5.1
there: over there > ဟိုဘက်မှာ D2.1

- thesis, dissertation, paper > စာတန်း / -ဒန်း / D5.10B
- thing > ဟာ၊ which kind of thing = ဘယ်လိုဟာမျိုး D5.5
- think of [verb]-ing: I am (he is, or other variant) thinking of [verb]-ing, planning to [verb] > [verb]-မလို D1.8, D2.8
- think: to appear, to think, to suspect > ထင်- D5.12
- this [noun] > ဒီ-[noun] G7
- this side of [place], before you get to [place] > [place] ဒီဘက်မှာ D5.3
- this way, like this > ဒီလို D3.2
- this, that > ဒါ G1
- Thursday > ကြာသပတေးနေ့ / -သုဗဒေး- / D3.11
- time (= trip, journey) > အခေါက် D1.7
- time: at what time and so on > အချိန် G33
- tin (as a measure) > ဘူး D3.5
- to [verb] (in certain contexts), for [verb]-ing > [verb]-ဖို့ D1.8, D4.7
- today > ဒီနေ့ or ဒီဂနေ့ or ဂနေ့ D2.11
- toilet > အိမ်သာ / -သာ / G35; public toilet = အများသုံးအိမ်သာ / -သူန်း / -သာ / D2.1; toilet paper = အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ / -သာသူန်း စက်ကူ / D3.1
- Tokyo > တိုကျို G15
- tomorrow > မနက်ဖန် or မနက်ဖြန် or မနက်ဖြင် or နက်ဖန် or နက်ဖြန် or နက်ဖြင် D1.11, D2.11
- too: [phrase] also, [phrase] too > [phrase]-လဲ D1.10B, D1.11
- Tourist Burma office, Myanmar Travel and Tours > တူးရစ်ဘားမားရုံး D1.1
- tourist > တူးရစ် (sometimes တိုးရစ်) D4.9; tourist group = ကမ္ဘာလှည့် အုပ်စု (/ကဘာလဲ့ /) D5.8
- town > မြို့ G15
- township > မြို့နယ် G29
- trader, businessman > ကုန်သည် / -သုယ် / D2.10A
- traffic lights > မီးဖိုင် D4.1
- tremendously > အရမ်း D1.6
- trouble > ဒုက္ခ (/ဒုတ်ခါ /); to be troublesome = ဒုက္ခ ဖြစ်-; to give trouble = ဒုက္ခ ပေး-; to take trouble = ဒုက္ခ ရှာ- D5.11
- true: [statement] is true, isn't it? > [statement]-နော် D2.6
- tube (as a measure) > ဘူး D3.5
- Tuesday > အင်္ဂါနေ့ D3.11
- turn off, close > ပိတ်- G43
- turn on, open > ဖွင့်- G43
- turn, wheel round > ကွေ- D5.3
- turn: to turn (oneself) > လှည့်- / လှဲ / D4.2
- turn: to turn off the road > ချိုး- D4.3
- U: name prefix > ဦး / အူး / G22
- uncle > ဦးလေး D1.10B; အန်ကယ် D2.1
- understand > နား လည်- CP18
- university degree > ဘွဲ့ D5.10A
- university teacher (female) > တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာမ D2.10A, D3.10A
- university teacher (male or generic) > တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာ D2.10A, D3.10A
- university > တက္ကသိုလ် / တက်ကသို- / D5.10A; to get into university = တက္ကသိုလ် ရောက်-; to attend the university, study at university = တက္ကသိုလ် တက်-
- useful: to come in useful, be useful > အသုံး ကျ- D5.6
- vegetarian diet > သက်သတ်လွတ် D4.4
- very [verb] > သိပ် [verb] D1.6, D2.6
- Vietnam > ဗီယက်နမ်နိုင်ငံ G13
- visa > ဗီဇာ D2.8
- visit > အလည် / အလယ် / D4.7; to go for a visit = အလည် သွား- D4.7; to come for a visit = အလည် လာ- D4.9; to come visiting = လာလည်- D5.11
- wait > စောင့်နေ- D4.11
- wait: Hold it! Wait! > နေပါအုံး။ D2.2
- walk, go on foot > လမ်း လျှောက်- / ယောက် / D5.1
- want to [verb] > [verb]-ချင်- G42
- want: A wants B to [verb] > [verb]-စေချင်- D5.11
- want: to want [something] > လိုချင်- / -ရှင်- / D4.5
- way: this way > ဒီလို D3.2
- Wednesday > ဗုဒ္ဓဟူးနေ့ / ဗုတ်- / D3.11
- week > အပတ် or ပတ် D2.8
- well, excellently > ကောင်းကောင်း D3.12
- well: Are you well? — I'm well > နေကောင်းရဲ့လား။ — နေကောင်းပါတယ်။ CP3
- west > အနောက်ဘက် D4.3
- what > ဘာ G1
- what for, for what purpose > ဘာကိစ္စနဲ့ / ကိတ်စာ / D4.7, ဘာလို့ ဘာလုပ် ဘာလုပ်ဖို့ D5.6

when [period of time] has passed/elapsed >
[period of time] ကြာရင် D2.8
when [verb] > [verb]-တဲ့အခါ D5.12
when, if [verb] > [verb]-ရင် D2.8
when: when we come to/get to [point in time] >
[point in time] ကျရင် D2.8
when? > [in the future] = ဘယ်တော့ D2.8; [in the
past] = ဘယ်တုန်းက /-ဒုန်းဂါ/ D2.7
where, in which [place]? > ဘယ်မှာ G20
which [noun]? > ဘယ်-[noun] G11
who? > ဘယ်သူ G21
why? > ဘာဖြစ်လို့ D5.6
wife > အမျိုးသမီး or မိန်းမ or ဇနီး or ဇနီးသည်
(/-သုယ်/) D1.10A
wife, woman > အမျိုးသမီး or မိန်းမ D1.10A
window > ပြတင်းပေါက် /ပဒင်းဗောက်/ G43
winter, cool season > ဆောင်း or ဆောင်းတွင်း D5.9
with [noun] > [noun]-နဲ့ D1.12 D4.4
woman, wife > အမျိုးသမီး or မိန်းမ D1.10A
word > စကားလုံး /စကလုနီး/ D5.6
work > အလုပ်။ to work, do a job = အလုပ် လုပ်-
D2.10A; to start work, take up a job = အလုပ်
ဝင်- D5.10B

work out all right, to be OK, satisfactory >
အဆင် ပြေ- D5.9
work, enterprise, business > လုပ်ငန်း D5.10B
workshop > (for car repairs) = ဝပ်ရှော့ D2.10A;
(for manufacturing) = အလုပ်ရုံ D2.10A
write > ရေး- D4.6
writer > စာရေးဆရာ D2.10A
writing paper > စာရွက် G40
wrong: to be wrong > မှား- D5.12
year > အနှစ် or နှစ် D2.7, D2.8
Yenangyaung > ရေနံချောင်း /ယေနန်ကျောင်း/ G19
Yes [affirmative answer to question] > ဟုတ်ကဲ့။
G3; or [verb]-ပါတယ်။ G29
Yes? [as a response to ဒီမှာ or alternative] > ဆိုပါ
or ဆို ; ပြောပါ or ပြော ; အေး ; ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ; မေးပါ or
မေး D1.1
yesterday > မနေ့က /-ဂါ/ D2.9
yet > not [verb] yet = မ-[verb]-သေးပါဘူး။ CP15,
D2.10A; verb suffix relating to whether a
specified condition has been achieved yet =
[verb]-ပြီ။ See the notes at D2.2 and D2.10A
YMCA > ဝိုင်အမ်စီအေ D2.3
you, your > See G39; မိတ်ဆွေ D1.10B
young: younger one > အငယ် D4.10B



APPENDIX 6

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

This list includes items introduced and practised in the course, but adds others you may want to refer to. Entries are arranged under the following headings:

Shopping —

1. Clothes
2. Books and stationery
3. Toiletries
4. Food and drink
5. Things to buy
6. Materials

Eating and drinking —

7. Café drinks
8. Café foods
9. Restaurant dishes

Other —

10. Burma geographical names
11. Rangoon road names
12. Government departments
13. In a town
14. Shops
15. In a building
16. In a room
17. Relatives and similar
18. Education
19. Academic subjects
20. Occupations
21. Parts of the body

1. Clothes

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| အဝတ်အစား: | clothing |
| ခေါင်းပေါင်း: | Burmese turban (a cloth wrapped round head and tucked in to leave a corner protruding) |
| အင်္ကျီ / အိန်းဂျီ/ | upper garment (shirt, blouse, jacket, coat) |
| တိုက်ပုံအင်္ကျီ | Burmese man's formal jacket |
| လုံချည် / လန်ဂျီ/ | <i>longyi</i> , sarong |
| ပုဆိုး / ပုဆိုး/ | paso (long <i>longyi</i> for men, worn on formal occasions) |
| ထဘီ / ထမိန်/ | tamein (long <i>longyi</i> for women, worn by stage dancers) |
| ဘော်လီ | woman's bodice |
| ဘရာစီယာ | brassière |
| ဦးထုပ် / အုတ်ထုတ်/ | hat |
| နက်တိုင် | tie ["neck-tie"] |
| စွပ်ကျယ် | vest, undershirt |
| ရှပ်အင်္ကျီ | shirt |

| | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| သိုးမွေးအင်္ကျီ | woollen jersey |
| ဘလောက်စ် | blouse |
| ဆွယ်တာ | sweater, cardigan |
| ခါးပတ် / ခပ်ပတ်/ | belt |
| ဂါဝန် | European-style dress |
| ဘောင်းဘီ | trousers |
| အတွင်းခံဘောင်းဘီ | underpants |
| ဖိနပ် / ဖနပ်/ | shoes, sandals |
| ရှူးဖိနပ် | European-style shoes |
| ညှပ်ဖိနပ် | thong sandals |
| ဂျပန်ဖိနပ် | rubber sandals |
| ခြေအိတ် | socks |
| လက်စွပ် | finger ring |
| လက်ကောက် | bracelet, bangle |
| နားကပ် / နဂပ်/ | earring |

2. Books and stationery

| | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| ဘောပင် | ballpoint pen |
| ခဲဖျက် / -ဗျက်/ | eraser |
| ခဲတံ | pencil |
| မှတ်စုစာအုပ် | notebook |

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| ဗလာစာအုပ် | plain book, exercise book |
| ကော်ပီစာအုပ် | plain book, exercise book |
| စာရွက် | sheet of paper |
| စာအိတ် | envelope |
| တံဆိပ်ခေါင်း /ဒဇိတ်ဂေါင်း/ | postage stamp |
| မွေးနေ့ကဒ်ပြား /ကတ်/ | birthday card |
| ခရစ္စမတ်ကဒ်ပြား | Christmas card |
| ပို့စကဒ် | postcard |
| ကော် | glue |
| ဒိုင်ယာရီ | diary |
| ပေတံ | ruler |
| ကလစ် | paper clip |
| ဖိုင်တွဲ | file |
| သရေကွင်း | elastic band |
| ဆယ်လိုတိပ် | sellotape/Scotch tape |
| ပြက္ခဒိန် | calendar |
| စာအုပ် | book |
| မြေပုံ | map |
| အဘိဓာန် | dictionary |
| သတင်းစာ | newspaper |
| မဂ္ဂဇင်း /မက်-/ | magazine |

3. Toiletries

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| ဆပ်ပြာ | soap |
| ဆပ်ပြာမှုန့် | soap powder |
| သွားပွတ်တံ /သဗွတ်-/ | toothbrush |
| သွားတိုက်ဆေး | toothpaste |
| ပလာစတာ | sticking plaster |
| မုတ်ဆိတ်ရိပ်ဒါး | razor |
| အိမ်သာသုံးစက္ကူ | toilet paper |
| ဘီး | comb |
| ခေါင်းလိမ်းဆီ /ဂေါင်း-/ | hair oil |
| ပေါင်ဒါ | powder |
| နှုတ်ခမ်းနီဆိုးဆေး /နုခန်း-/ | lipstick |

4. Food and drink

| | |
|--------------|-----------|
| အသီး | fruit |
| ငှက်ပျောသီး | banana |
| လိမ်းမော်သီး | tangerine |
| ပန်းသီး | apple |

| | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| သရက်သီး | mango |
| ကျွဲကောသီး | pomelo |
| ဩဇာသီး | custard apple |
| သဘောသီး | papaya |
| နာနတ်သီး | pineapple |
| စပျစ်သီး | grape |
| ဘီစကွတ် | biscuit, cookie |
| ဆန် | rice (dehusked, but uncooked) |
| ဆီ | oil |
| အသား | meat |
| ငါး | fish |
| ပဲ | beans, peas |
| ကော်ဖီမှုန့် | instant coffee, ground coffee |
| လက်ဖက်ခြောက် | tea leaves |
| နို့မှုန့် | milk powder |
| နို့ဆီ | condensed milk |
| သကြား | sugar |
| သကြားလုံး | sweets, candy |

5. Things to buy

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| ပစ္စည်း | thing, object; luggage |
| ဘက်ထရီ | battery |
| ကင်မရာ | camera |
| ဖလင် | film |
| ဓါတ်ပုံ | photograph |
| ရေဒီယို | radio |
| ကက်ဆက် | cassette player |
| ကက်ဆက်ခွေ | cassette tape |
| တိပ်ခွေ | tape |
| လက်ပတ်နာရီ | wrist watch |
| လက်ပတ်နာရီကြိုး | watch strap |
| အရုပ် | image, statue, doll |
| ဗန်း | tray |
| လက်စွပ် | ring |
| လွယ်အိတ် | shoulder bag |
| ယပ်တောင် | fan (hand-held) |
| ယွန်းထည် | lacquerware |
| ခြင်း | basket |

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| သော့ | key |
| ကီးချိန်း | key-chain |
| သေတ္တာ /တစ်-/ ဆေး | box, chest, trunk, suitcase medicine |
| ကတ်ကြေး | scissors |
| လက်ကိုင်ပဝါ | handkerchief |
| လက်နှိပ်ခါတ်မီး | torch, flashlight |
| မျက်မှန် | spectacles |
| ပိုက်ဆံအိတ် | purse |
| လက်ဆွဲအိတ် | briefcase |
| ဆေးလိပ် | rolled tobacco (cigarette, cheroot and variants) |
| စီးကရက် | cigarette |
| ဆေးတံ | tobacco pipe |
| ဆေးပေါ့လိပ် | cheroot |
| ဆေးပြင်းလိပ် | cigar |
| ဆေးလိပ်ပြာခွက် | ashtray |
| မီးခြစ် | match, lighter |
| ထီး | umbrella |
| ခါတ်ဆီ | petrol, gasoline |
| ရေနံဆီ | paraffin, kerosene |

6. Materials

| | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| သစ်သား | wood |
| ဝါး | bamboo |
| ဆင်စွယ် | ivory |
| ပလာစတိတ် | plastic |
| သံ | iron |
| သံမဏိ | steel |
| ဒန် | aluminium |
| ကြေး | copper, brass, bronze |
| ငွေ | silver |
| ရွှေ | gold |
| စက္ကူ | paper |
| အဝတ်စ | cloth |
| ပိုး | silk |
| ချည် | cotton |
| နိုင်လွန် | nylon |
| တက်ထရွန် | Tetron |
| သိုးမွေး | wool |

| | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| သားရေ /သယေ/ | leather |
| ကြွေ | porcelain, enamel |
| အိုးခွက် | pottery |

7. Café drinks

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| အအေး | cold drink |
| ရေ | water |
| ရေခဲရေ | iced water |
| ရေကျက်အေး | cold boiled water |
| ရေနွေး(ကြမ်း) | plain tea |
| လက်ဖက်ရည်(အချို) | tea (with milk and sugar) |
| ကော်ဖီ | coffee |
| ဖါလူဒါ | faluda |
| နွားနို့ | milk |
| နို့အေး | cold milk |
| (နွား)နို့ပူပူ | warm milk |
| နို့ချဉ် | yoghurt |
| အရည် | juice |
| လိမ္မော်ရည် | orange juice |
| သံပရာရည် | lime juice |
| အပျော် | fruit juice drink |
| မန်ကျည်းဖျော်ရည် /မဂျီးဖျော်ယေ/ | tamarind fruit juice |

| | |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| ကြံရည် | sugar cane juice |
| ဘီလပ်ရည် | bottled sweet carbonated drink |

Foreign drinks keep their foreign names:
ဟောလစ်၊ အိုဗာတင်း၊ မိုင်လို၊ ဗင်တို၊ ကိုကာကိုလာ၊
ပက်စီကိုလာ၊ စပါကလင်၊ ဆဲဗင်အပ်။ ဘီယာ၊ ဝီစကီ၊
ရမ်။

8. Café foods

| | |
|----------------|---|
| ဘဲသားမုန့် | duck dumpling (Chinese dumpling, with duck meat inside) |
| ကော်ပြန့်ကျော် | spring roll |
| ပေါက်ဆီ | large stuffed dumpling |
| ခေါက်ဆွဲ | kind of noodles |
| မုန့်တီ | kind of noodles |
| ကြာဇံ | kind of noodles |
| အသုပ် | salad |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| မုန့်ဟင်းခါး | fish soup, eaten with | မူ | mushroom |
| ပဲပြုတ် | noodles | ခရမ်းသီး | aubergine, eggplant |
| စမူဆာ | boiled dried peas | ခရမ်းချဉ်သီး | tomato |
| ပလာတာ | samosa | အာလူး | potato |
| ပုဒင်း(မုန့်) | parata | — <i>common dishes</i> | |
| ပေါင်မုန့်ထောပတ်သုတ် | pudding (like set custard) | အစိမ်းကျော် | meat and fried vegetables |
| နံပြားထောပတ်သုတ် | buttered bread | တောက်တောက်ကြော် | minced (ground) meat |
| အိကြာကွေး | buttered Indian bread | ကုန်းပေါင်ကြီးကြော် | patty |
| ကိတ်မုန့် | fried dough stick | | chicken prepared with |
| ဘိစကွတ် | European-style cake | ပြည်လုံးချမ်းသာ | dried sweet chillies |
| ရေခဲမုန့် | biscuit, cookie | ဒံပေါက်ထမင်း | mixed meats stir fried |
| | ice cream | — <i>methods of cooking and flavouring</i> | pulao rice |
| 9. Restaurant dishes | | -ကြော် | fried |
| သက်သတ်လွတ် | vegetarian, non-meat | -ပေါင်း | steamed |
| အစားအစာ | food, cuisine | -ချက် | stewed |
| — <i>starches</i> | | -ဟင်း | curry |
| ထမင်း | rice (cooked) | -သုပ် | dressed salad |
| ခေါက်ဆွဲ | noodles | -ချဉ် | sour |
| ကြာဇံ | vermicelli | -စပ် | hot (to taste) |
| — <i>proteins</i> | | -ချို | sweet |
| ဝက်သား | pork | -စတူး | stew |
| ကြက်သား | chicken | -ကင် | roasted, toasted |
| အမဲသား | beef | -ဆီပြန် | cooked in oil and water |
| ဆိတ်သား | goat meat | | till the water evaporates |
| ဆိတ်ကလီစာ | goat offal | -ချိုချဉ် | sweet and sour |
| ငါး | fish | — <i>accompanying dishes</i> | |
| ပုစွန် | prawn | ဟင်းသီးဟင်းရွက် | vegetables |
| ကဏန်း | crab | တို့စရာ | salad items for dipping |
| ဘဲ | duck | | into sauce |
| ဘဲဥ | duck egg | ဟင်းချို | clear soup |
| ကြက်ဥ | hen's egg | အချဉ် | sour sauce |
| ပဲပြား | bean curd | | |
| — <i>vegetables</i> | | | |

10. Burma geographical names

The following is a list of Nationalities, States, Divisions, Rivers, and Towns for which roman spellings were announced at the time of the reform of the roman spellings (see Part 1, Lesson 19).

| <i>script (with pron. if different)</i> | <i>traditional name</i> | <i>revised name (if different)</i> | <i>pronunciation in roman</i> |
|---|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
|---|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|

Nationalities and States

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|---------|---------|
| ကချင် | Kachin | - | Kăc'in |
| ကယား | Kayah | - | Kăyà |
| ကရင် /ကယင်/ | Karen | Kayin | Kăyin |
| ချင်း | Chin | - | C'in |
| ဗမာ | [Burman] | Bamar | Băma |
| မွန် | Mon | - | Mun |
| ရခိုင် /ယခိုင်/ | Arakanese | Rakhine | Yăk'ain |
| ရှမ်း | Shan | - | Shàn |

Divisions

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| စစ်ကိုင်း /ဇိုင်း/ | Sagaing | - | Săgàin |
| တနင်္သာရီ /တနင်းသာယီ/ | Tenasserim | Tanintharyi | Tănìn-tha-yi |
| ပဲခူး /ဗိုင်း/ | Pegu | Bago | Păgò |
| မကွေး /မဂွေး/ | Magwe | Magway | Măgwè |
| မန္တလေး /မန်းဒလေး/ | Mandalay | - | Màn-dālè |
| ရန်ကုန် /ယန်ဂုန်/ | Rangoon | Yangon | Yan-goun |
| ဧရာဝတီ /အေယာဝဒီ/ | Irrawaddy | Ayeyarwady | E-ya-wădi |

Rivers

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| ဧရာဝတီ /အေယာဝဒီ/ | Irrawaddy | Ayeyarwady | E-ya-wădi |
| သံလွင် | Salween | Thanlwin | Than-lwin |
| စစ်တောင်း | Sittang | Sittoung | Siq-taùn |
| ချင်းတွင်း /ချင်းဒွင်း/ | Chindwin | Chindwinn | C'in-dwìn |

Capitals of States

| State | Capital | | | |
|--------|-------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| ကချင် | မြစ်ကြီးနား | Myitkyina | - | Myiq-cì-nà |
| ကယား | လွိုင်ကော် | Loikaw | - | Lwain-kaw |
| ကရင် | ဘားအံ /ဖအံ/ | Paan | Hpa-an | P'āan |
| ချင်း | ဟားခါး | Haka | Hakha | Hà-k'à |
| မွန် | မော်လမြိုင် | Moulmein | Mawlamyine | Maw-lămyain |
| ရခိုင် | စစ်တွေ | Akyab | Sittwe | Siq-twe |
| ရှမ်း | တောင်ကြီး /-ဂျီး/ | Taunggyi | - | Taun-jì |

Capitals of Divisions

The Capital town has the same name as its Division except for:

| Division | Capital | | | |
|-----------|----------------|---------|------------|---------|
| တနင်္သာရီ | ထားဝယ် /ဒဝယ်/ | Tavoy | Dawei | Dăweh |
| ဧရာဝတီ | ပုသိမ် /ပသိန်/ | Bassein | Patheingyi | Păthein |

11. Rangoon road names

— East-West roads downtown

ဗိုလ်ချုပ်အောင်ဆန်းလမ်း

အနော်ရထာလမ်း

မဟာဗန္ဓုလလမ်း

ကုန်သည်လမ်း

ကမ်းနားလမ်း

— North-South roads downtown

ဗိုလ်တစ်ထောင်ဘုရားလမ်း

သိမ်ဖြူလမ်း

ဗိုလ်အောင်ကျော်လမ်း

ပန်းဆိုးတန်းလမ်း

မဟာဗန္ဓုလပန်းခြံလမ်း

ဆူးလေဘုရားလမ်း

ရွှေဘုံသာလမ်း

ရွှေဒဂုန်ဘုရားလမ်း

လသာလမ်း

လမ်းမတော်လမ်း

— Out of the centre

အင်းစိန်လမ်း

ဦးဝိစာရလမ်း

ပြည်လမ်း

အင်းယားလမ်း

ကိုယ်မင်းကိုယ်ချင်းလမ်း

ကမ္ဘာအေးစေတီလမ်း

ရွှေဂုံတိုင်လမ်း

12. Government departments

ဝန်ကြီးဌာန

လယ်ယာနှင့် သစ်တောရေး ဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ဆောက်လုပ်ရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

သမဝါယမဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ယဉ်ကျေးမှုဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ကာကွယ်ရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ပညာရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

စွမ်းအင်ဆိုင်ရာဝန်ကြီးဌာန

နိုင်ငံခြားရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ကျန်းမာရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ပြည်ထဲရေးနှင့် သာသနာရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

စက်မှုလက်မှုဝန်ကြီးဌာန (၁)

စက်မှုလက်မှုဝန်ကြီးဌာန (၂)

ပြန်ကြားရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

အလုပ်သမားဝန်ကြီးဌာန

တိရစ္ဆာန်မွေးမြူရေးနှင့် ငါးလုပ်ငန်းဝန်ကြီးဌာန

သတ္တုတွင်းဝန်ကြီးဌာန

အမျိုးသားစီမံကိန်းနှင့် ဘဏ္ဍာရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

လူမှုရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

ကုန်သွယ်ရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

သယ်ယူပို့ဆောင်ရေးနှင့် ဆက်သွယ်ရေးဝန်ကြီးဌာန

Ministry

Ministry of Agriculture and Forests

Ministry of Construction

Ministry of Cooperative

Ministry of Culture

Ministry of Defence

Ministry of Education

Ministry of Energy

Ministry of Foreign Affairs

Ministry of Health

Ministry of Home and Religious Affairs

Ministry of Industry 1

Ministry of Industry 2

Ministry of Information

Ministry of Labour

Ministry of Livestock Breeding and Fisheries

Ministry of Mines

Ministry of Planning and Finance

Ministry of Social Welfare

Ministry of Trade

Ministry of Transport and Communications

13. In a town

လမ်း

road, street

အိမ်

house, home

တိုက်

ရုံး

ရုံ

building of stone or brick

office

large public building

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| မြို့တော်ခန်းမ | town hall |
| အားကစားကွင်း | sports ground |
| ရေကူးကန် | swimming pool |
| အများသုံးအိမ်သာ | public convenience |
| ဘဏ်တိုက် | bank |
| စာတိုက် | post office |
| ဆေးရုံ | hospital |
| ဆေးခန်း | clinic |
| ထောင် | prison |
| ကြေးနန်းရုံး | telegraph office |
| တရားရုံး | law court |
| ရဲဌာန /-ထား-/ | police station |
| တိရစ္ဆာန်ရုံ /တရိတ်ဆန်-/ | zoo |
| ပြတိုက် /ပျာဒိုက်/ | museum |
| သံရုံး | embassy |
| လေဆိပ် | airport |
| လေယာဉ်ရုံး /-ယင်-/ | airline office |
| သင်္ဘောဆိပ် /သင်း-/ | dock |
| ဘူတာရုံ | railway station |
| ကားဂိတ် | bus depot |
| မှတ်တိုင် | bus stop |
| အသံလွှင့်ရုံ | broadcasting station |
| မြန်မာ့အသံ | Voice of Myanmar |
| တက္ကသိုလ် /-သို/ | university |
| ကျောင်း | school, monastery |
| ကျောင်းဆောင် | hostel, dorm |
| ဘုရား /ဖယား/ | pagoda |
| စေတီ /ဇေဒီ/ | pagoda |
| ဘုရားရှိခိုးကျောင်း | church, temple |
| ဗလီ | mosque |
| တရားရိပ်သာ | meditation centre |
| ဓမ္မာရုံ /ဒမာ-/ | preaching hall |
| ဈေး | market |
| ပန်းခြံ | garden, park |
| ပုံနှိပ်တိုက် | printing press |
| ဂိုဒေါင် | warehouse |
| စက်ရုံ | factory |
| သစ်စက် | sawmill |
| ဆန်စက် | rice mill |
| အလုပ်ရုံ | workshop |

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| ဟိုတယ် | hotel, restaurant |
| ရုပ်ရှင်ရုံ | cinema |
| စာကြည့်တိုက် /-ကျိ-/ | library |
| တရပ်တန်း | Chinese quarter |

14. Shops

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| ဆိုင် | shop |
| စာအုပ်ဆိုင် | bookshop |
| စာရေးကရိယာဆိုင် | stationery shop |
| ဓါတ်ပုံဆိုင် | photography shop |
| အပ်ချုပ်ဆိုင် | tailors |
| ဆံပင်ညှပ်ဆိုင် | barbers |
| ဆံသဆိုင် | hairdressers (for women) |
| ဆေးဆိုင် | chemist's shop |
| ဓါတ်ဆီဆိုင် | filling station |
| ဝပ်ရှော | car repairs |
| နာရီဆိုင် | clock and watch shop |
| ရွှေဆိုင် | gold dealer |
| အသီးဆိုင် | fruit shop |
| ကုန်စုံဆိုင် | general stores (dry foods and household goods) |
| စားသောက်ဆိုင် | restaurant |
| အအေးဆိုင် | cold drinks bar |
| လက်ဖက်ရည်ဆိုင် | café |
| ပင်မင်းဆိုင် | dry cleaner, launderer |

15. In a building

| | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| လှေကား | stairs |
| ဓါတ်လှေကား | lift, elevator, escalator |
| နေ့ခန်း | sitting room, lounge |
| ထမင်းစားခန်း | dining room |
| အိပ်ခန်း | bedroom |
| ရေချိုးခန်း | bathroom |
| အိမ်သာ | toilet |
| စာကြည့်ခန်း | reading room |
| စာဖတ်ခန်း | reading room, study |
| စာသင်ခန်း | classroom |
| စာကြည့်တိုက် | library |
| ရုံးခန်း | office |
| အပန်းဖြေခန်း | common room |

16. In a room

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| အခန်း: | room |
| နံရံ | wall |
| ကြမ်းပြင် | floor |
| မျက်နှာကြက် | ceiling |
| တံခါး / ဒဂါး/ | door |
| ပြတင်းပေါက် / ပဒင်းဇောက်/ | window |
| ယင်း: | blind |
| ရေဒီယေတာ | radiator |
| မီး: | light |
| မီးခလုပ် | light switch |
| ဖျာ | mat |
| ကော်ဇော | carpet |
| စားပွဲ or စာပွဲ / စဉ့်/ | table, desk |
| ကုလားထိုင် / ကလထိုင်/ | chair |
| ဘီခို | cupboard, closet |
| စာအုပ်စင် | bookshelf |
| ဘုရားစင် / ဖယားစင်/ | Buddha shelf (to hold image of Buddha and other devotional objects) |
| အမှိုက်ပုံး: | waste-paper basket, trash can |
| ကွန်ပျူတာ | computer |
| လက်နှိပ်စက် | typewriter |
| တယ်လီဖုန်း: | telephone |

17. Relatives and similar

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| ဆွေမျိုး: | relative, relation |
| မိတ်ဆွေ | friend |
| အဖေ | father (normal, colloquial) |
| အမေ | mother (normal, colloquial) |
| အဘ | father (formal, official) |
| အမိ | mother (formal, official) |
| ဖခင် / ဖုဂင်/ | father (formal, literary) |
| မိခင် / မိဂင်/ | mother (formal, literary) |
| ခမည်းတော် / ခမဲ-/ | father (of monk or royal) |
| မယ်တော် | mother (of monk or royal) |
| သား: | son |
| သမီး: | daughter |
| ကလေး: / ခလေး/ | little one, child |

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| ယောက်ျား(က)လေး: | small boy |
| မိန်းကလေး: | small girl |
| အကို | older brother |
| အမ | older sister |
| ညီ | younger brother (of man) |
| မောင် | younger brother (of woman) |
| ညီမ | younger sister (of man or woman) |
| နမ | younger sister (of man). နမ is currently being replaced by ညီမ for the younger sister of both sexes. |
| အမျိုးသား: | husband (polite) |
| အမျိုးသမီး: | wife (polite) |
| ခင်ပွန်း: | husband (formal) |
| ဇနီး: | wife (formal) |
| ယောက်ျား / ယောက်ကျား/ | husband (informal) |
| မိန်းမ | wife (informal) |
| အဖိုး or အဘိုး: | grandfather |
| အဖွား or အဘွား: | grandmother |
| မြေး / မျိုး/ | grandchild |
| မြေးယောက်ျား: | grandson |
| မြေးမိန်းမ | granddaughter |
| အဘေး or အဖေ: | great-grand-parent |
| တိ | great-grandchild |
| ဦးလေး: | uncle |
| အဒေါ် | aunt |
| အကို (အမ or other sibling) | တစ်ဝမ်းကွဲ cousin ["brother (or other) one-womb-separated"] |
| တူ | nephew |
| တူမ | niece |
| — Groups of relatives | |
| မိဘ | parents |
| ဇနီးမောင်နှံ | married couple, man and wife |
| ညီအကိုမောင်နှံစု | brothers and sisters |
| သားသမီး: | children |
| ကလေးတွေ | children |
| မိသားစု | family ["mother-child-group"] |
| — distinction by age | |
| N-ကြီး: | older/oldest N |

| | | |
|-------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| N-လတ် | middle N | for example: သားကြီး၊ သားလတ်၊ သားငယ် |
| N-ငယ် | younger/youngest N | oldest son, middle son, youngest son |

18. Education

Schools in Burma are divided into three age ranges:

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| မူလတန်းကျောင်း | Elementary school, which includes — |
| သူငယ်တန်း | Kindergarten, and |
| တစ်တန်း၊ နှစ်တန်း၊ သုံးတန်း၊ လေးတန်း | Standards 1 to 4, also called — |
| ပထမတန်း၊ ဒုတိယတန်း၊ တတိယတန်း၊ စတုတ္ထတန်း | 1st to 4th Standard |
| အလယ်တန်းကျောင်း | Middle school, which includes — |
| ငါးတန်း၊ ခြောက်တန်း၊ ခုနှစ်တန်း၊ ရှစ်တန်း | Standards 5 to 8, also called — |
| ပဉ္စမတန်း၊ ဆဋ္ဌမတန်း၊ သတ္တမတန်း၊ အဋ္ဌမတန်း | 5th to 8th Standard |
| အထက်တန်းကျောင်း | High school, which includes — |
| ကိုးတန်း၊ ဆယ်တန်း | Standards 9 and 10, also called — |
| နဝမတန်း၊ ဒသမတန်း | 9th and 10th Standard |

Some institutions of further education:

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ရန်ကုန် တက္ကသိုလ် | Rangoon (Yangon) University |
| မန္တလေး တက္ကသိုလ် | Mandalay University |
| ဆေး တက္ကသိုလ် | Institute of Medicine |
| ပညာရေး တက္ကသိုလ် / ပျင်ညာ- / | Institute of Education |
| စီးပွားရေး တက္ကသိုလ် | Institute of Economics |
| ဆရာဖြစ်သင်ကျောင်း / -ဗျစ်- / | Teacher Training College |

At university a student may be in —

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| ပထမနှစ်၊ ဒုတိယနှစ်၊ တတိယနှစ်၊ စတုတ္ထနှစ် | First, Second, Third or Fourth Year |
|--|-------------------------------------|

University degrees:

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| ဝိဇ္ဇာဘွဲ့. / ဝိတ်ဇာ- / | B.A. | မဟာဝိဇ္ဇာဘွဲ့. | M.A. |
| သိပ္ပံဘွဲ့. / သိတ်ပန်- / | B.Sc. | ပါရဂူဘွဲ့. | Ph.D. |

19. Academic subjects

| | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| စာပေ | literature | အက | dance |
| မြန်မာစာ | Burmese language and literature | ဂီတ | music |
| အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ | English | ဇာတ်ပွဲ | Burmese drama |
| ပါဠိစာပေ | Pali | လူမှုရေး | sociology |
| ဘာသာစကား | language | နိုင်ငံရေး | politics |
| ကျောက်စာ | inscription | ဘောဂဗေဒ | economics |
| ရှေးဟောင်းသုတေသန | archaeology | စီးပွားရေး | economics |
| အနုပညာ | art | စာရင်းအင်းပညာ | accountancy |
| ယဉ်ကျေးမှု | culture | သင်္ချာ | maths |
| ဗုဒ္ဓဘာသာ | Buddhism | ပထဝီဝင် | geography |
| ဆေးပညာ | medicine | သမိုင်း | history |
| | | ဓာတုဗေဒ | chemistry |
| | | သတ္တဗေဒ | biology |

ရူပဗေဒ
စိုက်ပျိုးရေး

physics
agriculture

ဆိုက်ကားသမား
ကားသမား
ယာဉ်မောင်း

trishaw pedaller
driver
driver

20. Occupations

ဘုန်းကြီး Buddhist monk
ကိုရင် novice monk
မယ်သီလရင် Buddhist nun
သာသနာပြုဆရာ/မ missionary
အစိုးရအမှုထမ်း civil servant
(ဒု/လက်ထောက်) ညွှန်ကြားရေးမှူး
(Deputy/Assistant) Director
စာရေး /စယေး/ clerk
အင်ဂျင်နီယာ engineer
ပိသုကာ architect
ဆရာဝန် doctor
သွားဆရာဝန် dentist
နတ်စံ/မ nurse
သူနာပြုဆရာ/မ nurse
ကျောင်းဆရာ/မ school teacher
တက္ကသိုလ်ဆရာ/မ university teacher
ကျောင်းသား/သူ student (male/female)
စာရင်းကိုင် accountant
စစ်ဗိုလ် army officer
စစ်သား soldier
သင်္ဘောသား sailor
ရဲအရာရှိ policeman
အယ်ဒီတာ editor
သတင်းထောက် reporter
စာရေးဆရာ/မ writer, author
ဓါတ်ပုံဆရာ photographer
ပန်းချီဆရာ /ဗဂျီ-/ artist
ရုပ်ရှင်မင်းသား/သမီး film actor/actress
အဆိုတော် singer
ပွဲစား agent, middle-man
ဆိုင်ရှင် shopkeeper
ဈေးသည် market stall-holder
ကောင်တာစာရေး /-စယေး/ sales assistant
လယ်သမား farmer, peasant
အလုပ်သမား labourer

21. Parts of the body

ခေါင်း /ဂေါင်း/ head
ဆံပင် /ဇေင်/ hair (of head)
မျက်နှာ face
မျက်စိ eye
နှာခေါင်း /နှခေါင်း/ nose
ပါးစပ် /ဗဇေတ်/ mouth
သွား tooth
လျှာ /ယှာ/ tongue
နှုတ်ခမ်း /နှခန်း/ lip
နှုတ်ခမ်းမွေး moustache
မုတ်ဆိတ် beard
မေးစေ့ /-ဇိ/ chin
နား ear
လည်တိုင် neck
ကျော or ကျောကုန်း back
ရင် or ရင်ပတ် chest
ရင်သား breast
ဗိုက် stomach
ခါး waist
ယောက်ျားအင်္ဂါ male genitals
မိန်းမအင်္ဂါ female genitals
တင်ပါး buttock
ဖင် anus, backside
ပခုံး shoulder
လက် arm, hand
တံတောင်ဆစ် /တဒေါင်ဇစ်/ elbow
လက်ချောင်း finger
လက်မ thumb
လက်ဖဝါး palm of hand
ခြေ or ခြေထောက် /ချီဒေါက်/ leg, foot
ခွေ knee
ခြေချောင်း toe
ခြေမ big toe
ခြေဖဝါး sole of foot

APPENDIX 7

INDEX TO NOTES AND TERMS

References

G29 refers to Part 1 ("Groundwork") Lesson 29

D1.10A refers to Part 2 ("Dialogues") Level 1, Topic 10A

App. 2.6 refers to Book 2, Appendix 6

Gram 2.1 refers to Section 2.1 in the Outline Grammar (Book 2, Appendix 4)

"Oh I see" questions: D1.10A

addresses: G29

ages: D2.10B

Anawrahta: G7

auxiliary verbs : Gram 3.2.2

Bo Aung Gyaw: G7

body, parts of: App. 2.6, section 22

Bogyoke: G5

buildings, public: App. 2.6, section 13

buildings, parts of: App. 2.6, section 15

Burma and Myanmar: G13

Burma place names, traditional vs. revised
spellings: G19 and App. 2.6, section 10

Burmese currency: G32, G38

calling someone's attention: D1.1, D2.1

checking questions > [noun]-လား။ Did you say
[noun]? Was that [noun]? G6

clothes, words for: App. 2.6, section 1

coins, Burmese: G38

colour words: D5.5

commands: Gram 14.3

comparison (like/unlike): Gram 2.1

comparison (more than): Gram 2.1

conditions: Gram 14.8

confirmation questions: Gram 14.2.4, D2.6

country names: G13, G17, G34, D1.9

currency, Burmese: G32, G38

da forms, current hunch: D4.7

dates, 4 January and so on: D2.9

days of the week: D2.11, D3.11

declining a request: Gram 14.4.2

demonstratives: Gram 9

destination, "to [place]": G34

dictionaries: App. 1.2

diphthongs in the romanization: G1

drinks in cafés, words for: App. 2.6, section 7

education system: App. 2.6, section 18

emphatic statements: Gram 14.1.3

exclamations: Gram 14.5

excuse me: D1.1, D2.1

explanations: Gram 14.7

food and drink, words for: App. 2.6, section 4

food in cafés, words for: App. 2.6, section 8

foreign words, spelling and pronouncing: G1, G15

France: G34

government departments: App. 2.6, section 12

grammar: App. 2.4

grammars of Burmese: App. 1.2

have to: G45

he and she: G27

hesitation, um and er: G7

I and you: G39

intentions: Gram 14.6

interrogatives: Gram 9

kin terms, list: App. 2.6, section 17

kin terms, various uses: D1.10B

KY in foreign words: G15

kyat: G32, G38

learning Burmese, list of courses and other aids:
App. 1.2

longer and shorter answers: G27, G29, G31

Maha Bandoola: G5

map of countries near Burma: G13

map of Rangoon sites and streets: G1

map of towns in Burma: G13

materials, words for: App. 2.6, section 6

month names, Burmese and English: D2.7

Myanmar and Burma: G13

names of people G21; prefixes: G22, G24

National Museum: G5

nationality names: D1.9

negative statements: Gram 14.1.2

- not any Gram: 10
- noun phrase: Gram 1, 2
- numbered streets: G30
- numbers with “and”: G16, G18, G28, G32
- occupations: D2.10A, D3.10B, more in App. 2.6, section 20
- occupations, words for: App. 2.6, section 20
- pagodas: G1
- Pansodan: G7
- parts of the body: App. 2.6, section 22
- permission, requesting: Gram 14.3.4
- person: 1st, 2nd, 3rd G27
- personal names in Burma: G21; prefixes G22, G24
- phone numbers: G6
- phrase suffix: Gram 4
- place names in Burma: English names, traditional and revised: G19, and App. 2.6, section 10
- polite suffix: G9, G27, G46
- prefixes to personal names: G22, G24
- pronouncing Burmese: App.1.1
- pronouns: G27, G39
- pronunciation, represented in Burmese script: G1
- pya: G32, G38
- questions: Gram 14.2; tentative questions Gram 14.2.3; confirmation questions Gram 14.2.4
- Rangoon and Yangon: G15
- Rangoon places: G5
- Rangoon roads: G7, and App. 2.6, section 11
- relative clauses: Gram 7.1
- relatives, list of terms: App. 2.6, section 17
- repetition used to form affectionate diminutives: D2.1
- requests: Gram 14.3
- responding to a request: Gram 14.4
- restaurant dishes, words for: App. 2.6, section 9
- restaurant, different types: D3.4
- revised roman spelling for geographical names: G19
- romanizing Burmese: App. 1.3
- room:, parts and contents: App. 2.6, section 16
- round numbers: G26, G28, G32, G37
- sentence suffix: Gram 5
- sentences with no verb: Gram 1.2, 8
- she and he: G27
- shops, types of: App. 2.6, section 14
- short and long answers: G27, G29, G31
- Shwedagon Pagoda Road: G7
- sounds of Burmese: App. 1.1
- spelling, in Burmese script: G4, G8
- statements: Gram 14.1
- stationery, words for: App. 2.6, section 2
- subjects, academic: App. 2.6, section 19
- subordinate clauses: Gram 6
- suffix -က (-gá): G4
- suggestions: Gram 14.3
- taste words: D5.4
- telephone numbers: G6
- tense: G27
- tentative questions: Gram 14.2.3
- Theingyi Market: G5
- things to buy, words for: App. 2.6, section 5
- this [thing] vs. this: G7
- time telling: G33
- tipping: D1.3
- toiletries, words for: App. 2.6, section 3
- town, places in: App. 2.6, section 13
- towns in Burma: revised and traditional names: G19, and App. 2.6, section 10
- verb phrase: Gram 1
- verb suffix: Gram 3, 3.3
- voicing: G10, G12, G16, G23
- want to: G42
- weakening: G4, G8, G16, G23, G27
- where and here: G20
- which vs. what: G11, G17
- will: G44
- word order: G27
- Yangon and Rangoon: G15
- year numbers: ထောင် ကိုးရာ ကိုးဆယ့် တစ်ခု နှစ် 1991 and the like: D2.7
- yes and no: G3
- you and I: G39



Burmese (Myanmar):
An Introduction to the Spoken Language Book 2

ERRATA ET CORRIGENDA

| Reference | Text | Amend to |
|----------------------------------|------------------|---|
| p 10 line 3 from end | ye-gèh-moún | keiq-moún |
| p 15 under <i>Variants</i> | Sáw-ba-oùn-là | Sháw-ba-oùn-là |
| p 28 under New words | the 15th | the 16th |
| p 39 line 14 from end | သင် | အသင် |
| p 44 line 3 from end | meet at 12 | meet at 3 |
| p 54 line 3 from end | Nèh-ba-deh | Nèh-deh |
| p 57 line 12 | beh-hnăpmèh | beh-hnăpwèh |
| p 61 under Words for measuring | pmèh | pwèh |
| p 61 line 12 from end | lè-pwèh | lè-bwèh |
| p 61 line 11 from end | wi-săki lè-pălin | Peq-si lè-pălin |
| p 71 Dialogue 1 lines 2, 4, 6, 7 | S1: | S2: |
| p 74 line 14 | into English | into Burmese |
| p 90 line 14 from end | Daw Hla | Daw Tin Hla |
| p 95 photo caption | Anarapura | Amarapura |
| p 95 line 6 from end | so you | do you |
| p 125 line 13 from end | တစ | တစ် |
| p 128 line 9 from end | ကျပြီလား။ | ကျပြီလား။ |
| p 135 line 15 from end | we- | wè- |
| p 152 line 7 from end | မထည့်နဲ့ | မထည့်နဲ့ |
| p 174 line 8 | foreignn | foreign |
| p 183 lines 6 and 11 | သမီး and သား | သား and သမီး — with corresponding changes in cols 2 and 3 |
| p 263 col 2 line 20 | zuccharo | zucchero |